



# Voyager® with Unicode™ WebVoyage® User's Guide

February 2004

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

This document contains proprietary information of  
Endeavor Information Systems, Inc. and is not to be disclosed or used  
except in accordance with applicable agreements.

Copyright © 2004 Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
All Rights Reserved

## **Copyright © 2004 Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

This material is protected by the copyright laws of the United States and other countries. It may not be reproduced, distributed, or altered in any fashion by any entity (either internal or external to Endeavor Information Systems), except in accordance with applicable agreements, contracts or licensing.

### **Notice**

Every effort was made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing. However, information is subject to change.

### **Trademarks**

Voyager is a registered trademark of Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.

Endeavor eZConnect and WebVoyage are trademarks of Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.

Citation Server is a registered trademark of Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Ltd.

Netscape is a registered trademark of Netscape Communications Corporation.

WinZip is a registered trademark of Nico Mak Computing, Inc.

Microsoft, the Microsoft logo, MS, MS-DOS, Microsoft PowerPoint, Visual Basic, Visual C++, Win32, Microsoft Windows, the Windows logo, Microsoft Notepad, Microsoft Windows Explorer, Microsoft Internet Explorer, and Windows NT are registered trademarks and ActiveX is a trademark of the Microsoft corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

AIX, AIX/ESA, are registered trademarks of IBM in the United States; and AIX/L, AIX/L (logo), AIX 5L, and AIX PVMe are common law marks of IBM in the United States.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, Solaris, ONC+, NFS, SunVTS, VIS, JumpStart, Sun Fire, StorEdge, Sun Fireplane Interconnect, WebNFS, Java, Solstice, Solstice AdminSuite, Sun Management Center, Sun Cluster, JVM, ShowMeHow, ShowMe TV, Solaris Webstart, Sun Remote Systems Control, Solaris PC Netlink, and Open Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

Relais is a Trademark of Relais International, Inc.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

# Contents

---

## About This Document

• Purpose	xxxv
• Intended Audience	xxxv
• Reason for Reissue	xxxv
• How to Use This Document	xxxvii
• Conventions Used in This Document	xxxviii
• Contact Information	xxxix
• Document Reproduction/Photocopying	xl
• How to Comment on This Document	xl
To Submit Comments by E-mail	xli
To Submit Comments by Fax	xli
• Customer Support Contact Information	xli
Phone	xli
E-mail	xli
Fax	xlii
Customer Support Hours of Operation	xlii

---

## 1

## Getting Started

• Introduction	1-1
• Purpose of this Chapter	1-1
• Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge	1-1
• WebVoyage directory structure	1-2
• Installing WebVoyage	1-3
Prepare Your Web Server	1-3
Define the Web Server's Port	1-3
Define the Web Server's Document Root or Script Alias	1-3
Define the Web Server's Directory Index	1-4
Copy the WebVoyage Files into the Appropriate Directories	1-5
Check the Permissions on Your Files	1-5
Prepare Your WebVoyage Files	1-6

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Check the Pwebrecon.cgi File	1-6
Edit the WebVoyage.ini File	1-7
Prepare Your voyager.ini File	1-7
Establishing a Secure Socket Layer (SSL)	
Webserver	1-8
Allowing Access to WebVoyage	1-9
Installing on Another Machine	1-10
• Displaying Unicode characters	1-11
Web Browser configuration	1-11
Font installation	1-12
• Displaying Alternate Graphic Representations on the View Record Pages	1-12
Enabling the 880 field linking	1-14
Adding 880 Alternate Graphic Representation information	1-14
Format of Linked MARC fields	1-14
Format of the 880 fields	1-15
Format of the primary fields	1-15
Examples	1-16
• Making WebVoyage Multilingual	1-20

---

## 2

### WebVoyage Screens

• Customizing WebVoyage Structure	2-1
• Customizing Individual WebVoyage Pages	2-2
General Notes on the WebVoyage Screens	2-3
Setting the Initial Page	2-3
Using the Search Page as the Initial Page	2-3
• Global WebVoyage Page Appearance Configuration	2-5
Html_Body Stanza	2-5
Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration	2-7
Initial WebVoyage Page (Webvoy.htm)	2-10
Editing the Webvoy.htm File	2-11
Library Information Page (Libinfo.htm)	2-12
Editing the Libinfo.htm File	2-13
Remote Libraries Page (Remote.htm)	2-13
Editing the Remote.htm File	2-14
• Search Screens	2-15
Default Search type	2-15

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

• Customizing Search Screens	2-17
Editing the Simple Search Screen	2-18
Editing the Builder Search (Boolean Search) Screen	2-24
The [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza	2-29
Editing the Course Reserve Search Screen	2-31
Course Reserve Drop-Down interface	2-31
The [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza	2-35
Editing the Map Search Screen	2-37
Rectangle Search Dialog Box	2-42
Polygon Search Dialog Box	2-43
Point And Radius Search Dialog Box	2-44
Corridor/Route Search Dialog Box	2-45
Range Search Dialog Box	2-47
The [Map_Search_Page] stanza	2-48
The Limits.ini File	2-50
Limits Stanza	2-50
Search Limits Stanzas	2-50
Search Limits Buttons List	2-54
Editing the Database Selection Screen	2-55
Components of the Database Selection Screen	2-56
The Connect.ini File	2-58
Database Selection Buttons List	2-58
Editing the Simultaneous Search Screen	2-59
Components of the Simultaneous Search Screen	2-60
Editing the Headings List Screen	2-63
Components of the Headings List Screen	2-64
Browse Searches	2-68
Headings List Buttons List	2-71
Editing the References/Scope Notes Screen	2-72
Components of the References/Scope Notes Screen	2-73
References/Scope Notes Buttons List	2-75
Editing the Titles List Screen	2-76
Components of the Title List Screen	2-77
Save/Email Table	2-92
Title List Buttons List	2-94
Editing the Record Display	2-95
Components of the Record Display Screens	2-96

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Save/Email Table	2-107
Record Display Buttons List	2-108
Editing the Request Selection Screen	2-110
Components of the Request Selection Screen	2-111
Request Selection Buttons List	2-113
Editing the Patron Login Screen	2-114
Components of the Patron Login Screen	2-115
Patron Login Buttons List	2-116
Editing the Patron Information Screen	2-117
Components of the Patron Information Screen	2-119
General:	2-119
Charged Items Section:	2-123
Patron Information Buttons List	2-127
Editing the Call Slip Request Screen	2-128
Components of the Call Slip Request Screen	2-128
Call Slip Request Buttons List	2-130
Editing the Hold and Recall Request Screens	2-132
Components of the Hold and Recall Request Screens	2-132
Hold and Recall Request Buttons List	2-135
Editing the Short Loan Request Screen	2-136
Components of the Short Loan Request Screen	2-137
Short Loan Request Buttons List	2-141
Editing the Blank-Type Request Screen	2-142
Components of the Blank-Type Request Screen	2-143
Blank-Type Request Buttons List	2-145
Editing the Bibliographic Level Request Screens	2-146
Components of the Bib Level Request Screens	2-147
Bib Level Request Buttons List	2-150
Editing the Item Level Request Screens	2-151
Components of the Item Level Request Screens	2-152
Item Level Request Buttons List	2-154
Editing the NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Form Screens	2-155
Components of the NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Request Screens	2-156
NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Request Screens Buttons List	2-159
Editing the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens	2-160
Components of the ARTEmail Loan and	

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Photocopy Form Screens	2-160
ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens Buttons List	2-163
Editing the Search History Screen	2-164
Components of the Search History Screens	2-165
Search History Buttons List	2-167
[NoHits_Redirect] Stanza	2-168
Holdings Jump Bar Function	2-170
Library Information	2-171
Remote Libraries	2-172

---

### 3

### WebVoyage Configuration Files

Required Elements	3-1
• WebVoyage Directory Structure	3-2
• Customizing WebVoyage	3-3
Overview	3-4
Required Elements	3-4
WebVoyage.ini	3-5
AppVar Stanza	3-5
WebRecon Stanza	3-6
Thumbnails Stanza	3-7
DOI Stanza	3-10
HelpLocation Stanza	3-10
Generic Images Stanza	3-10
voyager.ini	3-11
Communications Stanza	3-11
Links Stanza	3-12
The opac.ini	3-12
Assigning OPAC Identification String	3-12
Date Format and Appearance	3-13
Customizing Item Statuses Display	3-14
Number of Records Drop-Down Box	3-25
Map Search Page	3-26
Map_Footprint Stanza	3-32
Map Format Type Configuration	3-33
Map Limits Page	3-33
Other Components of the Search Limits Screen	3-38

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Miscellaneous WebVoyáge Display Configuration	3-44
Enabling and disabling WebVoyáge Features	3-45
WebVoyáge Patron Login ID Options	3-46
The [Login Types] Stanza	3-47
Request Messages	3-48
Order Statuses	3-51
Search Dialog Stanza	3-54
Initial Persistent Location Limit	3-55
Setting the Location Limit	3-56
Results Stanza	3-59
Search_Text Stanza	3-61
TextTool Stanza	3-66
• Toolbar_Top and Toolbar_Bottom Stanzas	3-66
Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration	3-67
The Count Variable	3-71
Hyperlinked Text Display Variables	3-71
Button Configuration Variables	3-71
Login-Specific Variables	3-71
BtnXXToggleGraphicUp	3-72
BtnXXToggleText	3-72
Time Stanza	3-72
JumpBar Stanza	3-73
Title_Bar Stanza	3-75
WebRecon Stanza	3-79
Table_Colors Stanza	3-80
Boolean_Search_Page Stanza	3-80
Browse_Page Stanza	3-85
[Combined_Search_Page] Stanza	3-88
Configuring the Course Reserve Search (Drop-Down interface)	3-95
Course_Reserve_Search_Page Stanza	3-97
Database_Page Stanza	3-101
Headings_Page Stanza	3-102
Limit_Page Stanza	3-104
Logon_Page Stanza	3-108
Mail_And_Requests Stanza	3-109
Download Formats	3-112
formats.ini file	3-113
Patron Info Stanza	3-117

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Patron_Info_Page Stanza	3-125
Ref_Page Stanza	3-130
Request_Page Stanza	3-130
CallSlipStatusCodes Stanza	3-131
Editing the [CallSlipStatusCodes] Stanza	3-133
Request Dialogs Stanza	3-134
Request_Select_Page Stanza	3-143
Request_ShortLoan_Page Stanza	3-145
Search_History_Page Stanza	3-147
Sim_Search_Page Stanza	3-149
Title_Page Stanza	3-152
Page Appearance	3-152
Button Text/Alt Text	3-153
Hot Links	3-155
Labels	3-156
Page Layout	3-159
Titles' Availability	3-162
Item Statuses	3-163
View_Record_Page Stanza	3-169
MARCINFO.INI	3-177
• The connect.ini file	3-177
Overview	3-178
The connect.ini file As Distributed	3-178
The [Folders] Stanza	3-180
Set Name Stanzas	3-181
Location Stanza	3-185
Limits.ini	3-193
Map-Related Limits in Limits.ini	3-197
*.HTM Files	3-199
Error, Assistance and Block Messages	3-199
Help Pages	3-203
Other Pages	3-205
Image Files	3-209
DISPLAY.INI	3-215
DISPLAYN.CFG	3-216
Search Re-direcs	3-220
Adding Punctuation to a Configuration File	3-220
Punctuation	3-222
Configuration Files	3-223
New Syntax	3-224

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Syntax Rules	3-225
Rule 1	3-225
Rule 2	3-226
Rule 3	3-226
Rule 4	3-226
Rule 5	3-227
Special Considerations	3-228
The display.cfg File	3-229
E-Items	3-230
Holdings Information	3-231
Temporary Location Display	3-231
Request.cfg and Requesth.cfg	3-232
SEARCH.INI	3-232
ValidTabs Stanza	3-233
Simple_Search_Codes Stanza	3-234
SAVE.CFG	3-235
SAVEH.CFG	3-235
SAVEF.CFG	3-235
EMAIL.CFG	3-235
EMAILH.CFG	3-236
EMAILF.CFG	3-236
• Troubleshooting	3-236

---

## 4

### Displaying Information

Local Folder	4-2
Voyager System Administration	4-3
Connections	4-3
Information You Will Need	4-4
Quick Start	4-5
• Connecting to Resources within Voyager	4-5
Define a Database in System Administration	4-5
Sample Search Scenarios	4-6
View Connection in WebVoyáge	4-7
Troubleshooting	4-7
• Simultaneous Search	4-8
• Hook To Local Holdings	4-10
• Customizing Displays with WebVoyáge Folders	4-11
WebVoyáge Folders	4-12

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

The Local Folder	4-12
VCIT, ZCIT, and Z39.50 Folders	4-13

---

## 5

### Searching in WebVoyáge

• Searching in WebVoyáge	5-1
The Initial WebVoyáge Page	5-1
Customizing the Initial WebVoyáge Page	5-3
Database Page	5-3
Configuring the Database Page	5-6
Search Page	5-7
Simple Search	5-8
Configuring the Simple Search	5-10
Builder Search	5-12
Configuring the Builder Search	5-14
Combining Builder Searches (Optional)	5-16
Combined Builder Search Configuration	5-20
Enabling and Disabling Combined Builder Searches	5-20
Customizing the Search History Page	5-21
Enabling relevance ranking for Combined Builder Searches	5-22
• Course Reserve Search	5-23
Course Reserve Drop-Down interface	5-23
Configuration Overview	5-25
Setting the Course Reserve Display Type to Drop-Down	5-25
Enabling Drop-Down boxes and labels	5-25
Informational text	5-27
Course Reserve Browse interface	5-27
Configuration Overview	5-30
Setting the Course Reserve display type to the browse interface	5-31
Configuring the Course Reserve Location Selection screen	5-31
Configuring the Course Reserve Browse Alphabetical List page	5-33
Configuring the Individual Browse Screens	5-34
Editing the html block messages	5-36
• WebVoyáge OpenURL features	5-37

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

• WebVoyáge OpenURL Linking	5-37
Enabling OpenURL Links on the Record Display Page	5-37
Configuring View Record Page OpenURL link display for WebVoyáge	5-38
The opac.ini file	5-38
Directing Voyager to the LinkFinder server	5-38
Directing WebVoyáge to the LinkFinder button	5-38
Setting the mouse-over text of the LinkFinder button	5-39
The linkfinder.cfg file	5-41
Configuring parsing profiles for MARC record information extraction	5-41
• OpenURL Item requests	5-46
Enabling OpenURL Item Requests	5-46
Configuring the variables in the opac.ini	5-47
The RequestURI.cfg File	5-47
Relais-related configuration notes	5-49
Including the Call Number using the CN parsing tag	5-49
Logging into Relais ILL	5-49
• General MARC Field Parsing Variables for OpenURL	5-50
Including Genre Information Automatically	5-53
The genre Variable Format	5-54
• Map Searching in WebVoyáge	5-54
Rectangle Searching	5-54
Customizing the Rectangle Search	5-56
Customizing All Map Search Pages	5-57
Polygon Searching	5-59
Point and Radius Searching	5-61
Corridor/Route Searching	5-64
Range Searching	5-68
Customizing the Range Search	5-68
Command Search	5-69
• Search History Page	5-70
Limiting a Search	5-73
Viewing Search Results	5-78
Simultaneous Searching	5-79
Heading List	5-81
Heading Browse List	5-85
Title List	5-89

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Record Display	5-99
• Saved Searches	5-106
Configuring Saved Searches	5-107
Enabling Saved Searches	5-108
Customizing the Search Queries Page	5-108
Customizing the Saved Searches buttons	5-109
Customizing the Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page	5-110
Customizing the Save Query button on the Patron Information page	5-111
Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI)	5-112
Configuring SDI	5-113
Enabling SDI	5-113
Configuring SDI options	5-113
Customizing the search results URL page sent to patrons by SDI	5-115
Customizing the help text for SDI	5-117
Using Saved Searches/SDI	5-117
Saving new search queries	5-118
Editing, running and deleting saved search queries	5-118
• Bookbag (Shopping Cart)	5-120
Bookbag Configuration	5-120
Customizing the Bookbag page	5-121
Customizing the Bookbag button on the Patron Information page	5-124
Customizing Bookbag features in Record Options box of the Search Results page	5-129
Customizing Bookbag messages	5-132
Using Bookbag	5-133
Saving a record to the Bookbag	5-134
Managing your Bookbag	5-135
• Saving, Printing and Emailing Information	5-140
Saving a Record	5-140
Printing a Record	5-142
Print Setup	5-144
Emailing a Record	5-144
Exiting WebVoyáge	5-146
Saving a record to your Bookbag (Optional)	5-146
• Bibliographic ID redirect to WebVoyáge	5-148

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

---

<b>6</b>	<b>Requests</b>	
•	Request Selection Page	6-1
	Placing Holds and Recalls	6-3
	Placing Call Slip Requests	6-7
	Placing Short Loan Requests	6-12
	Placing ARTEmail Requests	6-17
	Placing Remote Storage Requests	6-24
	Blank Request Form	6-27
	Bibliographic Level Request Form	6-30
	Item Level Request Form	6-34
	WebVoyage Universal Borrowing Request display notes	6-38
	Request Logout	6-38
<b>7</b>	<b>Patron Functions</b>	
•	Patron Login and Logoff	7-1
	Logging In	7-1
	Logging Off	7-3
•	PIN	7-3
	PIN configuration	7-3
	Enabling PINs	7-4
	Setting a default PIN	7-4
	Customizing the PIN field name on the Login page	7-11
	Customizing the Change PIN button on the Patron Information page	7-12
	Customizing the layout of the Change PIN screen	7-13
	Changing the PIN messages	7-16
	Using PINs	7-18
	Entering a PIN	7-19
•	Patron Information	7-21
	Personal Information	7-22
	Charged Items	7-23
	Patron Block Display	7-23
•	MyOPAC (Optional)	7-26
	MyOPAC Preferences	7-27

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

MyOPAC Preferences option retrieval	7-28
Configuring MyOPAC Preferences	7-29
Opac.ini configuration	7-30
Enabling MyOPAC Preferences	7-30
Enabling MyOPAC Preferences section(s)	7-30
Setting the name of MyOPAC Preferences in the Title Bar	7-33
Configuring the layout of the Preferences page	7-33
Customizing MyOPAC Preferences messages	7-37
Customizing the Preferences button on the Patron Information page	7-37
Customizing buttons/linked text on the WebVoyáge toolbars	7-38
Using MyOPAC Preferences	7-42
• Patron-Initiated Request	7-43
• Patron Self-Registration	7-44
Specifying the IP address and port number of the OPAC server	7-47
Customizing the Patron Self-Registration messages	7-48
Customizing the layout of, and required information on the Patron Self-Registration page	7-49
The patron.xml file	7-50
Changing the layout of the fields in the patron.xsl file	7-54
Patron Record Creation with Patron Self- Registration	7-57
Configuring Patron Self-Registration in System Administration	7-58
Adding a link to Patron Self-Registration from WebVoyáge	7-59
Adding a link to Patron Self-Registration from the Login page	7-59
• Status Patron Groups	7-60
Configuring Patron Groups to Display Charged Status	7-61
Configuring WebVoyáge to Display Charged Messages	7-61
• Patron Self-Renewal	7-63
Allowing Patrons to Self-Renew Items	7-64
• Renewal Options	7-64
The Renewal Options Drop-Down Box	7-65

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Renewal Option Button Configuration	7-66
Enabling the Renew All feature	7-67
Enabling the renew single items drop-down option	7-67
Editing the text of the Renew Single Items drop-down text	7-67
Text of the Renewal Button	7-67
Editing the Text of the Renew All Limit Message	7-67
• Request Information Section	7-68
Requests Pending	7-68
Items Available	7-70
Cancel Items Available	7-70
Fines and Fees	7-71
Customizing Patron Information	7-71

---

<b>A</b>	<b>Displaying additional information in WebVoyáge</b>	A-1
•	Overview	A-1
•	Displaying information on the Titles list screen	A-1
	Determining which column(s) to include on the page	A-2
	The header text of the column(s)	A-2
	Establishing the information displayed in the column	A-3
•	Syndetics Solutions Catalog Enrichment Support	A-6
	Configuring WebVoyáge for use with Syndetics Solutions Catalog Enrichment Support	A-7
	Adding information to the View Record page	A-9
	Label	A-9
	Format of images on the view record page	A-9
	Format of links to another page	A-10
	Data Elements and Filenames used by Syndetics Solutions	A-11
	Examples	A-12

---

## B Configuring WebVoyáge Bibliographic Record Linking Display

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**

See notice on first page

---

## Contents

B-1	
• Overview	B-1
Defining Record Relationships	B-2
Displaying Related Records	B-2
Maintaining Related Records	B-3
• Configuring Voyager for Bibliographic Record Linking	B-3
System Administration	B-3
WebVoyáge	B-3
Cataloging	B-4
• Configuring WebVoyáge for Bibliographic Record Linking	B-4
[View_Record_Page] Stanza	B-4
The [Max_Related_Records_Page] Stanza	B-8
Basic Record Display Customizing Information	B-12
DisplayN.cfg Files	B-12
Configuring the DisplayN.cfg file for Bibliographic Record Linking	B-15

---

IN

Index

IN-1

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---



## Contents

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Tables

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	
1-1.	WebVoyage Configuration Files	1-6
1-2.	The Pwebrecon.cgi parameters	1-6
1-3.	880 field format component description	1-15
1-4.	Primary field format component description	1-16
<b>2</b>	<b>WebVoyage Screens</b>	
2-1.	Page Appearance Variables	2-6
2-2.	Top and Bottom Toolbar Component Descriptions	2-9
2-3.	Button Functions	2-9
2-4.	The webvoy.htm image files	2-11
2-5.	Libinfo.htm Buttons List	2-13
2-6.	Remote.htm Buttons List	2-14
2-7.	Search Tab Configuration Stanzas	2-15
2-8.	Page Appearance Variables	2-16
2-9.	Simple Search Screen Configuration Reference	2-19
2-10.	Builder Search Screen Configuration Reference	2-25
2-11.	Course Reserve Search Screen Configuration Reference	2-32
2-12.	Geospatial Search Screen Configuration Reference	2-38
2-13.	Rectangle Search Dialog Configuration Reference	2-43
2-14.	Polygon Search Dialog Configuration Reference	2-44
2-15.	Point and Radius Search Dialog Configuration Reference	2-45
2-16.	Corridor/Route Search Dialog Configuration Reference	2-46
2-17.	Range Search Dialog Configuration Reference	2-47
2-18.	Limit Codes and Names	2-53
2-19.	Search Limits Buttons List	2-54
2-20.	Database Selection Buttons List	2-58
2-21.	Hotlink Variables	2-67
2-22.	Hotlink Variables	2-70
2-23.	Headings (Browse and non-) List Buttons List	2-71
2-24.	References/Scope Notes Buttons List	2-75
2-26.	Title List Buttons List	2-94
2-29.	Targets of Record Display Buttons	2-104
2-30.	Record Display Buttons List	2-109

---

## Tables

2-31. Request Selection Buttons List	2-113
2-32. Login Files	2-116
2-33. Patron Login Buttons List	2-116
2-34. Pending Requests variables	2-125
2-35. Patron Information Buttons List	2-127
2-36. Button Variables	2-131
2-37. Button Variables	2-136
2-38. Button Variables	2-142
2-39. Button Variables	2-146
2-40. Button Variables	2-150
2-41. Button Variables	2-155
2-42. Button Variables	2-159
2-43. Button Variables	2-163
2-44. Button Variables	2-167
2-45. Variables for the [NoHits_Redirect]stanza	2-169

---

## 3

### WebVoyage Configuration Files

3-1. Search Limit variable information	3-40
3-2. Login Type codes	3-47
3-3. List of indexes unavailable in Z39.50 searches	3-65
3-4. List of indexes available in Voyager simultaneous searches only	3-66
3-5. Top and Bottom Toolbar Component Descriptions	3-69
3-6. Toolbar Button Function Pages	3-70
3-7. Hotlink Variables	3-87
3-8. Course Reserve	3-95
3-9. General Page Variables	3-97
3-10. Hotlink Variables	3-104
3-11. [Mail_And_Requests] Stanza Variables	3-111
3-12. Substitution Tokens	3-123
3-13. Substitution Tokens	3-123
3-14. Substitution Tokens	3-124
3-15. Hotlink Variables	3-155
3-16. Hotlink Variables	3-155
3-17. Hotlink Variables	3-155
3-18. Error Messages	3-200

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Tables

3-19. Help Pages	3-203
3-20. Image Files	3-209
3-21. Punctuation	3-222
3-22. Configuration Files	3-223
3-23. New Syntax	3-224
3-24. Codes From System Administration	3-229

---

## 4 Displaying Information

4-1. WebVoyáge Display Directories	4-2
4-2. Database and Connection Types	4-3
4-3. Keyword Search Attribute Example	4-6
4-4. Left-Anchored Search Attributes	4-6
4-5. Default WebVoyáge Display Directories	4-13
4-6. Useful Z39.50 Search Codes	4-15

---

## 5 Searching in WebVoyáge

5-1. Initial WebVoyáge page buttons	5-2
5-8. Course Reserve Drop-Down Variables	5-25
5-9. Detailed [Course_Reserve_Alpha_Page] variable descriptions	5-33
5-10. Course Reserve Browse html block message detail	5-36
5-11. OpenURL Item Request opac.ini variables	5-47
5-12. RequestURI.cfg file components	5-48
5-13. MARC field parsing variables (meta-tags)	5-50
5-14. Parsing element descriptions	5-52
5-42. Components of the [Search_Queries_Page] stanza	5-109
5-43. Saved Searches Toolbar buttons	5-110
5-44. Components of the [SDI_Page] stanza	5-114
5-45. Components of the [Saved_Records_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file	5-123
5-46. Top Toolbar component descriptions	5-127
5-47. Top Toolbar component descriptions	5-129
5-48. Details of Bookbag-related variables	5-130

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Tables

---

7	<b>Patron Functions</b>	
7-1.	Variable settings	7-14
7-2.	User ID Message Files	7-16
7-3.	The three user ID type and their corresponding HTML files	7-16
7-4.	MyOPAC Features	7-26
7-5.	MyOPAC preferences option retrieval	7-28
7-6.	Components of the [Preferences_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file	7-34
7-7.	Top Toolbar component descriptions	7-40
7-8.	Top Toolbar component descriptions	7-42
7-9.	Patron Self-Registration files	7-49
7-10.	Field element variable descriptions	7-53
7-11.	Idtype element option details	7-54
7-12.	Circulation Policy Field Descriptions	7-58
7-13.	Standard substitution tokens	7-62
7-14.	Patron Block Information-specific tokens	7-63
7-15.	Renewal Options Matrix	7-65
7-16.	Status Descriptions	7-68

---

## A Displaying additional information in WebVoyáge

---

A-1.	Data elements and filenames	A-11
------	-----------------------------	------

---

## B Configuring WebVoyáge Bibliographic Record Linking Display

---

B-1.	Related records variables in the [View_Record_Page] stanza	B-5
B-2.	[Max_Related_Records_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file	B-9
B-3.	Example of codes available for display configuration files	B-13

---

## Figures

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	
1-1.	WebVoyáge Directory structure	1-2
1-2.	The -s, -c, and -t parameters in the Pwebrecon.cgi	1-7
1-3.	Alternate Graphic Representation Display Example	1-13
1-4.	Sample linked 800 field in MARC record	1-15
1-5.	Sample 245 field in MARC record	1-16
1-6.	Sample View_Record_Page stanza	1-17
1-7.	Sample record display with 880s=Y	1-17
1-8.	Sample display1.cfg	1-18
1-9.	Sample MARC record	1-19
1-10.	Sample View_Record_Page stanza	1-19
1-11.	Sample record display with Link880s=N	1-20
<b>2</b>	<b>WebVoyáge Screens</b>	
2-1.	Toolbar Excerpt (buttons)	2-7
2-2.	Toolbar Excerpt (text)	2-7
2-3.	Details of the [Toolbar_Top] stanza	2-8
2-4.	Webvoy.htm Page	2-11
2-5.	Libinfo.htm Page	2-12
2-6.	Remote.htm Page	2-14
2-7.	Simple Search Screen	2-18
2-8.	Sample [Combined_Search_Page] stanza	2-22
2-9.	Search Type Style 1 (default)	2-23
2-10.	Search Type Style 2 (SearchTypeStyle=2)	2-24
2-11.	Search Type Style 3 (SearchTypeStyle=3)	2-24
2-12.	Builder Search Screen	2-25
2-13.	Sample [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza	2-30
2-14.	Course Reserve Search Screen (drop-down interface)	2-32
2-15.	Sample [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza	2-35
2-16.	Geospatial (Map) Search Screen	2-37
2-17.	Rectangle Search dialog box	2-42
2-18.	Polygon Search dialog box	2-43
2-19.	Point and Radius Search dialog box	2-45
2-20.	Corridor/Route Search dialog box	2-46

---

## Figures

2-21. Range Search dialog box	2-47
2-22. Sample [Combined_Search_Page] stanza	2-49
2-23. Sample Language Limits Stanza	2-51
2-24. Limits Screen	2-52
2-25. Limit Definition Stanza	2-53
2-26. Patron Information Screen	2-118
2-27. Call Slip Request Buttons List	2-131
2-28. NoHits_Redirect stanza	2-169
2-29. Search Redirect Button ... "Search Via UC"	2-170
2-30. Holdings Jumpbar variables	2-170
2-31. Holdings Jump Bar Feature	2-171
2-32. Library Information	2-172
2-33. Remote Libraries	2-173

---

## 3

### WebVoyage Configuration Files

3-1. Sample Stanza	3-2
3-2. Structure of WebVoyage-related Directories on the Server	3-3
3-3. Sample Stanza	3-4
3-4. WebVoyage Title level search results - thumbnails displayed in the far right column	3-7
3-5. An item's Holdings information displayed in WebVoyage, including the "Not Charged" item status	3-15
3-6. Example of the [Item Statuses] stanza in the opac.ini file	3-16
3-7. Map-Related Limits on Search Limits Page	3-34
3-8. Options Stanza of the opac.ini File	3-45
3-9. Patron Login Types drop-down box	3-46
3-10. A sample [Login Types] stanza	3-47
3-11. Enter Your Email Address dialog box	3-48
3-12. An item's Holdings information displayed in WebVoyage, including the "Received Complete" order status	3-52
3-13. Example of the [Order Statuses] stanza in the opac.ini file	3-52
3-14. Search Dialog Stanza of the opac.ini File	3-54

---

## Figures

3-15. Sample DefaultLocationLimit variable	3-56
3-16. Search results	3-56
3-17. Advanced Search Limits page	3-57
3-18. Location Limit in Quick Limits drop-down	3-58
3-19. Corresponding [Simple_Limits] stanza in limits.ini	3-58
3-20. Default Simultaneous Search search.ini file	3-64
3-21. Toolbar Excerpt (buttons)	3-67
3-22. Toolbar Excerpt (linked text)	3-67
3-23. Details of the [Toolbar_Top] stanza	3-68
3-24. Example of a Jump Bar	3-73
3-25. Example of a Title Bar	3-75
3-26. Example of Boolean Search Page	3-81
3-27. Example of a Browse Page	3-86
3-28. Search Type Style 0 (SearchTypeStyle=0)	3-93
3-29. Search Type Style 1 (SearchTypeStyle=1)	3-93
3-30. Search Type Style 2 (SearchTypeStyle=2)	3-94
3-31. Search Type Style 3 (SearchTypeStyle=3)	3-94
3-32. Example of Course Reserve Search Page	3-98
3-33. Example of Headings Page	3-102
3-34. Record Options box (on records results page)	3-110
3-35. Default [Mail_And_Requests] stanza	3-110
3-36. Sample formats.ini file	3-113
3-37. Download format drop-down list in the Record Options box	3-114
3-38. Default save2.cfg (brief record) file	3-116
3-39. Record formatted based on save2.cfg (brief record) file	3-117
3-40. Patron Information window in WebVoyáge	3-118
3-41. [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file	3-119
3-42. Patron Information window - Charged Items section	3-125
3-43. Patron Information window in WebVoyáge: Call Slip request statuses displayed	3-132
3-44. [CallSlipStatusCodes] stanza of the opac.ini file	3-132
3-45. Sample [Request_Dialog] Stanza	3-135
3-46. Example of blank form request in WebVoyáge (GETME)	3-136
3-47. Example of a bib level request, including Bib Info field	3-138
3-48. Example of Request Select Page	3-144
3-49. Example of Short Loan Request Page	3-145
3-50. Example of Search History Page	3-147

---

## Figures

3-51. Connect.ini file as Distributed	3-179
3-52. Display of default connect.ini in WebVoyáge	3-180
3-53. Sample [Folders] stanza	3-181
3-54. Set Name stanzas added to connect.ini	3-181
3-55. Database information in Database Definitions	3-182
3-56. Sample entry in a Set Name stanza	3-183
3-57. Result of database entry in Set Name stanza	3-183
3-58. Sample database added	3-184
3-59. Result of adding database to stanza	3-185
3-60. Sample location stanza	3-186
3-61. Sample directory in /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage	3-187
3-62. Sample config variable in location stanza	3-187
3-63. Sample group code in a Set Name stanza	3-188
3-64. Sample group location stanza	3-189
3-65. Sample group location variables	3-190
3-66. Sample list location stanza	3-191
3-67. Sample list location stanza	3-192
3-68. Group name included on Database Selection screen	3-193
3-69. Limits Screen	3-197
3-70. Sample Map-Related Stanzas of the LIMITS.INI File	3-198
3-71. Sample Map-Related Search Limits Display	3-199
3-72. Callslipmsg_CODE.htm message file	3-205
3-73. Sample message without HTML formatting tags	3-206
3-74. Sample message containing HTML formatting tags	3-207
3-75. Sample DISPLAY.INI file	3-216
3-76. Sample display.cfg File	3-219
3-77. Sample display.cfg File (hypertext links)	3-220
3-78. Sample 650 line	3-225
3-79. Sample 650a and 650x in record	3-225
3-80. Sample corresponding 650 in WebVoyáge display	3-225
3-81. Sample search.ini File	3-233

---

## 4

## Displaying Information

4-1. Connection Options in the Database Screen of WebVoyáge	4-7
4-2. Simultaneous Search De-Duplication Profile	4-9

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Figures

4-3.	WebVoyáge Search Status	4-9
4-4.	WebVoyáge Display-Hook to Holdings	4-11
4-5.	A Sample [Simple_Search_Codes] Stanza	4-16

---

## 5

### Searching in WebVoyáge

5-1.	WebVoyáge Initial Page	5-2
5-2.	Database Page	5-3
5-3.	Patron Login page	5-5
5-4.	WebVoyáge Search Type Buttons	5-8
5-5.	Simple Search Page	5-8
5-6.	Builder Search page	5-13
5-7.	Two Builder Searches on the History page, selected for a combined builder search	5-17
5-8.	Results of the combined builder search in Figure 5-7	5-18
5-9.	Combined builder search as a separate search on History Page	5-19
5-10.	Search term box added to a combined builder search when editing	5-20
5-11.	Default [Search_History_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file	5-21
5-12.	Search History page with Combined Searches enabled	5-22
5-13.	Default [Search Dialog] stanza	5-23
5-14.	Course Reserve Search page (Drop-Down style)	5-24
5-15.	Sample [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza	5-26
5-16.	Corresponding Course Reserve screen	5-26
5-17.	Course Reserve Alphabetical List page (Browse style)	5-28
5-18.	Course Reserve Browse Locations page	5-29
5-19.	Course Reserve Browse detail list screen (Course)	5-30
5-20.	Course Reserve Location screen	5-31
5-21.	Course_Reserve_Location_Page stanza	5-32
5-22.	Sample [Course_Reserve_Alpha_Page] stanza	5-33
5-23.	Sample [Course_Reserve_Instructor_Page] stanza	5-35
5-24.	Sample [Course_Reserve_Course_Page] stanza	5-35
5-25.	Sample [Course_Reserve_Department_Page] stanza	5-36
5-26.	Sample LinkFinderButton and LinkFinderServer variables in the [View_Record_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file	5-40

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Figures

5-27. LinkFinder button with mouse-over text (as set in the opac.ini file)	5-40
5-28. Variables in a database stanza in the linkfinder.cfg file	5-41
5-29. Sample database stanza in the linkfinder.cfg file	5-42
5-30. MARC information of record parsed by <a href="#">Figure 5-29</a>	5-45
5-31. Sample RequestURI.cfg file	5-47
5-32. Map Searching - Rectangle Search Page	5-55
5-33. Area Defined in a Polygonal Search	5-59
5-34. Map Searching - Point and Radius Search Page	5-62
5-35. Area Defined in a Corridor Search	5-65
5-36. Map Searching - Corridor/Route Search Page	5-66
5-37. Search History Page	5-70
5-38. Limits Page	5-74
5-39. Simultaneous Search Page	5-79
5-40. Heading List Page	5-82
5-41. Reference Information page	5-83
5-42. Heading Browse List Page	5-86
5-43. Reference Information page	5-87
5-44. Title List page	5-89
5-45. Basic Title List	5-91
5-46. Keyword Title List	5-93
5-47. Record Display - Holdings tab	5-100
5-48. Record Display - Bibliographic tab	5-101
5-49. Record Display - Table of Contents tab	5-101
5-50. Record Display - Linked Resources tab	5-102
5-51. Record Display - MARC Format tab (partial)	5-103
5-52. Sample Search Queries page (without SDI enabled)	5-107
5-53. Sample Search Queries page (with SDI enabled)	5-107
5-54. Default [Search_Questions_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file	5-108
5-55. Default [Search_Questions_Page] stanza	5-109
5-56. Sample Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page	5-111
5-57. Sample Save Query button on the Patron Information page	5-112
5-58. The default [SDI_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file	5-114
5-59. Default sdiemail.ini file	5-116
5-60. Sample e-mail containing url pointing to Saved Search results	5-117

---

## Figures

5-61. Sample Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page	5-118
5-62. Clicking the hyperlinked text in the Searched For (or the Search Type)	5-119
5-63. Results of the saved search from Figure 5-62.	5-119
5-64. Sample Bookbag page	5-122
5-65. Sample [Saved_Records_Page] stanza	5-123
5-66. Sample Bookbag button on the Patron Information page	5-125
5-67. Details of the [Toolbar_Top] stanza	5-126
5-68. Details of the [Toolbar_Bottom] stanza	5-128
5-69. Record Options box	5-130
5-70. Default [Mail_And_Requests] stanza	5-130
5-71. Example Contents of Bookbag email.	5-132
5-72. Default [Bookbag_Messages] stanza	5-133
5-73. Bookbag variable	5-133
5-74. Sample Search Results screen with records checked to be saved to Bookbag	5-134
5-75. # records have been added to the Bookbag message	5-135
5-76. Bookbag button on Top Toolbar	5-135
5-77. Bookbag linked text in Bottom Toolbar	5-135
5-78. Six records in a patron's Bookbag	5-136
5-79. Bookbag screen invoked when your Bookbag is empty	5-137
5-80. Record Options box on the Bookbag screen	5-137
5-81. Contents of Bookbag in the Full Record format	5-139
5-82. Record Options box	5-140
5-83. Sample Search Results screen with records checked to be saved to Bookbag	5-147
5-84. The default RedirectURL variable	5-148

---

## 6

## Requests

6-1. Request Selection Page	6-1
6-2. Request Selection Page	6-4
6-3. Hold Page	6-5
6-4. Recall Page	6-5
6-5. Request Selection Page	6-9
6-6. Call Slip Request Page	6-10

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Figures

6-7.	Request Selection Page	6-13
6-8.	Short Loan Request page	6-14
6-9.	Request Selection Page	6-18
6-10.	ILL Email Loan Request page	6-18
6-11.	ILL email Photocopy page	6-19
6-12.	Request Selection Page	6-25
6-13.	Remote Storage Request page	6-25
6-14.	Sample Blank Request Form	6-28
6-15.	Request Selection Page	6-31
6-16.	Bibliographic Level Request Form	6-32
6-17.	Request Selection Page	6-35
6-18.	Item Level Request Form	6-36

---

## 7

### Patron Functions

7-1.	Patron Login page	7-2
7-2.	Default UsePIN variable in the [Options] stanza	7-4
7-3.	Default DefaultPIN variable in the [Options] stanza	7-4
7-4.	Update PINs check box in the Circulation Profile Definition section of System Administration (highlighted)	7-6
7-5.	Circulation module introduction screen	7-7
7-6.	Patron Search dialog box in the Circulation module	7-8
7-7.	Change Patron PIN option in the Patron Menu in the Circulation Module	7-9
7-8.	Change Patron PIN dialog box	7-10
7-9.	PINs do not match error message in the Circulation Module	7-11
7-10.	Example of the PIN field name set in the [Logon_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file	7-11
7-11.	Example of the PIN field name displaying in the Login page (as set in Figure 7-10)	7-12
7-12.	Example of the ChangePIN button displaying on the Patron Information page	7-13
7-13.	Sample [Change_PIN] stanza of the opac.ini file	7-14
7-14.	PIN messages configured in the [Pin_Messages] stanza of the opac.ini file	7-16
7-15.	Default patronmsg.htm file	7-17

---

## Figures

7-16. Error message generated by the patronmsg.htm file	7-17
7-17. Customized patronmsg.htm file	7-18
7-18. Error message generated by the customized patronmsg.htm file in Figure 7-17	7-18
7-19. Example of the PIN field on the Login screen	7-19
7-20. Example of the Change PIN button on the Patron Information screen	7-20
7-21. Close-up of the Change PIN section of the Change PIN screen	7-21
7-22. Patron Information Page	7-22
7-23. Patron Information - Personal Information Section	7-22
7-24. Patron Information - Charged Items Section	7-23
7-25. Patron Block Information	7-24
7-26. Patron Blocks section of the opac.ini	7-26
7-27. Sample Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage	7-29
7-28. Default [Preferences] stanza in the opac.ini file	7-30
7-29. Sample Search Type section of Search Preferences screen	7-31
7-30. Sample Records per page section of Search Preferences screen	7-32
7-31. Sample Databases section of Search Preferences screen	7-32
7-32. MyOPAC variable	7-33
7-33. The [Preferences_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file	7-34
7-34. Default [MyOPAC Messages] stanza	7-37
7-35. Sample Preferences button on the Patron Information page	7-38
7-36. Details of the [Toolbar_Top] stanza	7-39
7-37. Details of the [Toolbar_Bottom] stanza	7-41
7-38. Default Patron Self-Registration page	7-45
7-39. Patron information successful message	7-46
7-40. Page expired message after clicking Back button	7-47
7-41. Default voytomcat.ini file	7-48
7-42. Message3 display	7-49
7-43. Default patron.xml file	7-53
7-44. Default Other Phone field	7-54
7-45. Revised Other Phone field	7-54
7-46. Page field element tag format	7-55
7-47. Table specification section of patron.xsl file	7-55

---

## Figures

7-48. Sample patron information in Patron Self-Registration page	7-57
7-49. Patron record in Voyager Circulation Module	7-58
7-50. The logonmsg.htm file with link	7-59
7-51. Link to Patron Self-Registration on the Login page	7-60
7-52. Status Patron Group message format	7-61
7-53. Sample Message Text in [Title_Page] stanza	7-62
7-54. Sample Message Text in [View_Record_Page]	7-62
7-55. Sample Substitution tokens in Message Text	7-63
7-56. Renewal Button and Drop-Down Box	7-65
7-57. Renew Items Drop-Down	7-66
7-58. Sample Renew All Variables	7-66
7-59. Requests Pending Section	7-68
7-60. Requests Pending Page - After Canceling Requests	7-69
7-61. Items Available Section	7-70
7-62. Items Available Section	7-71
7-63. Fines and Fees Section	7-71

---

## A

### Displaying additional information in WebVoyage

A-1. ISBN column heading on Titles List page	A-3
A-2. Sample left column display variables	A-4
A-3. Display of left column on Titles List page	A-4
A-4. Sample format display variables	A-5
A-5. Sample Bib Format display	A-6
A-6. Sample cover thumbnail image	A-8
A-7. Excerpt of [Title_Page] stanza	A-8
A-8. Sample Table of Contents link	A-12
A-9. Sample large cover image	A-13
A-10. Sample error message	A-14

---

## B

### Configuring WebVoyage Bibliographic Record Linking Display

B-1. Related records variables in the [View_Record_Page] stanza	B-5
---	-----

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Figures

B-2. Related records display in WebVoyáge	B-7
B-3. Maximum related record display in WebVoyáge	B-7
B-4. [Max_Related_Records_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file	B-8
B-5. Maximum related records display in WebVoyáge	B-11
B-6. Example of a search redirect in displayn.cdf file	B-14
B-7. Sample DisplayN.cfg File	B-15
B-8. Linked records section of display1.cfg file	B-17
B-9. Example of a display1.cfg file for multiple bib linking profiles	B-18
B-10. WebVoyáge display for multiple bib linking profiles	B-18

---

## Figures

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Procedures

---

<b>1</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	
1-1.	Setting a Default Server	1-8
1-2.	Installing on Another Machine	1-10
<b>2</b>	<b>WebVoyáge Screens</b>	
2-1.	Using the Search Page as the initial page	2-4
<b>3</b>	<b>WebVoyáge Configuration Files</b>	
3-1.	Modifying a saveX.cfg file	3-115
3-2.	Specifying a custom display directory for a database	3-186
3-3.	Using a Location Stanza to Group Search Locations	3-188
3-4.	Creating a Message	3-206
3-5.	Editing a Configuration File for Punctuation	3-229
<b>5</b>	<b>Searching in WebVoyáge</b>	
5-1.	Selecting a Database	5-4
5-2.	Performing a Simple Search	5-9
5-3.	Performing a Builder Search	5-13
5-4.	Performing a Combined Builder Search	5-17
5-5.	Performing a Course Reserve Search	5-24
5-6.	Performing a Course Reserve Browse	5-28
5-7.	Performing a Rectangle Search	5-55
5-8.	Searching on a Polygon area	5-59
5-9.	Searching on a Circular Area	5-61
5-10.	Performing a Command Line Search	5-70
5-11.	Re-Executing a Previous Search	5-71
5-12.	Editing and Executing a Previous Search	5-71
5-13.	Customizing the List of Locations	5-74

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Procedures

---

<b>6</b>	<b>Requests</b>	
6-1.	Placing a hold or recall request	6-3
6-2.	Placing a Callslip Request	6-8
6-3.	Placing a Short Loan Request	6-13
6-4.	Placing an ARTEmail Request	6-17
6-5.	Placing a Remote Storage Request	6-24
<b>7</b>	<b>Patron Functions</b>	
7-1.	Logging in	7-1
7-2.	Giving staff users permission to change PINs	7-5
7-3.	Changing PINs in the Circulation module	7-6
7-4.	Changing a PIN from WebVoyáge	7-19
<b>A</b>	<b>Displaying additional information in WebVoyáge</b>	
A-1.	Adding small cover images to the Titles List by editing the [Title_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file	A-7
<b>B</b>	<b>Configuring WebVoyáge Bibliographic Record Linking Display</b>	
B-1.	Choosing a Displayn.cfg file	B-16

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## About This Document

---

### Purpose

---

This document provides instructions for configuring Voyager's Online Public Access Catalog software, WebVoyage.

### Intended Audience

---

This document is intended for Voyager customers using Voyager's Online Public Access Catalog interface (WebVoyage).

### Reason for Reissue

---

- New functionality included for Voyager Unicode release, including:
  - Course Reserve Browse Interface ([Course Reserve Browse interface on page 5-27](#))
  - Glyph Server documentation removed. Replaced by new Voyager with Unicode display features ([Displaying Unicode characters on page 1-11](#))
  - Viewing alternate graphic representations in WebVoyage feature added ([Displaying Alternate Graphic Representations on the View Record Pages on page 1-12](#))

- 
- Added Temporary Location Display code (1005) to documentation ([Temporary Location Display on page 3-231](#))
  - Bibliographic ID Redirect to WebVoyage ([Bibliographic ID redirect to WebVoyage on page 5-148](#))
  - Renew All option ([Renewal Options on page 7-64](#))
  - OpenURL-formatted Item Requests ([OpenURL Item requests on page 5-46](#))
  - EmailAddress element added to the patron.xml file (and corresponding entry added to the patron.xsl file). This gives you the ability to include an email field on the Patron Self-Registration page. See [Patron Self-Registration on page 7-44](#). Note that the Patron Self Registration files may change after this document is released.
  - New variables added to the opac.ini file:
    - [Saved\_Records\_Page]  
ClearBookbagConfirm=Clearing the bookbag deletes all records. Do you want to proceed?
    - [Title\_Bar]  
Bookbag= View My Bookbag
    - [Patron\_Info\_Page]  
Bookbag\_Button\_Alt\_Text=My Bookbag  
SavedSearches\_Button\_Alt\_Text=SavedQueries  
Preferences\_Button\_Alt\_Text=MyPreferences
    - [Preferences\_Page]  
SubmitButton=Save My Preferences  
ClearButton=Clear My Preferences  
ClearPreferencesConfirm=Clearing the Preferences will clear all the preferences. Would you like to proceed?
    - [MyOPAC\_Messages]  
NoDatabase=There are no databases defined!
    - [Change\_PIN]  
SubmitButton=SavePIN
    - [Boolean\_Search\_Page]  
AND=And  
OR=Or  
NOT=Not

- Revisions
  - The [CallSlipStatusCodes] code **3** changed in the opac.ini, to accommodate the new 'Reassigned' call slip status. This code replaces the old "3" code which was not functional prior to Voyager 2003.1. ([3= on page 3-133.](#))
  - Syndetics Solutions URL format revised/updated ([Syndetics Solutions Catalog Enrichment Support](#) on [page A-6](#))
  - The location of the RequestURI.cfg file has moved to /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage.
  - Label option added to the [Adding information to the View Record page](#) section (see [Label](#) on [page A-9](#)).

## How to Use This Document

---

This document consists of the following:

Chapter 1	<a href="#">“Getting Started”</a> Chapter 1 provides an overview of WebVoyáge, as well as server set up.
Chapter 2	<a href="#">“WebVoyáge Screens”</a> Chapter 2 details the WebVoyáge screens.
Chapter 3	<a href="#">“WebVoyáge Configuration Files”</a> Chapter 3 details the configuration files that create, and are used by, WebVoyáge.
Chapter 4	<a href="#">“Displaying Information”</a> Chapter 4 details the displaying and viewing of information in WebVoyáge.
Chapter 5	<a href="#">“Searching in WebVoyáge”</a> Chapter 5 details the searching in WebVoyáge.
Chapter 6	<a href="#">“Requests”</a> Chapter 6 details configuring and placing requests.
Chapter 7	<a href="#">“Patron Functions”</a> Chapter 7 details functions directly related to Patron records and information.
Appendix A	<a href="#">Displaying additional information in WebVoyáge</a> , including Syndetics Solutions™-related configuration.
Index	The Index is an alphabetical, detailed cross-reference of topics about which this document contains information.

---

## **Conventions Used in This Document**

---

The following conventions are used throughout this document:

- Names of commands, variables, stanzas, files, and paths (such as `/dev/tmp`), as well as selectors and typed user input, are displayed in **constant width type**.
- Commands or other keyboard input that must be typed exactly as presented are displayed in **constant width bold type**.
- Commands or other keyboard input that must be supplied by the user are displayed in **constant width bold italic type**.
- System-generated responses such as error messages are displayed in **constant width type**.
- Variable *portions* of system-generated responses are displayed in **constant width italic type**.
- Keyboard commands (such as **Ctrl** and **Enter**) are displayed in **bold**.
- Required keyboard input such as “Enter **vi**” is displayed in **constant width bold type**.
- Place holders for variable portions of user-defined input such as `ls -l filename` are displayed in **italicized constant width bold type**.
- The names of menus or status display pages and required selections from menus or status display pages such as “From the **Applications** drop-down menu, select **System-wide**,” are displayed in **bold type**.
- Object names on a window’s interface, such as the **Description** field, the **OK** button, and the **Metadata** tab, are displayed in **bold type**.
- The titles of documents such as *ENCompass Web Client User’s Guide* are displayed in *italic type*.
- Caution, and important notices are displayed with a distinctive label such as the following:

**NOTE:**

Extra information pertinent to the topic.



**IMPORTANT:**

*Information you should consider before making a decision or configuration.*



**CAUTION:**

*Information you must consider before making a decision, due to potential loss of data or system malfunction involved.*



**TIP:**

*Helpful hints you might want to consider before making a decision.*

**RECOMMENDED:**

*Preferred course of action.*

**OPTIONAL:**

*Indicates course of action which is not required, but may be taken to suit your library's preferences or requirements.*

## Contact Information

---

To contact Endeavor Information Systems, Inc. use the following numbers:

**North America (Corporate Headquarters)**

Endeavor Information Systems Inc.  
1350 E. Touhy Avenue  
Suite 200 East  
Des Plaines, IL 60018  
United States

800-762-6300 (toll free from within N. America only)  
[info@endinfosys.com](mailto:info@endinfosys.com)

**International Customers**  
Phone: 800-4444-3474

You must first dial the US access code (for example, 00 for the United Kingdom and New Zealand, 0011 for Australia), then the number listed above. You do not need to put a 1 in front of the 800 number.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

### **European Office**

Endeavor Information Systems Inc.  
Harcourt Place  
32 Jamestown Road,  
Camden  
London NW1 7BY  
  
+44 (0)20 7424 4400 (Voice)  
+44 (0)20 7424 4409 (Fax)  
[info.europe@endinfosys.com](mailto:info.europe@endinfosys.com) (E-Mail)

### **Australian Office**

Endeavor Information Systems Inc.  
Suite 129, 85 Grattan Street  
Carlton, Vic. 3053  
Australia

08 8336 9474 (Voice- from within Australia)  
+61 8 8336 9474 (Voice- from outside Australia)  
+61 3 9349 4099 (Fax)  
[info.austnz@endinfosys.com](mailto:info.austnz@endinfosys.com) (E-Mail)

## **Document Reproduction/Photocopying**

Photocopying the documentation is allowed under your contract with Endeavor Information Systems. It is stated below:

All documentation is subject to U.S. copyright protection. CUSTOMER may copy the printed documentation only in reasonable quantities to aid the employees in their use of the SOFTWARE. Limited portions of documentation, relating only to the public access catalog, may be copied for use in patron instruction.

## **How to Comment on This Document**

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc. (EISI) has made every effort to ensure that this information product meets your needs. EISI is interested in your comments and suggestions to improve this information product. You may submit comments and suggestions on this and other EISI information and training products by way of:

- e-mail

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

- fax

### **To Submit Comments by E-mail**

---

To submit comments by e-mail, please send your message to:  
[docmanager@endinfosys.com](mailto:docmanager@endinfosys.com)

### **To Submit Comments by Fax**

---

Please send feedback by fax (with cover) to the following:

**From within the United States of America:**  
847-296-5636  
Attn: Documentation Manager

## **Customer Support Contact Information**

The Endeavor Information Systems, Inc. Customer Support department provides technical assistance for all products. You may contact Customer Support by phone, e-mail, or fax.

### **Phone**

To contact Customer Support by telephone please call:

**From the United States and Canada:**

877-44-LLOYD (877-445-5693)

**From all other countries:**

800-4444-3474

You must first dial the US access code (for example, 00 for the United Kingdom and New Zealand, 0011 for Australia), then the number listed above. You do not need to put a 1 in front of the 800 number.

### **E-mail**

To contact Customer Support by e-mail, please send your message to:

[support@endinfosys.com](mailto:support@endinfosys.com)

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## **Fax**

---

To send a fax (with cover) to Customer Support, dial (from within the United States of America):

847-227-2676

---

## **Customer Support Hours of Operation**

---

Monday - Friday

5am - 9pm, Central Daylight Time

### **Introduction**

---

This chapter describes the prerequisite installations and basic information for beginning work the Voyager WebVoyáge online public access catalog.

### **Purpose of this Chapter**

---

The purpose of this chapter is to provide general directions for:

- Installing WebVoyáge
- Preparing Your Web Server
- Preparing Your WebVoyáge Files
- Allowing Access to WebVoyáge
- Installing on another machine

### **Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge**

---

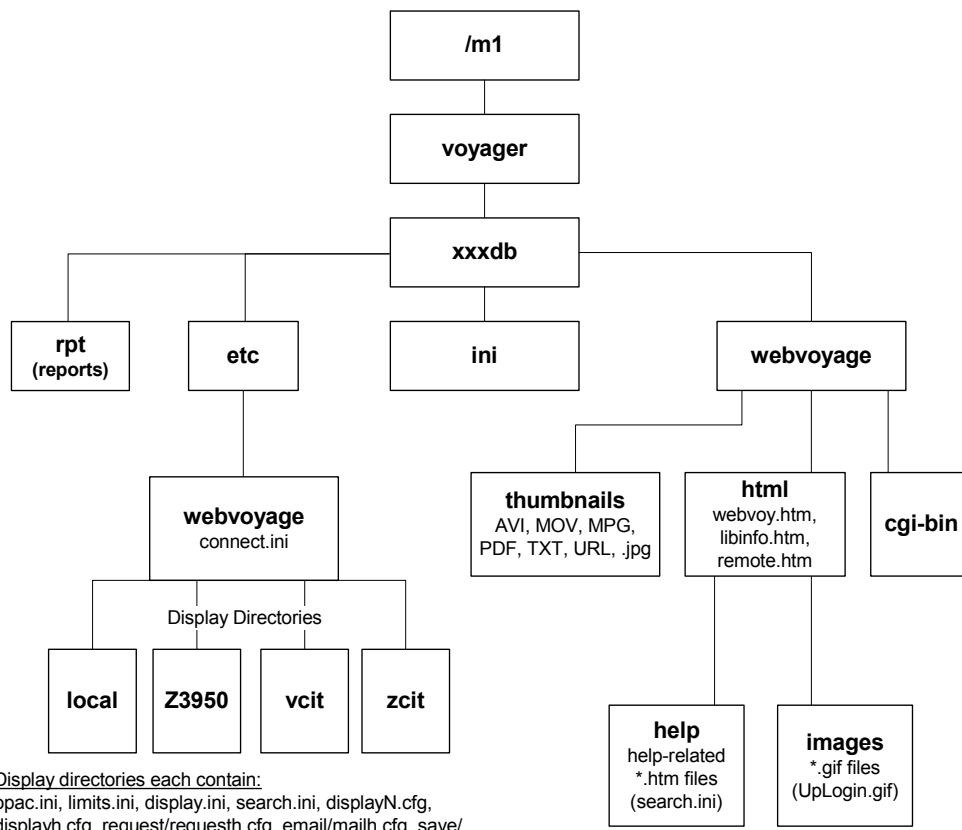
To use this document effectively, you need knowledge of the following:

- Basic Microsoft® Interface navigation
- Basic UNIX® commands and navigation
- Basic Voyager System Administration Module

- Basic WebVoyage configuration
- Intermediate knowledge of MARC record formats (for creating customized WebVoyage display directories, and editing some configuration files)

## WebVoyage directory structure

[Figure 1-1 on page 1-2](#) shows the basic default directory structure of the main WebVoyage directories.



**Figure 1-1. WebVoyage Directory structure**

## Installing WebVoyáge

---

Installing WebVoyáge requires some prior web server setup. That set up is detailed in the following sections.

### Prepare Your Web Server

---



#### IMPORTANT:

*Because of the variety of Web Servers available and the differences in how they are configured, specific setup instructions may vary. For purposes of consistency, the following instructions will be for an Apache Web Server installed under the /usr/local/apache directory. WebVoyáge is developed for use with Apache Web Servers.*

For the equivalent configuration of your Web Server, please refer to its documentation.

Also, if you use multiple or split servers (separate servers for the web server and the database server, for example) you must keep track of and account for the location of the various programs and files on these servers, when referencing them in configuration files.

### Define the Web Server's Port

Web Servers, by default, run on port 80. If you are running multiple Web Servers (to handle multiple Voyager databases on the same server, for example) using port-based virtual hosts, you must run them on different ports. You can specify the port on which you want your Web Server to run by editing the `Port` entry in: `/usr/local/apache/conf/httpd.conf`

Example:

`Port 80`

For more information about setting up virtual hosts see your server's documentation, (for virtual hosts on an Apache server, see <http://www.Apache.org>).

### Define the Web Server's Document Root or Script

#### Alias

To use WebVoyáge you first need to have a Web Server properly set up and running. The two components to configure a web server are:

- 
- Setting up a Document Root
  - Setting up a Script Alias

## Document Root

Web Servers need to know the location of the root directory for their HTML files. This directory is referred to as the Web Server's Document Root. You can specify the path for the Document Root by editing the `DocumentRoot` entry in:  
`/usr/local/apache/conf/httpd.conf`

Example:

```
DocumentRoot /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html
```

## Script Alias

A Script Alias can be thought of as setting up a virtual directory so that you will not reveal your file system to your patrons. Since you map to this virtual directory, the patron will only see the IP address and the cgi-bin directory.

### NOTE:

Your web server should have a path aliased to the cgi-bin directory.

For example, in Apache you would add to the `httpd.conf` file in `/usr/local/apache/conf/`:

```
ScriptAlias /cgi-bin/ /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin
```

The request will be made for:

```
http://www.sample.edu/cgi-bin/Pwebrecon.cgi
```

The web server will know to look for:

```
/m1/voyager/webvoyage/xxxdb/cgi-bin/Pwebrecon.cgi
```

## Define the Web Server's Directory Index

Web Servers use an index file in order to display a default web page. Usually, this is set to either `index.html` or `default.html`. You can specify multiple files that will come up as a default page, ranked by the order, in the `DirectoryIndex` entry. In order for the Web Server to load WebVoyage's default introduction page, you must add `webvoy.htm` to the `DirectoryIndex` entry in:  
`/usr/local/apache/conf/httpd.conf`

Example:

```
DirectoryIndex webvoy.htm index.html
```

### **Copy the WebVoyage Files into the Appropriate Directories**

WebVoyage's cgi-bin, html, help, and image files must reside within the directories specified in your Web Server's configuration files in order to function. At installation and upgrades of the Voyager software, these files are placed under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage in the following directories respectively:

- /cgi-bin
- /html
- /html/help
- /html/images

You may specify the /html and /cgi-bin directories in the configuration files (as shown in "Define the Web Server's Document Root or Script Alias" on page 3).

### **Check the Permissions on Your Files**

All WebVoyage files must have appropriate permissions in order to be used by the Web Server. You can set your permissions correctly by using the chmod command. In the cgi-bin directory, issue the following three commands:

```
chmod 755 Pwebrecon.cgi WebVoyage.cgi webrecon.exe  
chmod 644 *.ini  
chmod 644 *.cfg
```

This will give the owning user read/write/execute permissions on the program files and read/write permissions on the ini and cfg files, and give everyone else read/execute permissions on the program files and read permissions on the ini files.

Next, change to the html directory and issue the following command:

```
chmod -R 644 *
```

This will give the owning user read/write permissions and everyone else read permissions on all HTML and image files in the /html, /help, and /image directories.

---

## Prepare Your WebVoyáge Files

---

The following files are contained within the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin` directory:

**Table 1-1. WebVoyáge Configuration Files**

FILE	DESCRIPTION	USER EDIT?
Pwebrecon.cgi	script that launches webrecon.exe with the necessary parameters.	May have to edit this file.
WebVoyáge.cgi	WebVoyáge program.	Cannot edit this file.
webrecon.exe	program that provides the connection.	Cannot edit this file.
webrecon.ini	file that is only used by Endeavor for troubleshooting.	Used by EISI for troubleshooting.
WebVoyáge.ini	initialization file that provides information about the files necessary to run WebVoyáge.	Must edit this file for WebVoyáge to work.

### Check the Pwebrecon.cgi File

Pwebrecon.cgi is a script that starts webrecon.exe and has the following parameters:

**Table 1-2. The Pwebrecon.cgi parameters**

Parameter	Specifies
-s	The absolute path to WebVoyáge.cgi
-c	The absolute path to webrecon.ini
-t	The absolute path to the temp location and temp file that logs info passed back and forth between WebVoyáge and webrecon.cgi. This is where all necessary information is written, while WebVoyáge processes the information sent to it by webrecon.exe.  This path and file name should be identical to what is defined as entered after the TempFileLocation and TempFileName variables in the [WebRecon] stanza of the WebVoyáge.ini file (see <a href="#">TempFileLocation</a> on <a href="#">page 3-6</a> and <a href="#">TempFileName</a> on <a href="#">page 3-7</a> for more information).

Use the `more` command to look at the `Pwebrecon.cgi` file. This file will contain the following script:

```
#!/bin/ksh
exec ./webrecon.exe -s/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin/webvoyage.cgi \
-c/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin/webrecon.ini \
-t/tmp/webrecon
```

---

**Figure 1-2. The -s, -c, and -t parameters in the Pwebrecon.cgi**

The paths following **-s** and **-c** must match the current directory for **Pwebrecon.cgi**.

### Edit the WebVoyáge.ini File

The WebVoyáge.ini file contains many settings which will be gone over in detail later (see [WebVoyáge.ini](#) on [page 3-5](#) for more information). To get WebVoyáge running with the default settings, you must change the entry after the **OpacIniRoot** variable in the **[AppVar]** stanza of the **WebVoyáge.ini** file so that it points to the appropriate directory where all of the WebVoyáge configuration files reside. Initially, the entry will be as follows:

**OpacIniRoot=/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage**

All you should need to change is the **xxxdb** to your site's specific database directory under **/m1/voyager**.

Example (if you want WebVoyáge to connect to the training database):

**OpacIniRoot=/m1/voyager/traindb/etc/webvoyage**

The **opac.ini** file must be in the **/local** directory under the path defined by **OpacIniRoot** variable in the **WebVoyáge.ini** file.

### Prepare Your voyager.ini File

Once you have specified a path after the **OpacIniRoot** variable in the **WebVoyáge.ini** file, you must edit the **voyager.ini** file located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage** directory. To get WebVoyáge running with the default settings, you must change the information after the **Server** and **Port** variables in the **[Communications]** stanza to establish a connection. Initially, these entries will be:

**Server=xxxx.xxx.xxx.xxx**

**Port=NNNN**

Specify the IP number and Port number for the WebVoyáge server.

---

The *FileServer*, *FilePort*, and *FileTimeout* keys specify the default server, port and time-out settings to be used if digital objects are stored on the server for web access but an address to those digital objects is not specified in the Cataloging 856 field. The format of this information includes the server name or IP address, the port number, and the time-out value.



### **Procedure 1-1. Setting a Default Server**

---

Use the following to connect to a default server, when no server is specified in the 856 field of a record.

In the [File Download] stanza:

1. Type **Server** on the first line, then an equals sign (=), followed by the complete name or IP address of the server.
2. Next, type **Port** on the second line, then an equals sign (=), followed by the port number for the server.
3. Finally, type **time-out** on the third line, then an equals sign (=), followed by the time-out value (in seconds) to use for the connection.

#### **Result:**

At this point, you should be able to point a browser to your Web Server and WebVoyáge will run. The default page will display, and you should be able to click the Local Catalog button and perform a search. If you cannot do this, please contact Endeavor Support.

---

Once this is done, you should move on to the opac.ini file, which contains many opportunities for your institution to customize and personalize the functions and appearances of WebVoyáge (see [The opac.ini](#) on [page 3-12](#) for more information).

### **Establishing a Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Webserver**

If WebVoyáge is being installed on a web server that uses an SSL (Secure Socket Layer) connection, WebVoyáge must be configured in order to support SSL.

If...	Enter...
SSL is used	<b>TRUE</b> (case sensitive) after the <code>SSL=</code> variable in the [Security Options] stanza of the <code>WebVoyage.ini</code> file
SSL is not used	<b>FALSE</b> (case sensitive) after the <code>SSL=</code> variable in the <b>Security Options</b> stanza of the <code>WebVoyage.ini</code> file

**NOTE:**

If nothing appears after the `SSL=` variable, or if the `SSL=` variable does not appear at all, SSL with default to FALSE.

Next, you must change the URL for ImageServer from http: to https:. This is done by changing the address from `http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx` (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx being the path for your server) to `https://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx`. This change must be made to the address following the `Scandoc` variable in the [Links] stanza of the `voyager.ini` file. The entry must be made entirely on the same line.

For example, if your `voyager.ini` file read (all on the same line):

```
ScanDoc=http://256.256.256.256/cgi-bin  
/scandoc.cgi
```

you would want to change it (all on the same line) to:

```
ScanDoc=https://256.256.256.256/cgi-bin  
/scandoc.cgi
```

If the `Scandoc` variable is blank, you do not need to enter anything.

Endeavor does not distribute a web server; because of this, you must configure your webserver properly for SSL support. However, a useful source of information is the Apache web site at <http://www.apache.org>.

SSL support is NOT built into Apache by default, due to export restrictions on cryptography, so the apache source must be patched and built by hand. There is useful information about how to do this as well as other helpful information at the above web site under the link to "Related Projects." Note that the information at the Apache web site is specifically about the Apache webserver.

---

## Allowing Access to WebVoyage

---

To allow your patrons to access WebVoyage, you can create a hypertext link from your home page to the WebVoyage introduction page, which is called `webvoy.htm`. You can also set up the Web Browser's home page to bring up the `webvoy.htm` file. The final option is to require patrons to type in the appropriate URL address, ending with the `webvoy.htm` file.

---

## **Installing on Another Machine**

---

To Install WebVoyáge on a different machine than the one your database (Oracle) is on, follow the same steps as above except that instead of copying the files from one directory to another, you must FTP them from one machine to the other (from the database machine to the webserver machine).



---

### **Procedure 1-2. Installing on Another Machine**

---

Use the following steps to install WebVoyáge on another machine.

1. FTP the following subdirectories under the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb` directory to the webserver machine:
  - `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage`
  - `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local`
  - `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/Z3950`
  - `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/vcit`
  - `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/zcit`
2. Edit the `WebVoyáge.ini` file (see [Edit the WebVoyáge.ini File on page 1-7](#)).
3. Change the `[AppVar]` stanza to point to where the `/webvoyage` subdirectory structure is.

Example:

For example, if you FTP the files from machine TrainBox:/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage to machine DemoBox:/webserver/home/etc/webvoyage then you would change the `OpacIniRoot` variable in the `WebVoyáge.ini` file from `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage` to `/webserver/home/etc/webvoyage`.

4. Edit the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local/opac.ini` file in the new location on the new machine to point to the IP address and ports on the Voyager database machine.

## Displaying Unicode characters

---

Beginning with The Voyager With Unicode release, WebVoyage displays Unicode encoded characters in the web browser, instead of using the Glyph Server. Voyager represents Unicode characters using UTF-8 character encoding.

**NOTE:**

Unicode characters in bibliographic, holdings and item records display in this version of Voyager. There is also a UTF-8 encoding for purposes of saving and printing records. Configuration files (including help files), and all other files are still in Latin-1 encoding.

To view UTF-8 encoded characters in WebVoyage you must:

- Set your web browser to display the characters
- Install at least one Unicode font on each PC viewing UTF-8 encoded records.

See the following for Unicode-related configuration

- [Displaying Alternate Graphic Representations on the View Record Pages on page 1-12](#).
- UTF-8 download format for printing and saving in [Download Formats on page 3-112](#).

### Web Browser configuration

---

You must configure your web browser to display Unicode encoded characters. Most browsers contain an option to auto-select the language based on the encoding of the page. Typically, the setting for this is on the **View** menu tab.

- For internet explorer:  
Go to **View>>Encoding** and make sure the **Auto-Select** is checked.
- For Netscape:  
Go to **View>>Character Coding** and make sure **Auto-detect** is selected.



**IMPORTANT:**

*These configuration directions are subject to change or differ depending on web browser changes. Check the help for your browser if you need help configuring the automatic character encoding selection option.*

Some older web browsers do not support UTF-8 encoding. You may need to update your web browser to view UTF-8 encoded text.

---

## **Font installation**

---

Different Unicode fonts display certain characters and languages better than others. Some fonts are specific to certain languages, while others are more generic and cover a broader range of characters. Some testing may be necessary to refine display of some languages.

If you are having difficulty displaying a certain language or languages, download a font specific to that language, or a general Unicode font that includes the characters' range. There are resources on the Web which list Unicode fonts and the character ranges they cover. Resources also exist to test your Unicode font character range coverage and display.

Search for "unicode character range" on the Web, for example, to view resources specific to determining font character range coverage. You can also search for language-specific resources as there are many out there.

Browsers also vary in their ability to display Unicode so you may want to test on multiple browsers, if using Unicode characters heavily.

You must Install unicode fonts on all WebVoyáge workstations. See your operating system's help for more on installing fonts.

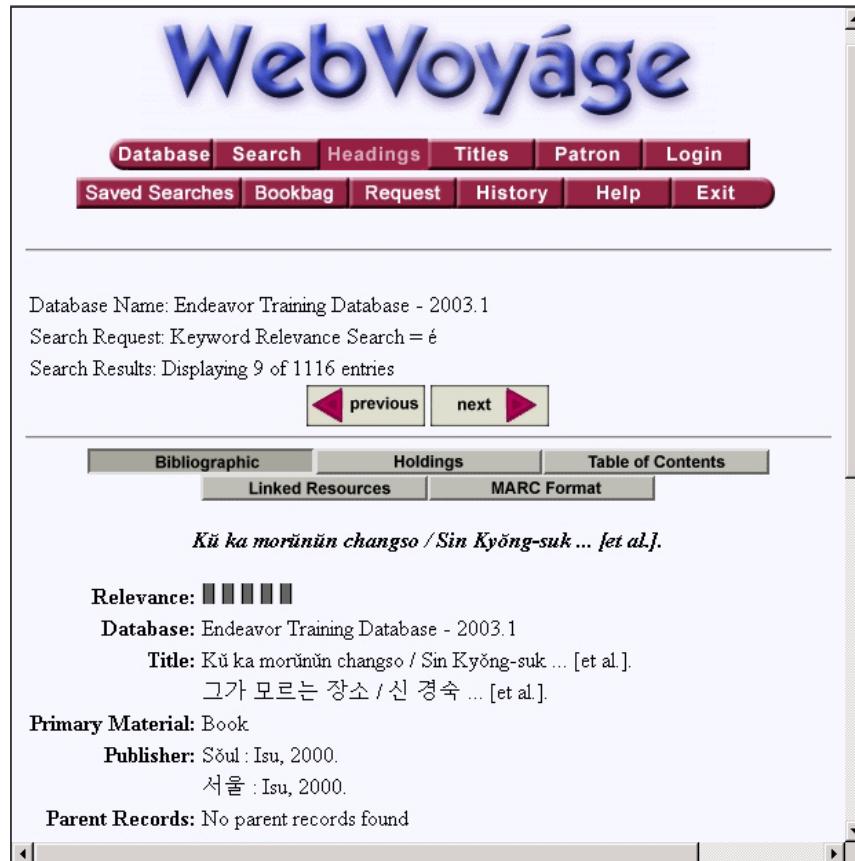
---

## **Displaying Alternate Graphic Representations on the View Record Pages**

---

Alternate graphic representations can be displayed on the View Record Pages. More specifically, original language information added to properly configured 880 MARC record fields displays after the MARC fields to which they are attached. So, for example, the 245a displays on the View Record Page, with an 880 containing original language text, displaying beneath it. For more information about alternate graphic representation, see the *MARC 21 Concise Formats* specifications.

For an example of alternate graphic representation display in WebVoyáge, see [Figure 1-3 on page 1-13](#).



---

Figure 1-3. Alternate Graphic Representation Display Example

Configure the alternate graphic representation display by:

- Including 880 fields in the MARC records, containing linking instructions.
- Setting a variable in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file which allows the 880 fields to link to their counterparts.

**NOTE:**

Authority and Holdings records do not support alternate graphic representation display in WebVoyage.

---

## Enabling the 880 field linking

---

To enable alternate graphic representation display 880 fields to display directly beneath their primary fields, set the `Link880s` variable in the `[View_Record_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file.

- `Link880s=Y` displays the linked 880 fields directly after their primary field counterparts.

**NOTE:**

When `Link880s` is set to `Y`, only 880 fields linked to primary fields display. Of course, if there is no primary field to display, the linked 880 field information will not display either. Any 880 fields not linked to a primary field, or linked with an occurrence number of `00` will only display if the `displayn.cfg` file contains an 880 display directive. In that case, they will display under the

- `Link880s=N` displays linked and non-linked 880 field information according to the normal display specification in the `displayn.cfg` files. For more information, see [DISPLAYN.CFG](#) on page 3-216.

---

## Adding 880 Alternate Graphic Representation information

---

Each alternate graphic representation 880 field must be linked to its counterpart MARC field (*primary field*) such as the 245a. Do this by including a linking specification in the `#6` subfield of the 880 field as well as the corresponding primary field.

This information can be added or edited using the Voyager Cataloging module if it is not already in the record.

---

## Format of Linked MARC fields

---

This section details the format of the information in the MARC record used to link 880s to their primary fields.

**NOTE:**

For purposes of detailing alternate graphic representation display, references to *linked fields* indicate fields (880 and primary) that have link specifications in them. The term *linked fields* therefore, is not restricted to fields which display on the view record pages as linked (that is, a primary field with 880 information displaying directly beneath it).

The link specification consists of the field specification (primary or 880), followed by a -, followed by the occurrence number.

### Format of the 880 fields

The general format of the linked 880 fields is as follows

**880** indicator fields #6 primary field-occurrence number  
original language information

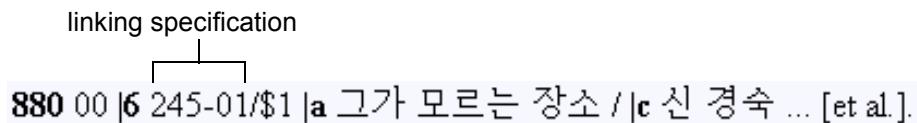


Figure 1-4. Sample linked 880 field in MARC record

The components detailing the format are listed in [Table 1-3](#). [Figure 1-4](#) contains an example in a MARC record.

Table 1-3. 880 field format component description

Component		Description
Indicator fields		normal MARC record indicator fields
Linking specification	primary field	field to which this 880 links
	occurrence number	unique identifier also existing in the primary field, indicating to which primary field this links. This number must match the occurrence number in the 880 field linked from.
Original language information		Unicode encoded text describing the record. This can be in multiple scripts.

### Format of the primary fields

The general format of the linked primary fields is as follows

**MARC Field** indicator fields #6 880-occurrence number  
MARC field information

---



---

linking specification



```

245 00 |6 880-01 |a Kǔ ka morǔnǔn changso / |c Sin Kyǒng-suk ... [et al.].

```

---

**Figure 1-5.** Sample 245 field in MARC record

The components detailing the format are listed in [Table 1-4](#). [Figure 1-5](#) contains an example in a MARC record

**Table 1-4. Primary field format component description**

Component		Description
Indicator fields		normal MARC record indicator fields
Linking specification	880	880 to which this primary field links
	occurrence number	unique identifier also existing in the 880 field, indicating to which 880 field this links. This number must match the occurrence number in the 880 field linked to.
Original language information		Standard primary field and subfield information.

An 880 field with an occurrence number of 00 will display under the 880 specification on the `displayn.cfg` as normal (that is, not linked to any other field). This assumes you have included an 880 display specification in a `displayn.cfg` file.

## Examples

---

This section includes examples to demonstrate some possible uses of the alternate graphic representation display feature.

When the alternate graphic representation feature is enabled in the `opac.ini` (see [Figure 1-6](#)), the 880s linked in the MARC record shown in [Figure 1-9](#) on [page 1-19](#) display as in [Figure 1-7](#) on [page 1-17](#). The `display1.cfg` used for this example is shown in [Figure 1-8](#) on [page 1-18](#) (parts omitted for clarity).

[View\_Record\_Page]

...

Link880s=Y

---

Figure 1-6. Sample View\_Record\_Page stanza

The screenshot shows a library catalog search results page. At the top, it says "Search Results: Displaying 2 of 2 entries". Below this are navigation buttons for "previous" and "next". A horizontal menu bar includes "Bibliographic" (which is highlighted), "Holdings", "Table of Contents", "Linked Resources", and "MARC Format". The main content area displays a single record for the book "Kü ka morünün changso / Sin Kyöng-suk ... [et al.]". The record details are as follows:

- Relevance:** ■
- Database:** Endeavor Library
- Title:** Kü ka morünün **changso** / Sin Kyöng-suk ... [et al.]  
그가 모르는 장소 /
- Primary Material:** Book
- Publisher:** Söul : Isu, 2000.  
서울 : Isu, 2000.
- Original Language Non-Linked:** 서울 : Isu, 2000. Non-linked.

A note in purple text states: "No holdings available -- check at the Circulation Desk." At the bottom of the page are "previous" and "next" navigation buttons, and a "Record Options" button.

---

Figure 1-7. Sample record display with 880s=Y

The display1.cfg also includes an 880 display specification to display the non-linked 880 fields (see [Figure 1-8](#)).

---



---

Main Author:	
100 XX aq	
110 XX ab	
...	
Title:	
130 XX aplskf	
240 XX {a[%}plskf"]"	
245 XX ab	
Primary Material:	
000 06 2	
...	
Publisher:	
260 XX abc	
Original Language Non-Linked:	- Displays the non-linked 880's.
880 XX abc	
...	

---

**Figure 1-8. Sample display1.cfg**

Notice in the MARC record ([Figure 1-9](#)) there are two 880 fields for the 100 field. One is linked (880 10 |6 100-01...) and the other is not (880 10 |6 100-00...). In the MARC record display, the linked 880 displays directly below the 100 field and the non-linked 880 displays under the 880 display configuration as configured in the display1.cfg ([Figure 1-8](#)).

**NOTE:**

This configuration is used for illustrative purposes, and some fields have been omitted for clarity.

[Figure 1-9](#) shows the sample MARC record used in the examples.

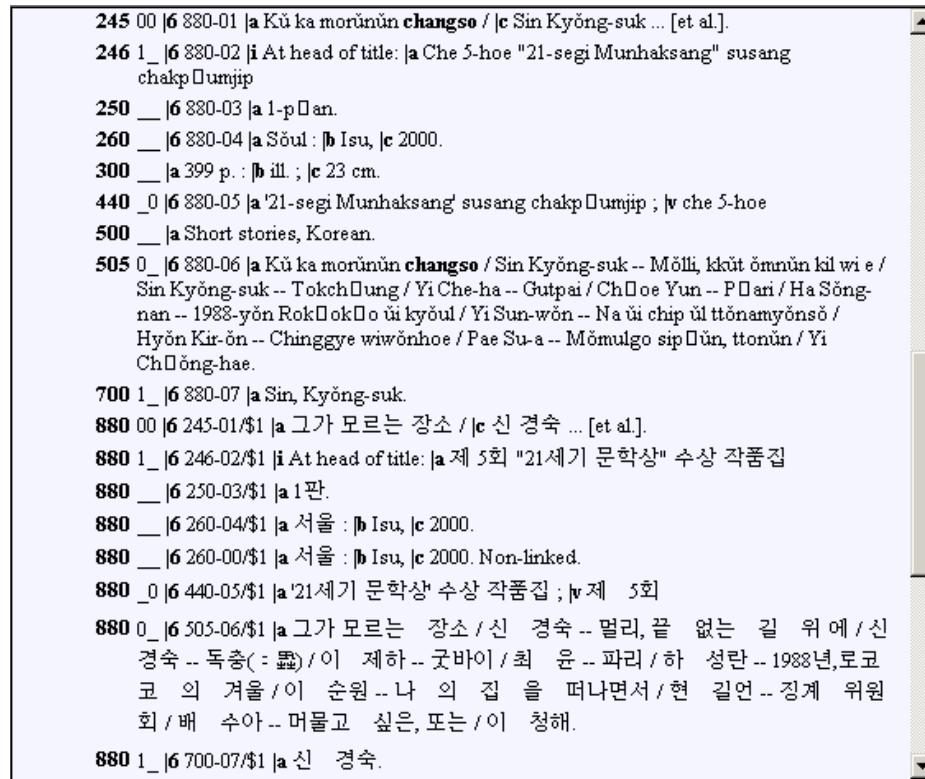


Figure 1-9. Sample MARC record

[Figure 1-11 on page 1-20](#) shows the display of the same record and configuration, with the 880 links disabled (Link880s=N- see [Figure 1-10](#)). Notice that the 880 fields with 880 link directives display below the 880 display directive toward the bottom of the page and are no longer displayed along with their primary fields. Without an 880 display directive on the display1.cfg file, none of the 880 fields will display at all.

```
[View_Record_Page]
...
Link880s=N
```

Figure 1-10. Sample View\_Record\_Page stanza

Database Name: Endeavor Library  
 Search Request: Keyword = changso  
 Search Results: Displaying 1 of 2 entries

◀ previous      next ▶

<b>Bibliographic</b>	<b>Holdings</b>	<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>Linked Resources</b>	<b>MARC Format</b>
<i>Kü ka morünün changso / Sin Kyöng-suk ... [et al.]</i>				
<b>Database:</b> Endeavor Library <b>Title:</b> Kü ka morünün <b>changso</b> / <b>Primary Material:</b> Book <b>Publisher:</b> Söul : Isu, 2000. <b>Original Language Non-Linked:</b> 그가 모르는 장소 / 신 경숙 ... [et al.]. 제 5회 "21세기 문학상" 수상 작품집 1판. 서울 : Isu, 2000. '21세기 문학상' 수상 작품집 ; 그가 모르는 장소 / 신 경숙 -- 멀리, 끝 없는 길 위에 / 신 경숙 -- 독충(·蟲) / 이 제하 -- 굿바이 / 죄 윤 -- 파리 / 하 성란 -- 1988년,로코코 의 겨울 / 이 순원 -- 나 의 집 을 떠나면서 / 현 길언 - 경계 위원회 / 배 수아 -- 머물고 싶은, 또는 / 이 청해. 신 경숙.				

**Figure 1-11.** Sample record display with Link880s=N

## Making WebVoyáge Multilingual

There are a number of steps you must take in order to make the WebVoyáge interface multilingual. These steps include:

- creating new directories at the appropriate locations in your directory structure
- preparing the configuration files and image files
- creating links to the different language versions of WebVoyáge from your institution's home page or WebVoyáge start-up page.
- specifying default directories

### NOTE:

These sections are devoted to making the WebVoyáge *interface* multi-lingual. For more information on using Unicode characters to display multiple languages in MARC records, see [Displaying Unicode characters](#) on [page 1-11](#) and the related sections.

### Create Language Directories

In order to have more than one language-version of WebVoyáge, you must create new directories at specific locations within your directory structure.

1. Create a custom WebVoyáge display directory for each language under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage. For example, if you want to offer WebVoyáge in English and French, you would create an /m1/voyagerxxxdb/etc/webvoyage/English directory and an /m1/voyagerxxxdb/etc/webvoyage/French directory.

The same directory structure and all of the files which are normally contained under the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory (for example, the /local, /zcit and /z3950 directories, as well as the configuration files within these directories) must be copied to each new language directory.

2. Create an image file directory for each language under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images, and /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/help. These directories should have the exact same name as the corresponding directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage. For example, if you have created an /English and /French directory above, you must create an /English and /French directory here.

All of the image files which are normally located in the /images directory must be copied to each new language directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images.

3. Create a help file directory for each language under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/help. For example, /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/help/french.

All of the help files which are normally located in the /help directory must be copied to each new language directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/help.

## Prepare Configuration Files and Images

Once you have created your directories and ensured that they contain the appropriate subdirectories and files, you can edit the configuration files (opac.ini, display.ini, etc.) and image files which control how WebVoyáge functions and appears.

The configuration files should be located within the subdirectories of the language directories under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage. The configuration files control much of the text that displays throughout WebVoyáge, allowing you to extensively define the language of WebVoyáge. For example, the *NotCharged* variable in the [Item Statuses] stanza of the opac.ini file controls how the “Not Charged” item status will appear in WebVoyáge. If you wanted this status to display in a language other than English, you would enter the text after the *NotCharged* variable. For an extensive description of the variables within the opac.ini file and other configuration files, see [Customizing WebVoyáge on page 3-3](#).

---

The image files should be located within each language directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images. The image files control many of the buttons and images that display throughout WebVoyáge. Many of these buttons and images have text on them; therefore, if you want the text on a button or image to display in a language other than English, you can either edit the image or create a new image and save it with the exact same file name as the original image. See [Image Files](#) on [page 3-209](#) for more extensive information about altering WebVoyáge images.

### Create Links to WebVoyáge

In order for the patrons of your institution to access the different language versions of WebVoyáge, you must provide links to these different versions on your institution's home page or WebVoyáge start-up page (for more information about the WebVoyáge start-up page that Endeavor provides, see [webvoy.htm](#) on [page 3-208](#)).

Normally, if you were not making WebVoyáge multilingual, the following URL would be used as a link to WebVoyáge:

```
http://institution's ip address/cgi-bin/  
Pwebrecon.cgi?DB=local&PAGE=First
```

In order to provide successful links to different language versions of WebVoyáge, you must slightly alter the above URL for each link. In each link, you must insert the following between? and DB:

```
LANGUAGE=directoryname&
```

LANGUAGE must be in upper case. In place of *directoryname*, you must insert the exact name of the language directory to be used. For example, if you created a /French directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage and /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images you would insert **LANGUAGE=French&** in the URL of the link. The full URL for this example would be:

```
http://ip/cgi-bin/  
Pwebrecon.cgi?LANGUAGE=French&DB=local&PAGE=First
```

where *ip* would be replaced with your institution's ip address.

### Specify Default Directories

Once you have created your language directories, edited the configuration and image files, and created the appropriate links, you must set the *DefaultLang* and *DefaultImageDir* variables in the [AppVar] stanza of the WebVoyáge.ini file. These variables specify which language directories (and therefore which language version) will be used as defaults by WebVoyáge.

The *DefaultLang* variable specifies which language directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage will be used as the default directory containing the necessary configuration files. The name of the directory entered after this variable must be exactly the same as the directory name in the directory structure.

The *DefaultImageDir* variable specifies which language directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images will be used as the default directory containing the necessary image files. The name of the directory entered after this variable must be exactly the same as the directory name in the directory structure.

The directories entered after these variables will be used when a language directory is not specified. Most likely this would occur when the URL of a link to a version of WebVoyáge does not specify a language directory (the activity described above in “Create Links to WebVoyáge”).

---

[REDACTED]

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## WebVoyáge Screens

# 2

---

## Contents

<b>Customizing WebVoyáge Structure</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>Customizing Individual WebVoyáge Pages</b>	<b>2-2</b>
• General Notes on the WebVoyáge Screens	2-3
• Setting the Initial Page	2-3
Using the Search Page as the Initial Page	2-3
<b>Global WebVoyáge Page Appearance Configuration</b>	<b>2-5</b>
Html_Body Stanza	2-5
• Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration	2-7
• Initial WebVoyáge Page (Webvoy.htm)	2-10
Editing the Webvoy.htm File	2-11
• Library Information Page (Libinfo.htm)	2-12
Editing the Libinfo.htm File	2-13
• Remote Libraries Page (Remote.htm)	2-13
Editing the Remote.htm File	2-14
<b>Search Screens</b>	<b>2-15</b>
• Default Search type	2-15
<b>Customizing Search Screens</b>	<b>2-17</b>
• Editing the Simple Search Screen	2-18
• Editing the Builder Search (Boolean Search) Screen	2-24
The [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza	2-29
• Editing the Course Reserve Search Screen	2-31
Course Reserve Drop-Down interface	2-31
The [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza	2-35
• Editing the Map Search Screen	2-37
Rectangle Search Dialog Box	2-42
Polygon Search Dialog Box	2-43

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Point And Radius Search Dialog Box	2-44
Corridor/Route Search Dialog Box	2-45
Range Search Dialog Box	2-47
The [Map_Search_Page] stanza	2-48
• The Limits.ini File	2-50
Limits Stanza	2-50
Search Limits Stanzas	2-50
Search Limits Buttons List	2-54
• Editing the Database Selection Screen	2-55
Components of the Database Selection Screen	2-56
The Connect.ini File	2-58
Database Selection Buttons List	2-58
• Editing the Simultaneous Search Screen	2-59
Components of the Simultaneous Search Screen	2-60
• Editing the Headings List Screen	2-63
Components of the Headings List Screen	2-64
Browse Searches	2-68
Headings List Buttons List	2-71
• Editing the References/Scope Notes Screen	2-72
Components of the References/Scope Notes Screen	2-73
References/Scope Notes Buttons List	2-75
• Editing the Titles List Screen	2-76
Components of the Title List Screen	2-77
Save/Email Table	2-92
Title List Buttons List	2-94
• Editing the Record Display	2-95
Components of the Record Display Screens	2-96
Save/Email Table	2-107
Record Display Buttons List	2-108
• Editing the Request Selection Screen	2-110
Components of the Request Selection Screen	2-111
Request Selection Buttons List	2-113
• Editing the Patron Login Screen	2-114
Components of the Patron Login Screen	2-115
Patron Login Buttons List	2-116
• Editing the Patron Information Screen	2-117
• Components of the Patron Information Screen	2-119
General:	2-119
Charged Items Section:	2-123

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Patron Information Buttons List	2-127
• Editing the Call Slip Request Screen	2-128
Components of the Call Slip Request Screen	2-128
Call Slip Request Buttons List	2-130
• Editing the Hold and Recall Request Screens	2-132
Components of the Hold and Recall Request Screens	2-132
Hold and Recall Request Buttons List	2-135
• Editing the Short Loan Request Screen	2-136
Components of the Short Loan Request Screen	2-137
Short Loan Request Buttons List	2-141
• Editing the Blank-Type Request Screen	2-142
Components of the Blank-Type Request Screen	2-143
Blank-Type Request Buttons List	2-145
• Editing the Bibliographic Level Request Screens	2-146
Components of the Bib Level Request Screens	2-147
Bib Level Request Buttons List	2-150
• Editing the Item Level Request Screens	2-151
Components of the Item Level Request Screens	2-152
Item Level Request Buttons List	2-154
• Editing the NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Form Screens	2-155
Components of the NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Request Screens	
2-156	
NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Request Screens Buttons List	2-159
• Editing the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens	2-160
Components of the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens	2-160
ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens Buttons List	2-163
• Editing the Search History Screen	2-164
Components of the Search History Screens	2-165
Search History Buttons List	2-167
[NoHits_Redirect] Stanza	2-168
Holdings Jump Bar Function	2-170
• Library Information	2-171
• Remote Libraries	2-172

---



## Contents

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

This chapter looks at each page in WebVoyáge and discusses the settings that effect that page. Since most page configurations are done in multiple files or places, many of the screen descriptions contain diagrams detailing the corresponding configuration component (for example, a stanza in a configuration file, or graphic file in a particular directory).

### **Customizing WebVoyáge Structure**

---

One of the things that you should consider when customizing WebVoyáge is that you can customize more than just the existing screens. You can also change the structure of WebVoyáge itself by adding screens and deleting others and linking them together in new and different ways. This can be done by adding additional html pages in the form of .htm files. Since the .htm pages have all of their information contained within the file, you can replace existing images with new ones; change backgrounds and other formats; and add, remove and redirect links between pages.

For example, you decide that instead of having the search button on the introductory page lead directly to the search dialog, you want it to link to a new page with a list of search types which will then open the appropriate search page. You can edit the link on the existing introductory page so that it connects to a new .htm page, and then edit the new page so that it contains links for all of the different types of searches that connect to the appropriate tab of the search dialog. This requires an understanding of html programming, but anyone who knows html will be able to easily customize the overall structure of the WebVoyáge program.

---

## **Customizing Individual WebVoyáge Pages**

---

The following is a breakdown of each page in WebVoyáge.

There are two different types of pages that WebVoyáge uses. The first kind of page is an html page that is generated by WebVoyáge using all of the text and options set in the initialization files and incorporating the image files. There is no single file that WebVoyáge reads in order to create the page; instead, WebVoyáge reads all of the appropriate options and assembles a page accordingly.

For example, the Search page is generated in this way by WebVoyáge. This page does not have an .htm file associated with it; editing this page requires setting a number of different options (outlined in the Search Page section on [2-15](#)). For this type of page, information relating to each page can be customized, but it is not contained within an .htm file. It is contained in a number of configuration (\*.cfg) and initialization (\*.ini) files.



### **CAUTION:**

*Do not add HTML code to these files as doing so may cause WebVoyáge to malfunction.*

However, some of the screens in WebVoyáge are not created by WebVoyáge but are actually existing html (.htm) files. These pages are configured for the most part by simply editing a single file (in the form of an html file) where all of the appropriate information is stored. For example, the initial page consists of a single file called webvoy.htm. This file contains most of the information required to generate this page, including the layout and the names of the images. (See [2-10](#) for more information on the Webvoy.htm page.) The pages that are HTML files generally have most of their options set in the file itself instead of in the configuration and initialization files. These pages are much more open in their structure. They can be kept as they are presented in their default form, or they can be modified partially or completely by anyone who knows html.

### **NOTE:**

Editing .htm files allows customization of screens, but care must be taken that any changes are thoroughly thought out and allow access to all of the parts of WebVoyáge.

## General Notes on the WebVoyáge Screens

---

When replacing images, unless it is specifically stated, you must *not* change the names of the images. Changing the names of images will prevent WebVoyáge from being able to find the proper image, and the image will *not* appear on-screen. The correct way to change an image is to delete the old one, copy the new one to the directory and give it the name of the old file. The old filename *must* be kept in order for WebVoyáge to be able to find it.

## Setting the Initial Page

---

The initial page is set in your web server's initialization files. The default setting is typically the `webvoy.htm` page. This can be changed, but it must be set to an html page (a page with the extension `.htm` - i.e., `webvoy.htm`, `libinfo.htm`, `remote.htm`, and so on).

For an Apache Web Server, the default page is set in the `httpd.conf` file in the `/usr/local/apache/conf` directory by entering the name of the page after the `DirectoryIndex` variable (note that no equals sign is used between the variable and the filename, unlike in Windows files). Multiple files can be listed on the same line. If the first is not found, the next file in the line will be used, and so on. A sample entry might look like this:

```
DirectoryIndex webvoy.htm index.html
```

If you were to change the default page to `initial.htm` instead of `webvoy.htm`, you would enter the following (all on the same line of the `httpd.conf` file):

```
DirectoryIndex initial.htm webvoy.htm index.html
```

This will tell the server to first look for the `initial.htm` file, and if `initial.htm` cannot be found, to look for the `webvoy.htm` file; and if `webvoy.htm` cannot be found, to look for the `index.html`.

## Using the Search Page as the Initial Page

You can give your users the appearance of connecting directly to the search page. In order to appear to connect directly to the search page, you must do the following.



## Procedure 2-1. Using the Search Page as the initial page

---

Use the following steps to configure WebVoyáge to connect directly to the search page.

1. Create a new HTML file and give it a new name, such as `initial.htm`.
2. Enter the following HTML code into your file:

```
<script language="javascript">  
  window.location.href="http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/cgi-bin/  
  Pwebrecon.cgi?DB=local&PAGE=First"  
</Script>
```

where `xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx` is the IP and port of your web server.

3. Set your new file (i.e., `initial.htm`) to be the default page.

For an Apache Web Server, the default page is set in the `httpd.conf` file in the `/usr/local/apache/conf` directory by entering the name of the page after the `DirectoryIndex` variable (note that no equals sign is used between the variable and the filename, unlike in Windows files). Multiple files can be listed on the same line. If the first is not found, the next file in the line will be used, and so on. A sample entry might look like this:

```
DirectoryIndex webvoy.htm index.html
```

If you were to change the default page to `initial.htm` instead of `webvoy.htm`, you would enter the following (all on the same line of the `httpd.conf` file):

```
DirectoryIndex initial.htm webvoy.htm index.html
```

This will tell the server to first look for the `initial.htm` file, and if `initial.htm` cannot be found, to look for the `webvoy.htm` file; and if `webvoy.htm` cannot be found, to look for the `index.html`.

Now, when you point your browser to the IP of your WebVoyáge server, the search page should appear.

---



### IMPORTANT:

*For the changes in the httpd.conf to take effect, Apache must be stopped and re-started.*

If you do not plan to use the existing webvoy.htm, you could do the following on the server:

```
cd /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html  
cp webvoy.htm webvoy.orig.htm  
cp initial.htm webvoy.htm.
```

See Installing WebVoyage on [Installing WebVoyage on page 1-3](#) for more information on setting the initial page.

## Global WebVoyage Page Appearance Configuration

---

You can set the general appearance of the WebVoyage Pages in the [HTML\_Body] stanza of the opac.ini file. Configuration changes made in the individual page stanzas override the global configuration (in the [HTML\_Body] stanza). For more information about individual page appearance configuration, see [Search Screens on page 2-15](#).

The variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza allow you to configure the background of a page as an image or a color, the color of the text on a page, the color of an unvisited link on a page, the color of a visited link on a page, and the color of a link as it is being clicked on a page.

### Html\_Body Stanza

The [Html\_Body] stanza contains the variables detailed in [Table 2-1](#). These variables also exist in each of the individual page configuration stanzas in the opac.ini file (such as the [Title\_Page] stanza).

- Configure the [Html\_Body] stanza to set global page appearance options.

Configure the individual page configuration stanzas to set the appearance of that particular page.

---

[Table 2-8](#) shows the general page appearance variables.

**Table 2-1. Page Appearance Variables (Page 1 of 2)**

Variable	Description	Notes	Example
Background	Sets the background of page to a graphic. Overrides the bgcolor variable.	Include the path to the file from HTML directory.	Background=/images/bgnd.gif
Text	Controls the color of the text on a page.	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in text color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	Text=ffffff
bgcolor	Controls the color of the background of a page.	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	bgcolor=ffffff
LINK	Controls the color of unclicked (unvisited) links	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	LINK=ffffff
VLINK	Controls the color of clicked (visited) links	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	VLINK=ffffff
ALINK	Controls the color of links as they are being clicked on a page	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	ALINK=ffffff
Top and Bottom Toolbars	Links to other pages from the top and bottom toolbars	See <a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration</a> on <a href="#">page 2-7</a>	

**Table 2-1. Page Appearance Variables (Page 2 of 2)**

Variable	Description	Notes	Example
Header	Graphic at the top of the page, above the top toolbar	See <a href="#">header.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-207</a>	header.htm
Footer	Graphic at the bottom of the page, below the bottom toolbar	See <a href="#">footer.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-207</a>	footer.htm

### Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration

---

The top and bottom toolbars are also configured globally. These are the toolbars that appear on the top and bottom of each WebVoyage screen. [Figure 2-1](#) shows the default top toolbar.

---

**Figure 2-1. Toolbar Excerpt (buttons)**

---

**Figure 2-2. Toolbar Excerpt (text)**

---

#### Customizing links on the WebVoyage toolbars

The buttons and linked text on the Top and bottom Toolbars are configured in the [Toolbar\_Top] and [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanzas of the opac.ini file. The graphics files for these buttons are in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory.

Figure 2-3 shows an example of the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza. The [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza contains the same variables.

---

Line#

```
[Toolbar_Top]
1 Count=14

2 TextFont=WingDings
3 TextFontSize=
4 TextSeparator=|||


5 Btn01Text=Databases
6 Btn01GraphicUp=UpDatabase.gif
7 Btn01GraphicDown=DownDatabase.gif
8 Btn01GraphicDisabled=DisabledDatabase.gif
9 Btn01Function=DATABASE
10 Btn01Link=
```

-----Display Truncated-----

```
11 Btn07Text=Preferences
12 Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
13 Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif
14 Btn07GraphicDisabled=DisabledPref.gif
15 Btn07Function=PREFERENCES
16 Btn07Text=Preferences
17 Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
18 Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif


19 Btn08Text=Bookbag
20 Btn08GraphicUp=UpBookbag.gif
21 Btn08GraphicDown=DownBookbag.gif
22 Btn08GraphicDisabled=DisabledBookbag.gif
23 Btn08Function=BOOKBAG
```

---

**Figure 2-3. Details of the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza**

You can use either buttons or hyperlinked text to connect to the various pages from these toolbar links. To use hyperlinked text, The links can be presented on the pages in any order you wish and you can use as few or as many of the 14 as you like.

**NOTE:**

While you can configure as few links as you want, you should at least include links to the critical pages.

[Table 2-2](#) details the components of the top and bottom toolbars. The xx's indicate the button or linked text number.

**Table 2-2. Top and Bottom Toolbar Component Descriptions**

Component	Configured in	Possible Values
Rollover text of button, or text of link if not using an image	BtnxxText=	Free text
button image in the “up” position	BtnxxGraphicUp=	Valid .gif graphic file-name
button image in the “down” position	BtnxxGraphicDown=	Valid .gif graphic file-name
button image when screen link disabled	BtnxxGraphicDisabled=	Valid .gif graphic file-name
Determines which screen the link links to.	BtnxxFunction=	see <a href="#">Table 2-3</a>
Number of buttons in toolbar configuration	Count=	1-14
Text font	TextFont=	Free text
Text font size	TextFontSize=	Text font size (in points)
Text Separator (between hyperlinked text)	TextSeparator=	Free text

[Table 2-3](#) details the button and hyperlink functions.

**Table 2-3. Button Functions**

Button Function (BtnxxFunction)	Target	For more, see
DATABASE	Database selection	<a href="#">Editing the Database Selection Screen on page 2-55</a>
SEARCH	Search screen	<a href="#">Search Screens on page 2-15</a>

---

**Table 2-3. Button Functions (Continued)**

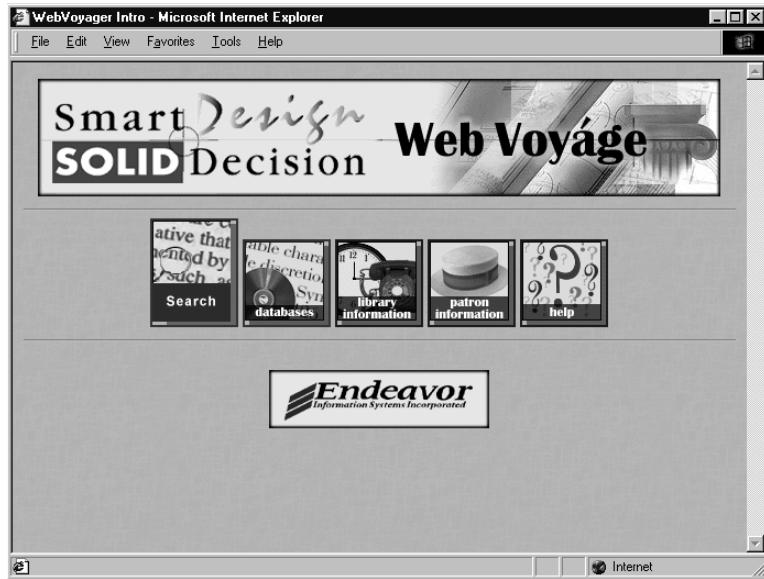
Button Function (BtnxxFunction)	Target	For more, see
HEADINGS	Headings	<a href="#">Editing the Headings List Screen on page 2-63</a>
TITLES	Titles list	<a href="#">Editing the Titles List Screen on page 2-76</a>
PATRON	Patron Information	<a href="#">Editing the Patron Information Screen on page 2-117</a>
LOGINOUT	Login or Logout	<a href="#">Editing the Patron Login Screen on page 2-114</a>
PREFERENCES	Preferences page	
CHANGE PIN	Change PIN	
SAVEDSEARCHES	Saved Searches	
BOOKBAG	Bookbag	
REQUESTS	Request	<a href="#">Editing the Request Selection Screen on page 2-110</a>
HELP	Help	
EXIT	Exit	
HISTORY	Search History	<a href="#">Editing the Search History Screen on page 2-164</a>

---

**Initial WebVoyáge Page (Webvoy.htm)**

The Initial WebVoyáge page (the webvoy.htm file) is the standard introductory screen for WebVoyáge. This is the page that will typically appear first in WebVoyáge.

This page, as distributed by Endeavor, allows you to access the functions of WebVoyáge. From this screen you can begin a search; get information on the library or a patron; connect to other web sites; or get help with WebVoyáge. Your institution may partially or completely customize this screen (or discard it entirely).



---

**Figure 2-4. Webvoy.htm Page**

#### Editing the Webvoy.htm File

This page is an html page that can be edited by someone conversant in html. If you want to customize the appearance of the page you can edit any of its parts. Make sure, however, that you do not mistakenly delete any links that you will want on this page. Note that when editing the links attached to each button that you must enter the entire path, starting with the IP or server address (for example, <http://www.yourserver.org/help/contents.htm>).

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory.

These images are located in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory on the server.

**Table 2-4. The webvoy.htm image files**

Image	File	Target
Background	bg4.gif	None
WebVoyage logo	logo.gif	None

---

**Table 2-4. The webvoy.htm image files**

Image	File	Target
Endeavor Logo	eisi.gif	Endeavor website
Search	search.gif	Begins search
Databases	database.gif	Remote library page (remote.htm)
Library Information	libinfo.gif	Library information screen (libinfo.htm)
Patron Information	patinfo.gif	Patron information screen
Help	help.gif	Help contents screen (contents.htm)

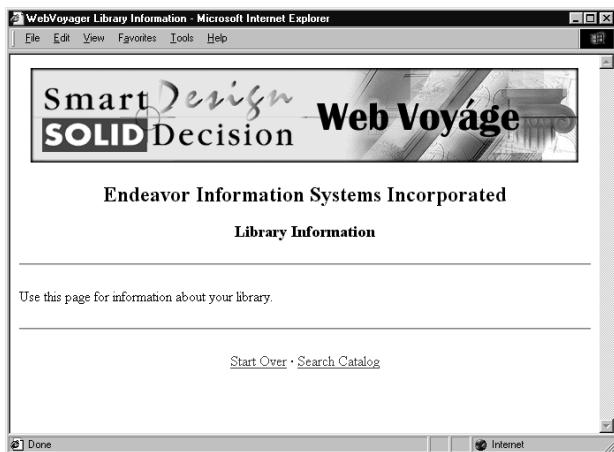
### **Library Information Page (Libinfo.htm)**

---

The Library Information page (the Libinfo.htm file) is an html page. Like the webvoy.htm page, the Libinfo.htm file can be edited to present information about your library or anything else. This file can be extensively edited - the contents of the page can be edited and customized using html.

As it is distributed, this page has no specific information in it - you must add information to this file that is appropriate for your institution.

---



---

**Figure 2-5. Libinfo.htm Page**

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

### **Editing the Libinfo.htm File**

This page is an html page that can be edited by someone conversant in html. If you wish to change the appearance of the page you can edit any of its parts. If you decide to add buttons to this page, remember that you must enter the entire path, starting with the IP or server address (for example, <http://www.yourserver.org/help/contents.htm>).

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory.

These images are located in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory on the server.

**Table 2-5. Libinfo.htm Buttons List**

Image	File
WebVoyáge logo	logo.gif

### **Remote Libraries Page (Remote.htm)**

---

The Remote Libraries page (the `Remote.htm` file) is a static html page. As it is distributed, this page has no information in it but you may add information on links to other web sites, or it may serve an entirely different purpose. Like the `webvoy.htm` file, this file can be extensively edited - the contents of the page can be edited and customized using html.

As distributed, the Remote Libraries page has no specific information in it, and must be edited by your site to provide information appropriate for your institution.



**Figure 2-6. Remote.htm Page**

### Editing the Remote.htm File

This page is an html page that can be edited by someone conversant in html. If you want to customize the appearance of the page you can edit any of its parts. Make sure, however, that you do not mistakenly delete any links that you will want on this page. Note that when editing the links attached to each button that you must enter the entire path, starting with the IP or server address (for example, <http://www.yourserver.org/help/contents.htm>).

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory.

These images are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory on the server.

**Table 2-6. Remote.htm Buttons List**

Image	File
WebVoyage logo	logo.gif

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

## Search Screens

---

Unlike the .htm pages, the search screens are not made up of “pages” of html text. These screens are generated by the WebVoyage program. Most of the contents of the page can be edited in various ways, but some aspects of the screens cannot be changed. Instead of an html file that contains all of the information about the page, the options for customizing the page are contained in separate .ini files. These pages are customized by replacing the image files with new files and altering the options in the .ini files.

The Search Screens are made up of a number of entries in .ini files and many separate images. Many of the images are similar from one search screen to the next, but a number of the images and links depend on which type of search is currently being performed. All of these are outlined below.

You can control which types of searches you want to make available to patrons by entering only the types of searches that you want to appear in the [Valid Tabs] stanza of the search.ini file (see [SEARCH.INI](#) on [page 3-232](#) for more information about the search.ini file). The searches will appear from left to right on-screen in the order that they are listed n the [Valid Tabs] stanza.

### Default Search type

---

Set the default search type (i.e., which search tab will appear first) by making that screen the first in the list of search screens in the [Valid Tabs] stanza of the search.ini file. WebVoyage will then use the search type stanza for that search as the search page layout.

Make the desired search types available in the [Valid\_Tabs] stanza of the search.ini file. Configure each search type in the corresponding stanza. When you select a different search by clicking that searches search tab, WebVoyage will use the corresponding search type stanza for the page layout. [Table 2-7](#) shows the individual search tab configuration stanzas.

Each search type also uses additional configuration, not performed in these stanzas. Complete search type screen configuration follows in the [Customizing Search Screens](#) section.

**Table 2-7. Search Tab Configuration Stanzas**

Search Type	Stanza	See
Simple	[Combined_Search_Page]	<a href="#">Editing the Simple Search Screen on page 2-18</a>

---

**Table 2-7. Search Tab Configuration Stanzas (Continued)**

Search Type	Stanza	See
Builder	[Boolean_Search_Page]	<a href="#">Editing the Builder Search (Boolean Search) Screen on page 2-24</a>
Course Reserve	Drop-Down interface: [Course_Reserve_Search_Page]	<a href="#">Course Reserve Drop-Down interface on page 2-31</a>
	Browse interface: [Course_Reserve_Location], [Course_Reserve_Alpha] and related stanzas	<a href="#">Course Reserve Browse interface on page 5-27</a>
Map (Geospatial)	[Map_Search_Page]  You must purchase the Voyager Geospatial extension product to use map searching.	<a href="#">Editing the Map Search Screen on page 2-37</a>

[Table 2-8](#) details the general search page configuration. For configuration of individual search type options, see the sections on configuring those search types.

**Table 2-8. Page Appearance Variables (Page 1 of 2)**

Variable	Description	Notes	Example
Background	Sets the background of page to a graphic. Overrides the bgcolor variable.	Include the path to the file from HTML directory.	Background=/images/bgnd.gif
Text	Controls the color of the text on a page.	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color.  Empty variable results in text color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	Text=ffffff
bgcolor	Controls the color of the background of a page.	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color.  Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	bgcolor=ffffff

**Table 2-8. Page Appearance Variables (Page 2 of 2)**

Variable	Description	Notes	Example
LINK	Controls the color of unclicked (unvisited) links	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	LINK=ffffff
VLINK	Controls the color of clicked (visited) links	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	VLINK=ffffff
ALINK	Controls the color of links as they are being clicked on a page	You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Empty variable results in color defaulting to the settings of the web browser	ALINK=ffffff
Top and Bottom Toolbars	Links to other pages from the top and bottom tool-bars	See <a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration</a> on <a href="#">page 2-7</a>	
Header	Graphic at the top of the page, above the top toolbar	See <a href="#">header.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-207</a>	header.htm
Footer	Graphic at the bottom of the page, below the bottom toolbar	See <a href="#">footer.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-207</a>	footer.htm

## Customizing Search Screens

Simple Searches, Builder Searches and Course Reserve Searches can be customized individually.

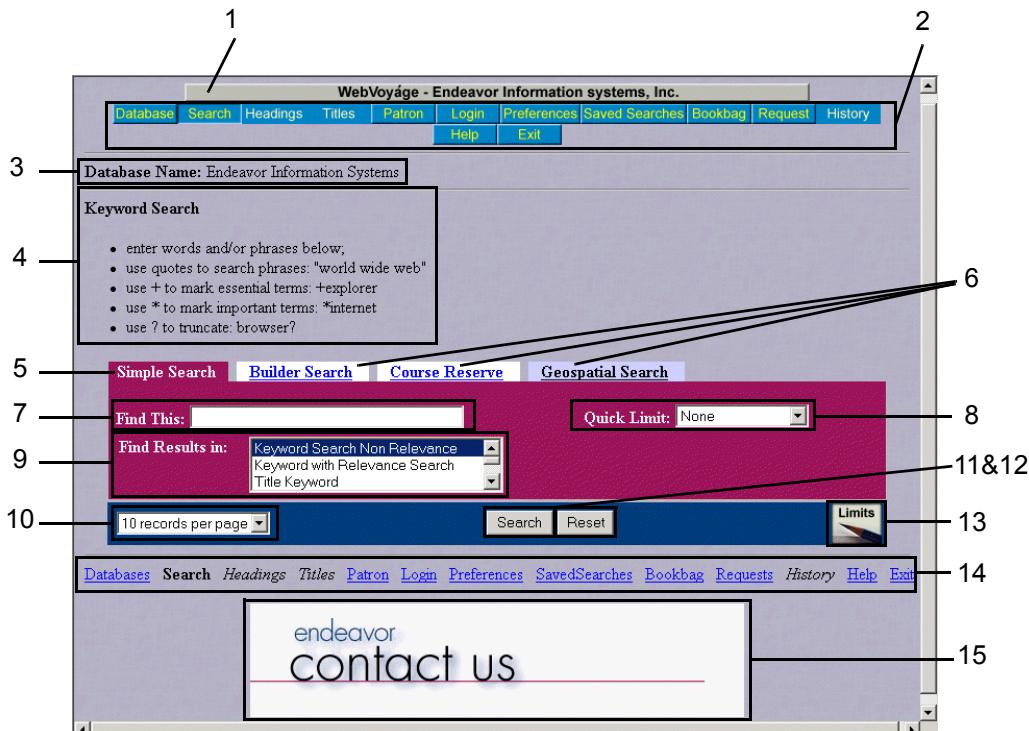
You can designate whether you want Builder searches to be relevance searches or regular searches. To specify relevance for a search, enter **Y** after the BooleanRelevance variable in the Search Dialog stanza of the opac.ini file. To turn off relevance, enter **N**. See [Search Dialog Stanza](#) on [page 3-54](#) for more information about the Search Dialog stanza.

For Simple Searches, you can establish specific searches that will be available through the **Find Results In** drop-down menu, including Keyword and Command searches. Simple Searches are configured in the [Simple\_Search\_Codes] stanza of the search.ini file. See [SEARCH.INI](#) on page 3-232 for more information about the search.ini file.

You can also define the list of limits that appears on the Simple Search page. Each entry that you add to the list can be completely customized. Simple limits are established in the limits.ini file. For more information, see [Limits.ini](#) on page 3-193.

## Editing the Simple Search Screen

You can perform index (non-builder, non-course reserve) searches from the Simple Search Screen. [Figure 2-7](#) shows a sample Simple Search Screen.



**Figure 2-7. Simple Search Screen**

In addition to the general Page Appearance components of the Simple Search page (see [Table 2-8](#)), you can configure the components detailed in [Table 2-9](#).

[Table 2-9](#) also details the callouts in [Figure 2-7](#).

**Table 2-9. Simple Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 1 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Web-Voyage Banner (header)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/header.htm	<a href="#">header.htm on page 3-207</a>
2	Top toolbar	[Toolbar_Top] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration on page 2-7</a>
3	Database Name	Voyager System Administration>System>Default Address>Library Name field	Voyager System Administration User's Manual
4	Search page instructions	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/webvoyage-DisplayDirectory/ht_combinedsearch.htm	<a href="#">Error, Assistance and Block Messages on page 3-199</a>
5a	Active tab color	ActiveTabColor= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ActiveTab-Color on page 3-89</a>
5b	Tab text	Tab_Text=variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Tab_Text on page 3-88</a>
5c	Active font color	ActiveFontColor= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ActiveFont-Color on page 3-89</a>
6a	Inactive tab color	InActiveTabColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InActiveTab-Color on page 3-89</a>
6b	Tab text	Tab_Text= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Tab_Text on page 3-88</a>
6c	Inactive font color	InActiveFontColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InActiveFont-Color on page 3-89</a>

**Table 2-9. Simple Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 2 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
7a	Search term field label	SearchBoxText= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">SearchBox-Text on page 3-91</a>
7b	Search term box size on screen	InputBoxSize= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InputBoxSize on page 3-90</a>
7c	Search term field maximum number of characters	InputBoxMaxLength= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InputBoxMax-Length on page 3-90</a>
8a	Enable Quick Limits?	DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set variable to T to enable Quick Limits on Simple Search screen.</li> <li>• Set variable to F to disable Quick Limits on Simple Search screen.</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> Only available for Simple Searches	<a href="#">DisplayQuick-LimitsDrop-Down on page 3-91</a>
8b	Quick Limits available	[Simple_Limits] stanza of limits.ini file	<a href="#">Simple_Limits Stanza on page 3-194</a>
8c	Quick Limits field label	QuickLimitsText= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">QuickLimits-Text on page 3-91</a>
8d	Quick Limits field size	QuickLimitDropDownSize= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">QuickLimit-DropDown-Size on page 3-91</a>
9a	Indexes searched	[Simple_Search_Codes] stanza of the search.ini file.  The search codes themselves are configured in Voyager System Administration>Search	<a href="#">Simple_Search_Codes Stanza on page 3-234</a>
9b	Indexes searched label	FindResultsText= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">FindResults-Text on page 3-91</a>

**Table 2-9. Simple Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 3 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
9c	Indexes searched box size	SearchTypeDropDownSize= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">SearchType-DropDown-Size on page 3-92</a>
9d	Search style (layout of Simple Search Tab fields)	SearchTypeStyle= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  See Figures <a href="#">2-9</a> through <a href="#">2-11</a> starting on Page <a href="#">2-23</a>	<a href="#">SearchType-Style on page 3-92</a>
10a	Records Per Page drop-down items	The 1, 2, 3, and 4 variables in the [Records_Requested] stanza in opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
10b	Records Per Page label	Description= variable of the [Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
11	Submit search button text	SubmitButton= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">SubmitButton on page 3-100</a>
12a	Reset search button text	ResetButton= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ResetButton on page 3-101</a>
12b	Clear search button text	ClearButton= variable of the [Combined_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This button is not pictured in <a href="#">Figure 2-7</a> on <a href="#">page 2-18</a> . Button only appears after search performed.	<a href="#">ClearButton on page 3-101</a>
13a	Set limits button	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/limit.gif  Only appears if the Limits= variable in the Search_Dialog stanza of the opac.ini file is set to True.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>

**Table 2-9. Simple Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 4 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
13b	Clear limits button	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/clear.gif  <b>NOTE:</b> This button is not pictured in <a href="#">Figure 2-7</a> on <a href="#">page 2-18</a> . Button only appears if limits are set on the Search Limits screen (and the Limits= variable in the Search_Dialog stanza of the opac.ini file is set to True).	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
14	Bottom toolbar	[Toolbar_Bottom] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration on page 2-7</a>
15	Footer	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/footer.htm	<a href="#">footer.htm on page 3-207</a>

The Simple Search Page is configured in the [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza (see [Figure 2-8](#)).

Line#

```

1 [Combined_Search_Page]
2 Background=
3 Text=
4 BGCOLOR=
5 LINK=
6 VLINK=
7 ALINK=
8 Tab_Text=
9 ActiveTabColor=9F175E
10 InactiveTabColor=003F7C
11 ActiveFontColor=FFFFFF
12 InactiveFontColor=FCF7EA
13 SubmitButton=Search

```

**Figure 2-8. Sample [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza**

Line#

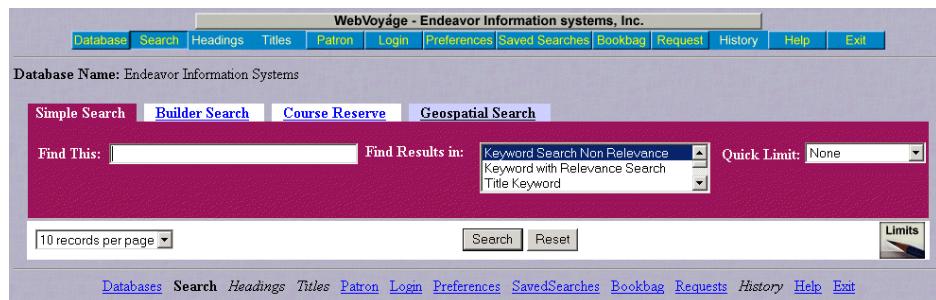
```
14 ClearButton=Clear
15 ResetButton=Reset
16 SearchBoxText=Find This:
17 QuickLimitsText=Quick Limit:
18 FindResultsText=
19 QuickLimitDropDownSize=
20 DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown=T
21 SearchTypeDropDownSize=
22 SearchTypeStyle=1
23 InputBoxSize=40
24 InputBoxMaxLength=100
```

---

**Figure 2-8.** Sample [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza (Continued)

Figures [2-9](#) through [2-11](#) illustrate the three Search Style types.

---



---

**Figure 2-9.** Search Type Style 1 (default)

The screenshot shows the WebVoyage search interface with a maroon header bar. The header contains the title "WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc." and a menu bar with links: Database, Search, Headings, Titles, Patron, Login, Preferences, Saved Searches, Bookbag, Request, History, Help, and Exit. Below the header, the text "Database Name: Endeavor Information Systems" is displayed. The main search area has tabs for Simple Search, Builder Search, Course Reserve, and Geospatial Search. Under Simple Search, there is a "Find This:" input field containing "J", a "Quick Limit:" dropdown set to "None", and a "Find Results in:" dropdown menu with three options: "Keyword Search Non Relevance" (selected), "Keyword with Relevance Search", and "Title Keyword". At the bottom of the search area are buttons for "10 records per page", "Search", "Reset", and a "Limits" icon. A footer navigation bar at the bottom includes links for Databases, Search, Headings, Titles, Patron, Login, Preferences, Saved Searches, Bookbag, Requests, History, Help, and Exit.

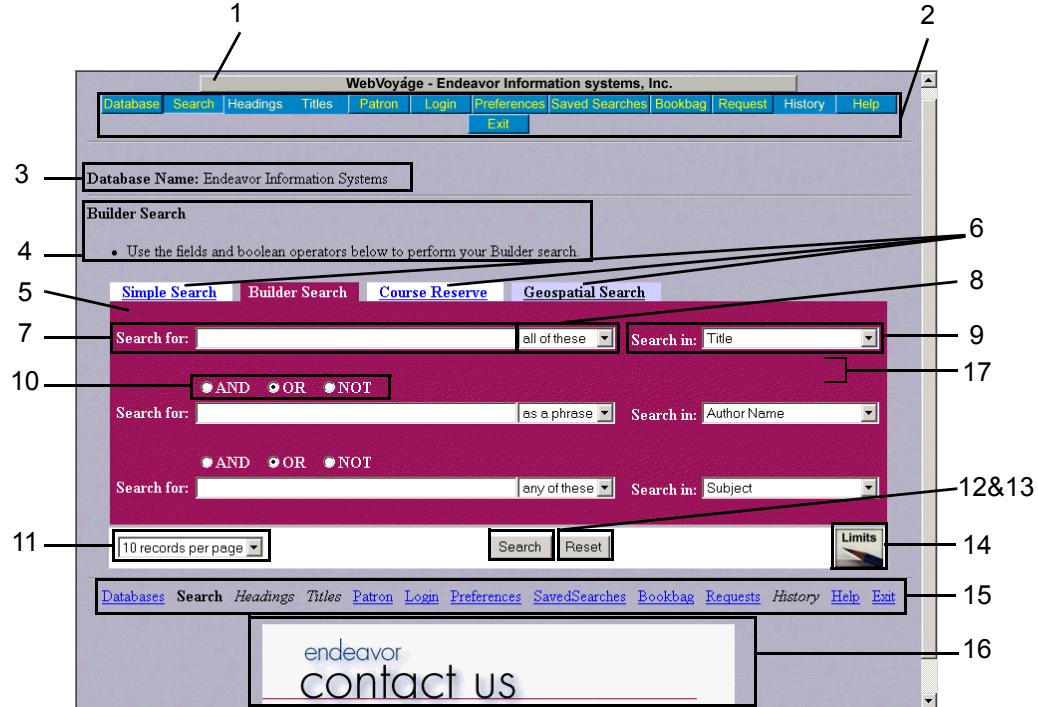
**Figure 2-10. Search Type Style 2 (SearchTypeStyle=2)**

This screenshot is identical to Figure 2-10, showing the WebVoyage search interface with Search Type Style 2. The only difference is the "Quick Limit:" dropdown, which is now set to "None" instead of "None" in Figure 2-10.

**Figure 2-11. Search Type Style 3 (SearchTypeStyle=3)**

### Editing the Builder Search (Boolean Search) Screen

You can perform builder (boolean) searches, combining search terms using boolean operators (and, or, not) from the Builder Search screen. [Figure 2-12](#) shows a sample Builder Search screen.



**Figure 2-12. Builder Search Screen**

In addition to the general Page Appearance components of the Builder Search page (see [Table 2-8](#)), you can configure the components detailed in [Table 2-10](#).

[Table 2-10](#) also details the callouts in [Figure 2-12](#).

**Table 2-10. Builder Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 1 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Web-Voyage Banner (header)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/header.htm	<a href="#">header.htm</a> on page 3-207
2	Top toolbar	[Toolbar_Top] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration</a> on page 2-7

**Table 2-10. Builder Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 2 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
3	Database Name	Voyager System Administration>System>Default Address>Library Name field	Voyager System Administration User's Guide
4	Search page instructions	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/webvoyage- <i>DisplayDirectory</i> /ht_buildersearch.htm	<a href="#">Error, Assistance and Block Messages on page 3-199</a>
5a	Active tab color	ActiveTabColor= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ActiveTabColor on page 3-89</a>
5b	Tab text	Tab_Text=variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Tab_Text on page 3-88</a>
5c	Active font color	ActiveFontColor= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Tab_Text on page 3-88</a>
6a	Inactive tab color	InActiveTabColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InactiveTabColor on page 3-89</a>
6b	Tab text	Tab_Text= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Tab_Text on page 3-88</a>
6c	Inactive font color	InActiveFontColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InactiveFontColor on page 3-89</a>
7a	Number of search fields	Numsets= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">NumSets on page 3-84</a>
7b	Search term field label	Search_For= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Search_For on page 3-83</a>
7c	Search term box size on screen	InputBoxSize= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InputBoxSize on page 3-82</a>

**Table 2-10. Builder Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 3 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
7d	Search term field maximum number of characters	InputBoxMaxLength= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InputBoxMaxLength on page 3-82</a>
8a	Default search term option in drop-down	<p><i>nth</i>_SearchGroup= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.</p> <p><i>nth</i> is the position in the search field row sequence (the total number determined by <a href="#">7a</a> of this table). For example: 1st_SearchGroup=</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• all sets default to AnyofThese= text</li> <li>• as sets default to AsAPhrase= text</li> <li>• any sets default to AllofThese= text</li> </ul>	<a href="#">*_SearchGroup on page 3-85</a>
8b	Search term options text	AnyofThese=, AsAPhrase=, and AllofThese= variables of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file. The variables names themselves cannot be changed or appended.	
9a	Index searched (Search in: drop-down)	<p>Voyager System Administration&gt;Search&gt;Indexes - Keyword Definitions.</p> <p>All keyword searches not suppressed from Web-Voyage (except for JKEY) are available here.</p>	Voyager System Administration User's Guide
9b	Index searched label	Search_In= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Search_In on page 3-83</a>
9c	Index searched selection default	<p><i>nth</i>_WithinField= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.</p> <p><i>nth</i> is the position in the search field row sequence (the total number determined by <a href="#">7a</a> of this table). For example: 2nd_WithinField=</p> <p>Enter the keyword Search Name, exactly as it appears in Voyager System Administration&gt;Search&gt;Indexes - Keyword Definitions, of the desired default choice.</p>	<a href="#">*_WithinField on page 3-85</a>

**Table 2-10. Builder Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 4 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
10a	Boolean operator default	<p><i>nth</i>_NextSetOper= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.</p> <p><i>nth</i> is the position in the search field row sequence before the operator set (the total number determined by 7a of this table). For example: 1st_NextSetOper= sets the default operator for a search including the first and second rows of search fields.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The final row in the sequence does not use a NextSetOper variable as it has no next set to interact with.</p>	<a href="#">*_NextSetOper on page 3-85</a>
10b	Logical operator text	AND=, OR= and NOT= variables of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	
11a	Records Per Page drop-down items	The 1, 2, 3, and 4 variables in the [Records_Requested] stanza in opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
11b	Records Per Page label	Description= variable of the [Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
12	Submit search button text	SubmitButton= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">SubmitButton on page 3-83</a>
13a	Reset search button text	ResetButton= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ResetButton on page 3-83</a>
13b	Clear search button text	<p>ClearButton= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This button is not pictured in <a href="#">Figure 2-7 on page 2-18</a>. Button only appears after search performed.</p>	<a href="#">ClearButton on page 3-83</a>

**Table 2-10. Builder Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 5 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
14a	Set limits button	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/limit.gif  Only appears if the Limits= variable in the Search_Dialog stanza of the opac.ini file is set to True.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
14b	Clear limits button	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/clear.gif  <b>NOTE:</b> This button is not pictured in <a href="#">Figure 2-7 on page 2-18</a> . Button only appears if limits are set on the Search Limits screen (and the Limits= variable in the Search_Dialog stanza of the opac.ini file is set to True).	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
15	Bottom toolbar	[Toolbar_Bottom] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration on page 2-7</a>
16	Footer	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/footer.htm	<a href="#">footer.htm on page 3-207</a>
17	Blank lines between search row sets	StripBlankLines= variable of the [Boolean_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  Set variable to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• T to remove blank lines between search field sets</li> <li>• F to include blank lines between search field sets</li> </ul>	<a href="#">StripBlankLines on page 3-84</a>

**The [Boolean\_Search\_Page] stanza**

The Builder Search Page is configured in the [Boolean\_Search\_Page] stanza (see [Figure 2-13](#)).

Line#

```
1 [Boolean_Search_Page]
2 Background=
3 Text=
4 BGCOLOR=
5 LINK=
6 VLINK=
7 ALINK=
8 TableColor=
9 TableText=
10 Tab_Text=Builder Search
11 ActiveTabColor=#982848
12 InactiveTabColor=#606CC0
13 ActiveFontColor="#FFFFFF"
14 InactiveFontColor="#FFFFFF"
15 Search_For=Search for:
16 Search_In=Search in:
17 SubmitButton=Search
18 ClearButton=Clear
19 ResetButton=Reset
20 StripBlankLines=F
21 InputBoxSize=50
22 InputBoxMaxLength=100
23 NumSets=3
24 1st_SearchGroup=all
25 1st_WithinField=Title
26 1st_NextSetOper=or
27 2nd_SearchGroup=as
28 2nd_WithinField=Author Name
29 2nd_NextSetOper=or
30 3rd_SearchGroup=any
```

**Figure 2-13.** Sample [Boolean\_Search\_Page] stanza

Line#	
31	3rd_WithinField=Subject
32	AnyOfThese=any of these
33	AllOfThese=all of these
34	AsAPhrase=as a phrase
35	AND=And
36	OR=Or
37	NOT=Not

---

**Figure 2-13.** Sample [Boolean\_Search\_Page] stanza (Continued)

---

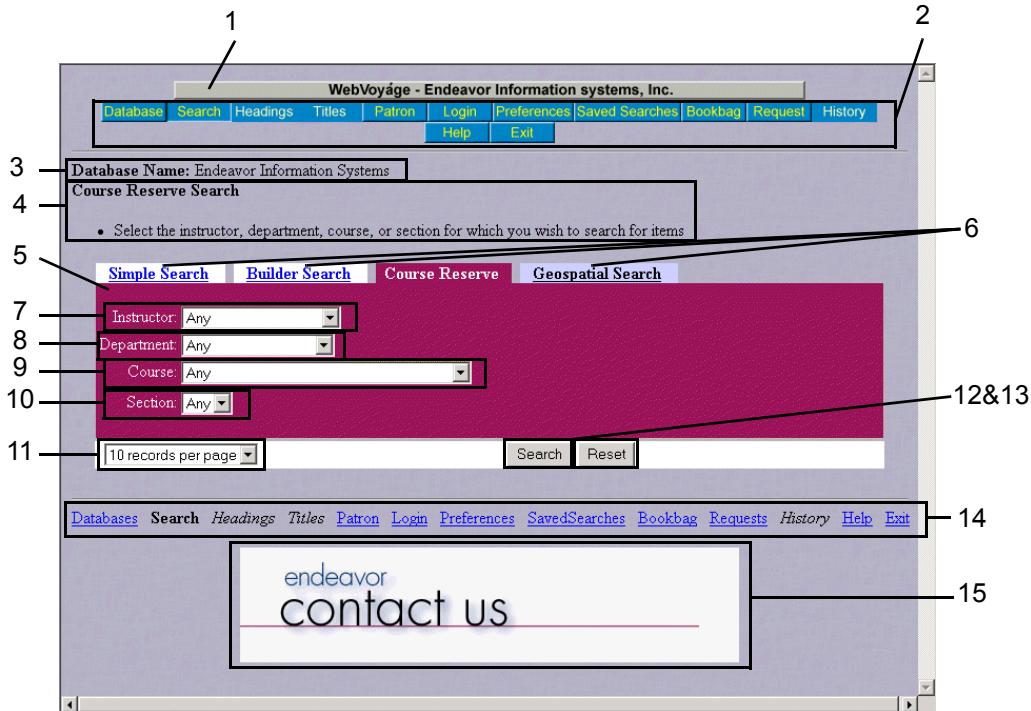
### **Editing the Course Reserve Search Screen**

---

You can perform course reserve searches from the Course Reserve Search screen. The Course Reserve Search screen can use either the standard drop-down style, or a browse style (but not both).

#### **Course Reserve Drop-Down interface**

[Figure 2-14](#) shows a sample Course Reserve search screen in the drop-down interface style.



**Figure 2-14. Course Reserve Search Screen (drop-down interface)**

In addition to the general Page Appearance components of the Course Reserve Search screen (see [Table 2-8](#)), you can configure the components detailed in [Table 2-11](#).

[Table 2-11](#) also details the callouts in [Figure 2-14](#).

**Table 2-11. Course Reserve Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 1 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Web-Voyage Banner (header)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/header.htm	<a href="#">header.htm on page 3-207</a>
2	Top toolbar	[Toolbar_Top] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration on page 2-7</a>

**Table 2-11. Course Reserve Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 2 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
3	Database Name	Voyager System Administration>System>Default Address>Library Name field	Voyager System Administration User's Manual
4	Search page instructions	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage-webvoyage-DisplayDirectory/ht_coursereserve.htm	<a href="#">Error, Assistance and Block Messages on page 3-199</a>
5a	Active tab color	ActiveTabColor= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ActiveTabColor on page 3-98</a>
5b	Tab text	Tab_Text=variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Tab_Text on page 3-99</a>
5c	Active font color	ActiveFontColor= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ActiveFont-Color on page 3-98</a>
6a	Inactive tab color	InActiveTabColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InActiveTab-Color on page 3-98</a>
6b	Tab text	Tab_Text= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Tab_Text on page 3-99</a>
6c	Inactive font color	InActiveFontColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InActiveFont-Color on page 3-99</a>
7a	Instructor search drop-down items	Instructors with courses linked to records in the Voyager Circulation module appear for selection here.	Voyager Circulation User's Guide
7b	Instructor search drop-down label	Instructor= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Instructor on page 3-99</a>

**Table 2-11. Course Reserve Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 3 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
8a	Department search drop-down items	Departments with courses linked to records in the Voyager Circulation module appear for selection here.	Voyager Circulation User's Guide
8b	Department search drop-down label	Department= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Department on page 3-100</a>
9a	Course search drop-down items	Courses linked to records in the Voyager Circulation module appear for selection here.	Voyager Circulation User's Guide
9b	Course search drop-down label	Course= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Course on page 3-100</a>
10a	Section search drop-down items	Sections with courses linked to records in the Voyager Circulation module appear for selection here.	Voyager Circulation User's Guide
10b	Section search drop-down label	Section= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Section on page 3-100</a>
11a	Records Per Page drop-down items	The 1, 2, 3, and 4 variables in the [Records_Requested] stanza in opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
11b	Records Per Page label	Description= variable of the [Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
12	Submit search button text	SubmitButton= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">SubmitButton on page 3-100</a>

**Table 2-11. Course Reserve Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 4 of 4)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
13a	Reset search button text	ResetButton= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ResetButton on page 3-101</a>
13b	Clear search button text	ClearButton= variable of the [Course_Reserve_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This button is not pictured in <a href="#">Figure 2-7</a> on <a href="#">page 2-18</a> . Button only appears after search performed.	<a href="#">ClearButton on page 3-101</a>
14	Bottom toolbar	[Toolbar_Bottom] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration on page 2-7</a>
15	Footer	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/footer.htm	<a href="#">footer.htm on page 3-207</a>

**NOTE:**

The display of the inactive tab for the Course Reserve *drop-down* interface is determined by the “inactive” variables in the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza.

**The [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza**

The Course Reserve Search Page is configured in the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza (see [Figure 2-15](#)).

Line#

```

1  [Course_Reserve_Search_Page]
2  Background=
3  Text=
4  BGCOLOR=
5  LINK=

```

**Figure 2-15. Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza**

Line#

```
6    VLINK=
7    ALINK=
8    TableColor=
9    TableText=
10   ActiveTabColor=#982848
11   InactiveTabColor=#606CC0
12   ActiveFontColor=#FFFFFF
13   InactiveFontColor=#FFFFFF
14   Tab_Text=Course Reserve
15   Any=Any
16   Instructor=Instructor:
17   Department=Department:
18   Course=Course:
19   Section=Section:
20   SubmitButton=Search
21   ClearButton=Clear
22   ResetButton=Reset
23   [Course_Reserve_Search_Page]
24   Background=
25   Text=
26   BGCOLOR=
27   LINK=
28   VLINK=
29   ALINK=
30   TableColor=
31   TableText=
32   ActiveTabColor=#982848
```

**Figure 2-15. Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza (Continued)**

Line#

```

33 InactiveTabColor=#606CC0
34 ActiveFontColor=#FFFFFF
35 InactiveFontColor=#FFFFFF
36 Tab_Text=Course Reserve
37 Any=Any

```

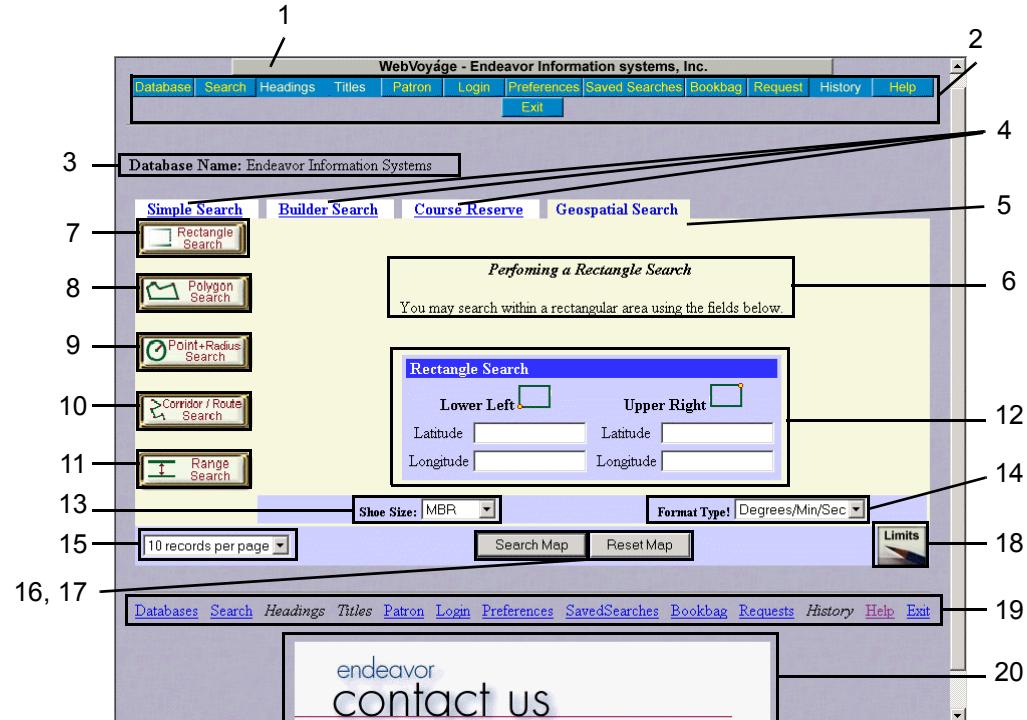
**Figure 2-15.** Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza (Continued)

### Editing the Map Search Screen

---

You can perform Map (Geospatial) searches from the Geospatial Search screen.

[Figure 2-16](#) shows a sample Geospatial search screen.



**Figure 2-16.** Geospatial (Map) Search Screen

In addition to the general Page Appearance components of the Geospatial Search screen (see [Table 2-8](#)), you can configure the components detailed in [Table 2-12](#).

---

[Table 2-12](#) also details the callouts in [Figure 2-16](#).

**Table 2-12. Geospatial Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 1 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Web-Voyage Banner (header)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/header.htm	<a href="#">header.htm on page 3-207</a>
2	Top toolbar	[Toolbar_Top] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration on page 2-7</a>
3	Database Name	Voyager System Administration>System>Default Address>Library Name field	Voyager System Administration User's Manual
4a	Inactive tab color	InActiveTabColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Inactive Map Search Tab Color on page 3-26</a>
4b	Tab text	Tab_Text= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Map Search Tab Text on page 3-27</a>
4c	Inactive font color	InActiveFontColor= variable of the corresponding stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">InactiveFont-Color on page 3-27</a>
5a	Active tab color	ActiveTabColor= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ActiveTabColor on page 3-89</a>
5b	Tab text	Tab_Text=variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Map Search Tab Text on page 3-27</a>
5c	Active font color	ActiveFontColor= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ActiveFont-Color on page 3-89</a>

**Table 2-12. Geospatial Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 2 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
6	Search page instructions	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/webvoyage- <i>DisplayDirectory</i> /ht_geosearch_x.htm  X stands for a number between 1 and 5, corresponding to the geospatial search type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ht_geosearch_1.htm= Rectangle</li><li>• ht_geosearch_2.htm= Polygon</li><li>• ht_geosearch_3.htm= Point and Radius</li><li>• ht_geosearch_4.htm= Corridor/Route</li><li>• ht_geosearch_5.htm= Range</li></ul>	<a href="#">Error, Assistance and Block Messages on page 3-199</a>
7a	Rectangle button not pressed (up)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/bt_rectangle.gif  Appearance of button when you are on any geospatial search screen other than the Rectangle search.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
7b	Rectangle button after pressed (down)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/d-bt_rectangle.gif  Appearance of button when you are on the Rectangle search screen.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
8a	Polygon button not pressed (up)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/bt_polygon.gif  Appearance of button when you are on any geospatial search screen other than the Polygon search.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
8b	Polygon button after pressed (down)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/d-bt_polygon.gif  Appearance of button when you are on the Polygon search screen.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
9a	Point and Radius button not pressed (up)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/bt_point.gif  Appearance of button when you are on any geospatial search screen other than the Point and Radius search.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>
9b	Point and Radius button after pressed (down)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/d-bt_point.gif  Appearance of button when you are on the Point and Radius search screen.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>

**Table 2-12. Geospatial Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 3 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
10a	Corridor/ Route but- ton not pressed (up)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/ bt_route.gif  Appearance of button when you are on any geospatial search screen other than the Corridor/ Route search.	<a href="#">Image Files</a> on page 3-209
10b	Corridor/ Route but- ton after pressed (down)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/d- bt_route.gif  Appearance of button when you are on the Cor- ridor/Route search screen.	<a href="#">Image Files</a> on page 3-209
11a	Range but- ton not pressed (up)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/ bt_range.gif  Appearance of button when you are on any geospatial search screen other than the Range search.	<a href="#">Image Files</a> on page 3-209
11b	Range but- ton after pressed (down)	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/d- bt_range.gif  Appearance of button when you are on the Range search screen.	<a href="#">Image Files</a> on page 3-209
12	Map Search dia- log box	Depends on which Geospatial search screen is active. See individual sections on Geospatial dialog box configuration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Rectangle Search Dialog Box</a> on page 2-42</li> <li>• <a href="#">Polygon Search Dialog Box</a> on page 2-43</li> <li>• <a href="#">Point And Radius Search Dialog Box</a> on page 2-44</li> <li>• <a href="#">Corridor/Route Search Dialog Box</a> on page 2-45</li> <li>• <a href="#">Range Search Dialog Box</a> on page 2-47</li> </ul>	
13a	Footprint drop down box label	Footprint= variable of the [Map_Footprint] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Map_Footprint Stanza</a> on page 3-32
13b	Footprint drop-down box label text color	FontColor= variable of the [Map_Footprint] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Footprint Cap- tion Text Font Color</a> on page 3-33
14a	Format type drop- down box label	FormatType= variable of the [Map_FormatType] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Map Format Type Configu- ration</a> on page 3-33

**Table 2-12. Geospatial Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 4 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
14b	Format drop-down box label text color	FontColor= variable of the [Map_FormatType] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Format Type Caption Font Color on page 3-33</a>
14c	UTM Meters selection text in format drop-down	UTM_Meters= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file. UTM stands for <i>Universal Transverse Mercator</i>	<a href="#">UTM Meters Caption Text on page 3-31</a>
15a	Records Per Page drop-down items	The 1, 2, 3, and 4 variables in the [Records_Requested] stanza in opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
15b	Records Per Page label	Description= variable of the [Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25</a>
16	Submit search button text	SubmitButton= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">SubmitButton on page 3-83</a>
17a	Reset search button text	ResetButton= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">ResetButton on page 3-83</a>
17b	Clear search button text	ClearButton= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This button is not pictured in <a href="#">Figure 2-7</a> on <a href="#">page 2-18</a> . Button only appears after search performed.	<a href="#">ClearButton on page 3-83</a>
18a	Set limits button	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/limit.gif  Only appears if the Limits= variable in the Search_Dialog stanza of the opac.ini file is set to True.	<a href="#">Image Files on page 3-209</a>

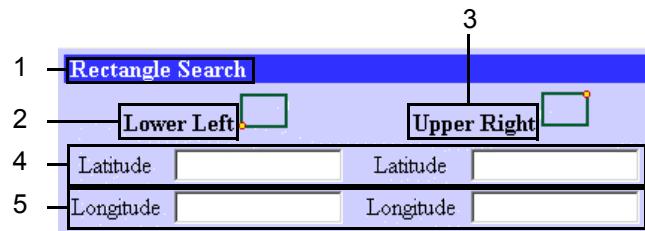
**Table 2-12. Geospatial Search Screen Configuration Reference (Page 5 of 5)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
18b	Clear limits button	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/clear.gif  <b>NOTE:</b> This button is not pictured in <a href="#">Figure 2-7</a> on <a href="#">page 2-18</a> . Button only appears if limits are set on the Search Limits screen (and the Limits= variable in the Search_Dialog stanza of the opac.ini file is set to True).	<a href="#">Image Files</a> on <a href="#">page 3-209</a>
19	Bottom toolbar	[Toolbar_Bottom] stanza of opac.ini	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration</a> on <a href="#">page 2-7</a>
20	Footer	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/footer.htm	<a href="#">footer.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-207</a>

The following sections detail the individual Geospatial search type dialog boxes (referred to in number [12](#) of [Table 2-12](#) on [page 2-38](#)).

### Rectangle Search Dialog Box

[Figure 2-17](#) shows the Rectangle Search dialog box.



**Figure 2-17. Rectangle Search dialog box**

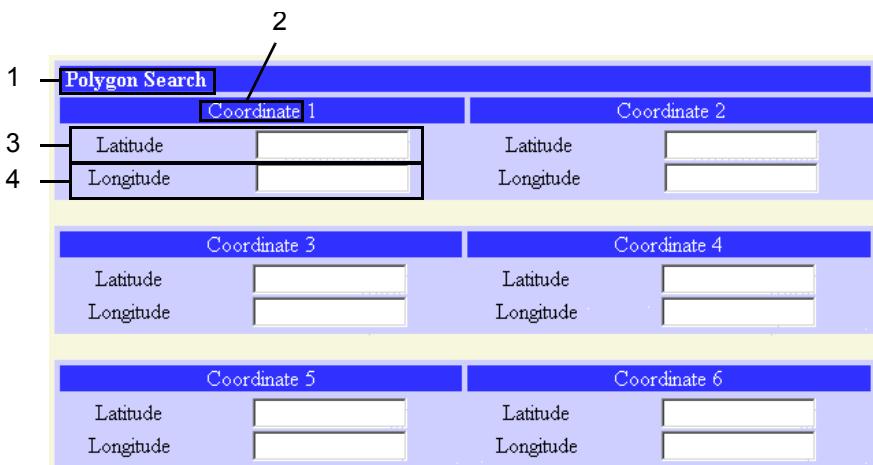
[Table 2-13](#) details the Rectangle Search dialog box components.

**Table 2-13. Rectangle Search Dialog Configuration Reference**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Dialog box title	Rectangle_Search= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Rectangle Search Heading on page 3-28</a>
2	Lower left coordinate set label	Lower_Left= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration on page 2-7</a>
3	Upper right coordinate set label	Upper_Right= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Upper Right Coordinate Caption on page 3-30</a>
4	Latitude field label	Latitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Latitude Field on page 3-28</a>
5	Longitude field label	Longitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Longitude Field on page 3-28</a>

### Polygon Search Dialog Box

[Figure 2-18](#) shows the Polygon Search dialog box.



**Figure 2-18. Polygon Search dialog box**

---

[Table 2-14](#) details the Polygon Search dialog box components.

**Table 2-14. Polygon Search Dialog Configuration Reference**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Dialog box title	Polygon_Search= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Polygon Search Heading</a> on <a href="#">page 3-29</a>
2	Coordinate set heading label	Coordinate= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This variable controls the headings of all sets of coordinates on the Polygon Search screen.	<a href="#">Coordinate Description</a> on <a href="#">page 3-31</a>
3	Latitude field label	Latitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This variable controls the labels of all latitude fields on the Polygon Search screen.	<a href="#">Latitude Field</a> on <a href="#">page 3-28</a>
4	Longitude field label	Longitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This variable controls the labels of all longitude fields on the Polygon Search screen.	<a href="#">Longitude Field</a> on <a href="#">page 3-28</a>
	Number of sets of coordinate fields	Number_Of_Coordinates= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Maximum Number of Coordinate Points</a> on <a href="#">page 3-32</a>

## Point And Radius Search Dialog Box

[Figure 2-19](#) shows the Point and Radius Search dialog box.



**Figure 2-19. Point and Radius Search dialog box**

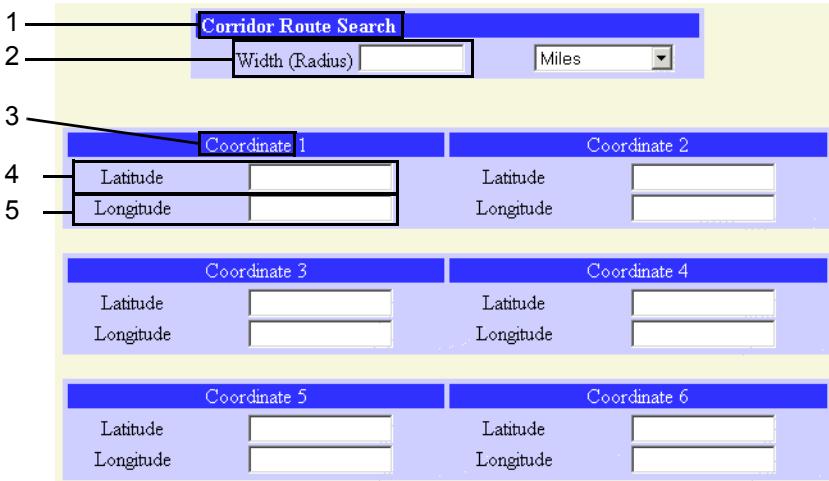
[Table 2-15](#) details the Point and Radius Search dialog box components.

**Table 2-15. Point and Radius Search Dialog Configuration Reference**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Dialog box title	Point_And_Radius_Search= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Point and Radius Search Heading on page 3-29</a>
2	Latitude field label	Latitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Latitude Field on page 3-28</a>
3	Longitude field label	Longitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Longitude Field on page 3-28</a>
4	Radius field label	Radius_Text= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Radius Text Caption on page 3-29</a>

### Corridor/Route Search Dialog Box

[Figure 2-19](#) shows the Corridor/Route Search dialog box.



**Figure 2-20. Corridor/Route Search dialog box**

[Table 2-16](#) details the Corridor/Route Search dialog box components.

**Table 2-16. Corridor/Route Search Dialog Configuration Reference**

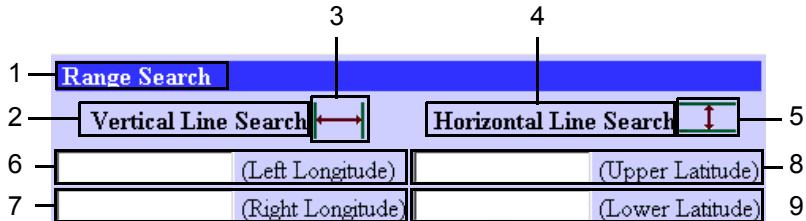
#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Dialog box title	Corridor_Search= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Corridor Search Heading on page 3-29</a>
2	Corridor width field label	Width= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Width Field Caption on page 3-32</a>
3	Coordinate set heading label	Coordinate= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This variable controls the headings of all sets of coordinates on the Polygon Search screen.	<a href="#">Coordinate Description on page 3-31</a>
4	Latitude field label	Latitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This variable controls the labels of all latitude fields on the Polygon Search screen.	<a href="#">Latitude Field on page 3-28</a>

**Table 2-16. Corridor/Route Search Dialog Configuration Reference (Continued)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
5	Longitude field label	Longitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.  <b>NOTE:</b> This variable controls the labels of all longitude fields on the Polygon Search screen.	<a href="#">Longitude Field on page 3-28</a>
	Number of sets of coordinate fields	Number_Of_Coordinates= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Maximum Number of Coordinate Points on page 3-32</a>

**Range Search Dialog Box**

[Figure 2-21](#) shows the Range Search dialog box.

**Figure 2-21. Range Search dialog box**

[Table 2-13](#) details the Range Search dialog box components.

**Table 2-17. Range Search Dialog Configuration Reference**

#	Description	Configured in	See
1	Dialog box title	Range_Search= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Range Search Heading on page 3-29</a>
2	Vertical search field set label	Verticle_Line_Search= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Longitude Coordinate Column Caption (Range Search Screen) on page 3-31</a>

**Table 2-17. Range Search Dialog Configuration Reference (Continued)**

#	Description	Configured in	See
3	Vertical search field set graphic'	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/range_vert.gif	<a href="#">Image Files</a> on page 3-209
4	Horizontal search field set label	Horizontal_Line_Search= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Latitude Coordinate Column Caption (Range Search Screen)</a> on page 3-31
5	Horizontal search field set graphic'	/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images/range_horz.gif	<a href="#">Image Files</a> on page 3-209
6	Left Longitude field label	Left_Longitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Left Longitude Coordinate Field Caption</a> on page 3-30
7	Right Longitude field label	Right_Longitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Right Longitude Coordinate Field Caption</a> on page 3-31
8	Upper latitude field label	Upper_Latitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Upper Latitude Caption</a> on page 3-30
9	Lower latitude field label	Lower_Latitude= variable of the [Map_Search_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.	<a href="#">Lower Latitude Caption</a> on page 3-30

### The [Map\_Search\_Page] stanza

The Geospatial (Map) Search Page is configured in the [Map\_Search\_Page] stanza (see [Figure 2-15](#)).

Line#

```
1 [Map_Search_Page]
2 Background=
3 Text=
4 BGCOLOR=FFFF00
5 LINK=
6 VLINK=
7 ALINK=
8 ActiveFontColor=
9 InactiveFontColor=#000000
10 ActiveTabColor=
11 InactiveTabColor=
12 Tab_Text=
13 Top_BackGround_Color=3333FF
14 Table_Background_Color=CCCCFF
15 Font_Color=000000
16 Top_Font_Color=FFFFFF
17 Latitude=Latitude
18 Longitude=Longitude
19 Rectangle_Search=
20 Corridor_Search=
21 Point_and_Radius_Search=
22 Radius_Text=
23 Polygon_Search=
24 Range_Search=
25 Lower_Left=
26 Upper_Right=
27 Upper_Latitude=
28 Lower_Latitude=
29 Left_Longitude=
30 Right_Longitude=
```

---

Figure 2-22. Sample [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza

---

```
Line#  
31 Vertical_Line_Search=  
32 Horizontal_Line_Search=  
33 UTM_Meters=  
34 Coordinate=  
35 Width=  
36 No_Format_Defined=No Format Defined !!!  
37 Number_Of_Coordinates=4  
38 SubmitButton=Search Map  
39 ResetButton=Reset Map
```

---

**Figure 2-22. Sample [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza (Continued)**

## **The Limits.ini File**

---

The actual limits that appear in the list on the search limits screen can be changed by altering the contents of the limits.ini file. The entire contents of the lists on the limits screen is contained in the limits.ini file.

### **Limits Stanza**

The [Limits] stanza defines the order in which the sets of limits are to appear on-screen. You may specify the following limit types in any order: *Language*, *Location*, *Date*, *Medium*, *Type*, *Place* and *Status*. If any are misspelled or not present, that limit type will not be available on the Limits page.

### **Search Limits Stanzas**

The first five stanzas (ten if using map searching) of the limits.ini file each contain one type of limit. The following stanzas are contained in the limits.ini file:

- Language Limits
- Medium Limits
- Type Limits
- Status Limits
- Place Limits
- Map Projection Limits (if using Map Searching)
- Map Date Type Limits (if using Map Searching)

- Map Class Classification (if using Map Searching)
- Map Release Classification (if using Map Searching)
- Map Type Classification (if using Map Searching)

The order of the Language, Location, Date, Medium, Type, Place, and Status limits is determined by the order that the limit types are listed in the [Limits] stanza of the limits.ini file.

The order of elements within a single variable type (i.e., the order of the Medium limit types) can also be changed by changing the order in which the variables appear in the stanza.

In the stanzas of the limits.ini file, the labels associated with each variable name and data element can be customized. Deleting individual lines of information removes that information from the Limits dialog.

Removing an entire stanza prevents those limits from being available to the patrons; however, it will not prevent the empty list from appearing. In order to prevent the entire list from appearing on-screen, you must remove the variable for that list from the [Limit\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-104](#).

---

```
[Language Limits]
ENG=English
ENM=English, Middle (1100-1500)
ANG=English, Old (ca. 450-1100)
ARA=Arabic
CHI=Chinese
DAN=Danish
DUT=Dutch
etc.
```

---

**Figure 2-23. Sample Language Limits Stanza**

[Figure 2-24](#) shows the Limits screen, as defined by the above example.

The screenshot shows a 'Search Limits' interface with the following fields:

- Date:** A dropdown menu with options: C = C > C < C Range.
- Language:** A dropdown menu with options: English ▲, Arabic ▲, Chinese ▼.
- Item Type:** A dropdown menu with options: Book ▲, Serial ▲, Archival/Manuscript Material ▼.
- Medium:** A dropdown menu with options: Map ▲, Computer File ▲, Globe ▼.
- Location:** A dropdown menu with options: 5 HR Short Loan ▲, Acquisitions ▲, Archives ▼.
- Publication Status:** A dropdown menu with options: Serial Currently Published ▲, Serial Item Ceased Publication ▲, Serial Status Unknown ▼.
- Place of Publication:** A dropdown menu with options: Albania ▲, Alberta ▲, Algeria ▼.

At the bottom right of the screen are 'Submit' and 'Limits' buttons.

**Figure 2-24. Limits Screen**

### Simple\_Limits Stanza

The [Simple\_Limits] and any following stanzas allow you to specify what limits will appear in the Simple Limits drop-down on the Simple Search screen on the Simple Search page.

The contents of the [Simple\_Limits] stanza appear as the entries in the Simple Limits drop-down menu. Note that the first line of the stanza *must* be the Counter=X. X represents how many entries follow the Counter line in the stanza and should be the line number of the last entry in the list. The remaining entries in the stanza (1=, 2=, and so on) are the different limits that will appear in the list. The information that you type after each key is the description that will appear in the drop-down list.

### Limit Definition Stanzas

Each remaining stanza defines each individual simple limit in turn. The name of each stanza should be the *exact* name that you entered in the [Simple\_Limits] stanza. The limit is defined by creating a list of limits under each stanza that will all be applied when that name is selected. You may have as many limits appear in a stanza as you want. For example, if you wanted a limit that would be "Musical Scores in French but published in the United States," you would have a stanza that read:

```
[Musical Scores in French, Published in America]
1=TYPE=cm
2=LANG=FRE
3=PLAC=xxu
```

**Figure 2-25. Limit Definition Stanza**

Each stanza is made up of a numbered list of limit types. After each number and equals sign is a pair of expressions: [Limit Type]=[Limit Code]. For example, a line might read:

**1=LANG=CHI**

The Limit Type is used to specify what kind of limit this entry is to be (i.e., Date, Language, Location, Medium, Place, Status, Item Type). The Limit Type must be in all capital letters; lowercase is not allowed. The Limit Type must be one of the following:

**Table 2-18. Limit Codes and Names**

Limit Code	Limit Name
DATE	Date
LANG	Language
LOCA	Location
MEDI	Medium
PLAC	Place
STAT	Status
TYPE	Item Type

The Limit Code is the identifying string of between one and three characters that refers to the specific limit. This code can be found in either the limits.ini file or in the System Administration module.

- For Language, Medium, Type, Status and Place limits, the limit codes are all listed in the limits.ini. Under each of those respective stanzas in the limits.ini is a list of limit codes. The code in each line is the string that precedes the name of a particular limit. For example, for a Medium limit of Map, you would look for Map in the Medium Limits stanza, for which the limit code is **a**.

- The list of Location limits comes from the **System> Location Limit Groups** dialog in the System Administration module. Any limit groups in the list that do not have the **Suppress in OPAC** button pressed will be available to select as limits in WebVoyage. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.
- The Date limit cannot be configured.

## Search Limits Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory on the server.

**Table 2-19. Search Limits Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Select Databases screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif or UpHeadings.gif	
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif or UpTitles.gif	
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
“Login” button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen
“Request” button	UpRequest.gif	Submit Request screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif or DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)

**Table 2-19. Search Limits Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
Background	bg4.gif	
"Clear Limit" button	clear.gif	Discards all limits currently set
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

**Editing the Database Selection Screen**

Most of the information on the Database Selection screen comes from the connect.ini file (in the `voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage` directory). The list of databases that appears on-screen is stored in the connect.ini file. This list contains only the list of databases that will be available in WebVoyage.

**! IMPORTANT:**

*You must put all of the databases that you want to be available to anyone into the connect.ini file. You can control access to databases in a number of ways (see "Access Control Groups" in the Voyager System Administration User's Guide), but if a database that certain patrons are allowed to access does not also appear in the connect.ini file, no one will be allowed to access that database. Specific information on establishing the connection is stored in the System Administration module in the System-wide>Search Configuration>Database Definitions dialog box.*

**Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

---

## Toolbars

The toolbar for the Database screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied in the same fashion to all of the screens that use the toolbar.

## Components of the Database Selection Screen

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of the screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-101](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-101](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-101](#).

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-101](#).

### Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-101](#).

### Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza on page 3-101](#).

### Search Help Text

The informational text that appears on the database screen (by default, the text that appears between the banner buttons and the list of databases) can be edited. The text is in an html file called **dbselmsg.htm**. The contents of this file can be edited to contain anything that you might want. The position of this text cannot be set. This file resides in the directories under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage.

### Connect Button

The text that appears on the Connect Button can be changed by editing the text that appears after the SubmitButton= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza on page 3-101](#).

### Clear Button

The text that appears on the Clear Button can be changed by editing the text that appears after the ResetButton= variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza on page 3-101](#).

### Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [Toolbar\\_Top and Toolbar\\_Bottom Stanzas on page 3-66](#)). These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

### Server Error Message

The message that appears when WebVoyage encounters a server error or an error which otherwise prevents it from receiving data from the server can be changed by editing the message following the No\_Bib\_Data variable in the Database\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Database\\_Page Stanza on page 3-101](#).

---

## The Connect.ini File

The database selection screen gets the list of databases from the connect.ini file in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory. This file must contain every database that you want to appear on the screen at any time. Access to databases can be controlled in a number of ways (see "Access Control Groups" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*); however, if a database does not appear in this list, it will not be available to anyone whether they have rights to it or not. See [The connect.ini file on page 3-177](#) for more information.

## Database Selection Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory on the server.

**Table 2-20. Database Selection Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button (pressed)	DownDatabase.gif	None - this is the current screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif <b>OR</b> UpHeadings.gif	
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif <b>OR</b> UpTitles.gif	
"Patron" button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
"Login" button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen
"Request" button	UpRequest.gif	Submit Request screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)

**Table 2-20. Database Selection Buttons List**

<b>Image</b>	<b>File</b>	<b>Target</b>
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web- Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
Background	bg4.gif	
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web- Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

**Editing the Simultaneous Search Screen**

The Simultaneous Search screen displays when a search is performed on more than one database. The Simultaneous Search screen is similar to the search screens. Some of the information can be customized for the Simultaneous Search screen in the way that you would for the Simple Search screen (for example, you can set a different background or text color on this screen). However, some of the information, like the toolbar, is held in common among a number of different screens. When edited, this information will apply to every screen that uses the toolbar.

**Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appear on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

**Toolbars**

The toolbar for the Simultaneous Search screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied in the same fashion to all of the screens that use the toolbar.

---

## **Components of the Simultaneous Search Screen**

### **Background Image**

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of the screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Background Color of Table**

You can specify the background color of the table on the Simultaneous Search page by entering an RGB color code after the TableColor= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Color of Text in Table**

You can specify the color of the text in the table on the Simultaneous Search page by entering an RBG color code after the TableText= variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Table Header**

To specify the header of the table on the Simultaneous Search screen, enter the description after the Simultaneous\_Searching variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Table Column Header, Left**

To specify the column header that appears on the left side of the table on the Simultaneous Search page, enter the description after the Database\_Name variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Table Column Header, Right**

To specify the column header that appears on the right side of the table on the Simultaneous Search page, enter the description after the Search\_Status variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Stop Link Text**

To specify the text for the hyperlink that will cause any ongoing searches to end on the Simultaneous Search page, enter the description after the Stop variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

### **Show Link Text**

To specify the text for the hyperlink on the Simultaneous Search page that will cause the search results currently received to display in the Titles List or Headings List, enter the description after the Show variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza on page 3-149](#).

---

### **Text of Ongoing Search Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page while searching is ongoing for a particular database, enter the description after the Status\_Searching variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Receiving Records Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when records are being received from a particular database, enter the description after the Status\_Receiving variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Failed Connection Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a connection cannot be established to a particular database, enter the description after the Status\_DBFail variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Failed Search Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a search fails on a particular database, enter the description after the Status\_SearchFail variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Incompatible Search Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a search is not the proper type for a particular database, enter the description after the Status\_SearchIncompatible variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Completed Search Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when the search has been completed and all records downloaded for a particular database, enter the description after the Status\_SearchDone variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Database Resetting Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a particular database is resetting itself, enter the description after the Status\_DBReset variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Database Version Incompatible Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a particular database is a version that is incompatible with your system, enter the description after the Status\_DBVersion variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

### **Text of Database License Restriction Message**

To specify the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a particular database cannot be searched because of license restrictions, enter the description after the Status\_DBLicense variable in the Sim\_Search\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Sim\\_Search\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-149](#).

## **Editing the Headings List Screen**

---

The Headings List screen is similar to the other search screens. Some of the information can be customized for the Headings List screen in the way that you would for the Simple Search screen (for example, you can set a different background or text color on this screen). However, some of the information, like the toolbar, is held in common among a number of different screens. When edited, this information will apply to every screen that uses the toolbar.

### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

---

## Toolbars

The toolbar for the Headings List screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied in the same fashion to all of the screens that use the toolbar.

## Components of the Headings List Screen

**Background Image** You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of the screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Headings\\_Page Stanza on page 3-102](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Headings\\_Page Stanza on page 3-102](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Headings\\_Page Stanza on page 3-102](#).

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Headings\\_Page Stanza on page 3-102](#).

### Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Headings\\_Page Stanza on page 3-102](#).

### Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Headings\\_Page Stanza on page 3-102](#).

### **Search Request label**

To specify the label for the type and content of the current search, enter the description after the Search\_Request variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. (If no text is entered, a colon will appear.) This setting applies to every search result screen. For more information, see [Descriptions of Simple Search Types in WebVoyage](#) on [page 3-62](#).

### **Search Request Text for Combined Searches**

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for Simple Searches (Combined Searches) on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. For more information, see [Descriptions of Simple Search Types in WebVoyage](#) on [page 3-62](#).

### **Search Request Text for Redirected Searches**

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for redirected searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. (Redirected searches are performed when a hyperlink to a search term in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the term previously searched for.) The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. For more information, see the descriptions of the AuthorSearchText, TitleSearchText, SubjectSearchText, and CallNumberText variables in [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### **Search Results label**

To specify the label for the results information of the current search, enter the description after the Search\_Results variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. (If no text is entered, a colon will appear.) This setting applies to every search result screen. For more information, see [Search\\_Results](#) on [page 3-59](#).

### **Search Results text**

To specify the text for the actual results of the current search, enter the description after the Regular variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. This setting applies only to search index screens, but not to any record display screens. For more information, see “Regular” in [Search\\_Request](#) on [page 3-59](#).

---

## # Column Header

To specify the text that will appear in the item number column (the first column of the headings list), enter the description after the # variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be #. For more information, see “#” on [3-102](#).

## Titles Column Header

To specify the text that will appear in the titles column (the second column of the headings list), enter the description after the Titles variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Titles.

## Heading Column Header

To specify the text that will appear in the heading column (the third column of the headings list), enter the description after the Heading variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Heading.

## Heading Type Column Header

To specify the text that will appear in the heading type column (the fourth column of the headings list), enter the description after the Heading\_Type variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Heading Type.

## Alternate Text Over Scope Note

To edit the alternate text that appears over a scope note link in the first column of the search results table, enter the alternate text after the **ALT\_Note** variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Note.

## Alternate Text over See Also

To edit the alternate text that appears over a reference or “see also” link in the first column of the search results table on the Headings Search Results page, enter the text after the **Alt\_See\_Also** variable in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be See Also.

## HotLinks to Record Display

The **HotLink\_N** variables control which fields in the headings list on the Headings List page that will be used as hotlinks. The hotlink variables and the corresponding columns are detailed in [Table 2-21](#) (The HotLink\_1, 2, and 3 variables do not represent specific types of data - each variable refers to a particular column).

**Table 2-21. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Column and Default
HotLink_#	# (Row number) column)
HotLink_1	Column 2 (generally Titles)
HotLink_2	Column 3 (generally Headings)
Hotlink_3	Column 4 (generally Headings Type)

After each variable, enter Y to indicate that this field in the headings list is to be a hyperlink to the record display page for that record. Enter N to prevent this field from being used as a link.

## Leading and Trailing Text for # Column

To make the numbers that appear in the # column larger, edit the text after the **Leading#Text** and **Trailing#Text** variables in the Headings\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. Entering a pipe (“|”) after the variable will cause a space to appear on-screen. (Entering spaces after the variable will not cause spaces to appear on-screen.)

## Table Color

The color of the table can be changed by editing the RGB color code following the MainData variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. If no color is specified, the table defaults to the standard background image. For more information, see “MainData” on [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

## Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [Toolbar\\_Top and Toolbar\\_Bottom Stanzas](#) on [page 3-66](#)). These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

---

## Browse Searches

If a particular type of search is defined as a browse search, the background colors of that browse search screen can be changed independently of the other types of searches (Authority, Keyword, Left Anchored, etc.). The same basic changes can be made to the browse page to distinguish it from the standard headings list page (see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#) for more information). The search type is defined in the **Search Dialog** stanza of the opac.ini file.

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of the screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#).

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#).

### Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#).

### Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#).

### # Column Header

To specify the text that will appear in the item number column (the first column of the headings list), enter the description after the # variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be #. For more information, see [Browse\\_Page Stanza on page 3-85](#).

### Title over Column 1

You can specify the title over the second column of search results by entering the text after the Col1 variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Title. For more information, see [Browse\\_Page Stanza on page 3-85](#).

### Title over Column 2

You can specify the title over the third column of search results by entering the text after the Col2 variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Headings. For more information, see [Browse\\_Page Stanza on page 3-85](#).

### Title over Column 3

You can specify the title over the fourth column of search results by entering the text after the Col3 variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Headings Type. For more information, see [Browse\\_Page Stanza on page 3-85](#).

### Alternate Text Over Scope Note

To edit the alternate text that appears over a scope note link in the first column of the search results table, enter the alternate text after the **ALT\_Note** variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Note. For more information, see [Browse\\_Page Stanza on page 3-85](#).

### Alternate Text over See Also

To edit the alternate text that appears over a reference or “see also” link in the first column of the search results table on the Headings Browse Search Results page, enter the text after the **Alt\_See\_Also** variable in the Browse\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be See Also. For more information, see [Browse\\_Page Stanza on page 3-85](#).

---

## HotLinks to Record Display

The **HotLink\_N** variables control which fields in the headings list on the Headings List page that will be used as hotlinks. The following variables are used:

**Table 2-22. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Description
HotLink_#	# (Row number) column)
HotLink_1	Column 2 (generally Titles)
HotLink_2	Column 3 (generally Headings)
Hotlink_3	Column 4 (generally Headings Type)
The HotLink_1, 2, and 3 variables do not represent specific types of data - each variable refers to a particular column, no matter what is in the column.	

After each variable, enter Y to indicate that this field in the headings list is to be a hyperlink to the record display page for that record. Enter N to prevent this field from being used as a link.

For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#).

### Leading and Trailing Text for # Column

To make the numbers that appear in the # column larger, edit the text after the **Leading#Text** and **Trailing#Text** variables in the [Browse Page stanza](#) of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Browse Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-85](#). Entering a pipe ("|") after the variable will cause a space to appear on-screen. (Entering spaces after the variable will not cause spaces to appear on-screen.)

### Table Color

The color of the table can be changed by editing the RGB color code following the **MainData** variable in the **Table\_Colors** stanza of the opac.ini file. If no color is specified, the table defaults to the standard background image. For more information, see "MainData" on [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [Toolbar Top and Toolbar Bottom Stanzas](#) on [page 3-66](#)). These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## Headings List Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-23. Headings (Browse and non-) List Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DownHeadings.gif	None - this is the current screen
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif <b>OR</b> UpTitles.gif	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
“Login” button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen
“Request” button	UpRequest.gif	Submit Request screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
Background	bg4.gif	
Previous Arrow	s-prev.gif <b>OR</b> d-prev.gif	Previous Search Results pages

---

**Table 2-23. Headings (Browse and non-) List Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
Next Arrow	s-next.gif <b>OR</b> d-next.gif	Next Search Results pages
“See Also”	seealso.gif	References screen
“Note”	note.gif	Scope Notes screen
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web- Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

### **Editing the References/Scope Notes Screen**

---

The References/Scope Notes screen (the References screen) is the screen that displays when the See Also or the Notes button is clicked from the headings list. This screen displays other information that is related to the displayed heading, such as other references, related terms to search, or other information related to the search.

#### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

#### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the References screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied in exactly the same fashion to all of the screens that use the toolbar.

## Components of the References/Scope Notes Screen

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of the screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### References label

To specify the label for the content of the current search, enter the description after the Search\_References variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. (If no text is entered, a colon will appear.) For more information, see “Search\_References” in [Results Stanza on page 3-59](#).

---

## **References Informational text**

You can change the actual informational text that appears above the Reference Information box. This text is contained in the html file refer.htm in the directories under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage. The contents of this file can be edited to contain anything that you might want.

### **History Label**

You can change the label that precedes history information on the scope note screen by editing the text following the History variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the label will default to history. This variable is only used on the scope notes screen. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### **Note Label**

You can change the label that precedes note information on the scope note screen by editing the text following the Note variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the label will default to Note. This variable is only used on the scope notes screen. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### **Search Under Label**

You can change the label that precedes “search under” information on the scope note screen by editing the text following the Search\_Under variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the label will default to Search Under. This variable is only used on the scope notes screen. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### **Search Also Under Label**

You can change the label that precedes “search also under” information on the scope note screen by editing the text following the Search\_Also\_Under variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the label will default to Search Also Under. This variable is only used on the scope notes screen. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

### **Reference Info Label**

You can change the label that precedes “reference information” information on the scope note screen by editing the text following the Reference\_Information= variable in the Ref\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the label will default to Reference Info. This variable is only used on the scope notes screen. For more information, see [Ref\\_Page Stanza on page 3-130](#).

**Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [Toolbar Top and Toolbar Bottom Stanzas](#) on [page 3-66](#)).

These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

**References/Scope Notes Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-24. References/Scope Notes Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif <b>OR</b> UpTitles.gif	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
“Login” button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen
“Request” button	UpRequest.gif	Submit Request screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)

---

**Table 2-24. References/Scope Notes Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
OTHER BUTTONS		
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page
“Previous” button	s-prev.gif	Previous set of headings
“Next” button	s-next.gif	Next set of headings

### **Editing the Titles List Screen**

---

The Titles List screen appears slightly differently depending on whether it was generated directly by a title search or indirectly by choosing a subject on a headings list.

#### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appear on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

#### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the Titles List screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied in exactly the same fashion to all of the screens that use the toolbar.

## Components of the Title List Screen

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of the screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Border Width

You can set the border width of the Title List screen by setting the TitlesBorderVal= in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file variable to a numeric value of 0 or higher. The higher the number in the variable, the thicker the border will be. Setting the variable to 0 will result in no border display.

#### NOTE:

Be careful not to set this value too high (20 should be sufficient if you require a thick border).

### Label of Post Limit Button

You can set the text of the Post Limits button in the PostLimitButton= variable in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file.

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

---

## **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Order of Search Results**

The order of the holdings records in the search results set can be automatically sorted depending on the location of the computer running WebVoyage or the patron group of the patron executing the search. This order may be customized in the OPAC Holdings Sort Group Definitions dialog. For more information, see "OPAC Holdings Sort Group Definitions" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

## **Search Request label**

To specify the label for the type and content of the current search, enter the description after the Search\_Request= variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. (If no text is entered, a colon will appear.) This setting applies to every search result screen. For more information, see "Search\_Request" on [Search\\_Request on page 3-59](#).

## **Database Name**

To cause the database name to appear near the top of the Title List page, enter *T* after the ShowDatabaseName variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. Enter *F* (for False) to make the database name disappear. If nothing is entered after the ShowDatabaseName variable, the database name will not appear. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Search Request**

To cause the search request to appear near the top of the Title List page, enter *T* after the ShowSearchRequest variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. Enter *F* (for False) to make the request disappear. If nothing is entered after the ShowSearchRequest variable, the request will not appear. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## Search Results

To cause the search results to appear near the top of the Title List page, enter *T* after the *ShowSearchResults* variable in the *Title\_Page* stanza of the *opac.ini* file. Enter *F* (for False) to make the search results disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowSearchResults* variable, the search results will not appear. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## Search Request Text for Combined Searches

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for Simple Searches (Combined Searches) on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. For more information, see [Descriptions of Simple Search Types in WebVoyage on page 3-62](#).

## Search Request Text for Redirected Searches

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for redirected searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. (Redirected searches are performed when a hyperlink to a search term in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the term previously searched for.)

The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. For more information, see the descriptions of the *AuthorSearchText*, *TitleSearchText*, *SubjectSearchText*, and *CallNumberText* variables in [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## Search Results label

To specify the label for the results information of the current search, enter the description after the *Search\_Results=* variable in the *Results* stanza of the *opac.ini* file. There is no default text. (If no text is entered, a colon will appear.) This setting applies to every search result screen. For more information, see [Search\\_Results on page 3-59](#).

## Search Results text

To specify the text for the actual results of the current search, enter the description after the *Regular=* variable in the *Results* stanza of the *opac.ini* file. There is no default text. This setting applies only to search index screens, but not to any record display screens.

---

## **Displaying Simple Search form at top of list**

To show or hide the Simple Search form at the top of the Title List, enter Y (to show the form) or N (to hide the form) after the *DisplaySearchFormTop* variable in the *Title\_Page* stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the form will not appear. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Displaying Simple Search form at bottom of list**

To show or hide the Simple Search form at the bottom of the Title List, enter Y (to show the form) or N (to hide the form) after the *DisplaySearchFormBottom* variable in the *Title\_Page* stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the form will not appear. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Color of Upper Half of Simple Search form**

The color of the upper half of the Simple Search form is controlled by editing an rgb color code after the *ActiveTabColor* variable in the *[Title\_Page]* stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Color of Lower Half of Simple Search form**

The color of the lower half of the Simple Search form is controlled by editing the rgb color code that follows the *InactiveTabColor* variable in the *[Title\_Page]* stanza of the opac.ini file. This also controls the color of the portion of the block that contains the Records per page field and the Search and Reset buttons. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Color of Label Text in Simple Search form**

The color of the label text in the Simple Search form can be controlled by editing the rgb color code that follows the *ActiveFontColor* variable in the *[Title\_Page]* stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Text of Reset Button in Simple Search form**

The text that appears on the Reset button in the Simple Search form is controlled by editing the text that follows the *ResetButton* variable in the *[Title\_Page]* stanza of the opac.ini file. If you have conducted a search that did not find results, the "Clear" button will appear in place of the "Reset" button (see "ClearButton" above). If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Reset*. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Label of Find Text field in Simple Search form**

The text that appears as the label before the Find Text field in the Simple Search form is controlled by editing the text that follows the *SearchBoxText* variable in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the *SearchBoxText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Find This:*. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Displaying Quick Limits List in Simple Search form**

The Quick Limits list in the Simple :Search form can be activated or deactivated by entering Y (to display quick limits) or N (to hide quick limits) after the *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable, the quick limits list will not appear on-screen. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Label of Quick Limits field in Simple Search form**

The text that appears before the Quick Limits field in the Simple Search form is controlled by editing the text that follows the *QuickLimitsText* variable in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the *QuickLimitsText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Simple Limit*. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Contents of Quick Limits drop-down list in Simple Search form**

The limit types listed in the **Quick Limits** drop-down list in the Simple Search form can be customized. The type of each limit listed can be customized and the description that appears in the drop-down list can be specified. This information is stored in the limits.ini file. For more information, see [Limits.ini on page 3-193](#).

### **Label of Find Results List in Simple Search form**

The text that appears before the Find Results list in the Simple Search form is controlled by editing the text that follows the *FindResultsText* variable in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the *FindResultsText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Find Results in:*. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Contents of Find Results drop-down list in Simple Search form**

The search types listed in the **Find Results** drop-down list in the Simple Search form can be customized. The type of each search listed can be customized and the description that appears in the drop-down list can be specified. This information is stored in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the search.ini file. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

---

```
#
```

To specify the text that will appear in the item number column (the first column of the list), enter the description after the #= variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be #. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### Text on Clear Button

To specify the text that appears on the Clear button, enter the text after the **ClearButton** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Clear Selected. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### Text on Retain Button

To specify the text that appears on the Retain button, enter the text after the **RetainButton** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Retain Selected. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### Alternate Text Over Non-ImageServer Thumbnails

To specify the text that appears over non-ImageServer thumbnails, enter the text after the **ThumbnailAltText** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Thumbnail Image. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#). See [Thumbnails Stanza](#) on [page 3-7](#) for more extensive information about thumbnails in WebVoyáge.

### Alternate Text Over ImageServer Thumbnails

To specify the text that appears over ImageServer thumbnails, enter the text after the **ScandocAltText** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Scandoc Image. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#). See [Thumbnails Stanza](#) on [page 3-7](#) for more extensive information about thumbnails in WebVoyáge. See [ScanDoc](#) on [page 3-12](#) for information about ScanDoc.

### Hotlinks to Record Display

The **HotLink\_...** variables control which fields in the titles list on the Title page that will be used as hotlinks. The following variables are used:

**Table 2-25.**

Variable	Description
HotLink_#	# (Row number) column

**Table 2-25.**

<b>Variable</b>	<b>Description</b>
HotLink_0	Column 2 (generally Mfhd Call No.)
HotLink_1	Column 2 (generally Title)
HotLink_2	Column 3 (generally Author)
Hotlink_3	Column 4 (generally Date)
	The HotLink_0, 1, 2, and 3 variables do not represent specific types of data - each variable refers to a particular column, no matter what is in the column.
HotLink_Thumbnail	Last column (Thumbnail images)
HotLink_Location	Library Location (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_CallNumber	Call Number (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_Status	Item Status (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_NoHoldings	"No Holdings Available" message (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_MultipleHoldings	"Title has multiple holdings" message (appears in bottom half of record)
	Note that a record will only display the item location or the "No Holdings" message or the "Multiple Holdings" message. This means that, of the HotLink_Location, HotLink_NoHoldings, and HotLink_MultipleHoldings variables, only one will be in use for a record at a particular time.

After each variable, enter Y to indicate that this field in the titles list is to be a hyperlink to the record display page for that record. Enter N to prevent this field from being used as a link. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### Displaying Upper Post-Search Sort Button

You can allow or prevent access to the upper post-search sorting button by entering Y or N after the **DisplayPostSortMenuTop** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be N. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#). If this variable and the **DisplayPostSortMenuBottom** variable are both set to N, post-search sorting will be unavailable.

#### **NOTE:**

Post-search sorting is not available for Course Reserve searches. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

---

## Displaying Lower Post-Search Sort Button

You can allow or prevent access to the lower post-search sorting button by entering Y or N after the **DisplayPostSortMenuBottom** in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be N. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#). If this variable and the **DisplayPostSortMenuTop** variable are both set to N, post-search sorting will be unavailable.

### NOTE:

Post-search sorting is not available for Course Reserve searches. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## Displaying Upper Post-Search Limit Button

You can allow or prevent access to the upper post-search limiting button by entering Y or N after the **DisplayPostLimitButtonTop** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be N. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#). If this variable and the **DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom** variable are both set to N, post-search limiting will be unavailable. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## Displaying Lower Post-Search Limit Button

You can allow or prevent access to the lower post-search limiting button by entering Y or N after the **DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be N. If this variable and the **DisplayPostLimitButtonTop** variable are both set to N, post-search limiting will be unavailable. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## Label for Post-Sort Drop-Down Menu

To specify the label that will appear next to the Post-Sort drop-down, enter text after the **PostSortMenuLabel** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Sort By. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## Title Listing in Drop-Down Menu

To specify the description that specifies sorting by title (the first item in the list) in the post-search sort drop-down menu on the Title List page, enter the description after the **Title** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Author Listing in Drop-Down Menu**

To specify the description that specifies sorting by author (the second item in the list) in the post-search sort drop-down menu on the Title List page, enter the description after the **Author** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### **Publishing Date Listing in Drop-Down Menu**

To specify the description that specifies sorting by Publishing Date (the third item in the list) in the post-search sort drop-down menu on the Title List page, enter the description after the **PubDate** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### **Publishing Date (Descending) Listing in Drop-Down Menu**

To specify the description that specifies sorting by Publishing Date in descending order (the fourth item in the list) in the post-search sort drop-down menu on the Title List page, enter the description after the **PubDateDesc** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### **Relevance Listing in Drop-Down Menu**

To specify the description that specifies sorting by degree of relevance (the fifth item in the list) in the post-search sort drop-down menu on the Title List page, enter the description after the **Relevance** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### **Holdings Information at bottom of row**

To specify that holdings information be displayed in the bottom half of each record on the Title Page search results table, enter Y or N after the **DisplayHoldingsInfo** variable in the Title\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be N. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

### **Label for Holdings Information**

To specify the label that will appear next to holdings information in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table, enter the description after the **Label\_Location** variable. If nothing is entered, no label will display. For more information, see [Title\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

---

## **Label for Call Number**

To specify the label that will appear next to the call number in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table, enter the description after the **Label\_CallNumber** variable. If nothing is entered, no label will display. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Label for Record Status**

To specify the label that will appear next to the status in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table, enter the description after the **Label\_Status** variable. If nothing is entered, no label will display. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Size of Link in # Column**

To make the hypertext link connected to the number in the # column larger, specify extra characters that will display before and after each record number after the **Leading#Text** and **Trailing#Text** variables. Entering a pipe ("|") after the variable will cause a space to appear on-screen. (Entering spaces after the variable will not cause spaces to appear on-screen.) For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Displaying Holdings Info in Italics**

To specify that the holdings information will display in italics or not, enter Y to display holdings information in italics or N to prevent it from displaying in italics after the **HoldingsInfoItalics** variable. If nothing is entered, the default will be N. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Color of Holdings Information**

To specify the color of the holdings information text in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table, enter a hexadecimal color code after the **HoldingsInfoForegroundColor**= variable. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

## **Color of Background of Holdings Information**

To specify the color of the background behind the holdings information text in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table, enter a hexadecimal color code after the **HoldingsInfoBackgroundColor**= variable. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “No Item” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title has no items associated with it, enter the message that you want to display at the left-hand side of the bottom half of the row after the **NoItemsMessage** variable. If nothing is entered, no message will display. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “No Holdings” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title has no holdings records associated with it, enter the message that you want to display at the left-hand side of the bottom half of the row after the **NoHoldingsMessage** variable. If nothing is entered, no message will display. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Multiple Holdings” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title has more than one holdings record, enter the message that you want to display after the **MultipleHoldingsMessage** variable. If nothing is entered, no message will display and the bottom half of the row will not appear. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Multiple Items” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title has more than one item attached, enter the message that you want to display after the **MultipleItemsMessage** variable. If nothing is entered, no message will display and the bottom half of the row will not appear. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Not Charged” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has not been charged, enter the message that you want to display after the **NotCharged** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Not Charged. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Charged” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been charged, enter the message that you want to display after the **Charged** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Charged. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

---

### **Text of “Renewed” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been renewed, enter the message that you want to display after the **Renewed** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Renewed. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Overdue” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is overdue, enter the message that you want to display after the **Overdue** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Overdue. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Recall Request” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when a recall request has been made for the title for which holdings are displayed, enter the message that you want to display after the **RecallRequest** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Recall Request. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Hold Request” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when a hold request has been made for the title for which holdings are displayed, enter the message that you want to display after the **HoldRequest** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Hold Request. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “On Hold” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is on hold, enter the message that you want to display after the **OnHold** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be On Hold. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “In Transit” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is in transit, enter the message that you want to display after the **InTransit** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be In Transit. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “In Transit Discharged” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been discharged and is in transit, enter the message that you want to display after the **InTransitDischarged** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be In Transit Discharged. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “In Transit On Hold” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is on hold and is currently in transit, enter the message that you want to display after the **InTransitOnHold** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be In Transit On Hold. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Discharged” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been discharged, enter the message that you want to display after the **Discharged** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Discharged. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Missing” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is missing, enter the message that you want to display after the **Missing** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Missing. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Lost--Library Applied” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been lost and the status was applied by a user, enter the message that you want to display after the **LostLibraryApplied** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Lost--Library Applied. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Lost--System Applied” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been lost and the status has been automatically applied by the system, enter the message that you want to display after the **LostSystemApplied** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Lost--System Applied. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

---

### **Text of “Claims Returned” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when a patron has claimed that the title for which holdings are displayed has been returned to the library, enter the message that you want to display after the **ClaimsReturned** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Claims Returned. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Damaged” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been damaged, enter the message that you want to display after the **Damaged** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Damaged. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Withdrawn” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been withdrawn by the library, enter the message that you want to display after the **Withdrawn** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Withdrawn. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “At Bindery” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is at the bindery, enter the message that you want to display after the **AtBindery** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be At Bindery. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Cataloging Review” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is undergoing cataloging review, enter the message that you want to display after the **CatalogingReview** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Cataloging Review. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### **Text of “Circulation Review” Message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is undergoing circulation review, enter the message that you want to display after the **CirculationReview** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Circulation Review. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Text of “Scheduled” Message

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been scheduled, enter the message that you want to display after the **Scheduled** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Scheduled. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Text of “In Process” Message

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is in process, enter the message that you want to display after the **InProcess** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be In Process. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Text of “Call Slip Request” Message

To specify the message that will appear when a call slip request has been submitted for the title for which holdings are displayed, enter the message that you want to display after the **CallSlipRequest** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Call Slip Request. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Text of “Short Loan Request” Message

To specify the message that will appear when a short loan request has been submitted for the title for which holdings are displayed, enter the message that you want to display after the **ShortLoanRequest** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Short Loan Request. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Text of “Remote Storage Request” Message

To specify the message that will appear when a remote storage request has been submitted for the title for which holdings are displayed, enter the message that you want to display after the **RemoteStorageRequest** variable. If nothing is entered, the default message will be Remote Storage Request. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza on page 3-152](#).

### Relevance header

The heading over the Relevance column on the titles screen can be changed by editing the text after the **Relevance\_Heading=** variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Relevance. For more information, see [Relevance Heading on page 3-60](#).

---

## **Table color**

The color of the table can be changed by editing the RGB color code following the MainData= variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. If no color is specified, the table defaults to white. For more information, see [MainData](#) on [page 3-80](#).

## **Thumbnails**

The thumbnails that (may) appear at the side of the screen can, in some cases, be customized. For information on thumbnails, see [Thumbnails Stanza](#) on [page 3-7](#).

## **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [Toolbar Top and Toolbar Bottom Stanzas](#) on [page 3-66](#)). These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## **Save/Email Table**

The options that customize the save/email table apply to every instance of the save/email table in WebVoyage (with the exception of the Records heading and radio buttons, which do not appear on the record display screen).

### **Block Title**

The title of the Save/Email table can be changed by editing the text that follows the Mail= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Save Options. For more information, see [Mail\\_And\\_Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

### **Records field title**

The title of the record selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the Records= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Records. For more information, see [Mail\\_And\\_Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

### **“All on Page” text**

The text of the first radio button in the record selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the All= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to All on Page. For more information, see [Mail\\_And\\_Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

#### **“Selected on Page” button**

The text of the second radio button in the record selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the Selected= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Selected on Page. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#).

#### **Select All Pages” button**

To specify the text that appears on the Select All Pages button, enter the text after the **SelectedRecsAllPages** variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the default will be Select All Pages. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#).

#### **Format field title**

The title of the format selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the Type= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Format Type. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#).

#### **“Text File” text**

The text of the first radio button in the format selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the CheckBox1= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Text File. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#)

#### **“MARC Format” text**

The text of the second radio button in the format selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the CheckBox2= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to MARC Format. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#).

#### **Allow MARC format**

The option to save/print/email records in MARC format can be allowed or prevented by entering TRUE or FALSE after the MarcAllowed variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to FALSE. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#).

#### **Save field title**

The title over the save button can be changed by editing the text that follows the Save= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Save. For more information see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#).

---

## Save/Email Table color

The color of the save/email table can be changed by editing the RGB color code following the SaveRecords= variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. If no color is specified, the table defaults to white. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

## Email Subject

The text that will be placed in the Subject field of an email message can be changed by editing the text following the EmailSubject= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Opac %s Search for %s. For more information see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

## Title List Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-26. Title List Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif <b>OR</b> UpHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	DownTitles.gif	None - this is the current screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
“Login” button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen
“Request” button	UpRequest.gif	Submit Request screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen

**Table 2-26. Title List Buttons List**

<b>Image</b>	<b>File</b>	<b>Target</b>
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts WebVoyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts WebVoyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page
Relevance - 5 marker 5 1/2 marker 4 4 1/2 marker 3 3 1/2 marker 2 2 1/2 marker 1 1 1/2 marker	s-rel1.gif s-rel5h.gif s-rel2.gif s-rel2h.gif s-rel2.gif s-rel3.gif s-rel4.gif s-rel4.gif s-rel5.gif s-rel5h.gif	
“Previous” button “Previous” - grayed	s-prev.gif d-prev.gif	Previous set of headings
“Next” button “Next” - grayed	s-next.gif d-next.gif	Next set of headings
“See Also” button	seealso.gif	References screen
“Note” button	note.gif	Scope Notes screen
“Save” button	save.gif	Displays bibs in saveable form
“Email” button	email.gif	Sends email and displays confirmation/rejection message

**Editing the Record Display**

The record information display, like the search screen, is made up of five parts: the Bibliographic screen, the Holdings screen, the Table of Contents, the Linked Resources screen, and the MARC Format screen.

---

The record display is made up of a number of entries in .ini files and many separate images. Many of the images are similar from one search screen to the next, but a number of the images and links depend on which type of record information is on display. All of these are outlined below.

The screen that appears by default when first performing a search can be set. The first screen (by default, the bibliographic screen) will always be the screen selected. But the information for each screen can be changed so that if you want holdings information to be displayed first. See below for more information.

### Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

### Toolbars

The toolbar for the Record Display screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied in exactly the same fashion to all of the screens that use the toolbar.

## Components of the Record Display Screens

### Record Display Colors and Backgrounds

The colors and backgrounds of the record display screens can each be customized independently of the others. Colors and images are set in one of five stanzas of the opac.ini file:

**Table 2-27.**

WebVoyage Screen	Configuration Stanza
First page (Bibliographic)	[View1_Page]
Second page (Holdings)	[View2_Page]
Third page (Table of Cts)	[View3_Page]
Fourth page (Linked Res.)	[View4_Page]
Fifth page (MARC Format)	[View5_Page]

The same variables appear in each stanza. The following are the available options:

#### **Background Image**

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence.

#### **Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used.

#### **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable.

#### **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable.

#### **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable.

#### **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable.

#### **Search Request label**

To specify the label for the type and content of the current search, enter the description after the **Search\_Request** variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. (If no text is entered, a colon will appear.) This setting applies to every search result screen as well as the record display screens. For more information, see [Search\\_Request](#) on [page 3-59](#).

---

## No Location Message

To specify the message that will appear when no location information is available for an item, enter the message after the **NoLocation** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **NoLocation** variable, the default message will be No location information available. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## No Call Number Message

To specify the message that will appear when no call number information is available for an item, enter the message after the **NoCallNumber** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **NoCallNumber** variable, the default message will be No Call Number Available. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## Location Column Header

To specify the header that will appear over the location column in the holdings record, enter the text after the **Location** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Location** variable, the default message will be Location. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## Call Number Column Header

To specify the header that will appear over the call number column in the holdings record, enter the text after the **CallNumber** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **CallNumber** variable, the default message will be Call Number. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## Local Database Column Header

To specify the header that will appear over the Local Database column in the holdings record, enter the text after the **LocalDatabase** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **LocalDatabase** variable, the default message will be Local Database. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## Relevance Bar label

To specify the label that will appear next to the relevance bar in the holdings record, enter the description after the **Relevance** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Relevance** variable, the default message will be Relevance. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

### **Shelved At message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is shelved at a particular location, enter the message after the **Shelved\_At** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Shelved\_At** variable, the default message will be Shelved At [Location]. For more information, see [View Record Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### **Temporarily Shelved At message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is temporarily shelved at a particular location, enter the message after the **Temp\_Shelfed** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Temp\_Shelfed** variable, the default message will be Temporarily Shelved At [Location]. For more information, see [View Record Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### **Item in Pre-Order Process message**

To specify the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is in the process of being ordered, enter the message after the **Pre\_Order\_Process** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Pre\_Order\_Process** variable, the default message will be In the Pre-Order Process. For more information, see [View Record Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### **Copy Received message**

To specify the message that will appear when one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has arrived at the library, enter the message after the **Copy\_Received** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Copy\_Received** variable, the default message will be [#] Copy Received as of [Date]. For more information, see [View Record Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### **Copies Received message**

To specify the message that will appear when more than one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has arrived at the library, enter the message after the **Copies\_Received** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Copies\_Received** variable, the default message will be [#] Copies Received as of [Date]. For more information, see [View Record Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

---

## **Copy Claimed message**

To specify the message that will appear when one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has been claimed, enter the message after the **Copy\_Claimed** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Copy\_Claimed** variable, the default message will be [#] Copy Claimed as of [Date]. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## **Copies Claimed message**

To specify the message that will appear when more than one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has been claimed, enter the message after the **Copies\_Claimed** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Copies\_Claimed** variable, the default message will be [#] Copies Claimed as of [Date]. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## **Copy Ordered message**

To specify the message that will appear when one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has been ordered by the library, enter the message after the **Copy\_Ordered** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Copy\_Ordered** variable, the default message will be [#] Copy Ordered as of [Date]. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## **Copies Ordered message**

To specify the message that will appear when more than one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has been ordered by the library, enter the message after the **Copies\_Ordered** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the **Copies\_Ordered** variable, the default message will be [#] Copies Ordered as of [Date]. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

## **Type of Search for Redirected Author Searches**

To specify the type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to an author from the Record Display page in WebVoyage, enter **Authority**, **Authority Browse**, **Name/Title**, or **Name/Title Browse** after the **AuthorSearchRedirect** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

### Description of Search Type for Redirected Author Searches

To specify the description of the search type that appears for redirected author searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages, enter the description after the **AuthorSearchText** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

### Type of Search for Redirected Title Searches

To specify the type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to a title from the Record Display page in WebVoyage, enter **Authority**, **Browse**, **Left Anchored**, or **Keyword** after the **TitleSearchRedirect** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

### Description of Search Type for Redirected Title Searches

To specify the description of the search type that appears for redirected title searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages, enter the description after the **TitleSearchText** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

### Type of Search for Redirected Subject Searches

To specify the type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to a subject from the Record Display page in WebVoyage, enter **Authority** or **Browse** after the **SubjectSearchRedirect** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

### Description of Search Type for Redirected Subject Searches

To specify the description of the search type that appears for redirected subject searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages, enter the description after the **SubjectSearchText** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

### Type of Search for Redirected Call Number Searches

To specify the type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to a call number from the Record Display page in WebVoyage, enter **Browse** or **Left Anchored** after the **SubjectSearchRedirect** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza on page 3-169](#).

---

## Description of Search Type for Redirected Call Number Searches

To specify the description of the search type that appears for redirected call number searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages, enter the description after the **CallNumberText** variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### Text of Login Required Message

To edit the message that appears to notify the patron he/she must log in before viewing an image in ImageServer, enter the text of the message after the *LoginRequiredText* variable of the View\_Record\_Page of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the *LoginRequiredText* variable, no message will appear. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### Database Name

To cause the database name to appear near the top of the Record Display page, enter *T* after the *ShowDatabaseName* variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. Enter *F* (for False) to make the database name disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowDatabaseName* variable, the database name will not appear. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### Search Request

To cause the search request to appear near the top of the Record Display page, enter *T* after the *ShowSearchRequest* variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. Enter *F* (for False) to make the request disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowSearchRequest* variable, the request will not appear. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### Search Results

To cause the search results to appear near the top of the Record Display page, enter *T* after the *ShowSearchResults* variable in the View\_Record\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. Enter *F* (for False) to make the search results disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowSearchResults* variable, the search results will not appear. For more information, see [View\\_Record\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-169](#).

### Search Request Text for Combined Searches

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for Simple Searches (Combined Searches) on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. The Search Type is displayed above the record

display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. For more information, see [Descriptions of Simple Search Types in WebVoyage](#) on [page 3-62](#).

### Search Results Label

To specify the label for the results information of the current search, enter the description after the Search\_Results variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. (If no text is entered, a colon will appear.) This setting applies to every search result screen as well as the record display screens. For more information, see [Search\\_Results](#) on [page 3-59](#).

### Search Results Text

To specify the text for the actual results of the current search, enter the description after the BibHold variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. There is no default text. This setting applies only to the record display screens.

### Error Files for display screens

Error files will be displayed if there is no information to fill one of the displays. The second (Holdings), third (Table of Contents) and fourth (Linked Resources) screens have error files that will be displayed if there is no information of that type available in the record. The following files are used:

**Table 2-28.**

Error Condition	File
Second (Holdings)	noholdmsg.htm
Third (Table of Contents)	notocmsg.htm
Fourth (Linked Resources)	noattmsg.htm

The error files are in html format and can be edited like any other html file. For more information, see [Error, Assistance and Block Messages](#) on [page 3-199](#).

### Record Display and buttons

Each screen of the record display can be edited independently of the others. Each screen has its own configuration file (a displayN.cfg) associated with it; each of these files can be edited to provide any kind of information that you want. See the list below to see which displayN.cfg file is associated with which links. These files work in exactly the same way as the windows versions. For more information on setting up the displayN.cfg files, see the section "DISPLAYN.CFG".

---

The display buttons can be customized in a number of ways: you can select which buttons you want to appear on-screen; you can change the buttons' appearance and alternate text; and you can change the contents of the screen linked to a button.

#### **Selecting buttons to be displayed:**

You can specify how many buttons you want displayed by changing the number that follows the **Count** variable in the Display stanza of the display.ini file. This number must be from 1 through 5. For example, entering 1 will cause only the first button to be displayed; entering 2 will cause the first and second buttons to display; and so on.

#### **Changing alternate text for buttons:**

You can specify the alternate text for the record display buttons by entering the descriptive text after the 1=, 2=, 3=, 4=, and 5= variables in the Display stanza of the display.ini file.

#### **Changing the appearance of a button:**

You can change the appearance of a button by replacing the appropriate image files with new images. Simply rename or delete the old file and place a new file in the same directory with the old file name. Note that for each numbered file, the corresponding "a" file is intended to be the "pressed" version (i.e., view1.gif and view1a.gif). Be careful to replace the correct files and only those because buttons are linked to specific targets. See the above list for more information.

#### **Changing the targets of the links:**

The target that each button is linked to cannot be changed directly; i.e., the first button will always be linked to the **1** variable in the display.ini, to the display1.cfg file and to the button images (view1.gif and view1a.gif). However, you can make changes to these by editing or replacing all of the files associated with the link with new files and information. The items that must change are the following: the button files; the alternate text; and the contents of the displayN.cfg file. Each link behind each button targets a specific variable in the display.ini file; two button files (for the pressed and unpressed images) and a specific displayN.cfg file. They are as follows:

**Table 2-29. Targets of Record Display Buttons**

Button	Variable	Button Files	Display File	Stanza in OPAC.INI
First	1=	view1.gif view1a.gif	display1.cfg	[View1_Page]

**Table 2-29. Targets of Record Display Buttons**

Button	Variable	Button Files	Display File	Stanza in OPAC.INI
Second	2=	view2.gif view2a.gif	display2.cfg	[View2_Page]
Third	3=	view3.gif view3a.gif	display3.cfg	[View3_Page]
Fourth	4=	view4.gif view4a.gif	display4.cfg	[View4_Page]
Fifth	5=	view5.gif view5a.gif	display5.cfg	[View5_Page]

**NOTE:**

Note that, of the two images listed, the first file (without the "a") is for the unpressed image, and the second file (with the "a") is for the pressed image.

If you want to change the target of a link to provide completely different information, you must make sure that you change the following things: the button files; the alternate text; and the contents of the displayN.cfg file.

**Setting a default display screen:**

The system by default chooses the first screen listed to be the initial screen. This cannot be changed directly, but if you want a particular screen to be the default, you simply have to make sure that its buttons are named view1.gif and view1a.gif; that its display information is contained in the display1.cfg file, and that its alternate text is specified after the 1= variable.

**Item Title**

The title of the item on display can be set to appear or disappear by entering Y or N after the TitleDisplay variable in the Results stanza of the opac.ini file. Y indicates that the title should display; N indicates that the title should not appear. If nothing is entered after the variable, the title will appear.

**Formatting Dates and Times**

You can set the format for system-generated dates and times that appear in the record display. You can customize times by specifying a separator; 12- or 24-hour format; and morning and evening designations. You can customize dates by specifying the order of months, days and years; two or four digit years; and the separator.

---

## **Time-Related Options:**

All of the time-related options can be found in the Time stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Time Stanza](#) on [page 3-72](#).

### **Morning designation:**

The text description for morning (i.e., "AM") can be set by changing the text after the **AM** variable in the Time stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default will be lowercase AM ("am"). For more information, see [AM](#) on [page 3-72](#).

### **Evening designation:**

The text description for afternoon can be set by changing the text after the **PM** variable in the Time stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default will be lowercase PM ("pm"). For more information, see [PM](#) on [page 3-72](#).

### **Time Separator:**

The character used to separate hours and minutes can be changed by editing the text after the **Separator** variable in the Time stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default will be a colon (:). For more information, see [Date Display Separator](#) on [page 3-13](#).

### **12/24 Hour:**

The time can be set to 12 hour or 24 hour time (civilian or military time) by entering Y (for 24 hour) or N (for 12 hour) after the **24HR** variable in the Time stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default will be 12 hour. For more information, see [24HR](#) on [page 3-73](#).

### **Date Order:**

The order of months, day and year can be changed by entering a 1 (for DDMMYY format) or a 0 (a zero, for MMDDYY format) after the **Order** variable in the Date stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default will be 0 ("MMDDYY"). For more information, see [Date Order](#) on [page 3-13](#).

### **Century format:**

Centuries can be set to display in two or four digit format by entering a 1 (for four digit; i.e., 1999) or a 0 (a zero, for two digit; i.e., 99) after the **Century** variable in the Date stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default will be 0 (two digit). For more information, see [Century Format](#) on [page 3-13](#).

### Date Separator:

The character used to separate days, months and years in the date can be changed by entering a 1 (for a dash, or -) or a 0 (a zero, for a forward slash, or /) after the **Separator** variable in the Date stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default will be 0 ("/"). For more information, see [Date Display Separator on page 3-13](#).

Dates or times that are derived from MARC records will not be affected; dates that are supplied by the system (such as dates on statuses) will be affected. Note that this information is also used to format the dates and times on the patron information screen.

### Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [Toolbar Top and Toolbar Bottom Stanzas on page 3-66](#)). These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## Save/Email Table

The options that customize the save/email table apply to every instance of the save/email table in WebVoyage. However, while the Title List page uses the **Records**, **All**, and **Selected** variables, the Record Display page does not.

### Block Title

The title of the Save/Email table can be changed by editing the text that follows the Mail= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Save Options. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#)

### Format field title

The title of the format selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the Type= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Format Type. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#)

### “Text File” text

The text of the first radio button in the format selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the CheckBox1= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Text File. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza on page 3-109](#)

---

## **“MARC Format” text**

The text of the second radio button in the format selection field can be changed by editing the text that follows the CheckBox2= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to MARC Format. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#)

### **Allow MARC format**

The option to save/print/email records in MARC format can be allowed or prevented by entering TRUE or FALSE after the MarcAllowed variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to FALSE. For more information, see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

### **Save field title**

The title over the save button can be changed by editing the text that follows the Save= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Save. For more information see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#)

### **Save/Email Table color**

The color of the save/email table can be changed by editing the RGB color code following the SaveRecords= variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. If no color is specified, the table defaults to white. For more information, see [SaveRecords](#) on [page 3-80](#).

### **Email Subject**

The text that will be placed in the Subject field of an email message can be changed by editing the text following the EmailSubject= variable in the Mail\_And\_Requests stanza of the opac.ini file. Defaults to Opac %s Search for %s. For more information see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#)

## **Record Display Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-30. Record Display Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif <b>OR</b> UpHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	UpTitles.gif	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
“Login” button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen
“Request” button	UpRequest.gif	Submit Request screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

---

**Table 2-30. Record Display Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
Relevance - 5 marker 5 - 1/2 marker 4 4 - 1/2 marker 3 3 - 1/2 marker 2 2 - 1/2 marker 1 1 - 1/2 marker	s-rel1.gif s-rel5h.gif s-rel2.gif s-rel2h.gif s-rel2.gif s-rel3.gif s-rel4.gif s-rel4.gif s-rel5.gif s-rel5h.gif	<b>NOTE:</b> These files are only used if the record was searched for using relevance.
"Previous" button "Previous" - grayed	s-prev.gif d-prev.gif	Previous set of headings
"Next" button "Next" - grayed	s-next.gif d-next.gif	Next set of headings
Bibliographic button (Bib pressed)	view1.gif view1a.gif	Bibliographic info on this screen
Holdings button (Hldgs pressed)	view2.gif view2a.gif	Holdings info on this screen
Tbl of Cnts button (TOC pressed)	view3.gif view3a.gif	Table of Contents info on this screen
Linked Res button (LR pressed)	view4.gif view4a.gif	Linked Resources info on this screen
MARC Record (MARC pressed)	view5.gif view5a.gif	MARC Record info on this screen
"Save" button	save.gif	Displays bibs in saveable form
"Email" button	email.gif	Sends email and displays confirmation/rejection message

---

### Editing the Request Selection Screen

The request selection screen allows the patron, when logged in, to submit requests. Types of requests include holds, recalls, and call slips, as well as a number of requests that can be defined by your institution, such as photocopy requests, purchases, and so on. A patron must log in before submitting any requests. Request types can be created or modified by your institution. Patrons

can be allowed to submit certain types of requests and prevented from submitting others. Access control for requests and request types are set up in the System Administration module.

### Turning Requests On and Off

You can allow or prevent your patrons from submitting any kind of request at all by turning the request screen on or off. Turning the request screen off will cause the request button in the banner as well as the screen itself to disappear. When requests are turned on, they are still subject to standard patron group restrictions on what types of requests they can and cannot make. When turned off, no requests of any kind will be allowed regardless of which patron groups are allowed requests. This functions essentially as a on/off switch.

To turn requests off, enter **N** after the **PatronRequests** variable in the Options stanza of the opac.ini file. To turn requests on, enter **Y**. If nothing is entered after the variable, the default setting will be to N. For more information, see “Options Stanza”.

### Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

### Toolbars

The toolbar for the Request Selection screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied in exactly the same fashion to all of the screens that use the toolbar.

## Components of the Request Selection Screen

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the **Background=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

---

## **Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the **BGCOLOR=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

## **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the **Text=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

## **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the **LINK=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

## **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the **VLINK=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

## **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the **ALINK=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

## **Informational Text**

The text that appears between the banner and the request drop-down can be modified. This text is contained in the html file **reqsel.htm**. This file can be edited like any html file; the contents of the file can be edited to contain anything that you might want.

## **“Available” text**

The text that displays beside the system-defined requests in the request drop-down menu can be changed by editing the text that follows the **Available=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. The number of currently available requests for a specific request type will display beside this text. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

### Submit Button

The text that appears on the Submit button can be changed by editing the **SubmitButton=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

### Reset Button

The text that appears on the Reset button can be changed by editing the **ResetButton=** variable in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see “Request\_Select\_Page Stanza”.

### Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

### Request Selection Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-31. Request Selection Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif <b>OR</b> UpHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif UpTitles.gif <b>OR</b>	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
“Login” button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen

---

**Table 2-31. Request Selection Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
"Request" button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
"Help" button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

## **Editing the Patron Login Screen**

---

The patron login screen allows the patron, when logged in, to submit requests and view information about their account.

### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the Patron Login screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## Components of the Patron Login Screen

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Logon\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see "Logon\_Page Stanza".

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Logon\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see "Logon\_Page Stanza".

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Logon\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Logon\_Page Stanza".

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Logon\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Logon\_Page Stanza".

### Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Logon\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Logon\_Page Stanza".

### Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Logon\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Logon\_Page Stanza".

---

## Informational Text

The text that appears between the banner and the request drop-down can be modified. There are three different files that contain this informational text. Depending on the method of login required, the following files are used:

**Table 2-32. Login Files**

Method of Login	Filename
Institution ID	logoniidmsg.htm
Barcode	logonmsg.htm
Social Security Number	logonsocmsg.htm

These files can be edited like any html file; the contents of the file can be edited to contain anything that you might want.

**Changing type of login information required.** You can change the type of information required to allow your patrons to verify their identity. You may specify which of the following login types are available to patrons when logging in: Barcode, Institution ID, or Social Security Number. You can provide however many of these you wish (as long as there's at least one type available to patrons. This is done in the [Login Types] stanza of the opac.ini file.

For more information about the [Login Types] stanza, see [The \[Login Types\] Stanza on page 3-47](#).

## Patron Login Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory on the server.

**Table 2-33. Patron Login Buttons List**

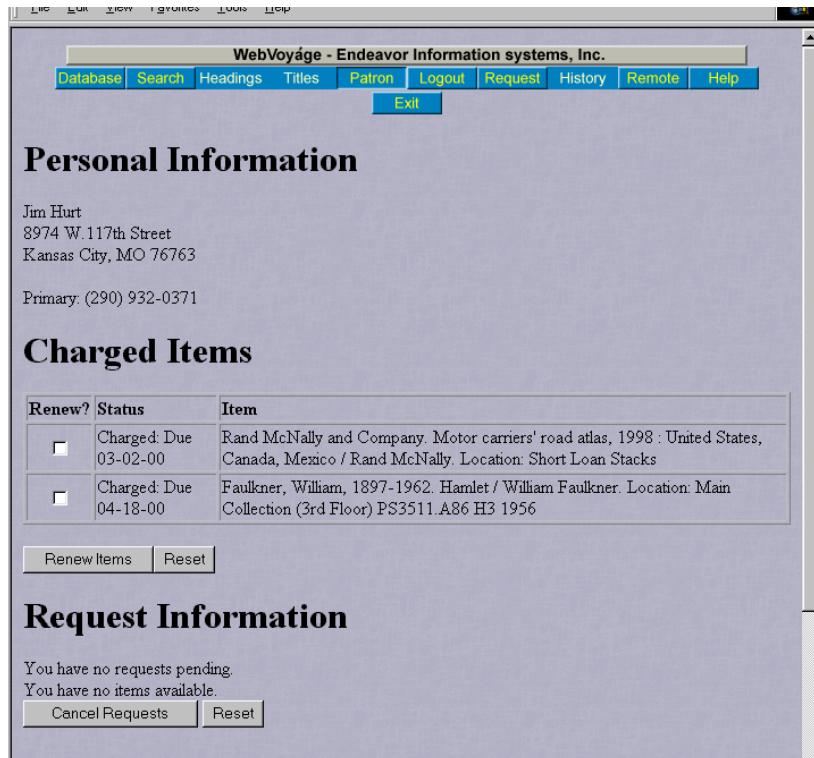
Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen

**Table 2-33. Patron Login Buttons List**

<b>Image</b>	<b>File</b>	<b>Target</b>
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif <b>OR</b> UpHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif UpTitles.gif <b>OR</b>	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Info screen
“Login” button	DownLogin.gif	None - this is the current screen
“Request” button	UpRequest.gif	Request screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

**Editing the Patron Information Screen**

The patron information screen allows the patron, when logged in, to view information about their account.



**Figure 2-26. Patron Information Screen**

### Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

### Toolbars

The toolbar for the Patron Information screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## Components of the Patron Information Screen

---

### General:

#### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Patron\_Info\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

#### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Patron\_Info\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

#### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Patron\_Info\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

#### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Patron\_Info\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

#### Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Patron\_Info\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

#### Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Patron\_Info\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

---

### **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

### **Personal Information Section:**

Personal Info section titleThe title that describes the personal information section can be changed by editing the text that follows the Personal variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the patron's personal information will not be displayed. For more information, see "Patron Info Stanza".

### **Charged Items Section:**

Charged Items section titleThe title that describes the charged items section can be changed by editing the text that follows the Charged variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, information on the patron's charged items will not be displayed. For more information, see "Patron Info Stanza".

### **Allow Self-Renewal**

You can allow or prevent self-renewal of items by a patron by entering Y (to allow self-renewal) or N (to prevent self-renewal) after the SelfRenew variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. When self-renewal is prevented, the Renew column and the Renew and Reset buttons will not appear. If nothing is entered, the default will be N (no self-renewal allowed). For more information, see "Patron Info Stanza".

### **Submit Button Text**

You can specify the text that displays on the button which patrons press to renew one or more of charged items (in the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information after the **SubmitButton** variable. If the Patron Self-Renewal feature is not activated, this column will not display (see "Patron Info Stanza" for more information about activating this feature). If nothing is entered, Renew Items will be used as the default. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

### **Reset Button Text**

You can specify the text that displays on two button on the Patron Information page (the reset button in the Charged Items section and the reset button in the Request Information section) by entering the information you want to display after the **ResetButton** variable. If nothing is entered, Reset will be used as the default. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

## Item Information

You can specify what information about a charged item, such as its title, enumeration, call number, etc., displays in the Item column (on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window) by entering the information codes after the *ItemInfo* variable. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## Charged Item Information

You can specify what information about an item displays in the Status column (on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window) by entering the information codes after the **ChargedItem** variable. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## Renewed Item Information

You can specify what information about an item displays in the Status column (on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window) by entering the information codes after the *RenewedItem* variable. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## Recalled Item Information

You can specify what information about an item displays in the Status column (on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window) by entering the information codes after the *RecalledItem* variable. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## No Charges message

The message that appears when a patron has no charged items can be changed by editing the text that follows the *NoCharges* variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the following will be displayed: You have no charged items. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## Fines and Fees Section:

Fines and Fees section titleThe title that describes the fines and fees section can be changed by editing the text that follows the *Fines* variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, information on the patron’s fines and fees will not be displayed. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

---

## No Fines and Fees message

The message that appears when a patron has no fines or fees can be changed by editing the text that follows the NoFines variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the following will be displayed: You have no fines or fees. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## Date Column Header

You can specify the header text of the column that displays the dates of specific fines or fees (in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information that you want to display after the **Date** variable. If nothing is entered, Date will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

## Posting Column Header

You can specify the header text of the column that displays the amount a patron has paid (in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information that you want to display after the **Posting** variable. If nothing is entered, Posting will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

## Balance Column Header

You can specify the header text of the column that displays the total monetary balance for a patron (in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information that you want to display after the **Balance** variable. If nothing is entered, Balance will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

## Fee Reason Column Header

You can specify the header text of the column that displays the fine or fee reason (in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information that you want to display after the **FeePostingType** variable. If nothing is entered, Fee/Posting Type will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

## Fee Column Header

You can specify the header of the column that displays the fine or fee amount (in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information that you want to display after the **Fee** variable. If nothing is entered, Fee will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

### Total Due Label

You can specify the label that applies to the total monetary amount that a patron owes by entering the text that you want to display after the *TotalAmountDue* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Total Amount Due* will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

### Charged Items Section:

#### Status Column Header

You can specify the headers of the columns that display the statuses of items. These columns can be found in the tables in the Charged Items section and Request Information section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display after the **Status** variable. If nothing is entered, Status will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

#### Item Column Header

You can specify the headers of the columns that display certain item information (in the tables in the Charged Items section, Request Information section and Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information that you want to display after the **Item** variable. If nothing is entered, Item will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

#### Renew Column Header

You can specify the header of the Renew column of the table in the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page by entering the information that you want to display after the **Renew** variable. If nothing is entered, Renew? will be used as the default. This column will display only if the Patron Self-Renew feature is activated (see “Patron Info Stanza”). For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

#### Renewal Column Header

You can specify the header of the column that displays the Renewal statuses of items that a patron has just renewed (in the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information that you want to display after the **RenewalStatus** variable. If nothing is entered, RenewStatus will be used as the default. This column only displays after a patron renews an item. If the Patron Self-Renewal feature is not activated, this column will not display (see “Patron Info Stanza”). For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

---

## **Not Renewed Message**

You can specify the information that displays when an item that a patron attempts to renew is not renewed (in the Renewal Status column of the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page; see “Renewal Status” above) by entering the information that you want to display after the **NotRenewed** variable. If nothing is entered, Not Renewed will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

## **Renewed Message**

You can specify the information that displays when an item is successfully renewed (in the Renewal Status column of the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information after the **RenewedDue** variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, Renewed: Due will be used as the default. For more information, see “Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza”.

## **Request Information Section:**

**Request Info section title**The title that describes the Request Information section can be changed by editing the text that follows the Requests variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, information on both requests pending and items available will not be displayed. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## **Requests Pending table title**

The title that describes the requests pending table can be changed by editing the text that follows the ReqPending variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no title will be displayed. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

## **No Requests Pending message**

The message that appears when a patron has no pending requests can be changed by editing the text that follows the NoReqPending variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the following will be displayed: You have no requests pending. For more information, see “Patron Info Stanza”.

### Status of Pending Requests

The status of pending requests that appears in the Status column of the Requests Pending table can be customized. The text for each status can be defined by editing the text that follows any of the variables in the CallslipStatusCodes stanza of the opac.ini file (see [CallSlipStatusCodes Stanza](#) on page 3-131). The default settings are:

**Table 2-34. Pending Requests variables**

Variable	Default Status
1	Accepted
2	Printed
3	Filled
4	Not Filled
5	Cancelled
6	Cancelled
7	Error!

When changing the names, note that while the text can be changed, the situations when a specific variable will be called up does not change; i.e., #1 will only be called up when the callslip request is accepted. This also means that #3 should never be "Accepted." The name should reflect in some way the condition to which it is linked.

These settings will be used anywhere that information appears in WebVoyage.

### Items Available table title

The title that describes the items available table can be changed by editing the text that follows the ReqAvail variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no title will be displayed. For more information, see "Patron Info Stanza".

### No Requests Available message

The message that appears when a patron has no pending requests can be changed by editing the text that follows the NoReqAvail variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the following will be displayed: You have no items available. For more information, see "Patron Info Stanza".

---

## **Allow Cancelling of Requests**

You can allow or prevent cancellation of requests by a patron by entering Y (to allow cancellation or N (to prevent cancellation after the CancelRequests variable in the Patron Info stanza of the opac.ini file. When cancellation is prevented, the Cancel column and the Cancel Requests and Reset buttons will not appear. If nothing is entered, the default will be N (no cancellation allowed). For more information, see "Patron Info Stanza".

## **Cancel Column Header**

You can specify the header of the Cancel column of the tables in the Request Information section of the Patron Information page by entering the information after the **Cancel** variable. This column will display only if the Cancel Requests feature is activated (see "Patron Info Stanza"). If nothing is entered, Cancel? will be used as the default. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

## **Pick-Up Location Message**

You can specify the information that displays in the status column when a pickup location is specified for a request (in the Requests Pending table of the Request Information section) by entering the information after the *Pick\_Up\_At* variable, an item that is ready to be picked up might display as *Pick up at (location)*. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Pick up at* will be used as the default. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

## **Customizing Status Messages**

The *Position*, -, and *Expires* variables controls information in the status column of the Request Information section of the Patron Information page that informs patrons of the progress of their requests. The status column in which this information displays can be found in the Requests Pending table of the Request Information section. An example of the information that displays in this column might be *Position: 1 - Expires: 11-05-99*. Using these three variables, you can customize the wording of "Position" and "Expires" and set the "-" separator. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

## **Pick-up Location Header Text**

You can specify the header of the column that displays the pickup location for available items (in the Available items section of the Request Information section on the Patron Information page) by entering the information you want to display after the **PickupLocation** variable. If nothing is entered, Pickup Location will be used as the default. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

### Cancel Button Text

You can specify the text that displays on the button which patrons press to cancel one or more of their requests (in the Requests Information section of the Patron Information page) by entering the information you want to display after the **CancelButton** variable. This button will display only if the Cancel Requests feature is activated (see "Patron Info Stanza"). If nothing is entered, Cancel Requests will be used as the default. For more information, see "Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza".

### Patron Information Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-35. Patron Information Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif <b>OR</b> UpHeadings.gif	Headings screen
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif UpTitles.gif <b>OR</b>	Titles screen
"Patron" button	DownPatron.gif	None - this is the current screen
"Login" button	UpLogin.gif	Patron Login screen
"Request" button	UpRequest.gif	Request screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif <b>OR</b> DisabledHistory.gif	Search History screen
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)

---

**Table 2-35. Patron Information Buttons List**

Image	File	Target
"Help" button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web- Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web- Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

### **Editing the Call Slip Request Screen**

---

The call slip request screen allows the patron, when logged in, to submit a call slip request for an item.

#### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

#### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the Call Slip Request screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

### **Components of the Call Slip Request Screen**

#### **Form Description**

You can change the description that appears at the top of the form by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### **Title field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the title field by editing the text after the Title variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the title on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.

### **Select an Item radio button caption**

You can change the caption that describes the Select an Item radio button by editing the text after the CallSlipPick variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Specify an Issue radio button caption**

You can change the caption that describes the Specify an Issue radio button by editing the text after the CallSlipSpecify variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear (for more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”). Note that this button will only appear if your institution allows no-item requests. No-item requests can be allowed by selecting the Call Slip Item Required check box from the OPAC>Miscellaneous dialog in System Administration. See the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide* for more information.

### **Comment field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the comment field by editing the text after the Comment variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the comment on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

---

### **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## **Call Slip Request Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-36. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
“Logout” button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
“Request” button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

---

**Figure 2-27. Call Slip Request Buttons List**

---

## **Editing the Hold and Recall Request Screens**

---

The hold request screen allows the patron, when logged in, to submit a hold request for an item. The recall request screen allows the patron to submit a recall on an item. Both of these forms use the exact same information to customize them. This means that, with the exception of the "Hold" or "Recall" title at the top of the box, there will be no difference between the hold and recall screens. Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the Hold and Recall Request screens is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## **Components of the Hold and Recall Request Screens**

### **Background Image**

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Hold\_Recall\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Hold\_Recall\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Req\_Call\_Slip\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Hold\_Recall\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Hold\_Recall\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Hold\_Recall\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Table Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Requests variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. This setting will be applied to every request screen. For more information, see “Table\_Colors Stanza”.

### **Generic part of Form Description**

You can change the generic part of the description that appears at the top of the form (i.e., “WebVoyage Request: ”) by editing the Generic\_Title variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini. This description is used on every request form. If nothing is entered, OPAC Request: will display. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”

### **Specific part of Form Description**

You can change the specific description (i.e., “Hold” or “Recall”) that appears at the top of the form by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.

### **Title field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the title field by editing the text after the Title variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the title on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

---

## **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.

## **Any Copy radio button caption**

You can change the caption that describes the Any Copy radio button by editing the text after the AnyCopy variable in the Request dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for this button on the hold and recall forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Any Copy At radio button caption**

You can change the caption that describes the Any Copy At radio button by editing the text after the AnyCopyAt variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for this button on the hold and recall forms. This button will only appear when there are copies at more than one location. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Unmarked radio button (“This Copy”)**

The unmarked radio button cannot be edited. This button indicates “This copy.”

## **Comment field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the comment field by editing the text after the Comment variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the comment on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Pick Up At caption**

You can change the caption that describes the pick up at field by editing the text after the PickUp variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used on the hold, recall and bib-level request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Not Needed After caption**

You can change the caption that describes the not needed after field by editing the text after the NotNeededAfter variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used on the hold, recall and bib-level request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file . These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

### **Hold and Recall Request Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

---

These images are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory on the server.

**Table 2-37. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
"Patron" button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
"Logout" button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
"Request" button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
"Help" button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

### **Editing the Short Loan Request Screen**

---

Short Loan request forms allow your patrons to place a reservation on an item for a specific time period and pick up and charge out the item at the scheduled time. Any request forms that are of the short loan type will use the following information when displaying that form in WebVoyage.

## Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyáge. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

## Toolbars

The toolbar for the Short Loan Request screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## Components of the Short Loan Request Screen

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RBG color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RBG color code after the Text= variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RBG color code after the LINK= variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

---

## Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

## Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

## Table Background Color

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Requests variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. This setting will be applied to every request screen. For more information, see “Table\_Colors Stanza”.

## Table Color

You can specify the color of both tables by entering an RGB color code after the **TableForegroundColor** variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

## Table Header Color

You can specify the color of the background of both tables by entering an RGB color code after the **TableBackgroundColor** variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-145](#).

## Generic part of title (i.e., “WebVoyáge Request:”)

You can change the generic part of the description that appears at the top of the form (i.e., “WebVoyáge Request:”) by editing the Generic\_Title variable in the Request\_Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini. This description is used on every request form. If nothing is entered, OPAC Request: will display. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza.”

### **Form Description**

You can change the description of the form that appears at the top of the form (concatenated to the Generic Title text) by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### **Title field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the title field by editing the text after the Title variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the title on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Copy Information field caption**

You can change the caption beside the copy information drop-down by editing the text after the Copy\_Info variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the caption will default to Copy Information. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Select New Reservation Date caption**

You can change the caption beside the reservation date field by editing the text after the Select\_New\_Date variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the caption will default to Select New Reservation Date. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

---

## **Pick Up At caption**

You can change the caption that describes the pick up at field by editing the text after the PickUp variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used on the hold, recall and bib-level request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Check Item Availability button label**

You can change the button on the Short Loan request form that will manually check the database for available times on the selected date by editing the text after the **Check\_Item\_Avail** variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Check Item Availability. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Selected Reservation Date table header**

You can change the caption that describes the text on the left side of the header of the second table by editing the text after the SelectedReservationDate variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Selected Reservation Date. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza on page 3-145](#).

## **Date table header**

You can change the caption that describes the text on the right side of the header of the second table by editing the text after the Date variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Date. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza on page 3-145](#).

## **Start Time column header**

You can change the text label that displays above the field from which patrons select the start time of their short loan by editing the text after the StartTime variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Start Time. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza on page 3-145](#).

### **End Time column header**

You can change the text label that displays above the field from which patrons select the end time of their short loan by editing the text after the EndTime variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be End Time. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza on page 3-145](#).

### **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Back to Record button label**

You can change the alternate text (pop-up text) that displays when the mouse is held over the Back to Record button (the button that sends a patron back to the record display) by editing the text after the BackToRecord variable in the Request\_ShortLoan\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Back To Record. For more information, see [Request\\_ShortLoan\\_Page Stanza on page 3-145](#).

### **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## **Short Loan Request Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

---

These images are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory on the server.

**Table 2-38. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
"Patron" button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
"Logout" button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
"Request" button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
"Help" button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

### **Editing the Blank-Type Request Screen**

---

Blank-Type request forms allow the submission of specific information without any specific bibliographic or item information attached. Any request forms that are of the blank form type will use this information when displaying that form in WebVoyage.

## Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyáge. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

## Toolbars

The toolbar for the Blank-Type Request screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## Components of the Blank-Type Request Screen

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Req\_No\_Bib\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Req\_No\_Bib\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Req\_No\_Bib\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Req\_No\_Bib\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

---

## **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Req\_No\_Bib\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

## **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Req\_No\_Bib\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

## **Table Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Requests variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. This setting will be applied to every request screen. For more information, see “Table\_Colors Stanza”.

## **Form Description**

You can change the description that appears at the top of the form by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.

## **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.

## **Customizing Data fields**

You can specify seven free text fields that you want to appear on the blank form as well as the captions describing each one. These fields may be used to collect any kind of data that you want. Likewise the captions may be for anything that

you want. However, you must enter captions for all seven. If no caption is entered, the field will still appear on-screen and information may still be entered into it. The following variables can be used: Field1, Field2, Field3, Field4, Field5, Field6 and Field7. These are located in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

Note that the email that is sent will contain all of the information in the order that it appears on-screen.

#### **Comment field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the comment field by editing the text after the Comment variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the comment on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

#### **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

#### **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

#### **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

#### **Blank-Type Request Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

---

These images are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory on the server.

**Table 2-39. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
"Patron" button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
"Logout" button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
"Request" button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
"Help" button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

### **Editing the Bibliographic Level Request Screens**

The Bib Level request screen allows the patron, when logged in, to submit a request that is to be associated with a particular bibliographic record. This type of request may be used for any purpose your institution might have. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

## Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyáge. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

## Toolbars

The toolbar for the Bib-Level Request screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## Components of the Bib Level Request Screens

### NOTE:

The Bib Level Request, Item Level Request, ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy, NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand forms all use the [Request\_Form\_Page] stanza to configure the appearance of the forms. Changing the variables in this stanza in order to customize one form will affect the appearance of all of the forms in the exact same manner.

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RBG color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RBG color code after the Text= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

---

## **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

## **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

## **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

## **Table Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Requests variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. This setting will be applied to every request screen. For more information, see “Table\_Colors Stanza”.

## **Form Description**

You can change the description that appears at the top of the form by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.

## **Title field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the title field by editing the text after the Title variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the title on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

### **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### **Bibliographic information caption**

You can change the caption that describes the bibliographic information by editing the text after the BibInfo variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear; however, the bibliographic information will still appear. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Comment field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the comment field by editing the text after the Comment variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the comment on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Pick Up At caption**

You can change the caption that describes the pick up at field by editing the text after the PickUp variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used on the hold, recall, short loan and bib-level request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Not Needed After caption**

You can change the caption that describes the not needed after field by editing the text after the NotNeededAfter variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used on the hold, recall and bib-level request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

---

### **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

### **Bib Level Request Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-40. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
"Patron" button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
"Logout" button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
"Request" button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen

**Table 2-40. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

### **Editing the Item Level Request Screens**

---

The Item Level request screen allows the patron, when logged in, to submit a request that is to be associated with a particular item. This type of request may be used for any purpose your institution might have. See the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide* for more information.

#### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

#### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the Item Level Request screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

---

## **Components of the Item Level Request Screens**

### **NOTE:**

The Bib Level Request, Item Level Request, ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy, NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand forms all use the [Request\_Form\_Page] stanza to configure the appearance of the forms. Changing the variables in this stanza in order to customize one form will affect the appearance of all of the forms in the exact same manner.

### **Background Image**

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RBG color code after the ALINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Table Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RBG color code after the Requests variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. This setting will be applied to every request screen. For more information, see "Table\_Colors Stanza".

### **Form Description**

You can change the description that appears at the top of the form by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### **Title field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the title field by editing the text after the Title variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the title on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

---

## **Additional Information fields**

You can add up to six fields to each item request form that is defined in System Administration. These fields may be used to collect any kind of information. A field may be added to a form or a field's title may be edited by adding a field on the Fields tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. Any fields marked as Required in the list on the Fields tab appear in WebVoyage in boldface. Only the fields listed on the Fields tab will be displayed in WebVoyage.

### **Comment field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the comment field by editing the text after the Comment variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the comment on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### **Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## **Item Level Request Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-41. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
“Logout” button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
“Request” button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
“Header” image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
“Footer” image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

---

### **Editing the NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Form Screens**

The NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand request screens allow the patron, when logged in, to submit a request, to be delivered in the form of a VDX-compatible email, for a particular item or for photocopies to be made. See the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide* for more information.

---

## Banner and Footer Images

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

## Toolbars

The toolbar for the NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand request screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## Components of the NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Request Screens

### NOTE:

The Bib Level Request, Item Level Request, ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy, NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand forms all use the [Request\_Form\_Page] stanza to configure the appearance of the forms. Changing the variables in this stanza in order to customize one form will affect the appearance of all of the forms in the exact same manner.

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on page 2-5.

### **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on page 2-5.

### **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on page 2-5.

### **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on page 2-5.

### **Table Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Requests variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. This setting will be applied to every request screen. For more information, see "Table\_Colors Stanza".

### **Form Description**

You can change the description that appears at the top of the form by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

### **Title field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the title field by editing the text after the Title variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the title on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

---

## **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.

## **Note field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the note field by editing the text after the Note variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the comment on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Not Needed After caption**

You can change the caption that describes the not needed after field by editing the text after the NotNeededAfter variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used on the hold, recall and bib-level request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

## **Clear Form button text**

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see “Request Dialogs Stanza”.

**Links at bottom of page:**

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

**NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand Request  
Screens Buttons List**

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-42. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
“Database” button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
“Search” button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
“Headings” button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
“Titles” button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
“Patron” button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
“Logout” button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
“Request” button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
“History” button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen
“Remote” button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
“Help” button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
“Exit” button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)

---

**Table 2-42. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

---

## **Editing the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens**

The ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form screens allow the patron, when logged in, to submit a request, to be delivered in the form of a ARTE-compatible email, for a particular item or for photocopies to be made. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.

### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form screens is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## **Components of the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens**

### **NOTE:**

The Bib Level Request, Item Level Request, ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy, NLNZ BibU and Index New Zealand forms all use the [Request\_Form\_Page] stanza to configure the appearance of the forms. Changing the variables in this stanza in order to customize one form will affect the appearance of all of the forms in the exact same manner.

### **Background Image**

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Request\_Form\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#).

### **Table Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Requests variable in the Table\_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file. This setting will be applied to every request screen. For more information, see "Table\_Colors Stanza".

---

## **Form Description**

You can change the description that appears at the top of the form by editing the Form Name field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. A name must be entered. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

## **Instructions field caption**

You can change the caption that describes the instructions field by editing the text after the Instructions variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used for the instructions on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

## **Instructional text**

You can change the instructional text that appears on the form by editing the Instructions field on the Select Form tab of the OPAC>Request Form dialog in the System Administration module. If no text is entered into the field, no text will be displayed. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

## **The Book Request form uses the Author, Title, Place of Publication, Publisher, Edition, Year and Volume fields**

You cannot change the captions for these fields.

## **The Photocopy Request form uses the Journal Title, Volume, Part, Year, Article Title, Article Author and Pages fields.**

You cannot change the captions for these fields.

## **Not Needed After caption**

You can change the caption that describes the not needed after field by editing the text after the NotNeededAfter variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, no text will appear. This caption will be used on the hold, recall and bib-level request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

## **Submit Request button text**

You can change the text on the submit request button by editing the text after the Submit variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Submit. This text will be used for the submit button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### Clear Form button text

You can change the text on the clear form button by editing the text after the Reset variable in the Request Dialogs stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the button will read Reset. This text will be used for the reset button on all of the request forms. For more information, see "Request Dialogs Stanza".

### Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-43. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
"Patron" button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
"Logout" button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
"Request" button	DownRequest.gif	None - this is the current screen
"History" button	UpHistory.gif	Search History screen

---

**Table 2-43. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
"Help" button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

### **Editing the Search History Screen**

---

The Search History screen allows the patron to view a list of all of the searches that have been made since the module was last restarted. Old searches can be selected from this list and performed again without having to re-enter the search through the search screen.

#### **Banner and Footer Images**

The images used for the banner and at the bottom of every page appears on almost every screen in WebVoyage. The banner image appears above everything else on-screen; the toolbar at the top of the screen appears just below it. The footer image appears at the bottom of the page below the bottom toolbar. You can customize these images or the entire header and footer by editing the header.htm and footer.htm files.

#### **Toolbars**

The toolbar for the Search History screen is made up of the same set of buttons that appear on the Simple Search screen. Edits such as changing buttons or turning buttons on and off are applied to all of the Search screens in exactly the same fashion. (They are also applied, with minor changes, to all of the other screens that use the toolbar as well).

## Components of the Search History Screens

### Background Image

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of a screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

### Background Color

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

### Text Color

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

### Link Color

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

### Visited Link Color

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

### Selected Link Color

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

### Table Background Color

You can specify the color of the background of the table on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the TableColor variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

---

## **Table Text Color**

You can specify the color of the header text of the table on the screen by entering an RBG color code after the TableText variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see “Search\_History\_Page Stanza”.

## **Simultaneous/Browse Search indicator**

You can change the text that appears in the hits column to indicate that the search was a browse search or a simultaneous search by editing the text after the Browse\_Simul variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Browse/Simul.

## **Edit column header**

You can change the header of the edit column by editing the text after the Edit variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Edit. For more information, see “Search\_History\_Page Stanza”.

## **Hits column header**

You can change the header of the hits column by editing the text after the Hits variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Hits. For more information, see “Search\_History\_Page Stanza”.

## **Search Type column header**

You can change the header of the search type column by editing the text after the SearchType variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Search Type. For more information, see “Search\_History\_Page Stanza”.

## **Search Type for Combined Searches**

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for Simple Searches (Combined Searches) on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. For more information, see [Descriptions of Simple Search Types in WebVoyáge](#) on [page 3-62](#).

## Search Type for Redirected Searches

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for redirected searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. (Redirected searches are performed when a hyperlink to a search term in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the term previously searched for.) The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. For more information, see the descriptions of the AuthorSearchText, TitleSearchText, SubjectSearchText, and CallNumberText variables in [View Record Page Stanza](#) on page 3-169.

### Searched For column header

You can change the header of the Searched For column by editing the text after the SearchFor variable in the Search\_History\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If nothing is entered, the default will be Searched For. For more information, see "Search\_History\_Page Stanza".

### Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file. These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## Search History Buttons List

The image files that are used by this page in its default configuration are listed below. Note that if you do not know html, you can also customize the pages by deleting the old file and copying a new image that has the same name as the old file into the image directory. This is the same method to use when changing images that are used in the non-static-html pages.

These images are located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images** directory on the server.

**Table 2-44. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
TOOLBAR		
"Database" button	UpDatabase.gif	Database screen
"Search" button	UpSearch.gif	default Search screen

---

**Table 2-44. Button Variables**

Image	File	Target
"Headings" button	DisabledHeadings.gif	Headings screen
"Titles" button	DisabledTitles.gif	Titles screen
"Patron" button	UpPatron.gif	Patron Information screen
"Logout" button	UpLogout.gif	Patron Logoff
"Request" button	UpRequest.gif	Request screen
"History" button	DownHistory.gif	None - this is the current screen
"Remote" button	UpRemote.gif	Remote Libraries screen (remote.htm)
"Help" button	UpHelp.gif	Help page (search.htm)
"Exit" button	UpExit.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage (intro page)
OTHER BUTTONS		
"Header" image (WebVoyage bar)	banner.gif	Restarts Web-Voyage
"Footer" image (Endeavor image)	footer.gif	Endeavor Home Page

#### [NoHits\_Redirect] Stanza

The database redirect feature provide patrons with access to any another database after they have performed a search which resulted in zero hits. For example, a student performs a keyword search in the local catalog and receives the message "Your Search Resulted in No Hits." If configured in this stanza, a button would display which the patron can click and be redirected to another database. When the patron clicks the redirect button, his search is automatically re-executed in the new database. You can configure this stanza to redirect to any database at all. This is especially useful when used with the Voyager Universal Catalog.

There are three variables in this stanza:

[NoHits_Redirect]
RedirectEnabled=Y
ReSearchSubmitButton=Search Another Database
DatabaseToSearch=UCDB

**Figure 2-28. NoHits\_Redirect stanza**

[Table 2-45](#) details the [NoHits\_Redirect] stanza variables.

**Table 2-45. Variables for the [NoHits\_Redirect]stanza**

Variable	Description
Redirect Enabled	The RedirectEnabled variable controls the switch which enables the redirect functionality. To allow the redirect feature, enter a "Y" (yes) after the equals sign. If you do not want the redirect feature to be available in WebVoyage, enter a "N" (no) after the equals sign. The default for the RedirectEnabled variable is "N." "No" is the default if this variable is left blank.
ReSearchSubmit-Button	The ReSearchViaSubmitButton variable controls the text that displays on the redirect button. For example, if you enter "Search Another Database" after the equals sign, then "Search Another Database" displays on the redirect button in WebVoyage. If you have enabled the redirect feature by setting the RedirectEnabled variable to 'Yes', but do not enter anything after the ReSearchVia-SubmitButton variable, no text displays on the redirect button.
DatabaseToSearch	The DatabaseToSearch variable allows you to define the database to which the system redirects. This can be any database at all. For example, you could redirect the search to another library with whom you have special lending or borrowing agreements; you could redirect the search to a citation database if the patron was unable to find any "books" in the local catalog; if your consortium or group contributes to a Voyager Universal Catalog, you could redirect the search to the Universal Catalog.

**IMPORTANT:**

*The redirect database must be defined in the System Administration module and configured in the connect.ini file in order for the redirect to work correctly.*

---

To define the redirect database, enter the database code after the equals sign in the *DatabaseToSearch* variable, for example, DatabaseToSearch=BLAKE. The code must match **exactly** the code assigned to the database in System Administration (see [Figure 2-29](#)).

---



---

**Figure 2-29. Search Redirect Button ... “Search Via UC”**

### **Holdings Jump Bar Function**

The Holdings Jump Bar feature enables the end user to quickly move through a long holdings list by “jumping” to the database selected from the “Held at:” list and “jumping back to the library list” by using “Back to library list” available at the end of each database holdings list.

---

```
[View_Record_Page]
...
DBHoldingsJumpBar=Y
DBHoldingsJumpBarText=Held at:
DBHoldingsJumpBarBack=Back to library list
```

---

**Figure 2-30. Holdings Jumpbar variables**

Implementing this new function generates the following search results viewing capability (see [Figure 2-31](#)):

Title: Journal of abnormal and social psychology.

Publisher: [Washington, etc.] American Psychological Association [etc.]

Description: 49 v. ill.  
v. 20-69; Apr. 1925-Dec. 1964.

Notes: Continued in part by: Journal of abnormal psychology, ISSN 0021-843X, and Superseded in part by: Journal of person psychology, ISSN 0022-3514.

Subject(s): [Psychology, Pathological-Periodicals](#),  
[Psychology-Periodicals](#),  
[Social psychology-Periodicals](#).

Continues: [Journal of abnormal psychology and social psychology](#)

Held at: [Fort Valley State University](#)   
[North Georgia College & State University](#)  
[Georgia Institute of Technology](#)  
[Columbus State University](#)

Institution Name: Fort Valley State University

Location: Bound periodicals located on Second floor

Call Number: RC321 .J7 Copy 1

Number of Items: 1

Status: Not Charged

Volumes Owned: VOL. 40-42 1945-1947  
VOL. 44-64 1949-1962  
VOL. 67-69 1963-1964

[\[Back to library list\]](#) 

---

**Figure 2-31. Holdings Jump Bar Feature**

This function can be tailored to local preferences. DBHoldingsJumpBar= can be set to Y(es) or N(o). To invoke the “Jump Bar” function, this needs to be set to Y which is also the default. DBHoldingsJumpBarText= specifies the text that precedes the list of holding databases.

“Held at:” is the default text. It can be changed to match local preferences. The order of the resulting displayed “Held at:” locations is determined by weights set in database definitions. Similarly, DBHoldingsJumpBarBack= specifies the text that displays for the end-user to click to “jump back” to the list of holding databases. This text, too, can be modified to match local preferences.

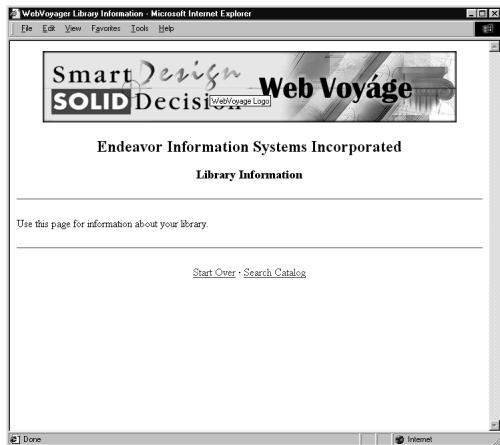
---

## Library Information

---

Information about your library displays when you click the **Library** or **Library Information** buttons.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page



**Figure 2-32. Library Information**

Your library can determine what information appears on this page.

### Customizing the Library Information Page

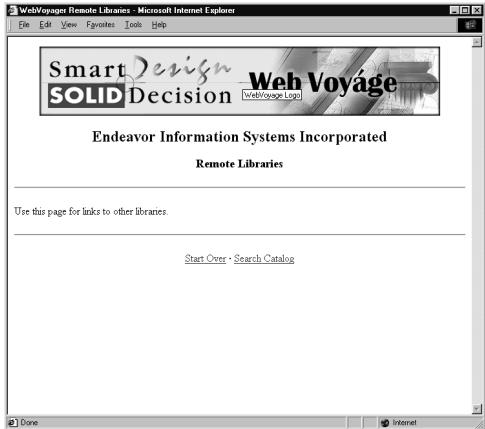
Customizing the Library Information page is done differently from most of the other pages in WebVoyage. The Library Information page is its own specific HTML file that is loaded when you link to the page. The Library Information page can be customized by editing the contents of the **libinfo.htm** file in the **/m1/xxxdb/webvoyage/html** directory. This page can be customized as you would any other HTML file. You can add any type of information to this file, or use it for a different purpose entirely. However, in order to customize it, you must be conversant with HTML.

For more information on configuring the Library Information page, see [Library Information Page \(Libinfo.htm\)](#) on [page 2-12](#).

### Remote Libraries

Information about remote libraries or other types of links appear when you click the **Remote** or **Remote Libraries** buttons.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page



---

**Figure 2-33. Remote Libraries**

Your library can determine what information appears on this page.

### Customizing the Remote Libraries Page

Customizing the Remote Libraries page, like the Library Information page, is done differently from most of the other pages in WebVoyage. The Remote Libraries page is its own specific HTML file that is loaded when you link to the page. The Remote Libraries page can be customized by editing the contents of the **remote.htm** file in the **/m1/xxxdb/webvoyage/html** directory. This page can be customized as you would any other HTML file. You can add any type of information to this file, or use it for a different purpose entirely. However, in order to customize it, you must be conversant with HTML.

For more information on configuring the Remote Libraries page, see [Remote Libraries Page \(Remote.htm\) on page 2-13](#).

---

[REDACTED]

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

# WebVoyáge Configuration Files

# 3

---

## Contents

• Required Elements	3-1
<b>WebVoyáge Directory Structure</b>	<b>3-2</b>
<b>Customizing WebVoyáge</b>	<b>3-3</b>
Overview	3-4
Required Elements	3-4
• WebVoyáge.ini	3-5
AppVar Stanza	3-5
WebRecon Stanza	3-6
Thumbnails Stanza	3-7
DOI Stanza	3-10
HelpLocation Stanza	3-10
Generic Images Stanza	3-10
• voyager.ini	3-11
Communications Stanza	3-11
Links Stanza	3-12
• The opac.ini	3-12
Assigning OPAC Identification String	3-12
Date Format and Appearance	3-13
Customizing Item Statuses Display	3-14
Number of Records Drop-Down Box	3-25
• Map Search Page	3-26
Map_Footprint Stanza	3-32
Map Format Type Configuration	3-33
Map Limits Page	3-33
Other Components of the Search Limits Screen	3-38
Miscellaneous WebVoyáge Display Configuration	3-44
Enabling and disabling WebVoyáge Features	3-45

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

• WebVoyage Patron Login ID Options	3-46
The [Login Types] Stanza	3-47
Request Messages	3-48
Order Statuses	3-51
Search Dialog Stanza	3-54
• Initial Persistent Location Limit	3-55
Setting the Location Limit	3-56
Results Stanza	3-59
Search_Text Stanza	3-61
TextTool Stanza	3-66
<b>Toolbar_Top and Toolbar_Bottom Stanzas</b>	<b>3-66</b>
• Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration	3-67
• The Count Variable	3-71
• Hyperlinked Text Display Variables	3-71
• Button Configuration Variables	3-71
• Login-Specific Variables	3-71
BtnXXToggleGraphicUp	3-72
BtnXXToggleText	3-72
Time Stanza	3-72
JumpBar Stanza	3-73
Title_Bar Stanza	3-75
WebRecon Stanza	3-79
Table_Colors Stanza	3-80
Boolean_Search_Page Stanza	3-80
Browse_Page Stanza	3-85
[Combined_Search_Page] Stanza	3-88
• Configuring the Course Reserve Search (Drop-Down interface)	3-95
Course_Reserve_Search_Page Stanza	3-97
Database_Page Stanza	3-101
Headings_Page Stanza	3-102
Limit_Page Stanza	3-104
Logon_Page Stanza	3-108
Mail_And_Requests Stanza	3-109
• Download Formats	3-112
formats.ini file	3-113
Patron Info Stanza	3-117
Patron_Info_Page Stanza	3-125
Ref_Page Stanza	3-130

---

## Contents

Request_Page Stanza	3-130
CallSlipStatusCodes Stanza	3-131
Editing the [CallSlipStatusCodes] Stanza	3-133
Request Dialogs Stanza	3-134
Request_Select_Page Stanza	3-143
Request_ShortLoan_Page Stanza	3-145
Search_History_Page Stanza	3-147
Sim_Search_Page Stanza	3-149
Title_Page Stanza	3-152
Page Appearance	3-152
Button Text/Alt Text	3-153
Hot Links	3-155
Labels	3-156
Page Layout	3-159
Titles' Availability	3-162
Item Statuses	3-163
View_Record_Page Stanza	3-169
• MARCINFO.INI	3-177
<b>The connect.ini file</b>	<b>3-177</b>
• Overview	3-178
The connect.ini file As Distributed	3-178
The [Folders] Stanza	3-180
Set Name Stanzas	3-181
Location Stanza	3-185
• Limits.ini	3-193
Map-Related Limits in Limits.ini	3-197
• *.HTM Files	3-199
Error, Assistance and Block Messages	3-199
Help Pages	3-203
Other Pages	3-205
• Image Files	3-209
DISPLAY.INI	3-215
DISPLAYN.CFG	3-216
Search Re-directs	3-220
• Adding Punctuation to a Configuration File	3-220
Punctuation	3-222
Configuration Files	3-223
New Syntax	3-224
Syntax Rules	3-225
Rule 1	3-225

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Rule 2	3-226
Rule 3	3-226
Rule 4	3-226
Rule 5	3-227
Special Considerations	3-228
The display.cfg File	3-229
E-Items	3-230
Holdings Information	3-231
• Temporary Location Display	3-231
Request.cfg and Requesth.cfg	3-232
SEARCH.INI	3-232
ValidTabs Stanza	3-233
Simple_Search_Codes Stanza	3-234
SAVE.CFG	3-235
SAVEH.CFG	3-235
SAVEF.CFG	3-235
EMAIL.CFG	3-235
EMAILH.CFG	3-236
EMAILF.CFG	3-236
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>3-236</b>

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## WebVoyage Configuration Files

# 3

---

In Voyager, each site has the ability to determine what bibliographic and holdings data should display in WebVoyage. This includes the determination of labels, what MARC fields/subfields to include under what labels, and the order and spacing of information on the WebVoyage screen.

The WebVoyage configuration files are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory and related sub-directories on your network. The configuration files have the extensions .ini and .cfg and can be edited by editing directly on the server using an editor like vi or emacs or by downloading the files and editing them with a text editor such as Microsoft Notepad.

With the exception of the opac.ini and connect.ini files, we recommend that you use WebVoyage with the .ini and .cfg files as distributed (except for any revisions that you know will be necessary based on your knowledge of your database and your users). Past library experiences with system implementation suggest that it may be better to put feedback mechanisms in place and let users tell you what they find useful or confusing so that you can make only those changes that are really necessary.

---

### Required Elements

---

Most of the configuration files in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc /webvoyage directory and related sub-directories mandate that certain elements be present in the file. These elements include: stanza names, variable names, and data elements. A portion of the opac.ini file configuration file is shown below:

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

```
[General]
ResetTime=6000
MainBitmap=voyager.bmp
```

**Figure 3-1. Sample Stanza**

Stanza names separate sections of the configuration file and are displayed in square brackets. In the above example, the stanza is named [General]. Stanza names must **never** be changed or deleted.

**NOTE:**

Some configuration files do not have stanzas.

Stanzas contain variables and data elements. Variable names are located to the left of the equals sign (=). Variable names are usually one word or several words run together (without spaces). In the above sample, the variable names are ResetTime and MainBitmap. Like stanza names, variable names must *never* be changed. However, certain variable names may be deleted. You also can use a pound sign (#) to indicate that a line is to be ignored. In this way, you aren't required to delete the information, but it is no longer used by the program.

Data elements are located to the right of the equals sign (=). Data elements can usually be modified by your institution. For example, in the sample file shown above, your institution could define any value for the ResetTime or define a different bitmap file to display instead of voyager.bmp as the MainBitmap.

## **WebVoyage Directory Structure**

The following is the structure of the WebVoyage-related directories on the server and some of the most important files contained in each.

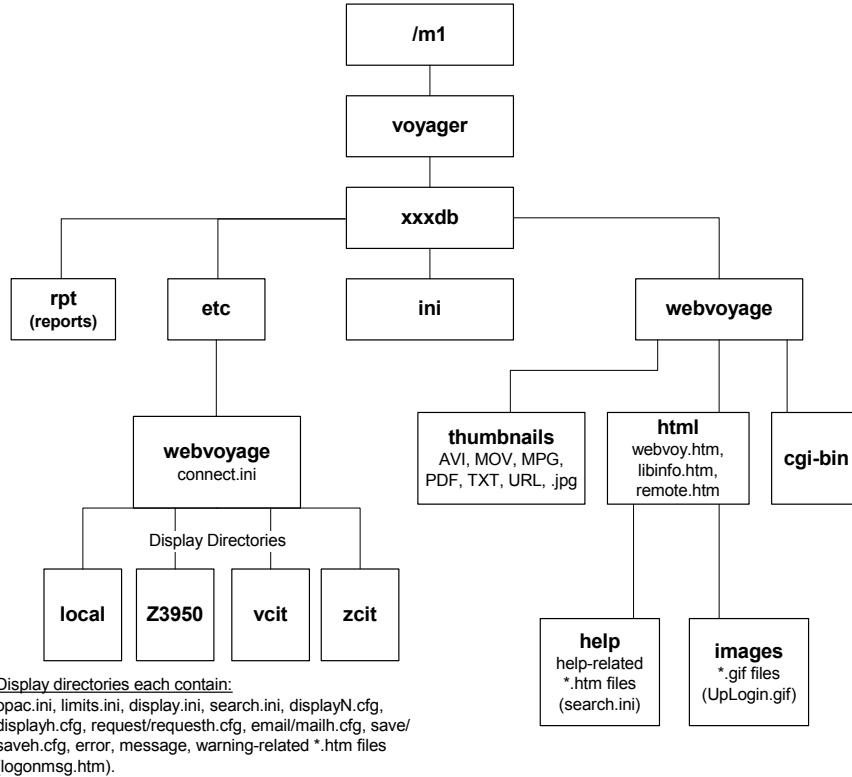


Figure 3-2. Structure of WebVoyage-related Directories on the Server

## Customizing WebVoyage

---

The WebVoyage configuration files are located on your server in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory and sub-directories, and the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage directory and sub-directories. The configuration files have the extensions \*.ini and \*.cfg and can be edited using a text editor on your server. There are also many \*.htm files that can be customized by your institution.



### IMPORTANT:

*You cannot remove any HTML text that invokes the Pwebrecon.cgi program, otherwise, WebVoyage will fail. You cannot rename or change the lengths of any variables within the \*.ini files, but any plain text entered after the variables in the files can be modified. In addition, you can*

---

*substitute your own image files for the files Endeavor provides (however, you must use the exact same name for your image files).*

## Overview

This document contains information about the configurable files for WebVoyáge. Each section contains a figure or listing of the default files as they are distributed. All information that applies to WebVoyáge will be discussed here.

The configurable files are discussed in the following sequence:

- WebVoyáge.ini file
- opac.ini file
- \*.htm files
- Image Files
- Additional \*.ini and \*.cfg files
- Troubleshooting

To open the configuration files, use a text editor on your server.

## Required Elements

Most of the configuration files (the \*.ini files in particular) in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory and sub-directories, and the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage directory and sub-directories on your server mandate that certain elements be present in the file. These elements include: stanza names, variable names, and data elements. A portion of the opac.ini configuration file is shown below:

---

```
[Patron_Info_Page]
Personal=Personal Information
Charged=Charged Items
```

---

**Figure 3-3. Sample Stanza**

Stanza names separate sections of the configuration file and are displayed in square brackets. In the above example, the stanza is named [Patron\_Info\_Page]. Stanza names must **never** be changed or deleted. Some configuration files do not have stanzas.

Stanzas contain variables and data elements. Variable names are located to the left of the equals sign (=). Variable names are usually one word or several words run together (without spaces). In the above sample, the variable names are *Personal* and *Charged*. Like stanza names, variable names must *never* be changed. However, certain variable names may be deleted. You also can use a pound sign (#) as the first character of a line to indicate that the rest of the line is to be ignored. In this way, you aren't required to delete the information, but it is no longer used by the program.

Data elements are located to the right of the equals sign (=). Data elements can usually be modified by your institution. For example, in the sample stanza shown above, any text entered after the *Personal* variable would display as the caption header at the top of the Personal Information section on the Patron Information page, and any text entered after the *Charged* variable would display as the caption header at the top of the Charged Items section on the Patron Information page.

## **WebVoyáge.ini**

---

The WebVoyáge.ini file is located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin directory. The WebVoyáge.ini file contains numerous variables that must be set in order for certain aspects of WebVoyáge to function properly. You can modify all data elements in this configuration file. In addition, you can delete any variable name and its corresponding data element. However, not completing or deleting certain information could disable your patrons from accessing available features.

### **AppVar Stanza**

This stanza controls some of the basic information needed for WebVoyáge to run.

#### **OpacIniRoot**

The *OpacIniRoot* variable is one of the most important settings in the WebVoyáge.ini file. The entry after the *OpacIniRoot* variable specifies the absolute path to the location where all of the WebVoyáge configuration files reside. It is important to note that the opac.ini file must reside in the *local* directory under the directory specified after the *OpacIniRoot* variable. Initially, the entry after the *OpacIniRoot* variable will be as follows:

**OpacIniRoot=/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage**

All you should need to change is the *xxxdb* to your site's specific directory under /m1/voyager. For example, if you want WebVoyáge to connect to the training database, the entry after the *OpacIniRoot* variable should be as follows:

**OpacIniRoot=/m1/voyager/traindb/etc/webvoyage**

---

### **DefaultLang**

The *DefaultLang* variable should be used only if your institution desires to make WebVoyáge multilingual. Do not enter anything after this variable if your institution wants to offer WebVoyáge in only one language. For more information about making WebVoyáge multilingual, see [Making WebVoyáge Multilingual](#) on [page 1-20](#).

### **DefaultImageDir**

The *DefaultImageDir* variable should be used only if your institution desires to make WebVoyáge multilingual. Do not enter anything after this variable if your institution wants to offer WebVoyáge in only one language. For more information about making WebVoyáge multilingual, see [Making WebVoyáge Multilingual](#) on [page 1-20](#).

### **WebErrNewOpac**

The information entered after the *WebErrNewOpac* variable will display as a message when WebVoyáge is launched if a more current version of the WebVoyáge client is available but not being used. In order for the correct value to display, you must not change or re-order the "%s" entry. This symbol is used literally by WebVoyáge to gather the appropriate version information.

### **WebErrCompatibility**

The information entered after the *WebErrCompatibility* variable will display as a message when WebVoyáge is launched if the server is not compatible with the current version of the WebVoyáge client. In order for the correct values to display, you must not change or re-order any of the "%s" entries. These symbols are used literally by WebVoyáge to gather specific information.

## **WebRecon Stanza**

The variables in this stanza control information relating to the connection that the WebVoyáge program makes to the server every time WebVoyáge is started.

### **TempFileLocation**

The entry after the *TempFileLocation* variable specifies the absolute path to the temporary files created by WebVoyáge to support connection-based functionality. This should be the same as the path specified in the -t parameter of the Pwebrecon.cgi script (see [Check the Pwebrecon.cgi File](#) on [page 1-6](#)). Initially, this variable will be set to /tmp. Initially, Pwebrecon.cgi resides at the following location:

/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin

### TempFileName

The entry after the *TempFileName* variable specifies the prefix of all temporary files that will be used by WebVoyáge. This should be the same as the name specified at the end of the -t parameter of the Pwebrecon.cgi script (see page 6). Initially, this variable will be set to `webrecon`. Pwebrecon.cgi resides at the following location:

/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin

### time-out

The entry after the *time-out* variable specifies the number of seconds that WebVoyáge waits for user input before timing out of the connection and displaying the ErrorFile message. See [ErrorFile](#) on [page 3-79](#) for more information.

### Thumbnails Stanza

Thumbnails are small graphic files that display in the far right column on the title level results display in WebVoyáge.

---

The screenshot shows a WebVoyáge search results page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links: Databases, Search, Titles, Login, Patron, Request, Home, Help, History, and Exit. Below the navigation bar, it says "Database Name: Endeavor Library" and "Search Request: Keyword w/Relevance = sdc". It also states "Search Results: Displaying 81 through 120 of 367 entries". There are "previous" and "next" navigation buttons. The main area displays a table of search results with columns for #, Relevance, Title, Date, Author, and a thumbnail image. The table contains three rows of data:

#	Relevance	Title	Date	Author	Thumbnail
81	■	[16mm aircraft wing gun camera [object] : Made movies during diving] / David (Adapted it) Owen.	1950	Owen, David (Adapted it)	
82	■	[Bottom temperature recorder - early [object] : In pressure case] / L. Thayer.	1950	Thayer, L.	
83	■	[Ocean current recorder - 400-day [object] : Unattended instrument. Pictures of instrument but no instrument found] / A.A. Klebba.	1950	Klebba, A.A.	

**Figure 3-4. WebVoyáge Title level search results - thumbnails displayed in the far right column**

---

The display of such graphic files in the far right column of the title level display in WebVoyage depend upon a number of factors. The following is a summarization of the rules governing the generation of thumbnails:

- certain keys within the WebVoyage.ini file must be configured properly
- an 856 field must exist in the bib record
- only the first 856 field in the bib record can be used as a thumbnail
- only still graphic files (as opposed to other media types such as avi, mpeg, etc) can be thumbnails. However, generic images can be used in place of certain file types that cannot be used as thumbnails (see [Generic Images Stanza](#) on page 3-10 for more information).

**NOTE:**

It is up to the person creating or modifying the bib record to make sure that the 856 field they wish to use as a thumbnail in WebVoyage is the FIRST 856 field, is properly formatted, and is of a type that can be used as a thumbnail.

For information about entering an 856 field into a bibliographic record, see "OPAC" in the Bibliographic Record section of the *Voyager Cataloging User's Guide*.

### **Applications involved with thumbnail generation**

In order for thumbnail generation to function properly, the applications involved in the generation of thumbnails must reside in certain locations. Pwebrecon.cgi, WebVoyage.cgi, thumbgen.exe, tmb.cgi, webrecon.exe, webrecon.ini, and WebVoyage.ini must reside in the following directory:

/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin

In addition, the filesvr application must reside in the following directory:

/m1/voyager/bin

The address, port and time-out of the filesvr application are specified in the voyager.ini file.

There are two stanzas in the WebVoyage.ini that need to be configured for thumbnail generation to function properly. These are the [Thumbnails] and [Generic Images] stanzas. The [Thumbnails] stanza will be discussed here. See page 10 for information about the [Generic Images] stanza.

### **Activate**

The *Activate=* variable controls whether or not the thumbnails column displays on the title level results display in WebVoyage. The thumbnails column must be activated in order for thumbnails to display. If you want the thumbnails column to display on the title level results display in WebVoyage, type *TRUE* after the *Activate=* variable (*Activate=TRUE*). If you do not want the thumbnails column to display on the title level results display in WebVoyage, type *FALSE* after the *Activate=* variable (*Activate=FALSE*). If nothing is entered after the *Activate=* variable, *FALSE* will be used as the default.

### **Thumbgen**

Thumbgen is an application that is used during the generation of thumbnails. After the *Thumbgen=* variable, enter the path of the directory *on the webserver* in which thumbgen.exe resides. At the time of installation, thumbgen resides at: /m1/voyager/xxxdb/cgi-bin/thumbgen.exe

### **Temp\_Location**

At a certain point during the generation of the thumbnails display, temporary files are created. After the *Temp\_Location=* variable, enter the path of the temp directory in which these temporary files should be stored. For example, you might enter:

Temp\_Location=/tmp

or

Temp\_Location=/m1/voyager/tmp

### **Temp\_File\_Name**

At a certain point during the generation of thumbnails, temporary files are created. After the *Temp\_File\_Name=* variable, enter the name that you would like to be used as the prefix of all temporary files created during thumbnail generation.

### **time-out**

The *time-out=* variable specifies the number of seconds after which the generation of a thumbnail will be aborted. For example, if you want the generation of thumbnails to be aborted after 60 seconds, you would type 60 after the *time-out=* variable (*Timeout=60*). If nothing is entered after the *time-out=* variable, 60 will be used as the default.

---

## **DOI Stanza**

### **URN and DOI Resources**

URN (Uniform Resource Name) and DOI (Digital Object Identifier) work different than URL addresses (Uniform Resource Locator) in that the URN or DOI identification in the 856 field of the MARC record does not point directly to the digital item. Rather, the URN or DOI identification is first routed through a handler server which then maps the URN or DOI to the physical location of the digital item.

WebVoyage can display links to URN and DOI resources in MARC records. In order to use these links, you need to include the following two variables in the [Connection Apps] stanza of the opac.ini file: URN= and DOI=. The variables should be followed by the URL addresses of the URN and DOI handler servers.

Type the variable name (e.g. *URN* or *DOI*), then an equals sign (=), followed by the complete URL address of the URN or DOI handler server. (URN=http://hdl.handle.net/)

Capitalization does not matter in the variable (i.e., urn= is the same as URN=). However, capitalization is crucial in the URL. There are no defaults if URN= or DOI= are not defined. If URN= or DOI= are not defined, any valid URN or DOI links in the 856 field of the MARC record will not be shown in the Display window.

For information about entering URN or DOI links in the 856 field of a MARC record, see “DOI and URN Links” in the Bibliographic Records section of the *Voyager Cataloging User’s Guide*.

## **HelpLocation Stanza**

The [HelpLocation] controls the position of the help text on the different search pages within WebVoyage. The help text can be positioned at the top of the search pages (above the field(s) used to specify searching criteria), in the middle of the search pages (below the Search and Reset buttons), or at the bottom of the search pages (below the records per page drop-down list). Enter *T* after the *Position=* variable (*Position=T*) to position the help text at the top of the search pages. Enter *M* after the *Position=* variable (*Position=M*) to position the help text in the middle of the search pages. Enter *B* after the *Position=* variable (*Position=B*) to position the help text at the bottom of the search pages. If nothing is entered after the *Position=* variable, *T* will be used as the default.

## **Generic Images Stanza**

The [Generic Images] stanza of the webvoyag.ini file is where you should specify the location of generic image files, *on the database server* that can be used as thumbnails. If the first 856 field of a bib record contains information that cannot be

used as a thumbnail, a generic image specified in the [Generic Images] stanza will be used if there is a generic image available for the type of information that was entered in the 856 field of the bib record. For example, if a .txt file is specified in the first 856 field of a bib record, the generic image specified after the *TXT/Image=* variable will be used as a thumbnail. The generic image entered after the *ErrorImage=* variable will be used if an error occurs at any time during the generation of a thumbnail. See [Thumbnails Stanza](#) on page 3-7 for more extensive information about thumbnails.

## **voyager.ini**

---

The **voyager.ini** file is located in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage** directory on the server. The **voyager.ini** file specifies the connection information for the WebVoyage server and the filesvr application. It also specifies the location of the scandoc.cgi file. The contents of this file can be customized but should only be changed with care, because the information contained in the **voyager.ini** file is critical to running WebVoyage.

For more information, see “[Prepare Your \*\*voyager.ini\*\* File](#) on page 1-7.

### **Communications Stanza**

The Communication stanza contains the following variables:

#### **Server and Port variables**

To get WebVoyage running with the default settings, you must change the information after the *Server* and *Port* variables in the [Communications] stanza to establish a connection. Initially, these entries will be:

Server=xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

Port=NNNN

Specify the IP number and Port number for the WebVoyage server.

#### **FileServer, FilePort and FileTimeout variables**

The **FileServer**, **FilePort** and **FileTimeout** variables specify the default server, port and time-out settings to be used if digital objects are stored on the server for web access but an address to those digital objects is not specified in the Cataloging 856 field. The format of this information includes the server name or IP address, the port number, and the time-out value. This information is also used by WebVoyage when displaying thumbnails, Scandoc images, and so on.

Specify the following in the [Communications] stanza:

- 
1. Type *Server* on the first line, then an equals sign (=), followed by the complete name or IP address of the server.
  2. Next, type *Port* on the second line, then an equals sign (=), followed by the port number for the server.
  3. Finally, type *time-out* on the third line, then an equals sign (=), followed by the time-out value (in seconds) to use for the connection.

## Links Stanza

### ScanDoc

For Voyager 2000, this has been moved from the opac.ini file to the voyager.ini file.

Institutions using ImageServer must include the *ScanDoc* variable in the [Links] stanza in the WebVoyáge voyager.ini. This will tell WebVoyáge where to find the ImageServer program.

[Links]

ScanDoc=http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/cgi-bin/scandoc.cgi

If you are running an SSL webserver, the “http” part of the address should read “https,” as in the following example:

ScanDoc=https://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/cgi-bin/scandoc.cgi

## The opac.ini

---

The opac.ini file is located in each database subdirectory of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory (for example, /local, /vcit, /zcit, and /z3950). The opac.ini file controls much of the specific functionality within WebVoyáge, as well as the visual configuration of the many WebVoyáge pages. Almost all of the text found on the WebVoyáge pages can be reconfigured. You can modify all data elements in this configuration file. In addition, you can delete any variable name and its corresponding data element. However, not completing or deleting certain information could disable your patrons from accessing available information.

## Assigning OPAC Identification String

You can assign a string in a particular computer's opac.ini file that Voyager will write in the OPAC search log record in order to identify that computer as the source of the search. This string is included in every record of each search

performed from that computer. If the opac.ini file is on a server, then any searches conducted on workstations connected to this server will be saved with this identifier. See "Search Logging" in the *Technical User's Guide* for more information about Search Logging in WebVoyage.

The [General] stanza must include the following line:

StatString=XXXXXXXXXX

XXXXXXXXXX may be a string of characters not more than ten characters in length. There are no limits on what XXXXXXXXXX must consist of. You should think about what sorts of information you want to get out of the search logging feature when assigning statistical strings. You may want all of your computers to have a unique string, or you may just want an identical identifier for all the machines in a room in the library. In any case, how these identifiers are to be organized is up to you.

## Date Format and Appearance

The keys within the [Date] stanza are used to configure how dates will appear on an item's Record Display in WebVoyage.

### Date Order

To display the month before the day and year (MM/DD/YY), enter the number 0 after the *Order*= variable (*Order*=0). To display the day before the month and year (DD/MM/YY), enter the number 1 after the *Order*= variable (*Order*=1). If nothing is entered after the *Order*= variable, the number 0 will be used as the default.

### Century Format

To display all four digits of the year (MM/DD/YYYY), enter the number 1 after the *Century*= variable (*Century*=1). For example, if the number 1 were entered after the *Century*= variable, a date would display as "10/20/1976". To display only the last two digits of the year (MM/DD/YY), enter the number 0 after the *Century*= variable (*Century*=1). For example, if the number 0 were entered after the *Century*= variable, a date would display as "10/20/76". If nothing is entered after the *Century*= variable, the number 0 will be used as the default.

### Date Display Separator

To use a dash between the month, day, and year of a date (MM-DD-YY), enter the number 0 after the *Separator*= variable. For example, if the number 0 were entered after the *Separator*= variable, a date would display as "10-20-76". To use a forward slash between the month, day, and year of a date (MM/DD/YY), enter the number 1 after the *Separator*= variable. For example, if the number 1 were

---

entered after the *Separator=* variable, a date would display as "10/20/76". If nothing is entered after the *Separator=* variable, the number 0 will be used as the default.

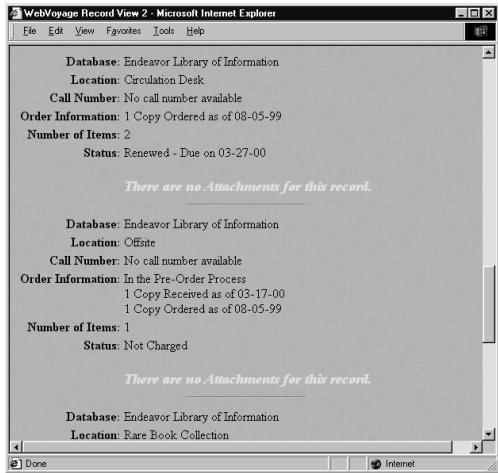
### **Indefinite Option**

It is standard procedure to use the date "December 31, 2382" as a way of indicating an indefinite date. If this date is associated with a record (for instance, as the due date for an item), the information entered after the *Indefinite* variable will display in place of the date. Enter the information that you want to display in place of "December 31, 2382" after the *Indefinite* variable. For example, if you wanted "No due date" to display whenever "December 31, 2382" is associated with a record, you would enter *No due date* after the *Indefinite=* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Indefinite* will be used as the default.

### **Customizing Item Statuses Display**

Item statuses can be set up to display differently in WebVoyage than in the staff modules. For example, your institution may want the "Charged" item status that displays in the staff modules to display as "Charged - due on (date) (time)" in WebVoyage. The [Item Statuses] stanza of the opac.ini file controls how each item status displays in WebVoyage. This stanza only controls how item statuses display in WebVoyage, not in the staff modules (for information about item statuses in the staff modules and item status hierarchy, see "Statuses" in the Item Record section of the *Cataloging User's Guide*, "Item Statuses" in the *Circulation User's Guide*, and the "Item Creation and Maintenance" sections in the *Acquisitions User's Guide*).

In order for item statuses to be displayed in WebVoyage with an item's Holdings information, the 1012 code (for item status) must be included in the Displayh.cfg file and the 9000 code (for Holdings information) must be included in one of the Displayn.cfg files (see page 229 for further information).



---

**Figure 3-5. An item's Holdings information displayed in WebVoyage, including the "Not Charged" item status**

The following codes can be used for any of the item statuses:

- \i** displays the standard item information (i.e., enumeration, chronology, etc)
- \c** displays the outstanding number of requests
- \d** displays the date
- \e** displays the date, unless the date is today
- \t** displays the time
- \u** displays the time, if the date is today
- \l** displays the location

```
[Item Statuses]
NotCharged=Not Checked Out
NotChargedReq=i has \c requests
Charged=Charged - Due on \d \u
ChargedReq=Charged (Requests: \c) - Due on \d \u
Renewed=Renewed - Due on \d \u
RenewedReq=Renewed (Requests: \c) - Due on \d \u
Overdue=Overdue - Due on \d \u
OverdueReq=Overdue (Requests: \c) - Due on \d \u
RecallRequest=Recall Requests: \c
HoldRequest=Hold Requests: \c
OnHold=On hold at \l
OnHoldReq=On hold at \l (Requests: \c)
InTransit=In transit \d
InTransitReq=In transit \d (Requests: \c)
InTransitDischarged=In transit to \l \d
InTransitDischargedReq=In transit to \l \d (Requests: \c)
InTransitOnHold=In transit to \l \d
InTransitOnHoldReq=In transit to \l \d (Requests: \c)
Discharged=Discharged - \d \u
DischargedReq=Discharged - \d \u (Requests: \c)
Missing=Missing - \d
MissingReq=Missing - \d (Requests: \c)
LostLibraryApplied=Lost - \d
LostLibraryAppliedReq=Lost - \d (Requests: \c)
LostSystemApplied=Lost - \d
LostSystemAppliedReq=Lost - \d (Requests: \c)
AtBindery=At Bindery - \d
AtBinderyReq=At Bindery - \d (Requests: \c)
Scheduled=Scheduled (Requests: \c)
InProcess=In Process \d
InProcessReq=In Process \d (Requests: \c)
CallSlipRequest=Call Slip Requests: \c
ShortLoanRequest=Short Loan Requests: \c
RemoteStorageRequest=Remote Storage Requests: \c
```

**Figure 3-6. Example of the [Item Statuses] stanza in the opac.ini file**

The variables with the “Req” extension (NotChargedReq=, MissingReq=, etc.) are only used for items that have one or more requests placed on them.

### Not Charged Status

After the *NotCharged*= variable, enter a display name to identify the “Not Charged” item status in WebVoyáge. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *NotChargedReq*= variable will be used; see [Not Charged With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you

wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Not Checked Out”, you would enter *Not Checked Out* after the *NotCharged=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NotCharged=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Not Charged With Requests Pending Status**

After the *NotChargedReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Not Charged” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *NotCharged=* variable will be used; see [Not Charged Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “(item information) has (# of outstanding requests) requests”, you would enter *\i has \c requests* after the *NotChargedReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NotChargedReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Charged Status**

After the *Charged=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Charged” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *ChargedReq=* variable will be used; see [Charged With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Charged - Due on (date) (time, if the due date is today)”, you would enter *Charged - Due on \d \u* after the *Charged=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Charged=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Charged With Requests Pending Status**

After the *ChargedReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Not Charged” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *Charged=* variable will be used; see [Charged Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Charged (Requests: (# of outstanding requests)) - Due on (date) (time, if the due date is today)”, you would enter *Charged (Requests: \c) - Due on \d \u* after the *ChargedReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ChargedReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Renewed Status**

After the *Renewed=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Renewed” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *RenewedReq=* variable will be used; see [Renewed With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Renewed - Due on (date) (time, if the due

---

date is today)", you would enter *Renewed - Due on \d \u* after the *Renewed=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Renewed=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Renewed With Requests Pending Status**

After the *RenewedReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Renewed" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *Renewed=* variable will be used; see [Renewed Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Renewed (Requests: (# of outstanding requests)) - Due on (date) (time, if the due date is today)", you would enter *Renewed (Requests: \c) - Due on \d \u* after the *RenewedReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *RenewedReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Overdue Status**

After the *Overdue=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Overdue" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *OverdueReq=* variable will be used; see [Overdue With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Overdue - Due on (date) (time, if the due date is today)", you would enter *Overdue - Due on \d \u* after the *Overdue=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Overdue=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Overdue With Requests Pending Status**

After the *OverdueReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Overdue" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *Overdue=* variable will be used; see [Overdue Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Overdue (Requests: (# of outstanding requests)) - Due on (date) (time, if the due date is today)", you would enter *Overdue (Requests: \c) - Due on \d \u* after the *OverdueReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *OverdueReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Recall Request Placed Status**

After the *RecallRequest=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Recall Request" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more recall requests placed on it. For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Recall Requests: (# of outstanding requests)",

you would enter *Recall Requests*: \c after the *RecallRequest=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *RecallRequest=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Hold Request Placed Status**

After the *HoldRequest=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Hold Request” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more hold requests placed on it. For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Hold Requests: (# of outstanding requests)”, you would enter *Hold Requests*: \c after the *HoldRequest=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *HoldRequest=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **On Hold Status**

After the *OnHold=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “On Hold” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *OnHoldReq=* variable will be used; see [On Hold With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “On hold at (location)”, you would enter *On hold at* \l after the *OnHold=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *OnHold=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **On Hold With Requests Pending Status**

After the *OnHoldReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “On Hold” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *OnHold=* variable will be used; see [On Hold Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “On hold at (location) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))”, you would enter *On hold at* \l (*Requests*: \c) after the *OnHoldReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *OnHoldReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **In Transit Status**

After the *InTransit=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that is in transit. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InTransitReq=* variable will be used; see [In Transit With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “In transit (date)”, you would enter *In transit* \d after the *InTransit=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransit=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

---

## In Transit With Requests Pending Status

After the *InTransitReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that is in transit. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InTransit=* variable will be used; see [In Transit Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "In transit (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *In transit \d (Requests: \c)* after the *InTransitReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransitReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## Discharged, In Transit Status

After the *InTransitDischarged=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been discharged and put into transit to another location. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InTransitDischargedReq=* variable will be used; see [Discharged, In Transit With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "In transit to (location) (date)", you would enter *In transit \l \d* after the *InTransitDischarged=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransitDischarged=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## Discharged, In Transit With Requests Pending Status

After the *InTransitDischargedReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been discharged and put into transit to another location. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InTransitDischarged=* variable will be used; see [Discharged, In Transit Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "In transit to (location) (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *In transit \l \d (Requests: \c)* after the *InTransitDischargedReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransitDischargedReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## In Transit On Hold

After the *InTransitOnHold=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that is on hold and in transit to a location (in transit to the hold desk, etc). This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InTransitOnHoldReq=* variable will be used; see [In Transit On Hold With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "In transit to (location)

(date)", you would enter *In transit* \l \d after the *InTransitOnHold=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransitOnHold=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **In Transit On Hold With Requests Pending Status**

After the *InTransitOnHoldReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that is on hold and in transit to a location (in transit to the hold desk, etc). This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InTransitOnHold=* variable will be used; see [In Transit On Hold](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "In transit to (location) (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *In transit* \l \d (*Requests:* \c) after the *InTransitOnHoldReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransitOnHoldReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Discharged Status**

After the *Discharged=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Discharged" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *DischargedReq=* variable will be used; see [Discharged With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Discharged - (date) (time, if the due date is today)", you would enter *Discharged* - \l \u after the *Discharged=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Discharged=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Discharged With Requests Pending Status**

After the *DischargedReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Discharged" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *Discharged=* variable will be used; see [Discharged Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Discharged - (date) (time, if the due date is today) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *Discharged* - \l \u (*Requests:* \c) after the *DischargedReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *DischargedReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Missing Status**

After the *Missing=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Missing" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *MissingReq=* variable will be used; see [Missing With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status

---

to display in WebVoyage as “Missing - (date)”, you would enter *Missing* - \d after the *Missing=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Missing=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Missing With Requests Pending Status**

After the *MissingReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Missing” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *Missing=* variable will be used; see [Missing Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Missing - (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))”, you would enter *Missing* - \d (*Requests:* \c) after the *MissingReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *MissingReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Lost Library Applied Status**

After the *LostLibraryApplied=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been marked as lost by staff in one of the staff modules (Circulation, Cataloging, Acquisitions). This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *LostLibraryAppliedReq=* variable will be used; see [Lost Library Applied With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Lost - (date)”, you would enter *Lost* - \d after the *LostLibraryApplied=* variable.

#### **NOTE:**

If nothing is entered after the *LostLibraryApplied=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Lost Library Applied With Requests Pending Status**

After the *LostLibraryAppliedReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been marked as lost by staff in one of the staff modules (Circ, Cat, Acq). This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *LostLibraryApplied=* variable will be used; see [Lost Library Applied Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Lost - (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))”, you would enter *Lost* - \d (*Requests:* \c) after the *LostLibraryAppliedReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *LostLibraryAppliedReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## **Lost System Applied Status**

After the *LostSystemApplied*= variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been marked as lost by the system (circjob 2 - see *The Voyager Technical User's Guide*). This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *LostLibrarySystemReq*= variable will be used; see [Lost System Applied With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Lost - (date)", you would enter *Lost - \d* after the *LostSystemApplied*= variable. If nothing is entered after the *LostSystemApplied*= variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## **Lost System Applied With Requests Pending Status**

After the *LostSystemAppliedReq*= variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been marked as lost by the system (circjob 2 - see *The Voyager Technical User's Guide*). This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *LostSystemApplied*= variable will be used; see [Lost System Applied Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Lost - (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *Lost - \d (Requests: \c)* after the *LostSystemAppliedReq*= variable. If nothing is entered after the *LostSystemAppliedReq*= variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## **At Bindery Status**

After the *AtBindery*= variable, enter a display name to identify the "At Bindery" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *AtBinderyReq*= variable will be used; see [At Bindery With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "At bindery - (date)", you would enter *At bindery - \d* after the *AtBindery*= variable. If nothing is entered after the *AtBindery*= variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## **At Bindery With Requests Pending Status**

After the *AtBinderyReq*= variable, enter a display name to identify the "At Bindery" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *AtBindery*= variable will be used; see [At Bindery Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "At bindery - (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *At bindery - \d (Requests: \c)* after the *AtBinderyReq*= variable. If nothing is entered after the *AtBinderyReq*= variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

---

## Scheduled Status

After the *Scheduled=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been scheduled in the Media Scheduling module. For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Scheduled - (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *Scheduled - (Requests: \c)* after the *Scheduled=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Scheduled=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## In Process Status

After the *InProcess=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been ordered and received through Acquisitions but is still in the preparation process. This variable will not be used if the item has any requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InProcessReq=* variable will be used; see [In Process With Requests Pending Status](#) below). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "In Process - (date)", you would enter *In Process - \d* after the *InProcess=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InProcess=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## In Process With Requests Pending Status

After the *InProcessReq=* variable, enter a display name to identify the item status in WebVoyage of an item that has been ordered and received through Acquisitions but is still in the preparation process, and that has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more requests placed on it. This variable will not be used if the item has no requests placed on it (in such a case, the *InProcess=* variable will be used; see [In Process Status](#) above). For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "In Process - (date) (Requests: (# of outstanding requests))", you would enter *In Process - \d (Requests: \c)* after the *InProcessReq=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InProcessReq=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

## Call Slip Request Status

After the *CallSlipRequest=* variable, enter a display name to identify the "Call Slip Request" item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more call slip requests placed on it. For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as "Call Slip Requests: (# of outstanding requests)", you would enter *Call Slip Requests: \c* after the *CallSlipRequest=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *CallSlipRequest=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Short Loan Request Status**

After the *ShortLoanRequest=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Short Loan Request” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more short loan requests placed on it. For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Short Loan Requests: (# of outstanding requests)”, you would enter *Short Loan Requests: \c* after the *ShortLoanRequest=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ShortLoanRequest=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Remote Storage Request Status**

After the *RemoteStorageRequest=* variable, enter a display name to identify the “Remote Storage Request” item status in WebVoyage. This variable will only be used if the item has one or more remote storage requests placed on it. For example, if you wanted the item status to display in WebVoyage as “Remote Storage Requests: (# of outstanding requests)”, you would enter *Remote Storage Requests: \c* after the *RemoteStorageRequest=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *RemoteStorageRequest=* variable, this status will not display in WebVoyage.

### **Number of Records Drop-Down Box**

The information entered after the *Description* variable of the *Records\_Requested Stanza* will display in the drop-down menu at the bottom of the search pages in WebVoyage. This drop-down menu allows users to select the number of records that they would like to have display on a single search results page. The information entered after the *Description* variable will display after values in this drop-down menu that designate the number of records to display. For example, if you wanted “records per page” to display after the values in the drop-down menu, you would enter *records per page* after the *Description=* variable (*Description=records per page*).

### **Drop-Down Values 1, 2, 3, 4**

The values entered after the *1*, *2*, *3*, and *4* variables will display in the drop-down menu at the bottom of the search pages in WebVoyage. This drop-down menu allows users to select the number of records that they would like to have display on a single search results page. Enter the value you would like to display first in the drop-down menu after the *1=* variable, second after the *2=* variable, third after the *3=* variable, and last after the *4=* variable. The value may not exceed 100. If a value larger than 100 is entered after any of the variable, 100 will be used instead.

---

## **Default Value**

The *Default* variable controls which value (of the values entered after the 1, 2, 3, and 4 variables) will initially display highlighted in the drop-down menu at the bottom of the search pages. Enter the number of the variable (either 1, 2, 3, or 4) that designates the value that you want to display highlighted by default in the drop-down menu after the *Default=* variable. For example, if you wanted the value entered after the 1 variable to display highlighted by default in the drop-down menu, you would enter 1 after the *Default=* variable (*Default=1*).

## **Map Search Page**

---

This feature is only available if your institution has purchased the Geospatial Searching Extension Module.

The *Map\_Search\_Page* stanza allows you to configure various aspects of the map searching page. You can change the color of the text or the background, or change the caption text for the fields onscreen.

The first six variables of the [*Map\_Search\_Page*] stanza work the same as the variables within the [*Html\_Body*] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

### **Active Map Search Tab Color**

The *ActiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the page of the Map Search tab when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable to configure the background color of the tab. For example, if you wanted to make the background of the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

### **Inactive Map Search Tab Color**

The *InactiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the tab for the Map Search page when it is inactive. This also controls the color of the block that contains the Footprint and Format Type as well as the block containing the Records per page field and the Submit and Reset buttons. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable to configure the color of the tab when it is inactive and the lower portion of the search block when it is active. For example, if you wanted to make the Boolean Search tab appear white when inactive you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

### ActiveFontColor

The *ActiveFontColor* variable controls the color of the text on the Map Search tab and the descriptive text when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the active tab. For example, if you wanted to make the descriptive text white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable (*ActiveFontColor=ffffff*).

### InactiveFontColor

The *InactiveFontColor* variable controls the color of the text on the Map Search tab when it is inactive. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the inactive tab. For example, if you wanted to make the text on the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *InactiveFontColor=* variable (*InactiveFontColor=ffffff*).

### Map Search Tab Text

The *Tab\_Text* variable controls the description that appears on the tab on the Map Search page. Enter the text that you want to appear on the tab after the *Tab\_Text=* variable. For example, if you wanted the tab to read "Map Search", you would enter *Map Search* after the *Tab\_Text* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Tab\_Text* variable, the text labels will default to *Geospatial Search*.

### Top Background Color

The *Top\_Background\_Color* variable controls the color of the background of the header of the coordinate table that appears on the Map Search screens. Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *Top\_Background\_Color=* variable to specify the color. For example, if you wanted to make the header of the coordinate table red, you would enter *ff0000* (the hexadecimal color code for red) after the *Top\_Background\_Color=* variable (*Top\_Background\_Color=ff0000*).

### Table Background Color

The *Table\_Background\_Color* variable controls the color of the background of the body of the coordinate table that appears on the Map Search screens. Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *Table\_Background\_Color=* variable to specify the color. For example, if you wanted to make the body of the coordinate table red, you would enter *ff0000* (the hexadecimal color code for red) after the *Table\_Background\_Color=* variable (*Table\_Background\_Color=ff0000*).

---

## **Label Font Color**

The *Font\_Color* variable controls the color of the field and column labels that appear in the data entry field tables that appears on the Map Search screens. Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *Font\_Color=* variable to specify the color. For example, if you wanted to make the text in the table red, you would enter ff0000 (the hexadecimal color code for red) after the *Font\_Color=* variable (*Font\_Color=ff0000*).

## **Header Font Color**

The *Top\_Font\_Color* variable controls the color of the headers of the data entry field tables that appears on the Map Search screens. Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *Top\_Font\_Color=* variable to specify the color. For example, if you wanted to make the text in the header red, you would enter ff0000 (the hexadecimal color code for red) after the *Top\_Font\_Color=* variable (*Top\_Font\_Color=ff0000*).

## **Latitude Field**

The *Latitude* variable controls the text that appears whenever a latitudinal coordinate must be input on the Rectangle Search, Polygon Search, Point and Radius Search, and Corridor/Route Search pages. Enter the information that you want to display in the coordinate table after the *Latitude* variable. For example, if you entered *Latitude:* after the *Latitude* variable, the caption text might display as "Latitude:" If nothing is entered after the *Latitude* variable, *Latitude*. will be used as the default.

## **Longitude Field**

The *Longitude* variable controls the text that appears whenever a longitudinal coordinate must be input on the Rectangle Search, Polygon Search, Point and Radius Search, and Corridor/Route Search pages. Enter the information that you want to display in the coordinate table after the *Longitude* variable. For example, if you entered *Longitude:* after the *Longitude* variable, the caption text might display as "Longitude:" If nothing is entered after the *Longitude* variable, *Longitude* will be used as the default.

## **Rectangle Search Heading**

The *Rectangle\_Search* variable controls the text that appears in the heading of the coordinate table on the Rectangle Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the title of the search after the *Rectangle\_Search* variable. For example, if you entered *Rectangle Search* after the *Rectangle\_Search* variable, the header might display as "Rectangle Search" If nothing is entered after the *Rectangle\_Search* variable, *Rectangle Search* will be used as the default.

### **Corridor Search Heading**

The *Corridor\_Search* variable controls the text that appears in the heading of the coordinate table on the Corridor Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the title of the search after the *Corridor\_Search* variable. For example, if you entered *Corridor Search* after the *Corridor\_Search* variable, the header might display as “*Corridor Search*” If nothing is entered after the *Corridor\_Search* variable, *Corridor Route Search* will be used as the default.

### **Point and Radius Search Heading**

The *Point\_and\_Radius\_Search* variable controls the text that appears in the heading of the coordinate table on the Point and Radius Search screen. Enter the information that you want to display in the coordinate table after the *Point\_and\_Radius\_Search* variable. For example, if you entered *Point and Radius* after the *Point\_and\_Radius\_Search* variable, the header might display as “*Point and Radius*” If nothing is entered after the *Point\_and\_Radius\_Search* variable, *Point and Radius Search* will be used as the default.

### **Radius Text Caption**

The *Radius\_Text* variable controls the text of the caption of the Radius coordinate field on the Point and Radius screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Radius\_Text* variable. For example, if you entered *Radius (optional)*: after the *Radius\_Text* variable, the caption text might display as “*Radius (optional)*.” If nothing is entered after the *Radius\_Text* variable, *Radius (optional)*: will be used as the default.

### **Polygon Search Heading**

The *Polygon\_Search* variable controls the text that appears in the heading of the coordinate table on the Polygon Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the title of the search after the *Polygon\_Search* variable. For example, if you entered *Polygon Search* after the *Polygon\_Search* variable, the header might display as “*Polygon Search*” If nothing is entered after the *Polygon\_Search* variable, *Polygon Search* will be used as the default.

### **Range Search Heading**

The *Range\_Search* variable controls the text that appears in the heading of the coordinate table on the Range Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the title of the search after the *Range\_Search* variable. For example, if you entered *Range Search* after the *Range\_Search* variable, the header might display as “*Range Search*” If nothing is entered after the *Range\_Search* variable, *Range Search* will be used as the default.

---

## **Range Search Lower Left Field Text**

The *Lower\_Left* variable controls the text of the caption of the Lower Left coordinate field on the Rectangle Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Lower\_Left* variable. For example, if you entered *Lower Left:* after the *Lower\_Left* variable, the caption text might display as “*Lower Left:*” If nothing is entered after the *Lower\_Left* variable, *Lower Left* will be used as the default.

## **Upper Right Coordinate Caption**

The *Upper\_Right* variable controls the text of the caption of the Upper Right coordinate field on the Rectangle Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Upper\_Right* variable. For example, if you entered *Upper Right:* after the *Upper\_Right* variable, the caption text might display as “*Upper Right:*” If nothing is entered after the *Upper\_Right* variable, *Upper Right* will be used as the default.

## **Upper Latitude Caption**

The *Upper\_Latitude* variable controls the text of the caption of the Upper Right coordinate field on the Range Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Upper\_Latitude* variable. For example, if you entered *Upper Latitude* after the *Upper\_Latitude* variable, the caption text might display as “*Upper Latitude*” If nothing is entered after the *Upper\_Latitude* variable, (*Upper Latitude*) will be used as the default.

## **Lower Latitude Caption**

The *Lower\_Latitude* variable controls the text of the caption of the Lower Left coordinate field on the Range Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Lower\_Latitude* variable. For example, if you entered *Lower Latitude* after the *Lower\_Latitude* variable, the caption text might display as “*Lower Latitude*” If nothing is entered after the *Lower\_Latitude* variable, (*Lower Latitude*) will be used as the default.

## **Left Longitude Coordinate Field Caption**

The *Left\_Longitude* variable controls the text of the caption of the Left Longitude coordinate field on the Range Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Left\_Longitude* variable. For example, if you entered *Left Longitude* after the *Left\_Longitude* variable, the caption text might display as “*Left Longitude*” If nothing is entered after the *Left\_Longitude* variable, (*Left Longitude*) will be used as the default.

### Right Longitude Coordinate Field Caption

The *Right\_Longitude* variable controls the text of the caption of the Right Longitude coordinate field on the Range Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Right\_Longitude* variable. For example, if you entered *Right Longitude* after the *Right\_Longitude* variable, the caption text might display as “*Right Longitude*” If nothing is entered after the *Right\_Longitude* variable, (*Right Longitude*) will be used as the default.

### Longitude Coordinate Column Caption (Range Search Screen)

The *Vertical\_Line\_Search* variable controls the text of the caption of the Longitude coordinate column on the Range Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Vertical\_Line\_Search* variable. For example, if you entered *Vertical Line Search:* after the *Vertical\_Line\_Search* variable, the caption text might display as “*Vertical Line Search:*” If nothing is entered after the *Vertical\_Line\_Search* variable, *Vertical Line Search* will be used as the default.

### Latitude Coordinate Column Caption (Range Search Screen)

The *Horizontal\_Line\_Search* variable controls the text of the caption of the Latitude coordinate column on the Range Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Horizontal\_Line\_Search* variable. For example, if you entered *Horizontal Line Search:* after the *Horizontal\_Line\_Search* variable, the caption text might display as “*Horizontal Line Search:*” If nothing is entered after the *Horizontal\_Line\_Search* variable, *Horizontal Line Search* will be used as the default.

### UTM Meters Caption Text

The *UTM\_Meters* variable controls the text of the caption of the UTM Meters fields on the Rectangle Search, Polygon Search, Point and Radius Search, and Corridor/Route Search pages. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *UTM\_Meters* variable. For example, if you entered *UTM Meters:* after the *UTM\_Meters* variable, the caption text might display as “*UTM Meters:*” If nothing is entered after the *UTM\_Meters* variable, *UTM Meters/MGRS:* will be used as the default.

### Coordinate Description

The *Coordinate* variable controls the description that displays before a coordinate number on the Polygon Search and the Coordinate Search screens. Enter the information that you want to display before the coordinate numbers after the *Coordinate* variable. For example, if you entered *Coordinate* after the *Coordinate* variable, the caption text might display as “Coordinate 1.” If nothing is entered after the *Coordinate* variable, *Coordinate* will be used as the default.

---

## **Width Field Caption**

The *Width* variable controls the text of the caption of the Width field on the Corridor/Route Search screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Width* variable. For example, if you entered *Width:* after the *Width* variable, the caption text might display as “*Width:*” If nothing is entered after the *Width* variable, *Width (Radius)* will be used as the default.

## **Cannot Connect Message**

The *No\_Format\_Defined* variable controls the message that appears on the search pages when WebVoyage cannot connect to the server and get the list of format types. Enter the text that you want to display onscreen after the *No\_Format\_Defined* variable. For example, if you entered *No Format Defined* after the *No\_Format\_Defined* variable, the message might display as “*No Format Defined*” If nothing is entered after the *No\_Format\_Defined* variable, *No Format Defined* will be used as the default.

## **Maximum Number of Coordinate Points**

The *Number\_of\_Coordinates* variable specifies the maximum number of points that you will be allowed to define when performing a search on the Polygon Search and Corridor/Route Search screens. Depending on what type of units are selected onscreen, either one or two fields will appear for each point that can be defined. Enter the number of points which you want to search for onscreen after the *Number\_of\_Coordinates* variable. For example, if you entered 20 after the *Number\_of\_Coordinates* variable, 20 fields or pairs of fields will appear. If nothing is entered after the *Number\_of\_Coordinates* variable, no fields will display on the Polygon Search and Corridor/Route Search screens.

## **Map\_Footprint Stanza**

This feature is only available if your institution has purchased the Geospatial Searching extension module.

## **Footprint Field Label**

The *Footprint* variable controls the text of the label of the Footprint field on all of the Map Search screens. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Footprint* variable. For example, if you entered *Footprint:* after the *Footprint* variable, the caption text might display as “*Footprint:*” If nothing is entered after the *Footprint* variable, *Footprint:* will be used as the default.

### **Footprint Caption Text Font Color**

The *FontColor* variable controls the color of the Footprint caption text that appears on the Map Search screens. Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *FontColor=* variable to specify the color. For example, if you wanted to make the Footprint caption text red, you would enter ff0000 (the hexadecimal color code for red) after the *FontColor=* variable (FontColor=ff0000).

### **Map Format Type Configuration**

This feature is only available if your institution has purchased the Geospatial Searching extension module.

#### **Format Type Field Text**

The *FormatType* variable controls the text of the label of the Format Type field on all of the Map Search screens. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *FormatType* variable. For example, if you entered *Format Type* after the *FormatType* variable, the caption text might display as “*Format Type*” If nothing is entered after the *FormatType* variable, *Format Type:* will be used as the default.

#### **Format Type Caption Font Color**

The *FontColor* variable controls the color of the Format Type caption text that appears on the Map Search screens. Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *FontColor=* variable to specify the color. For example, if you wanted to make the Format Type caption text red, you would enter ff0000 (the hexadecimal color code for red) after the *FontColor=* variable (FontColor=ff0000).

### **Map Limits Page**

This feature is only available if your institution has purchased the Geospatial Searching extension module.

The *Map\_Limits\_Page* stanza controls various aspects of the map-related limiting functions on the Search Limits page.



**Figure 3-7. Map-Related Limits on Search Limits Page**

### Map Limits Heading

The *Map\_Limits* variable controls the text of the header of the Map Limits section of the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Map\_Limits* variable. For example, if you entered *Map\_Limits* after the *Map\_Limits* variable, the caption text might display as “*Map\_Limits*”. If nothing is entered after the *Map\_Limits* variable, *Map\_Limits* will be used as the default.

### Scale Denominator Field Caption

The *Scale\_Denominator\_Label* variable controls the caption of the Scale Denominator field on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Scale\_Denominator\_Label* variable. For example, if you entered *Scale Denominator* after the *Scale\_Denominator\_Label* variable, the caption text might display as “*Scale Denominator*.” If nothing is entered after the *Scale\_Denominator\_Label* variable, *Scale Denominator* will be used as the default.

### Scale Range Field Caption

The *Range\_Scale* variable controls the caption of the Scale Range field in the Scale Denominator row on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Range\_Scale* variable. For example, if you

entered *Range*: after the *Range\_Scale* variable, the caption text might display as “*Range:.*” If nothing is entered after the *Range\_Scale* variable, *Range 1:* will be used as the default.

### **Projection Field Caption**

The *Projection\_Label* variable controls the caption of the Projection field on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Projection\_Label* variable. For example, if you entered *Projection* after the *Projection\_Label* variable, the caption text might display as “*Projection.*” If nothing is entered after the *Projection\_Label* variable, *Projections:* will be used as the default.

### **Map\_Dates\_Label**

The *Map\_Dates\_Label* variable controls the caption of the Map Dates field on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Map\_Dates\_Label* variable. For example, if you entered *Map Dates* after the *Map\_Dates\_Label* variable, the caption text might display as “*Map Dates.*” If nothing is entered after the *Map\_Dates\_Label* variable, *Map Dates:* will be used as the default.

### **Map Date Header Title**

The *Date\_Title* variable controls the header over the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Date\_Title* variable. For example, if you entered *Date:* after the *Date\_Title* variable, the caption text might display as “*Date:.*” If nothing is entered after the *Date\_Title* variable, *Date* will be used as the default.

### **Primary Check Box Caption**

The *Primary* variable controls the caption of the Primary check box in the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Primary* variable. For example, if you entered *Primary* after the *Primary* variable, the caption text might display as “*Primary.*” If nothing is entered after the *Primary* variable, *Primary* will be used as the default.

### **Secondary Check Box Caption**

The *Secondary* variable controls the caption of the Secondary check box in the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Secondary* variable. For example, if you entered *Secondary* after the *Secondary* variable, the caption text might display as “*Secondary.*” If nothing is entered after the *Secondary* variable, *Secondary* will be used as the default.

---

### **Tertiary Check Box Caption**

The *Tertiary* variable controls the caption of the Tertiary check box in the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Tertiary* variable. For example, if you entered *Tertiary* after the *Tertiary* variable, the caption text might display as “*Tertiary*.” If nothing is entered after the *Tertiary* variable, *Tertiary* will be used as the default.

### **Quaternary Check Box Caption**

The *Quaternary* variable controls the caption of the Quaternary check box in the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Quaternary* variable. For example, if you entered *Quaternary* after the *Quaternary* variable, the caption text might display as “*Quaternary*.” If nothing is entered after the *Quaternary* variable, *Quaternary* will be used as the default.

### **Date Field Caption**

The *Date* variable controls the caption of the Date field in the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Date* variable. For example, if you entered *Date* after the *Date* variable, the caption text might display as “*Date*.” If nothing is entered after the *Date* variable, *Date:* will be used as the default.

### **Range Field Caption**

The *Range* variable controls the Range field caption in the Date field in the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Range* variable. For example, if you entered *Range* after the *Range* variable, the caption text might display as “*Range*.” If nothing is entered after the *Range* variable, *Range:* will be used as the default.

### **Date Type Field Caption**

The *Date\_Type* variable controls the Date Type field caption in the Map Dates block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Date\_Type* variable. For example, if you entered *Date Type* after the *Date\_Type* variable, the caption text might display as “*Date Type*.” If nothing is entered after the *Date\_Type* variable, *Date Type:* will be used as the default.

### **Controlled Element Field Caption**

The *Controlled\_Element\_Label* variable controls the caption of the Controlled Element field on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Controlled\_Element\_Label* variable. For example, if you entered *Controlled Element* after the *Controlled\_Element\_Label* variable, the

caption text might display as “*Controlled Element*.” If nothing is entered after the *Controlled\_Element\_Label* variable, *Controlled Element*: will be used as the default.

### **Document Classification Check Box Caption**

The *Document\_Classification* variable controls the caption of the Document Classification check box in the Controlled Element field on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Document\_Classification* variable. For example, if you entered *Document Classification* after the *Document\_Classification* variable, the caption text might display as “*Document Classification*.” If nothing is entered after the *Document\_Classification* variable, *Document Classification* will be used as the default.

### **Record Classification Check Box Caption**

The *Record\_Classification* variable controls the caption of the Record Classification check box in the Controlled Element field on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Record\_Classification* variable. For example, if you entered *Record Classification* after the *Record\_Classification* variable, the caption text might display as “*Record Classification*.” If nothing is entered after the *Record\_Classification* variable, *Record Classification* will be used as the default.

### **Classification Field Caption**

The *Classification\_Label* variable controls the caption of the Classification field on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Classification\_Label* variable. For example, if you entered *Classification* after the *Classification\_Label* variable, the caption text might display as “*Classification*.” If nothing is entered after the *Classification\_Label* variable, *Classification*: will be used as the default.

### **Classification Block, First Column**

The *Col1* variable controls the caption of the first column in the Classification block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Col1* variable. For example, if you entered *Classification* after the *Col1* variable, the caption text might display as “*Classification*.” If nothing is entered after the *Col1* variable, *Classification*: will be used as the default.

---

## **Classification Block, Second Column**

The *Col2* variable controls the caption of the second column in the Classification block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Col2* variable. For example, if you entered *Releasability* after the *Col2* variable, the caption text might display as “*Releasability*.” If nothing is entered after the *Col2* variable, *Releasability*: will be used as the default.

## **Classification Block, Third Column**

The *Col3* variable controls the caption of the second column in the Classification block on the Search Limits screen. Enter the text that you want to display as the caption after the *Col3* variable. For example, if you entered *Repro-Type* after the *Col3* variable, the caption text might display as “*Repro-Type*.” If nothing is entered after the *Col3* variable, *Repro-Type*: will be used as the default.

## **Other Components of the Search Limits Screen**

**Order of Limits Sets** You can specify the order of the Language, Location, Date, Medium, Type, Place, and Status limits as they appear on-screen by arranging into the new order the search limit types that follow the [Limits] stanza in the limits.ini. You can also remove a set of search limits by removing that limit type from the [Limits] stanza. Map Limits cannot be reordered.

### **Contents of Limits in Each Set**

You can specify what limits are to appear on the Limits screen. The contents of each set of limits (except for the Date limit) is stored in the limits.ini file.

### **Background Image**

You can specify a particular image to appear in the background of the screen by entering the name of the image (including the full path) after the Background= variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background color is also specified (see below), this image takes precedence. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### **Background Color**

You can specify the color of the background by entering an RGB color code after the BGCOLOR= variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If a background image is also specified, the color will not be used. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### **Text Color**

You can specify the color of the text on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the Text= variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### **Link Color**

You can specify the color of the unvisited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the LINK= variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### **Visited Link Color**

You can specify the color of the visited links on the screen by entering an RGB color code after the VLINK= variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### **Selected Link Color**

You can specify the color of the link being clicked by entering an RGB color code after the ALINK= variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### **Screen Title**

The title of the page can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Page\_Title in the [Limit\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, no title will display. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### **Search Help Text**

The informational text that appears on the Search screen (by default, the text that appears between the Search Type buttons and the search box) can be edited. The text is in an html file called setlimmsg.htm. The contents of this file can be edited to contain anything that you might want. This file resides in each directory under /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage.

### **List Title**

The text that appears directly above the list of limits can be changed by editing the text that follows the Search\_Limits variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, no text will appear; but a colon (:) will still appear on-screen.

---

## **Submit Button**

The text that appears on the Set Limits button is controlled by editing the text following the SubmitButton variable in the [Limit\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the label will default to "Submit." For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-104](#).

## **Limit Captions**

Each caption next to each set of limits can be changed. These settings are contained in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. The following variables are used:

**Table 3-1. Search Limit variable information**

Variable Name	Limit Set	MARC field searched
Date	Date range	008
Language	Language list	008
Type	Item type	Leader bytes 6 and 7
Medium	Item medium type	First character of 007
Location	Item's physical location	MFHD location
Place	Place the item was published	008
Status	Item's status of publication	008

If no text is entered after a variable, no text will appear; but a colon (:) will still appear on-screen. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-104](#).

### **NOTE:**

The following variables will only appear if your institution uses the Geospatial Searching tools.

## **Background Color of the Map Limits Header**

You can specify the color of the background of the header of the Map Limits section by entering an RBG color code after the Top\_BackGround\_Color= variable in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Font Color of the Map Limits Header Text**

You can specify the color of the header text over the Map Limits section by entering an RBG color code after the `Font_Color=` variable in the `Map_Limits_Page` stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on page 3-33.

### **Background Color of the Map Limits list**

You can specify the color of the background of the Map Limits section by entering an RBG color code after the `Table_Backcolorround_Color=` variable in the `Map_Limits_Page` stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on page 3-33.

### **Map Limits Section Heading**

The title of the Map Limits section can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable `Map_Limits` in the `Map_Limits_Page` stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on page 3-33.

### **Scale Denominator Caption**

The caption of the Scale Denominator field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable `Scale_Denominator_Label` in the `Map_Limits_Page` stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on page 3-33.

### **Range Scale Caption**

The caption of the Scale Range field in the Scale Denominator row can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable `Range_Scale` in the `Map_Limits_Page` stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on page 3-33.

### **Projection Caption**

The caption of the Projection field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable `Projection_Label` in the `Map_Limits_Page` stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on page 3-33.

### **Map Dates Caption**

The caption of the Map Dates field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable `Map_Dates_Label` in the `Map_Limits_Page` stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on page 3-33.

---

## **Map Dates Block Header**

The heading over the Map Dates block in the Map Dates field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Date\_Title in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Primary Checkbox Caption**

The caption of the Primary check box in the Map Dates block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Primary in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Secondary Checkbox Caption**

The caption of the Secondary check box in the Map Dates block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Secondary in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Tertiary Checkbox Caption**

The caption of the Tertiary check box in the Map Dates block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Tertiary in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Quaternary Checkbox Caption**

The caption of the Quaternary check box in the Map Dates block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Quaternary in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Caption of Date Field in the Map Dates Block**

The caption of the Date field in the Map Dates block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Date in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Caption of Range Field in the Map Dates Block**

The caption of the Range field in the Map Dates block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Range in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page](#) on [page 3-33](#).

### **Caption of Date Type Field in the Map Dates Block**

The caption of the Date Type field in the Map Dates block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Date\_Type in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

### **Controlled Element Field Caption**

The caption of the Controlled Element field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Controlled\_Element\_Label in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

### **Document Classification Checkbox Caption**

The caption of the Document Classification check box in the Controlled Element field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Document\_Classification in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

### **Record Classification Checkbox Caption**

The caption of the Record Classification check box in the Controlled Element field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Record\_Classification in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

### **Classification Field Caption**

The caption of the Classification field can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Classification\_Label in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

### **Caption over Column 1 in Classification Block**

The caption of the first column in the Classification block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Col1 in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

### **Caption over Column 2 in Classification Block**

The caption of the second column in the Classification block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Col2 in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

---

## Caption over Column 3 in Classification Block

The caption of the third column in the Classification block can be changed by editing the text that appears after the variable Col3 in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Map Limits Page on page 3-33](#).

### Alternate Text over Set Limits Button

The alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse pointer is held over the Set Limits button can be changed by editing the text that follows the Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text variable in the [Limit\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. If no text is entered, the label will default to "Set Search Limits." For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### Clear Limits Button

The alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse is held over the Clear Limits button can be changed by editing the text that appears after the Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text= variable in the Limit\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. For more information, see [Limit\\_Page Stanza on page 3-104](#).

### Links at bottom of page:

The links at the bottom of the page are defined in the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [Toolbar\\_Top and Toolbar\\_Bottom Stanzas on page 3-66](#)). These can be set to display as text or as images. See the Toolbars section above for more information.

## Miscellaneous WebVoyage Display Configuration

The [Misc\_Strings] stanza controls miscellaneous pieces of text that display throughout WebVoyage.

### Database Name (Search Page Top)

The *Database\_Name* variable controls one of the labels that display toward the top of all search pages, search results pages and record display pages. This variable controls the label that displays before the name of the database that is associated with a search, search result or record. Enter the information that you want to display before the database name after the *Database\_Name* variable. For example, if *Database Name:* was entered after the *Database\_Name* variable, and you were searching a database called "Endeavor Library of Knowledge," the label and database name would display as "Database Name: Endeavor Library of Knowledge." If nothing is entered after the *Database\_Name* variable, *Database Name:* will be used as the default.

### No Entry in Marcinfo File Message

If there is not an appropriate corresponding entry for a title in the marcinfo.ini file (located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory), the information entered after the *NoEntry* variable will display. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Entry not found* will be used as the default.

### Copy Number Information

The *Copy\_Number* variable controls the information that displays before an item's copy number. A copy number may display in many places throughout WebVoyage (commonly on the request forms). Enter the information that you want to display before an item's copy number after the *Copy\_Number* variable. For example, if you entered *copy* after the *Copy\_Number* variable, the first copy of an item might display as "copy 1." If nothing is entered after the *Copy\_Number* variable, *c.* will be used as the default.

### Enabling and disabling WebVoyage Features

The [Options] stanza of the opac.ini file determines which features will and will not be made available to the patrons. Items that you can activate or deactivate in the [Options] stanza include the patron request menu and whether the login dialog box will automatically display when the patron tries to access remote databases. Other features include whether patrons will be required to enter their barcode, Social Security Number or Institution ID when logging in; custom messages for the login type and for login errors; whether line breaks and/or horizontal rules are allowed/used; and limits on saving, printing and emailing records.

---

```
[Options]
PatronRequests=Y
EmailPrompt=Email Address
UseHorizontalRule=Y
AllowLineBreaks=Y
```

---

**Figure 3-8. Options Stanza of the opac.ini File**

#### Patron Requests

Determines whether or not the entire request menu will or will not appear in WebVoyage. This includes Holds, Recalls, and Call Slips as well as any other library-defined requests. The "PatronRequests=" variable must be followed by a "Y" to activate the Request menu and an "N" to deactivate it.

---

To set up the Patron Requests feature:

1. Type *PatronRequests*, followed by an equals sign (=), followed by either a *Y* to enable the Request menu or an *N* to disable it.

**NOTE:**

If the *PatronRequests=* variable is absent from the [Options] stanza or if nothing is entered after it, this variable defaults to *N*.

## WebVoyáge Patron Login ID Options

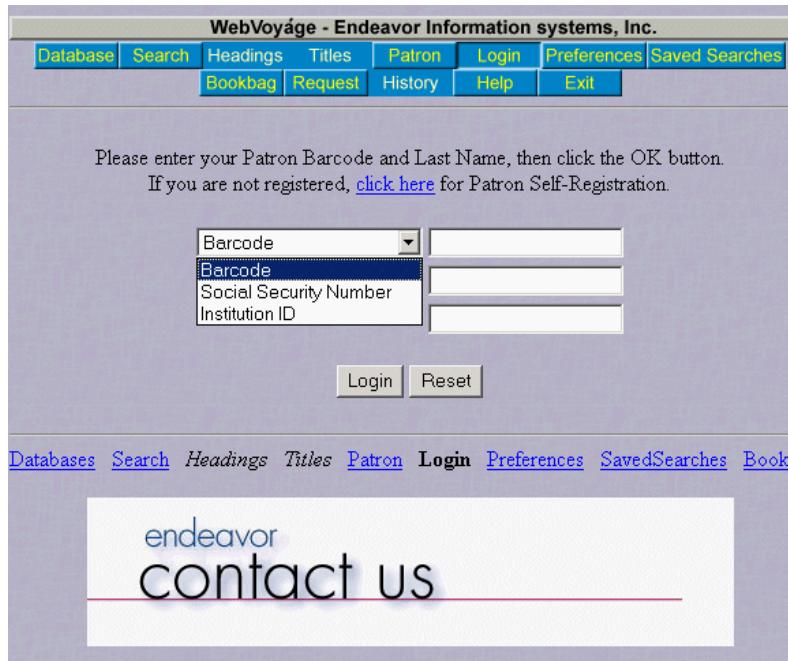
---

WebVoyáge allows patrons to use one of the following when logging in:

- Barcode
- Social Security Number
- Institution ID

Patrons select one of the login types from the drop-down box, next to the field where they enter the information, on the Patron Login screen (see [Figure 3-90](#)).

---



---

**Figure 3-9. Patron Login Types drop-down box**

### The [Login Types] Stanza

You can make any or all of the login types available for selection in the drop-down box by patrons when logging in. Do this by configuring the [Login Types] stanza of the opac.ini file (for an example, see [Figure 3-10](#)).

---

```
[Login Types]
BC=Barcode
SSN=Social Security Number
IID=Institution ID
```

---

**Figure 3-10.** A sample [Login Types] stanza

Make a login type available to patrons by including its code, followed by an equals sign (=), followed by descriptive text of the type, on a line in the [Login Types] stanza. The login type code must be one of those in [Table 3-2](#). The text following it can be of any length, but this length affects the width of the drop-down box of the screen so test your configuration.

**Table 3-2. Login Type codes**

Login type	Code
Barcode	BC
Social Security Number	SSN
Institution ID	IID

**NOTE:**

If you change the options in the login types in the drop-down box, make sure you make any necessary changes to the login instructions in the logonmsg.htm file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/webvoyage Display Directory).

### EmailPrompt

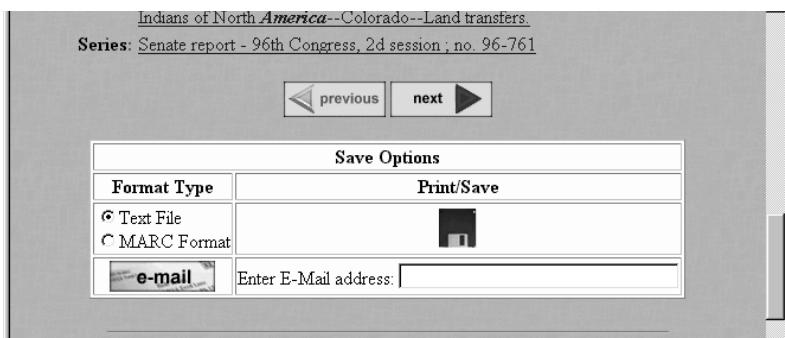
You can customize the caption that displays beside the field on the Enter Your Email Address dialog box in WebVoyage. This dialog box displays when a patron clicks the Marked? check box on the Title List or Record Display and then clicks the Email button on the toolbar or selects Email from the File menu.

After the *EmailPrompt*= variable, enter the caption that you want to display beside the field on the Enter Your Email Address dialog box in WebVoyage. For example, if you want the field caption to read "Email", enter *EmailPrompt=Email*. If you do

---

not enter this variable in the [Options] stanza of the opac.ini file, the field caption will default to "Email Address". If you do enter this variable into the [Options] stanza but do not enter a caption after the variable, no caption will display beside the field on the Enter Your Email Address dialog box in WebVoyage.

---



---

**Figure 3-11. Enter Your Email Address dialog box**

### **Horizontal Rules**

The *UseHorizontalRule*= variable toggles horizontal rules on and off. With this variable on, thin horizontal lines are displayed between different sections of the pages. This requires patron to scroll more but it breaks up the sections more neatly. To display horizontal rules, set *UseHorizontalRule*=Y; to prevent horizontal rules from displaying, set *UseHorizontalRule*=N.

### **Allow Line Breaks**

The *AllowLineBreaks*= variable toggles line breaks on and off. With *AllowLineBreaks*=Y, there is more horizontal background space between search boxes, buttons, etc.. This requires patrons to scroll more but it makes the screens look less cramped. With *AllowLineBreaks*=N, there is less horizontal background space between sections of the display pages, which requires less scrolling to view search result information.

### **Request Messages**

#### **SL\_NoItems**

The *SL\_NoItems* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit a short loan request for a title which has no items available for short loans. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read "No items

are available for Short Loan”, you would enter *No items are available for Short Loan* after the *SL\_NoItems* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SL\_NoItems* variable, the default message will be *No items are available for Short Loan*.

### **SLBlock\_Policy**

The *SLBlock\_Policy* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit a short loan request for a title which is not authorized for short loans. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “This item is not authorized for Short Loans.”, you would enter *This item is not authorized for Short Loans.* after the *SLBlock\_Policy* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Policy* variable, the default message will be *This item is not authorized for Short Loans.*

### **SLBlock\_Unavailable**

The *SLBlock\_Unavailable* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit a short loan request for a title which is unavailable for short loans at a particular time. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “This item is not available for Short Loan at the selected time.”, you would enter *This item is not available for Short Loan at the selected time.* after the *SLBlock\_Unavailable* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Unavailable* variable, the default message will be *This item is not available for Short Loan at the selected time.*

### **SLBlock\_Closed**

The *SLBlock\_Closed* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit a short loan request for a date and time at which the library is closed. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “This item cannot be requested on this date since the Library will be closed.”, you would enter *This item cannot be requested on this date since the Library will be closed.* after the *SLBlock\_Closed* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Closed* variable, the default message will be *This item cannot be requested on this date since the Library will be closed.*

### **SLBlock\_Invalid**

The *SLBlock\_Invalid* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit a short loan request and the system encounters an internal error. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “The Short Loan configuration is not valid. Please inform the nearest librarian.”, you would enter *The Short Loan configuration is not valid. Please inform the nearest*

---

*librarian.* after the *SLBlock\_Invalid* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Invalid* variable, the default message will be *The Short Loan configuration is not valid. Please inform the nearest librarian.*

### **SLBlock\_Patron**

The *SLBlock\_Patron* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit a short loan request and the patron has a block that does not allow the submission of short loans (for example, an excessive number of overdue items). Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Patron has accrued blocks.”, you would enter *Patron has accrued blocks.* after the *SLBlock\_Patron* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Patron* variable, the default message will be *Patron has accrued blocks.*

### **SLBlock\_Total**

The *SLBlock\_Total* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit more short loan requests than he/she is permitted. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed.”, you would enter *Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed.* after the *SLBlock\_Total* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Total* variable, the default message will be *Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed.*

### **SLBlock\_Title**

The *SLBlock\_Title* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit more short loan requests than he/she is permitted for a particular title. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed for this title.”, you would enter *Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed for this title.* after the *SLBlock\_Title* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Title* variable, the default message will be *Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed for this title.*

### **SLBlock\_Day**

The *SLBlock\_Day* variable controls the message that will display in a pop-up dialog when a patron attempts to submit more short loan requests than he/she is permitted to submit in one day. Enter the message that you want to display in the pop-up dialog box. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed for this day.”, you would enter *Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed for this day.*

day, after the *SLBlock\_Day* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SLBlock\_Day* variable, the default message will be *Patron has reached the maximum number of short loans allowed for this day.*

## Order Statuses

Order statuses can be set up to display differently in WebVoyage than in the staff modules. For example, your institution may want the “Pending” order status that displays in the staff modules to display as “In the Pre-Order Process” in WebVoyage. The [Order Statuses] stanza of the opac.ini file controls how order statuses display in WebVoyage. This stanza only controls how order statuses display in WebVoyage, not in the staff modules.

For the order status of an item to be displayed in WebVoyage with the item’s Holdings information, the 1030 code (for order status) must be included in the Displayh.cfg file and the 9000 code (for Holdings information) must be included in one of the Displayn.cfg files (see page 229 for more information).

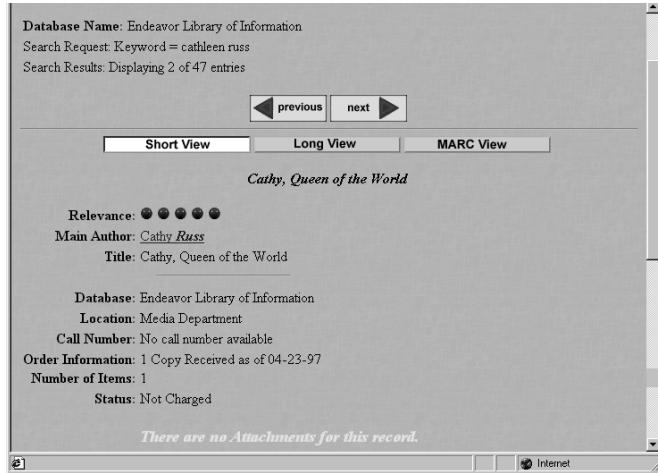
**NOTE:**

The presence of a call number in the MFHD turns off the display of order status. To display order status:

- Do not link to an existing holdings when in the Copies/Funds field of the line item, but instead let the system create one for you without a call number.
- Remove the call number from the 852 of the mfhd. That way the order status will display in the OPAC.

**NOTE:**

If there is no call number in the mfhd and the item is on a Pending PO, the order status will be **In the Pre-Order Process**. If the item is on an Approved PO the status will be **# Copy order as of mm/dd/yy**, and if the line item has been received, it will show **# Copy Received as of mm/dd/yy**.



**Figure 3-12.** An item's Holdings information displayed in WebVoyage, including the “Received Complete” order status

The following codes can be used in any of the order statuses:

- \c      displays the number of copies
- \d      displays the date on which the status was applied

```
[Order Statuses]
Pending=In the Pre-Order Process
Pending+=In the Pre-Order Process
Approved=\c Copy Ordered as of \d
Approved+=\c Copies Ordered as of \d
Claimed=\c Copy Claimed as of \d
Claimed+=\c Copies Claimed as of \d
ReceivedComplete=\c Copy Received as of \d
ReceivedComplete+=\c Copies Received as of \d
```

**Figure 3-13.** Example of the [Order Statuses] stanza in the opac.ini file

The variables without the “+” (Pending=, Approved=, etc.) are used if there is only a single copy in the ordering process. The variables with the “+” (Pending+=, Approved+=, etc.) are used if there are multiple copies in the ordering process.

**Pending/Pending+**

After the *Pending=* and *Pending+=* variables, enter a display name to identify the “Pending” order status in WebVoyage. You can use the \c code to display the number of copies and the \d code to display the date on which the status was applied. For example, if you wanted the pending order status for a single copy to display in WebVoyage as “In the Pre-Order Process”, you would enter *In the Pre-Order Process* after the *Pending=* variable (*Pending=In the Pre-Order Process*). If nothing is entered after the *Pending=* and *Pending+=* variables, the pending order status for single or multiple copies will not display in WebVoyage.

**Approved/Approved+**

After the *Approved=* and *Approved+=* variables, enter a display name to identify the “Approved” order status in WebVoyage. You can use the \c code to display the number of copies and the \d code to display the date on which the status was applied. For example, if you wanted the approved order status for multiple copies to display in WebVoyage as “(# Copies Ordered as of (date)”, you would enter \c *Copies Ordered as of \d* after the *Approved+=* variable (*Approved+=\c Copies Ordered as of \d*). If nothing is entered after the *Approved=* and *Approved+=* variables, the approved order status for single or multiple copies will not display in WebVoyage.

**Claimed/Claimed+**

After the *Claimed=* and *Claimed+=* variables, enter a display name to identify the “Claimed” order status in WebVoyage. You can use the \c code to display the number of copies and the \d code to display the date on which the status was applied. For example, if you wanted the claimed order status for multiple copies to display in WebVoyage as “(# Copies Claimed as of (date)”, you would enter \c *Copies Claimed as of \d* after the *Claimed+=* variable (*Claimed+=\c Copies Claimed as of \d*). If nothing is entered after the *Claimed=* and *Claimed+=* variables, the claimed order status for single or multiple copies will not display in WebVoyage.

**ReceivedComplete/ReceivedComplete+**

After the *ReceivedComplete=* and *ReceivedComplete+=* variables, enter a display name to identify the “Received Complete” order status in WebVoyage. You can use the \c code to display the number of copies and the \d code to display the date on which the status was applied. For example, if you wanted the received complete order status for multiple copies to display in WebVoyage as “(# Copies Received as of (date)”, you would enter \c *Copies Received as of \d* after the *ReceivedComplete+=* variable (*ReceivedComplete+=\c Copies Received as of \d*). If nothing is entered after the *ReceivedComplete=* and *ReceivedComplete+=* variables, the received complete order status for single or multiple copies will not display in WebVoyage.

---

## Search Dialog Stanza

The [Search Dialog] stanza allows you to define a number of options pertaining to searching.

---

```
[Search Dialog]
BooleanRelevance=N
SingleDisplay=True
Limits=True
```

---

**Figure 3-14. Search Dialog Stanza of the opac.ini File**

To specify whether a Search type is available to your patrons, you must change information in the [Valid Tabs] stanza of the search.ini file (see page 233).

### Relevance

Your institution can choose to not display the relevance bars in the Title List for Boolean searches. To not display the relevance bars in the Index List, specify the following in the [Search Dialog] stanza:

1. Type *BooleanRelevance*, then an equals sign (=), followed by the letter *N* for no. If you want to display relevance, type the letter *Y* for yes. Each of these keys will default to *N* if the keys are absent or if nothing has been entered after them.

For additional information about different search types, see page 235.

### Automatic Record Details Display

Your institution can have the Record Details automatically display for titles that have only one related record. To display the Record Details automatically, specify the following in the [Search Dialog] stanza:

1. Type *SingleDisplay*, then an equals sign (=), followed by the letter *Y* for yes or the letter *N* for no. If the *SingleDisplay=* variable is absent from the [Search Dialog] stanza, or if nothing is entered after it, this variable defaults to *N*.

## Search Limits

Your institution can specify whether or not limits can be used for searches performed in WebVoyáge. To activate the ability to use limits on searches performed in WebVoyáge, type *True* after the *Limits=* variable (*Limits=True*). To deactivate the ability to use limits on searches performed in WebVoyáge, type *False* after the *Limits=* variable (*Limits=False*).

### Initial Persistent Location Limit

---

In order to automatically narrow the scope of searches by location, particularly in a database comprised of numerous libraries, WebVoyáge includes a default initial persistent location limit. This limit is a basic location limit that is in effect throughout a session, until or unless manually removed. All subsequent searches subject to search limits will have this location limit applied to them. This limit can be overridden on the Advanced Limits screen.

Initial Persistent Location Limits is useful if you are using virtual hosts with multiple WebVoyáge configurations, if you have multiple libraries connecting to the same server, for instance.

**NOTE:**

If you remove the limit from the Advanced Limits screen, it will be reset by restarting the WebVoyáge session. Also, searches not subject to limits will still not be subject to limits.



**IMPORTANT:**

*The Initial Persistent Location limit only applies to searching the LOCAL database.*

The persistent limit is not valid for single connections to Voyager, Citation, or Z39.50 databases selected from the databases page. The persistent limit is also not valid for any Simultaneous Searches.

You may configure multiple server aliases & WebVoyáge directories to use multiple Persistent Locations. For example, a database comprised of multiple libraries can set up as many aliases as necessary in order to limit search results to each particular library. For each opac.ini file, you may specify a different DefaultLocationLimit.

## Setting the Location Limit

Specify the limit in the DefaultLocationLimit= variable of the [Search Dialog] stanza of the opac.ini file. Use the *Location Group Limit Name* as entered in Voyager The System Administration Module (in Location Limit Groups).

See Figure 3-15 for an example of the DefaultLocationLimit variable. Figure 3-16 shows the results of a search performed with the Music Stacks location set as the Initial Persistent Location Limit.

[Search Dialog]

BooleanRelevance=N

SingleDisplay=True

Limits=True

DefaultLocationLimit=Music Stacks

Figure 3-15. Sample DefaultLocationLimit variable

#	Full Title	Author	Format
<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	<a href="#">10 organ interludes / Seymour Bernstein.</a>	Bernstein, Seymour.	
<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	<i>Library Location: Music Stacks</i> <i>Call Number: Organ Bernstein 1</i> <i>Status: Not Charged</i>	Ore, Charles W.	
<input type="checkbox"/> [3]	<a href="#">11 compositions for organ / by Charles W. Ore.</a>	Rachmaninoff, Sergei, 1873-1943.	
	<i>Library Location: Music Stacks</i> <i>Call Number: Piano Rachmaninoff 5</i> <i>Status: Not Charged</i>		
	<a href="#">12 songs for voice and piano / Hahn - edited by Isidor Philipp.</a>		

Figure 3-16. Search results

**NOTE:**

- The default entry in the DefaultLocationLimit variable is blank, so the default limit is *none*.
- This limit will display on the Advanced Limits page if the Advanced Limits page is configured. Other limits can be added on the Advanced Limits page, to further limit the search. The Initial Persistent Location Limit will work in conjunction with the added Advanced Limits.

Figure 3-17 shows the Music Stacks Persistent Location Limit in the Advanced Search Limits page.

**Figure 3-17. Advanced Search Limits page**

- Only one location group name may be specified for the key: Do not enter more than one limit in the variable.

### Initial Persistent Limits and Quick Limits

If a Quick Limit is applied, it overrides the persistent limit and the persistent limit is ignored.

---

Add the location group limit code to any and all Quick Limits so the location limit is available as a quick limit. If, for example, Music Stacks is the DefaultLocationLimit key, add Music Stacks to all Quick Limits in order to continue limiting the search by location (see Figure 3-18). [Figure 3-19](#) shows the corresponding [Simple\_Limits] stanza in the limits.ini file.

---



---

**Figure 3-18. Location Limit in Quick Limits drop-down**

---

```
[Simple_Limits]
None=None
Counter=8
1=Last 10 Years
2=Videorecording
3=Serials in English
4=Acquisitions
5=Last 10 Years, Music Stacks
6=Videorecording, Music Stacks
7=Serials in English, Music Stacks
8=Acquisitions, Music Stacks
```

---

**Figure 3-19. Corresponding [Simple\_Limits] stanza in limits.ini**

---

The persistent limit will be reapplied when the Quick Limit is removed.

## Initial Persistent Limits and Post Limits

Persistent limits work in conjunction with Post Limits, as if it were an applied Advanced Limit set prior to the search.

### Results Stanza

#### Regular

The **Regular** variable controls the information that displays after the Search Results label (see the description of the *Search\_Results* variable below) at the top of the search results display pages (except for the record display page) in WebVoyage. The information entered after the **Regular** variable informs users of which title or heading (%d) through which title or heading (%d) is being displayed out of the total amount of titles or headings (%s) that the search has found (for example, "Displaying 1 through 8 of 16 entries"). In order for the correct values to display, you must not change or re-order either of the "%d" entries or the "%s" entry. These symbols are used literally by WebVoyage to gather specific information. Enter the phrasing that you would like to use after the **Regular** variable.

#### BibHold

The **BibHold** variable controls the information that displays after the Search Results label (see [Search\\_Results](#) below) at the top of the record display page in WebVoyage. The information entered after the **BibHold** variable informs users of which record is displayed out of the total amount of records that they have selected to display (For example, "Displaying 1 of 3 entries"). In order for the correct values to display, you must not change or re-order either of the "%s" entries. Enter the phrasing that you would like to use after the **BibHold=** variable.

#### Search\_Request

The **Search\_Request** variable controls the label that displays at the top of all search result pages before the information that contains the type of search the user performed and the criteria with which the user searched. Enter the information that you want to display as the label after the *Search\_Request=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "Search Request", you would enter *Search Request* after the *Search\_Request=* variable (*Search\_Request=Search Request*).

#### Search\_Results

The **Search\_Results** variable controls the label that displays at the top of all search result pages before the information concerning the which record is displayed out of the total amount of records the search found (see Regular and

---

[BibHold](#) above). Enter the information that you want to display as the label after the *Search\_Results=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "Search Results", you would enter *Search Results* after the *Search\_Results=* variable (*Search\_Results*=*Search Results*).

### **Relevance\_Heading**

The *Relevance\_Heading* variable controls the header of the column that displays relevance ranking on the search results page of Keyword searches. Enter the information that you want to display as the relevance column header after the *Relevance\_Heading=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "Relevance", you would enter *Relevance* after the *Relevance\_Heading=* variable.

### **Empty**

The information entered after the *Empty* variable will display after the search results label (see Regular and [BibHold](#)) if an error occurs where information cannot be displayed. Enter the information that you want to display in such a circumstance after the *Empty=* variable. For example, if you wanted "No entries found." to display, you would enter *No entries found.* after the *Empty=* variable (*Empty*=*No entries found.*).

### **Search\_References**

The *Search\_References* variable controls a label at the top of the references page that displays when users click a reference associated to an entry in a title or heading list. Information about what is being referenced will appear after this label. Enter the information that you want to display as the label after the *Search\_References=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "References for", you would enter *References for* after the *Search\_References=* variable (*Search\_References*=*References for*).

### **TitleDisplay**

The *TitleDisplay* variable controls whether or not the titles of records display at the top of the record display page in WebVoyage. Enter *Y* after the *TitleDisplay=* variable (*TitleDisplay*=*Y*) if you want the titles of records to display at the top of the record display page. Enter *N* after the *TitleDisplay=* variable (*TitleDisplay*=*N*) if you do not want the titles of records to display at the top of the record display page. If nothing is entered after the *TitleDisplay* variable, *Y* will be used as the default.

The TitleDisplay variable displays the information found in field 245, subfields a, b, and c. If the 245 field of a MARC record includes subfield h (medium), the title display will run the subfields together without the punctuation defined in subfield h. For example, if the 245 field of the MARC record looks like this:

Example:

```
245 00 |a Developmentally appropriate practice |h  
[videorecording] : |b children birth through age five.
```

The title display at the top of the WebVoyage page will read like this:

Example:

Developmentally appropriate practice children birth  
through age five.

### **AltRelevanceValue**

The *AltRelevanceValue* variable controls what will display in place of the relevance ranking images when WebVoyage is displayed on a non-graphic Web Browser. The value entered after the *AltRelevanceValue* variable is equal to a half relevance ranking (so if a title is ranked 3 1/2 out of 5, the value entered after this variable would display 7 times). If nothing is entered after the *AltRelevanceValue* variable, “\*” will be used as the default.

### **Search\_Text Stanza**

The keys within the [Search\_Text] stanza define the text that will display on particular WebVoyage pages according to the type of search that was performed. This applies to Heading, Keyword, Command, Course Reserve, and Builder searches.

### **CourseReserve**

The information entered after the *CourseReserve=* variable will display:

- at the top of the search results pages (Title list and Record Display) after the “Search Request:” caption
- on the History page in the Search Type column after the search has been made

For example, if you wanted “Course Reserve Search” to display in the above mentioned locations, you would enter *Course Reserve Search* after the *CourseReserve=* variable (*CourseReserve=Course Reserve Search*). If nothing is entered after the *CourseReserve=* variable, “Course Reserve” will display as the default in the above mentioned locations.

### **Builder**

The information entered after the *Builder=* variable will display:

- 
- at the top of the search results pages (Title and Headings lists and Record Display) after the “Search Request:” caption
  - on the History page in the Search Type column after the search has been made

For example, if you wanted “Builder Search” to display in the above mentioned locations, you would enter *Builder Search* after the *Builder=* variable (*Builder=Builder Search*). If nothing is entered after the *Builder=* variable, “Builder” will display as the default in the above mentioned locations.

### **Descriptions of Simple Search Types in WebVoyáge**

You can change the way the description of the search type appears for Simple Searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages. The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for.

The description of each search type that will be displayed onscreen is contained in the [Search\_Text] stanza of the opac.ini file. After the **CourseReserve** and **Builder** variables are the search codes for each type of search available on the Simple Search screen and a description for each.

### **Search Type Variable**

The variable for each search type is not a predefined variable. Each variable is the same as the search code for each search type listed in the [Simple\_Search\_Codes] stanza of the search.ini and followed by an equals sign (=). When each variable is typed into the [Search\_Text] stanza, it must **exactly** match the code as entered into the search.ini. This includes capitalization and any other characters attached (+, \*, etc.)

If your search.ini looks like this:

```
[Simple_Search_Codes]  
Counter=6  
1=FT* Keyword Relevance Search  
2=AUTH+ Author Browse  
3=TALL Left Anchored Title  
4=CALL+ Call Number Browse
```

5=SUBJ+ Subject Browse

6=JKEY Journal Title Keyword

you would enter a series of variables into the [Search\_Text] stanza of the opac.ini file that would look like this:

FT\*=

AUTH+=

TALL=

CALL+=

SUBJ+=

JKEY=

After each variable, you can enter the description.

### **Search Type Description**

The description that will be used for each search type follows the variable and equals sign (=). The description will be used to display the Search Type for a Simple Search on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages.

If the Search Type variables in the opac.ini file look like this:

[Search Types]

CourseReserve

Builder=Boolean

FT\*=Keyword Search

AUTH+=Browsable Author Search

TALL=Left Anchored Title

CALL+=Call Number Browse

SUBJ+=Subject Browse

JKEY=Journal Title Keyword

---

when you do an Author Browse search in WebVoyage the search type will display as “Browsable Author Search.”

### Simultaneous Search search.ini file

Some of the indexes available for Voyager database searches are not available for searching Z39.50 databases (for example, all headings indexes). If a simultaneous search using any of the indexes listed in [Table 3-3](#) is executed, the search will return a “Search Incompatible” error message (when sent to the Z39.50 database) for remote databases.

To avoid confusion for patrons performing simultaneous searches, a special search.ini file has been created for use with simultaneous searches. This search.ini is in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory, and can be configured like the other search.ini files. When configuring this file, omit as many indexes not supported as you wish.

- To allow the maximum search options when searching multiple Voyager databases, make more of the indexes in [Table 3-4](#) available.
- To reduce the potential for “Search Incompatible” error messages, omit the indexes in [Table 3-3](#).

Figure 3-20 shows the default Simultaneous Search search.ini file.

---

```
[Valid Tabs]
Simple
Boolean Search

[Simple_Search_Codes]
Counter=8
1=FT* Keyword Relevance Search
2=TKEY Title Keyword
3=NKEY Author Keyword
4=SKEY Subject Keyword
5=JKEY Journal Title Keyword
6=TALL Left Anchored Title
7=CMD* Command Search with Relevance
8=008D Date Search (Left Anchored)
```

---

**Figure 3-20. Default Simultaneous Search search.ini file**

**NOTE:**

Single remote connections still use the search.ini file normally associated with them. For example, a single remote connection to a Z39.50 citation database uses the zcit directory. For more information on the WebVoyage display directories used in single remote connections, see [Local Folder](#) on [page 4-2](#).

**IMPORTANT:**

*The following headings and call number indexes are invalid for Simultaneous Searches involving Z39.50 databases and will result in a "Search Incompatible" message:*

**Table 3-3. List of indexes unavailable in Z39.50 searches**

Index
AHED *
AUTH
CALL
MCOD
MDEW
MLC#
MNLM
MOTH
MSUD
NAME
NHED *
SHED *
THED
TITL

\* Denotes a Staff Subject Headings search, available only if Endeavor's Authorities in WebVoyage extension module has been purchased.



## **IMPORTANT:**

*For Simultaneous Searches across Voyager databases only, the following are valid indexes:*

**Table 3-4. List of indexes available in Voyager simultaneous searches only**

Index
CALL
MCOD
MDEW
MLC#
MNLM
MOTH
MSUD

### **TextTool Stanza**

The *Previous* and *Next* variables control the alternate texts (pop-up texts) that display on the Record View pages when the mouse is held over the Previous and Next buttons (the search.ini controls the alternate-texts for the other buttons on the Record View pages). After the appropriate variable, enter the information that you would like to appear as the alternate text over the corresponding button. If nothing is entered after these variables, *Previous* and *Next* will be used as the defaults.

### **Toolbar\_Top and Toolbar\_Bottom Stanzas**

---

The Toolbar\_Top and Toolbar\_Bottom stanzas allow you to configure the toolbars that appear at the top and bottom of the screen. You can specify how many buttons or links are to appear; whether you want the links to display as text or images; what images or font and point sizes are to be used; what each will do; and the URL to which it will connect.

The Toolbar\_Top and Toolbar\_Bottom stanzas work in the same way. Each stanza may be configured completely independently; you may configure each to appear identical, or for each to have completely different sets of buttons, or for one to appear and the other to not appear at all. Because of this, the contents of each stanza may be different; however, regardless of what each contains, each still works in the same way.

## Top and Bottom Toolbar Configuration

---

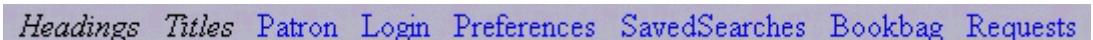
The top and bottom toolbars are also configured globally. These are the toolbars that appear on the top and bottom of each WebVoyage screen. [Figure 3-21](#) shows the default top toolbar.



---

**Figure 3-21. Toolbar Excerpt (buttons)**

---



---

**Figure 3-22. Toolbar Excerpt (linked text)**

---

### Customizing links on the WebVoyage toolbars

The buttons and linked text on the Top and bottom Toolbars are configured in the [Toolbar\_Top] and [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanzas of the opac.ini file. The graphics files for these buttons are in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory.

Figure 3-23 shows an example of the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza. The [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza contains the same variables.

---



---

```

Line#                               [Toolbar_Top]
1      Count=14

2      TextFont=WingDings
3      TextFontSize=
4      TextSeparator=|||


5      Btn01Text=Database
6      Btn01GraphicUp=UpDatabase.gif
7      Btn01GraphicDown=DownDatabase.gif
8      Btn01GraphicDisabled=DisabledDatabase.gif
9      Btn01Function=DATABASE
10     Btn01Link=


-----Display Truncated-----


11     Btn07Text=Preferences
12     Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
13     Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif
14     Btn07GraphicDisabled=DisabledPref.gif
15     Btn07Function=PREFERENCES
16     Btn07Text=Preferences
17     Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
18     Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif


19     Btn08Text=Bookbag
20     Btn08GraphicUp=UpBookbag.gif
21     Btn08GraphicDown=DownBookbag.gif
22     Btn08GraphicDisabled=DisabledBookbag.gif
23     Btn08Function=BOOKBAG

```

---

**Figure 3-23. Details of the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza**

You can use either buttons or hyperlinked text to connect to the various pages from these toolbar links. To use hyperlinked text, The links can be presented on the pages in any order you wish and you can use as few or as many of the 14 as you like.

**NOTE:**

While you can configure as few links as you want, you should at least include links to the critical pages.

[Table 3-5](#) details the components of the top and bottom toolbars. The xx's indicate the button or linked text number.

**Table 3-5. Top and Bottom Toolbar Component Descriptions**

Variable	Description	Possible Values
BtnxxText=	Rollover text of button, or text of link if not using an image	Free text
BtnXXToggleText	Used in conjunction only with the Login function (for example, BtnXXFunction=LOGIN). This text is used in place of the text entered after the BtnXXText variable when the patron has logged in.	Free text
BtnxxGraphicUp=	Button image in the "up" position	Valid .gif graphic file-name
BtnxxGraphicDown=	Button image in the "down" position	Valid .gif graphic file-name
BtnxxGraphicDisabled=	Button image when screen link disabled	Valid .gif graphic file-name
BtnXXToggleGraphicUp	used only in conjunction with the Login function (for example, BtnXXFunction=LOGIN). Specifies the image that will be used to trigger the "Logout" feature after the patron has already logged in. The button will appear in place of the Login button and depicts the button in the "up" (i.e., unpressed) state.	
BtnxxFunction=	Determines which screen the link links to	see <a href="#">Table 3-6</a>
BtnXXLink	Connects to the IP address specified after the variable (this string is used to access the Remote, Library Information and Home buttons)	Valid URL

---

**Table 3-5. Top and Bottom Toolbar Component Descriptions**

Variable	Description	Possible Values
Count=	Number of buttons in toolbar configuration	1-14
TextFont=	Text font	Free text
TextFontSize=	Text font size	Text font size (in points)
TextSeparator=	Text Separator (between hyperlinked text)	Free text

[Table 3-6](#) details the available Toolbar Functions, and their corresponding target pages.header

**Table 3-6. Toolbar Button Function Pages**

Function	Description
DATABASE	displays the Database screen.
PATRON	displays the Patron Information screen
LOGINOUT	logs the patron in or out
REQUESTS	displays the Request list
SEARCH	displays the Search screen
TITLES	displays the Title List screen
HEADINGS	displays the Headings List screen
HISTORY	displays the Search History screen
HELP	displays the relevant Help screen
LOCALDB	Connects back to the local database (from a UC database, for example)
EXIT	restarts WebVoyage
URL	connects to the IP address specified after the <b>BtnXXLink</b> variable (this string is used to access the Remote, Library Information and Home buttons)  The “URL” string is used to trigger a function other than the functions in this list. You can specify the function by using the <b>BtnXXLink</b> variable.  <b>! IMPORTANT:</b> <i>If you enter “URL” in the <b>BtnXXFunction</b> variable and leave the <b>BtnXXLink</b> variable empty, the link will be available without a real link; this will cause an error message to display when users click the link. Be sure to enter a valid IP address in the <b>BtnXXLink</b> variable.</i>

## The Count Variable

---

The first line in each stanza contains the **Count** variable. The number that follows this variable specifies how many links or buttons are to appear in that position. All of the buttons up to the specified number will be displayed: for example, if you entered **Count=12** in the **Toolbar\_Bottom** stanza, buttons 1 through 12 will appear at the bottom (or top) of the screen. This number must be equal to the greatest number used in the name of the button variables. For example, if your buttons numbered 01 to 13, you would enter **Count=13**.

## Hyperlinked Text Display Variables

---

The next variables that appears in the stanza are the **TextFont**, **TextFontSize**, and **TextSeparator** variables. These variables are used when text is to be used instead of buttons in the toolbar. All of the text that will appear in the toolbar will use the font specified in the **TextFont** variable and the font size specified in the **TextFontSize** variable. (The font size specified must be between 1 and 7.) In addition, if two adjacent links are represented using text instead of buttons, you can enter a character in the **TextSeparator** variable that will be placed to the right of the text for each link. Use a pipe ("|") after the **TextSeparator** variable to cause a space to appear onscreen. (Entering spaces after the variable will not cause spaces to appear onscreen.)

## Button Configuration Variables

---

Next are the sets of variables for configuring each button. The names of all of these variables begin with **BtnXX**. Each button has six variables that define its various parts: **BtnXXText**, **BtnXXGraphicUp**, **BtnXXGraphicDown**, **BtnXXGraphicDisabled**, **BtnXXFunction**, and **BtnXXLink**. All of the variables containing the same number pertain to the same button. For example, the set of variables pertaining to button 1 would be **Btn01Text**, **Btn01GraphicUp**, **Btn01GraphicDown**, **Btn01GraphicDisabled**, **Btn01Function**, and **Btn01Link**.

For each button that you want to appear, you must include all of these variables. You may not have more than 99 buttons appear (i.e., no more than 99 sets of **Btn01...** through **Btn99...** variables.) If you do not want a button to appear, you must eliminate the entire set of variables that control the button.

## Login-Specific Variables

---

Because the Login button works slightly differently than the other buttons, there are two additional variables that are only used by the Login feature: **BtnXXToggleText** and **BtnXXToggleGraphicUp**. Other buttons, when pressed, are represented on the next screen in their "pressed" state. For example, clicking

---

the Database button causes the Database screen to display with the Database button in its pressed state. However, when a patron is logged into WebVoyáge, the Login button is replaced with a Logout button. This allows the patron to log out of WebVoyáge. The additional variables allow you to specify the text or the button and popup text that will appear onscreen when the patron is logged in.

### **BtnXXToggleGraphicUp**

The BtnXXToggleGraphicUp variable is used only in conjunction with the Login function (for example, BtnXXFunction=LOGIN). It specifies the image that will be used to trigger the “Logout” feature after the patron has already logged in. The button will appear in place of the Login button and depicts the button in the “up” (i.e., unpressed) state.

### **BtnXXToggleText**

The BtnXXToggleText variable is used in conjunction only with the Login function (for example, BtnXXFunction=LOGIN). This text is used in place of the text entered after the BtnXXText variable when the patron has logged in.

Note that if no sets of the **BtnXX** variables appear in the stanza, no buttons will appear in the toolbar.

## **Time Stanza**

The keys within the [Time] stanza are used to define how the time will appear on an item’s Record Display in WebVoyáge.

### **AM**

The information that you enter after the *AM=* variable will display after the time on an item’s Record Display if the time is during the first half of a day. For example, if you want “am” to display after the time, enter *am* after the *AM=* variable (*AM=am*). If nothing is entered after the *AM=* variable, “am” will be used as the default.

### **PM**

The information that you enter after the *PM=* variable will display after the time on an item’s Record Display if the time is during the second half of a day. For example, if you want “pm” to display after the time, enter *pm* after the *PM=* variable (*PM=pm*). If nothing is entered after the *PM=* variable, “pm” will be used as the default.

## Separator

The information that you enter after the *Separator=* variable will separate the hour and minute of a time displayed on an item's Record Display. For example, if you enter : after the *Separator=* variable (*Separator=:*), a time displayed on an item's Record Display would appear as "10:30". Whatever you enter after the *Separator=* variable will appear as the separator between the hour and minute of a displayed time. If nothing is entered after the *Separator=* variable, ":" will be used as the default.

## 24HR

To use twenty-four hour time wherever a time appears on an item's Record Display, enter Yes after the *24HR=* variable (*24HR=Yes*). For example, if you enter Yes after the *24HR=* variable, the thirteenth hour of the day would display as "13:00" rather than "1:00" (12 hour time). To use twelve hour time wherever a time appears on an item's Record Display, enter No after the *24HR=* variable (*24HR=No*). For example, if you enter No after the *24HR=* variable, the thirteenth hour of the day would display as "1:00" rather than "13:00" (24 hour time). If nothing is entered after the *24HR=* variable, "Yes" will be used as the default.

## JumpBar Stanza

For searches that result in a non-browse title index, a jump bar can be placed on the search results page that allows users to quickly navigate through the hit list. This feature is especially useful for searches that result in hits greater than several hundred.

---



---

Figure 3-24. Example of a Jump Bar

## Top / Bottom

The *Top* and *Bottom* variables control whether or not a jump bar will appear between the Previous and Next buttons at the top and bottom of the Title Index page. If you want a jump bar to display at the top or bottom of the Title Index page, enter *T* after the corresponding variable. If you do not want a jump bar to display at the top or bottom of the Title Index page, enter *F* after the corresponding variable. If nothing is entered after the *Top=* or *Bottom=* variable, *F* will be used as the default.

---

**NOTE:**

A jump bar will not display at the top or bottom of the Title Index page if the number of hits for the search is less than twice the “records per page” value (from the drop-down menu on the search page), even if *T* has been entered after the *Top=* or *Bottom=* variable. For example, if “10 records per page” has been selected from the drop-down menu on the search page, 20 or more hits must result from the search in order for a jump bar to display. See [Number of Records Drop-Down Box](#) on page 25 for more information about the “records per page” value on the search pages.

### **Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record**

Hit jumps on a jump bar are incremented according to the “records per page” value that a user selects on a search page. The *Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record* variable specifies the maximum number of hit jumps that will display before the currently selected hit jump (the currently selected hit jump will have a different background color and will not be enabled as a link; see [Selected Background Color](#) on [page 3-75](#) for more information about specifying the background color of the currently selected hit jump). Enter the maximum number of hit jumps you would like displayed before the currently selected hit jump after the *Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record=* variable, no hit jumps will display before the currently selected hit jump. Instead, an ellipsis image will display before the currently selected hit jump if there are previous hit pages.

The Previous button, the Next button, and the first and last hit jumps will always be displayed on a jump bar.

### **Jumps\_After\_Current\_Record**

Hit jumps on a jump bar are incremented according to the “records per page” value that a user selects on a search page. The *Jumps\_After\_Current\_Record* variable specifies the maximum number of hit jumps that will display after the currently selected hit jump (the currently selected hit jump will have a different background color and will not be enabled as a link; see [Selected Background Color](#) on [page 3-75](#) for more information about specifying the background color of the currently selected hit jump). Enter the maximum number of hit jumps you would like displayed after the currently selected hit jump after the *Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record=* variable, no hit jumps will display after the currently selected hit jump. Instead, an ellipsis image will display after the currently selected hit jump if there are subsequent hit pages.

The Previous button, the Next button, and the first and last hit jumps will always be displayed on a jump bar.

### **Background\_Color**

Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *Background\_Color=* variable to specify the background color of the jump bar (this does not apply to the currently selected hit jump; see [Selected\\_Background\\_Color](#) below). For example, if you wanted to make the background grey, you would enter *CCCCCC* (the hexadecimal color code for grey) after the *Background\_Color=* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *CCCCFF* will be used as the default.

### **Selected\_Background\_Color**

Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *Selected\_Background\_Color=* variable to specify the background color of the currently selected hit jump. For example, if you wanted to make the background maroon, you would enter *990000* (the hexadecimal color code for maroon) after the *Selected\_Background\_Color=* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *990000* will be used as the default.

### **Font\_Color**

Enter a hexadecimal RGB color code after the *Font\_Color=* variable to specify the font color of the currently selected hit jump. For example, if you wanted to make the font color white, you would enter *FFFFFF* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *Font\_Color=* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *FFFFFF* will be used as the default.

The font color of the hit jumps that are not currently selected on the jump bar is determined by the *LINK* variable in the [Title\_Page] stanza. See [Title\\_Page\\_Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#) for more information.

### **Title\_Bar Stanza**

The [Title\_Bar] stanza contains the variables that control the text in the title bars of various WebVoyage pages. The last two variables, *AddBibForm* and *ModHoldingsForm*, control the text in the title bars of WebCataloging pages. The title bar is the bar at the very top of the Web Browser which usually contains the title of the page currently displayed. An example of a title bar for the WebVoyage Titles Page is shown below.

---



---

**Figure 3-25. Example of a Title Bar**

---

## **Builder**

The *Builder* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Builder Search page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Builder Search page after the *Builder* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Search Builder” will be used as the default.

## **Course**

The *Course* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Course Reserve Search page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Course Reserve Search page after the *Course* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Course Reserve Search” will be used as the default.

## **Database**

The *Database* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Database page, which is the page on which patrons select the remote Voyager or Z39.50 databases that they wish to search. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Database page after the *Database* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Select Database” will be used as the default.

## **Default**

The *Default* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of all WebVoyage pages that do not have specific title bar configurations in this [Title\_Bar] Stanza. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar all WebVoyage pages that do not have specific title bar configurations after the *Default* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “WebVoyage” will be used as the default.

## **Headings**

The *Headings* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Headings Search Results page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Headings Search Results page after the *Headings* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Headings Results” will be used as the default.

## **History**

The *History* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Search History page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Search History page after the *History* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Search History” will be used as the default.

### **Holds\_Recals**

The *Holds\_Recals* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Hold/Recall Request page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Hold/Recall Request page after the *Hold\_Recals* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Holds / Recalls” will be used as the default.

### **Keyword**

The *Keyword* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Keyword Search page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Keyword Search page after the *Keyword* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Keyword Search” will be used as the default.

### **Limits**

The *Limits* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Search Limits page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Search Limits page after the *Limits* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “WebVoyage Search Limits” will be used as the default.

### **Mail**

The *Mail* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Email page that displays after an email has been successfully sent from the Save Options box (see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#) for more configuration information about the Save Options box. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Email confirmation page after the *Mail* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “WebVoyage E-Mail Records” will be used as the default.

### **Patron\_Info**

The *Patron\_Info* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Patron Information page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Patron Information page after the *Patron\_Info* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “WebVoyage Patron Information” will be used as the default.

### **Patron\_Logon**

The *Patron\_Logon* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Patron Login page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Patron Login page after the *Patron\_Logon* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “WebVoyage Patron Logon” will be used as the default.

---

## **Purchase\_Request**

The *Purchase\_Request* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Purchase Request page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Purchase Request page after the *Purchase\_Request* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Opac Purchase Request” will be used as the default.

## **Record Views**

The *Record View* variables (Record View\_1, Record View\_2, Record View\_3, Record View\_4 and Record View\_5) control the text that displays in the title bars of the Record View pages (for example, the page that displays the Bibliographic information or MARC View of a specific record). Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the specific Record View page after the appropriate variable. For example, if you wanted the title bar of the First Record View page to display as “Bibliographic Information”, you would enter *Bibliographic Information* after the *Record View\_1*= variable. If nothing is entered after these variables, “WebVoyage Record View #” (where # would be replaced with the number of the specific record view) will be used as the default.

## **References**

The *References* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the References page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the References page after the *References* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “WebVoyage Heading References” will be used as the default.

## **Request\_Form**

The *Request\_Form* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of all library-defined request pages (this excludes all system-defined request pages such as Hold, Recall, Short Loan, Remote Storage and Purchase Request). Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of all library-defined request pages after the *Request\_Form* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Opac Request Form” will be used as the default.

## **Simple**

The *Simple* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Simple (Combined) Search page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Simple Search page after the *Simple* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Simple Search” will be used as the default.

## **Titles**

The *Titles* variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Titles search results page. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar of the Titles page after the *Titles* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “WebVoyage Titles” will be used as the default.

## **AddBibForm**

The *AddBibForm* variable does not apply to WebVoyage. Rather, this variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Add Bibliographic Record page in Webcataloging. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar after the *AddBibForm* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Add Bibliographic Record” will be used as the default.

## **ModHoldingsForm**

The *ModHoldingsForm* variable does not apply to WebVoyage. Rather, this variable controls the text that displays in the title bar of the Modify Holdings Record page in WebCataloging. Enter the information you want to display in the title bar after the *ModHoldingsForm* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, “Modify Holdings Record” will be used as the default.

## **WebRecon Stanza**

### **ErrorFile**

The entry after the *ErrorFile* variable specifies the absolute path and file name of the HTML file that displays when the connection time-out value has elapsed (see [time-out](#) on [page 3-9](#) for more information). Initially, this entry after the *ErrorFile* variable will be as follows:

/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/webconerr.htm

### **ExitPage**

The entry after the *ExitPage* variable specifies the absolute path and file name of the HTML file that displays when the Exit button (s-exit.gif) is clicked. This gives the user a graceful method of closing the WebVoyage connection to the server. Initially, the entry after the *ExitPage* variable will be as follows:

/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/webvoy.htm

---

## **Table\_Colors Stanza**

The variables in the [Table\_Colors] stanza control the colors of particular tables within WebVoyáge.

### **MainData**

The *MainData* variable controls the color of the search results tables that display after a search is conducted. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *MainData=* variable to configure the color of the search results tables within WebVoyáge. For example, if you wanted to make the search results tables appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *MainData=* variable (*MainData=ffffff*). If nothing is entered after the *MainData* variable, the color of the search results tables will default to the settings of the web browser.

### **SaveRecords**

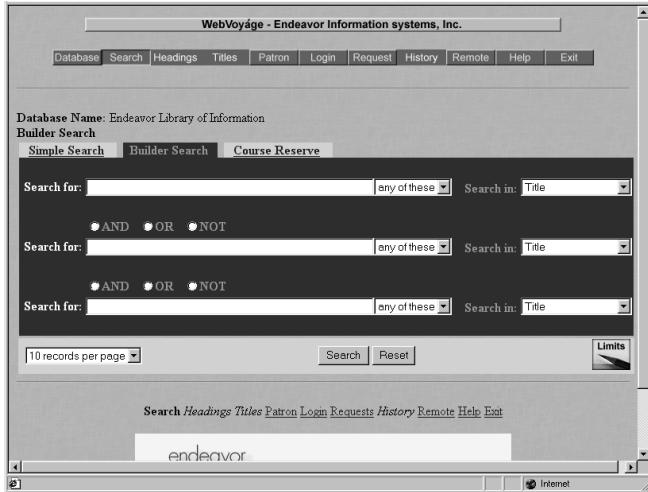
The *SaveRecords* variable controls the color of the Save Options box with which a user can save or email information. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *SaveRecords=* variable to configure the color of the Save Options box. For example, if you wanted to make the Save Options box appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *SaveRecords=* variable (*SaveRecords=ffffff*). If nothing is entered after the *SaveRecords* variable, the color of the Save Options box will default to the settings of the web browser. For more information about configuring the Save Options box, see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

### **Requests**

The *Requests* variable controls the color of request forms in WebVoyáge. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *Requests=* variable to configure the color of request forms in WebVoyáge. For example, if you wanted to make the request forms appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *Requests=* variable (*Requests=ffffff*). If nothing is entered after the *Requests* variable, the color of request forms in WebVoyáge will default to the settings of the web browser.

## **Boolean\_Search\_Page Stanza**

The first six variables of the [Boolean\_Search\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.



---

**Figure 3-26. Example of Boolean Search Page**

#### **Tab\_Text**

The *Tab\_Text* variable controls the description that appears on the tab on the Builder Search fields page. Enter the text that you want to appear on the tab after the *Tab\_Text=* variable. For example, if you wanted the tab to read “Builder Search”, you would enter *Builder Search* after the *Tab\_Text* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Tab\_Text* variable, the text labels will default to *Builder Search*.

#### **ActiveTabColor**

The *ActiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the page of the Boolean tab when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable to configure the background color of the tab. For example, if you wanted to make the background of the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

#### **InactiveTabColor**

The *InactiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the tab for the Boolean Search page when it is inactive. This also controls the color of the portion of the block that contains the Records per page field and the Search and Reset buttons. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable to configure the color of the tab when it is inactive and the lower portion of the search block when it is active. For

---

example, if you wanted to make the Boolean Search tab appear white when inactive you would enter `ffffff` (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the `InactiveTabColor=` variable (`ActiveTabColor=ffffff`).

### **ActiveFontColor**

The `ActiveFontColor` variable controls the color of the text on the Boolean Search tab when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the `ActiveFontColor=` variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the active tab. For example, if you wanted to make the descriptive text white, you would enter `ffffff` (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the `ActiveFontColor=` variable (`ActiveFontColor=ffffff`).

### **InactiveFontColor**

The `InactiveFontColor` variable controls the color of the text on the Boolean Search tab when it is inactive. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the `InactiveFontColor=` variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the inactive tab. For example, if you wanted to make the text on the tab white, you would enter `ffffff` (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the `InactiveFontColor=` variable (`InactiveFontColor=ffffff`).

### **InputBoxSize**

The `InputBoxSize` variable controls the number of characters that will appear in the boxes in which you enter your search terms. However, this length does not limit the total number of characters that can be entered into each field. If the number of characters typed into the field is greater than the size of the input box, the characters in the box will scroll to the left (see the [InputBoxMaxLength](#) variable for more information). Enter the length (in characters) of the box after the `InputBoxSize` variable. For example, if you wanted the box size to be 35 characters, you would enter 35 after the `InputBoxSize` variable. If nothing is entered after the `InputBoxSize` variable, the default length will be 37 characters.

### **InputBoxMaxLength**

The `InputBoxMaxLength` variable controls the maximum number of characters that you can enter into each search term field. This length does not place any limitations on how many characters display onscreen in the search term field, however (see the [InputBoxSize](#) variable above for more information). Enter the length (in characters) of the box after the `InputBoxMaxLength` variable. For example, if you wanted the box size to be 35 characters, you would enter 35 after the `InputBoxMaxLength` variable. If nothing is entered after the `InputBoxMaxLength` variable, the default length will be 37 characters.

### **Search\_For**

The *Search\_For* variable controls the text labels beside the three free-text fields in which patrons enter their search terms on the Boolean search page. Enter the text that you want to appear as the labels after the *Search\_For=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text labels beside the three free-text fields in which patrons enter their search terms to be “Search for:”, you would enter *Search for:* after the *Search\_For* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Search\_For* variable, the text labels will default to *Search for:*.

### **Search\_In**

The *Search\_In* variable controls the labels beside the three fields containing drop-down menus to the right of the three Search For fields. From these drop-down menus, patrons select the bibliographic record fields which will be searched using the related Search For term. Enter the text that you want to appear as the labels after the *Search\_In=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text label beside these three fields to be “Search in:”, you would enter *Search in:* after the *Search\_In* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Search\_In* variable, the text labels will default to *Search in:*.

### **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to submit or activate their search. Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Submit” button after the *SubmitButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Search”, you would enter *Search* after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Submit*.

### **ClearButton**

The *ClearButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear all of the information that they have searched for in order to ensure a successful new search. The “Clear” button only displays after a search that found no results has been performed (otherwise, the “Reset” button will appear in place of the “Clear” button; see [ResetButton](#) below). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Clear” button after the *ClearButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Clear”, you would enter *Clear* after the *ClearButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ClearButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Clear*.

### **ResetButton**

The *ResetButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear all of the free-text fields and reset all of the drop-down menus to their default selections (if you have conducted a search that did not find results,

---

the “Clear” button will appear in place of the “Reset” button; see [ClearButton](#) above). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Reset” button after the *ResetButton*= variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Reset”, you would enter *Reset* after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Reset*.

### **StripBlankLines**

The *StripBlankLines* variable controls the lines separating each set of search fields. If *StripBlankLines* is turned on, the blank lines that appear between each set of search terms on the Builder (Boolean) Search page will disappear. This condenses the search form, allowing more lines of search fields to appear onscreen. Enter T after the *StripBlankLines*= variable to remove blank lines onscreen, or enter F to maintain its standard appearance. If nothing is entered after the *StripBlankLines* variable, lines will not be stripped onscreen.

### **NumSets, \*\_SearchGroup, \*\_WithinField, \*\_NextSetOper Fields**

The *NumSets*, *\*\_SearchGroup*, *\*\_WithinField* and *\*\_NextSetOper* Fields allow you to configure the number of sets of search fields that will appear on the Builder (Boolean) search screen. Each set of search fields includes the *Search For*, *Search In* and *boolean operator* fields.

Each field can be configured individually. For every field that appears onscreen, there must be one variable. This means that for each set of fields, there are three variables: *\*\_SearchGroup*, *\*\_WithinField* and *\*\_NextSetOper*.

Each set of variables begins with the same number and is numbered according to its position in the series. For example, the first set is made up of 1st\_*SearchGroup*, 1st\_*WithinField* and 1st\_*NextSetOper*; the twentieth is made up of 20th\_*SearchGroup*, 20th\_*WithinField* and 20th\_*NextSetOper*. All set numbers must be consecutive.

### **NumSets**

The *NumSets* variable controls the number of different sets of search fields that you want to appear on the Builder (Boolean) Search page. (The search fields include the *Search For*, *Search In* and *boolean operator* fields.) This number must be between 1 and 20. Enter the number of sets of fields that you want to appear onscreen after the *NumSets*= variable. You must have as many sets of variables as the number entered after the *NumSets* variable. For example, if you wanted five sets to appear onscreen, you would enter 5 after the *NumSets* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NumSets* variable, three sets of search fields will appear on the Builder (Boolean) Search page.

### \*\_SearchGroup

The \*\_SearchGroup variables specify what the default relationship among the terms entered within a single field will be. This can be *all of these*, *any of these*, or *as a phrase*. You must have as many of these variables as the number entered after the NumSets variable (see above). If a variable is not entered for a set of fields, this relationship defaults to “any.”

### \*\_WithinField

The \*\_WithinField variables specify what the default relationship among the terms entered within a single field will be. This can be any of the search terms that appear in the *Search In* field; the term must be entered exactly as it appears in the drop-down list (*Title*, *Keyword Anywhere*, *Subject*, *Author Name*, *Personal Name*, *Series*, *Publisher: Name*, *ISBN*, *ISSN*, or *Publisher: Date*). You must have as many of these variables as the number entered after the NumSets variable (see above). If a variable is not entered for a set of fields, this relationship defaults to “Title.”

### \*\_NextSetOper

The \*\_NextSetOper variables specify what the default relationship among the terms entered within a single field will be. This can be *and*, *or*, or *not*. You must have as many of these variables as the number entered after the NumSets variable (see above). If a variable is not entered for a set of fields, this relationship defaults to “and.”

## Browse\_Page Stanza

The first six variables of the [Browse\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables. The Browse page displays the results of any browse search (see [Search Dialog Stanza](#) on [page 3-54](#) for information about which searches can be defined as browse searches).



#### IMPORTANT:

*The header of the first column on the Browse Page is not defined here in the [Browse\_Page] stanza, but rather is defined by the #= variable in the [Title\_Page] stanza (see page 152). This column lists the chronological order of the headings found as a result of the search as well as any note or reference links that are associated with the headings.*

#	Titles	Headings	Headings Type
[ 1 ]	1 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. The \$30,000 bequest,	personal name	
[ 2 ]	1 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. The \$30,000 bequest and other stories /	personal name	
[ 3 ]	1 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. The adventures of Colonel Sellers,	personal name	
[ 4 ]	6 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. Adventures of Huckleberry Finn	personal name	
<i>See also</i> [ 5 ]	0 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. Adventures of Huckleberry Finn (Tom Sawyer's comrade)	personal name	
<i>See also</i> [ 6 ]	2 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. The adventures of Tom Sawyer /	personal name	
[ 7 ]	1 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. The art, humor, and humanity of Mark Twain.	personal name	
[ 8 ]	1 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. A cat-tale /	personal name	
[ 9 ]	1 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. The celebrated jumping frog of Calaveras County.	personal name	
[ 10 ]	2 Twain, Mark, 1835-1910. Christian science ;	personal name	

**Figure 3-27. Example of a Browse Page**

#

The # variable controls the header of the first column in the Browse Page. This column lists the chronological order of the headings found as a result of the search as well as any note or reference links that are associated with the headings. Enter the text that you want to display as the header of the first column of the Browse Page search results table after the # variable. For example, if you wanted to header of the first column to be “Result #”, you would enter *Result #* after the #= variable. If nothing is entered after the # variable, # will be used as the default.

### Col1

The *Co/1* variable controls the header of second column in the search results table on the Browse page that lists the number of titles associated with the corresponding heading. Enter the text that you want to appear as the header of the second column after the *Co/1=* variable. For example, if you wanted the header to be “Titles”, you would enter *Titles* after the *Co/1* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Co/1* variable, the text labels will default to *Title*.

### Col2

The *Co/2* variable controls the header of the third column in the search results table on the Browse page. The third column lists the headings that were found as a result of the search. Enter the text that you want to appear as the header of the

third column after the *Col2*= variable. For example, if you wanted the header to be “Headings”, you would enter *Headings* after the *Col2* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Col2* variable, the text labels will default to *Headings*.

### **Col3**

The *Col3* variable controls the header of the fourth column in the search results table on the Browse page. The fourth column lists the headings types of the headings that were found as a result of the search. Enter the text that you want to appear as the header of the fourth column after the *Col3*= variable. For example, if you wanted the header to be “Headings Type”, you would enter *Headings Type* after the *Col3* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Col3* variable, the text labels will default to *Headings Type*.

### **ALT\_Note**

If a scope note is associated with a heading, a scope note link will appear in the first column of the search results table on the Browse page. The *Alt\_Note* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse is held over a scope note link. Enter the text that you want to appear as the alternate text for a scope note link after the *ALT\_Note*= variable. For example, if you wanted the alternate text to be “Note”, you would enter *Note* after the *ALT\_Note* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ALT\_Note* variable, the text labels will default to *Note*.

### **ALT\_See\_Also**

If there are references associated with a heading, a reference or “see also” link will appear in the first column of the search results table on the Browse page. The *Alt\_See\_Also* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse is held over a reference link. Enter the text that you want to appear as the alternate text for a reference link after the *ALT\_See\_Also*= variable. For example, if you wanted the alternate text to be “See Also”, you would enter *See Also* after the *ALT\_See\_Also* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ALT\_See\_Also* variable, the text labels will default to *See Also*.

### **HotLink\_... Variables**

The **HotLink\_N** variables control which fields in the headings list on the Headings List Browse page that will be used as hotlinks. The following variables are used:

**Table 3-7. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Description
HotLink_#	# (Row number) column)
HotLink_0	Column 2 (generally Mfh Call No.)

---

**Table 3-7. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Description
HotLink_1	Column 2 (generally Titles)
HotLink_2	Column 3 (generally Headings)
Hotlink_3	Column 4 (generally Headings Type)
The HotLink_0, 1, 2, and 3 variables do not represent specific types of data - each variable refers to a particular column, no matter what is in the column.	

After each variable, enter Y to indicate that this field in the headings list is to be a hyperlink to the record display page for that record. Enter N to prevent this field from being used as a link.

### **Leading#Text and Trailing#Text**

The **Leading#Text** and **Trailing#Text** variables allow you to make the hypertext link connected to the number in the # column larger. This is done by specifying extra characters that will display before and after each record number that appears in the # column. These characters simply appear onscreen in order to allow the hypertext link to be much larger than the single digits that sometimes appear in this column. Enter the text to appear before the number after the **Leading#Text** variable; enter the text to appear after the number after the **Trailing#Text** variable. Entering a pipe ("|") after the variable will cause a space to appear onscreen. (Entering spaces after the variable will not cause spaces to appear onscreen.)

### **[Combined\_Search\_Page] Stanza**

The first six variables of the [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

### **Tab\_Text**

The *Tab\_Text* variable controls the description that appears on the tab on the Combined Search page. Enter the text that you want to appear on the tab after the *Tab\_Text=* variable. For example, if you wanted the tab to read "Combined Search", you would enter *Combined Search* after the *Tab\_Text* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Tab\_Text* variable, the text labels will default to *Simple Search*.

### **ActiveTabColor**

The *ActiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the page of the Combined Search tab when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable to configure the background color of the tab. For example, if you wanted to make the background of the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

### **InactiveTabColor**

The *InactiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the tab for the Combined Search page when it is inactive. This also controls the color of the portion of the block that contains the Records per page field and the Search and Reset buttons. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable to configure the color of the tab when it is inactive and the lower portion of the search block when it is active. For example, if you wanted to make the Boolean Search tab appear white when inactive you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

### **ActiveFontColor**

The *ActiveFontColor* variable controls the color of the text on the Combined Search tab when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the active tab. For example, if you wanted to make the descriptive text white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable (*ActiveFontColor=ffffff*).

### **InactiveFontColor**

The *InactiveFontColor* variable controls the color of the text on the Combined Search tab when it is inactive. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the inactive tab. For example, if you wanted to make the text on the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *InactiveFontColor=* variable (*InactiveFontColor=ffffff*).

### **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to submit or activate their search. Enter the text that you want to appear on the "Submit" button after the *SubmitButton=* variable. For example, if

---

you wanted the text on the button to be “Search”, you would enter *Search* after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Submit*.

### **ClearButton**

The *ClearButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear all of the information that they have searched for in order to ensure a successful new search. The “Clear” button only displays after a search that found no results has been performed (otherwise, the “Reset” button will appear in place of the “Clear” button; see [ResetButton](#) below). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Clear” button after the *ClearButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Clear”, you would enter *Clear* after the *ClearButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ClearButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Clear*.

### **ResetButton**

The *ResetButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear all of the free-text fields and reset all of the drop-down menus to their default selections (if you have conducted a search that did not find results, the “Clear” button will appear in place of the “Reset” button; see [ClearButton](#) above). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Reset” button after the *ResetButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Reset”, you would enter *Reset* after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Reset*.

### **InputBoxSize**

The *InputBoxSize* variable controls the number of characters that will appear in the box in which you enter your search terms. However, this length does not limit the total number of characters that can be entered into the field. If the number of characters typed into the field is greater than the size of the input box, the characters in the box will scroll to the left (see the [InputBoxMaxLength](#) variable for more information). Enter the length (in characters) of the box after the *InputBoxSize* variable. For example, if you wanted the box size to be 35 characters, you would enter 35 after the *InputBoxSize* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InputBoxSize* variable, the default length will be 37 characters.

### **InputBoxMaxLength**

The *InputBoxMaxLength* variable controls the maximum number of characters that you can enter into the search term field. This length does not place any limitations on how many characters display onscreen in the search term field, however (see the [InputBoxSize](#) variable above for more information). Enter the length (in characters) of the box after the *InputBoxMaxLength* variable. For

example, if you wanted the box size to be 35 characters, you would enter 35 after the *InputBoxMaxLength* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InputBoxMaxLength* variable, the default length will be 37 characters.

### **SearchBoxText**

The *SearchBoxText* variable controls the label that appears before the Find Text field on the Combined Search (Simple Search) page. Enter the text that you want to appear onscreen after the *SearchBoxText* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to read "Find This:", you would enter *Find This:* after the *SearchBoxText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SearchBoxText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Find This:*.

### **QuickLimitsText**

The *QuickLimitsText* variable controls the label that appears before the Simple Limit drop-down on the Combined Search (Simple Search) page. Enter the text that you want to appear onscreen after the *QuickLimitsText* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to read "Quick Limit:", you would enter *Quick Limit:* after the *QuickLimitsText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *QuickLimitsText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Simple Limit*.

### **FindResultsText**

The *FindResultsText* variable controls the label that appears before the Find Results list on the Combined Search (Simple Search) page. Enter the text that you want to appear onscreen after the *FindResultsText* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to read "Find Results in", you would enter *Find Results in* after the *FindResultsText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *FindResultsText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Find Results in*.

### **DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown**

The *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable controls whether the simple limit drop-down field will appear on the Combined Search (Simple Search) page. Enter Y after the *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable to display the simple limit field; enter N to hide the field. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable, the default will be N.

### **QuickLimitDropDownSize**

The *QuickLimitDropDownSize* variable controls the style and the size (in rows) of the Quick Limits list that will appear on the Combined Search (Simple Search) page. Enter the style number after the *QuickLimitDropDownSize* variable.

- Entering 0 will cause the list to display as a set of radio buttons.
- Entering 1 will cause the list to display as a drop-down list.

- 
- Entering any other number (2 or greater) will display a list of the specified length.

For example, if you wanted a list that was five entries long to appear, you would enter 5 after the *QuickLimitDropDownSize* variable. If nothing is entered after the *QuickLimitDropDownSize* variable, a drop-down list will appear onscreen (style 1). Note that if the number of rows filling a list is longer than the length of the list, scroll bars will appear to allow access to the entire list.

### **SearchTypeDropDownSize**

The *SearchTypeDropDownSize* variable controls the size (in rows) of the Search Type list that will appear on the Combined Search (Simple Search) page. Enter the number of rows that you want to appear onscreen after the *SearchTypeDropDownSize* variable.

Entering 1 will cause the list to display as a drop-down list; entering any other number will display a list of the specified length. For example, if you wanted a list that was five entries long to appear, you would enter 5 after the *SearchTypeDropDownSize* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SearchTypeDropDownSize* variable, a list three entries long will appear onscreen. Note that if the number of rows filling a list is longer than the length of the list, scroll bars will appear to allow access to the entire list.

Entering a 0 will cause the list to display as a set of radio buttons.

### **SearchTypeStyle**

The *SearchTypeStyle* variable allows you to specify the style of search that you want to use on the Combined Search (Simple Search) screen. Enter a number between 0 and 3 after the *SearchTypeStyle* variable to specify which style of Simple Search should appear onscreen. If nothing is entered after the *SearchTypeStyle* variable, search type 1 will be the default.

## WebVoyage Configuration Files

---

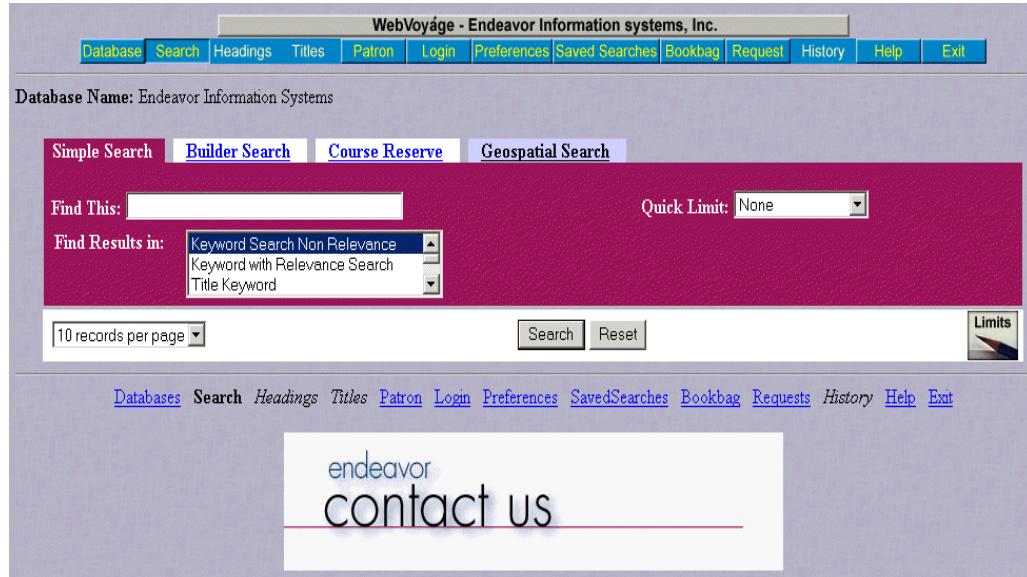


Figure 3-28. Search Type Style 0 (SearchTypeStyle=0)

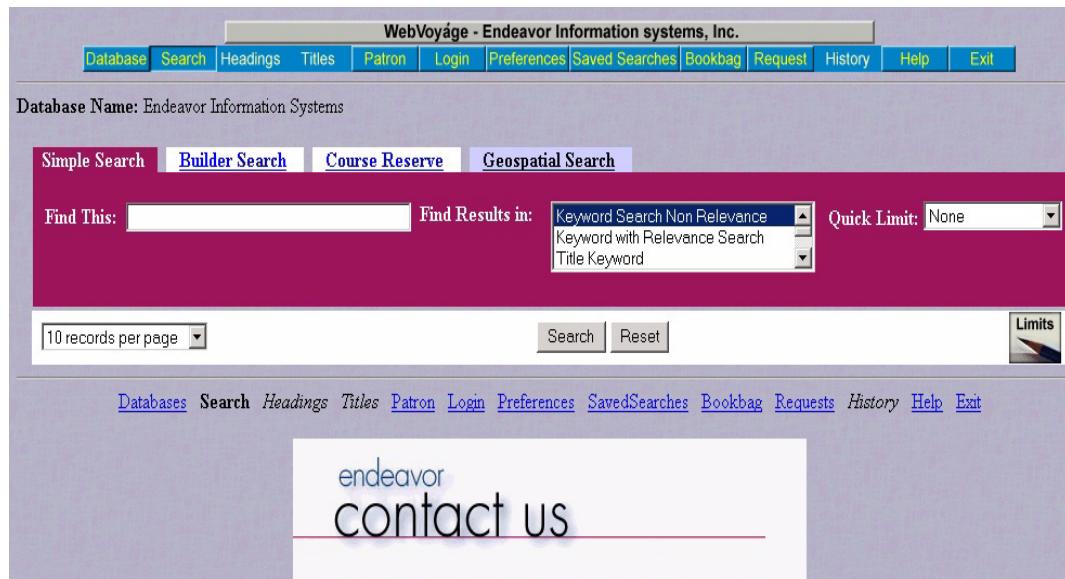


Figure 3-29. Search Type Style 1 (SearchTypeStyle=1)

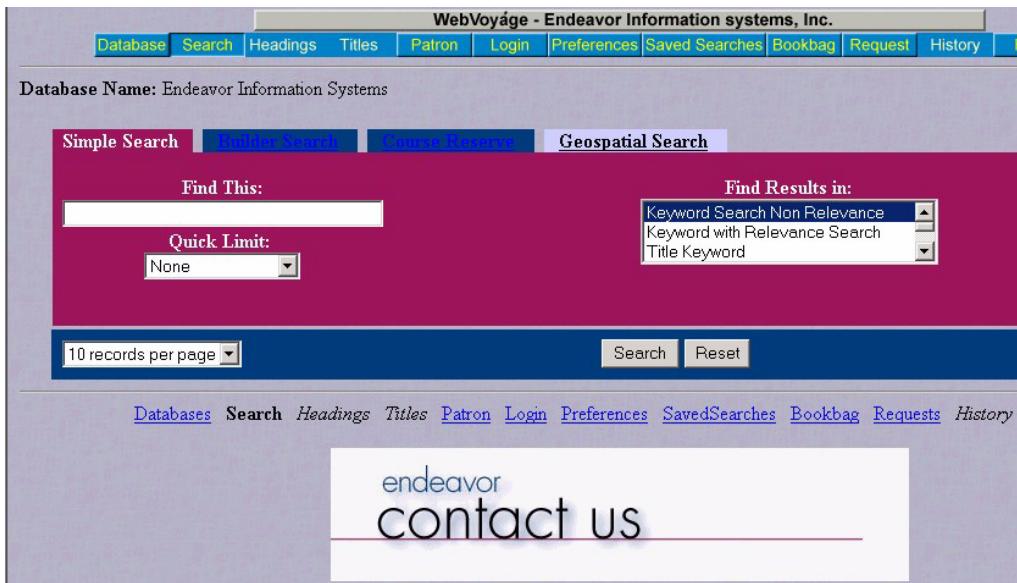


Figure 3-30. Search Type Style 2 (SearchTypeStyle=2)

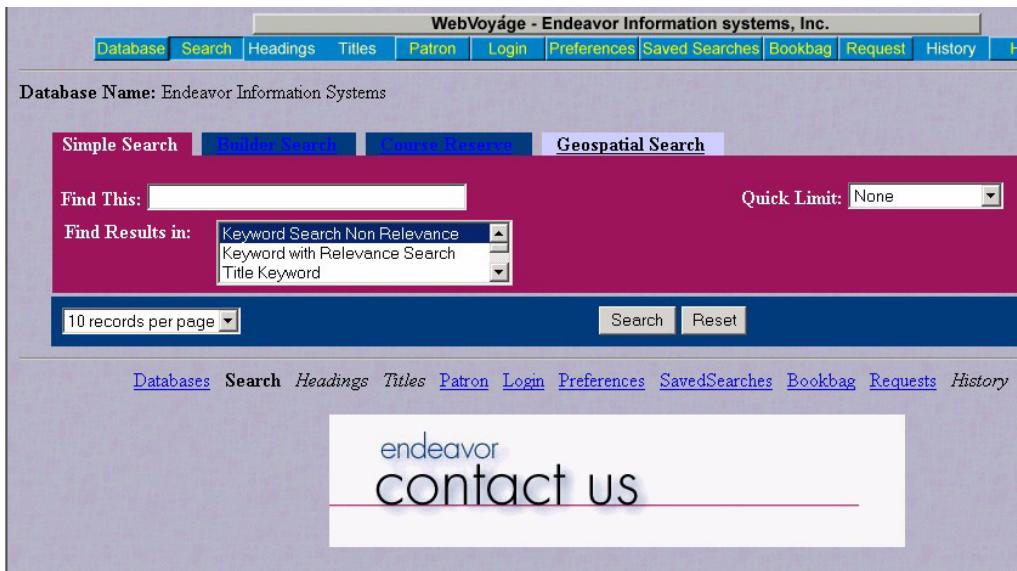


Figure 3-31. Search Type Style 3 (SearchTypeStyle=3)

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

## Configuring the Course Reserve Search (Drop-Down interface)

**NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Course Reserve Search include:

**Table 3-8. Course Reserve**

CONFIGURATION	variable or file	Details
Background image	Background	Page layout override for the Course Reserve Search page. These variables perform the same functions as (and override) those in the [Html_Body] stanza (See <a href="#">Html_Body Stanza on page 2-5</a> ).
Text Color	Text	
Background color	BGCOLOR	
Link color	LINK	
Visited Link color	VLINK	
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK	
Text on Course Reserve Search tab	Tab_Text	
Informational text	ht_coursereserve.htm file	HTML block file containing instructions for course reserve searching.
Instructor drop-down label	Instructor	Any text after the variable acts as drop-down box label. To hide drop-down, remove text from after variable, or comment line out.
Show/hide Instructor drop-down		
Department drop-down label	Department	Any text after the variable acts as drop-down box label. To hide drop-down, remove text from after variable, or comment line out.
Show/hide Department drop-down		

---

**Table 3-8. Course Reserve**

CONFIGURATION	variable or file	Details
Course drop-down label	Course	Any text after the variable acts as drop-down box label. To hide drop-down, remove text from after variable, or comment line out.
Show/hide Course drop-down		
Section drop-down label	Section	Any text after the variable acts as drop-down box label. To hide drop-down, remove text from after variable, or comment line out.
Show/hide Section drop-down		
Wording of "Any" in drop-downs	Any	
Search Button label	SubmitButton	
Reset Button label	ResetButton	
Clear Button label	ClearButton	
Color of Course Reserve Search tab and drop-down block box when Course Reserve search tab selected.	ActiveTabColor	
Color of Course Reserve Search tab when inactive	InactiveTabColor	
Color of text on Course Reserve Search tab	ActiveFontColor	
Color of text on Course Reserve Search tab when inactive	InactiveFontColor	
Color of inactive tabs and text for Simple, Builder, Map Searching	See Simple, Builder, Map Search sections on changing tab and text colors	
Search limits in effect msg	limitmsg.htm	
search resulted in no hits msg	nohitsmsg.htm	

On the Course Reserve Search tab, you can specify which search fields will appear on screen, the labels of the drop-down fields and the default settings for each. You can change the labels on the Search and Reset buttons. You can change the colors used by the Course Reserve Search tab and the text on the tab itself. You can also change the background to a new color or image.

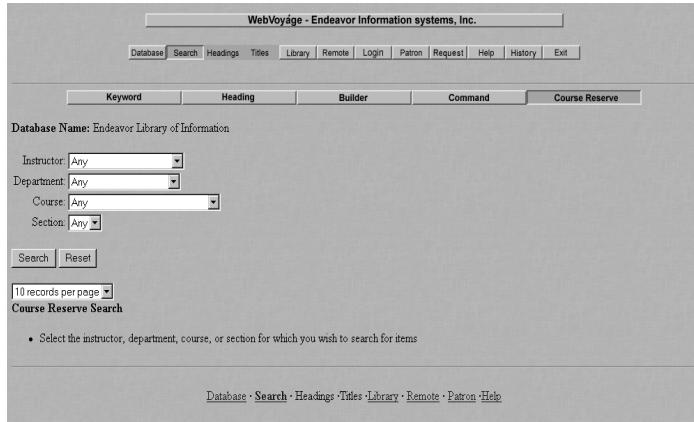
Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 3-9. General Page Variables**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file
Limits button image	limit.gif
Values in Records Per Page drop-down	[Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file

### **Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page Stanza**

The first six variables of the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.



**Figure 3-32. Example of Course Reserve Search Page**

#### **ActiveTabColor**

The *ActiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the page of the Course Reserve Search tab when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable to configure the background color of the tab. For example, if you wanted to make the background of the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

#### **InactiveTabColor**

The *InactiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the tab for the Course Reserve Search page when it is inactive. This also controls the color of the portion of the block that contains the Records per page field and the Search and Reset buttons. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable to configure the color of the tab when it is inactive and the lower portion of the search block when it is active. For example, if you wanted to make the Boolean Search tab appear white when inactive you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

#### **ActiveFontColor**

The *ActiveFontColor* variable controls the color of the text on the Course Reserve Search tab when it is active. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the active tab. For

example, if you wanted to make the descriptive text white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable (*ActiveFontColor=ffffff*).

### **InactiveFontColor**

The *InactiveFontColor* variable controls the color of the text on the Course Reserve Search tab when it is inactive. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the inactive tab. For example, if you wanted to make the text on the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *InactiveFontColor=* variable (*InactiveFontColor=ffffff*).

### **Tab\_Text**

The *Tab\_Text* variable controls the description that appears on the tab on the Course Reserve Search fields page. Enter the text that you want to appear on the tab after the *Tab\_Text=* variable. For example, if you wanted the tab to read “Course Reserve”, you would enter *Course Reserve* after the *Tab\_Text* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Tab\_Text* variable, the text labels will default to *Course Reserve*.

### **Any**

There are four drop-down fields on the Course Reserve Search Page from which patrons select their searching criteria. The *Any* variable controls the entry in each of the four drop-down fields which patrons would select if they do not have a preference about which entry to choose. Enter the text that you want to appear as the “Any” entry in the four drop-down fields after the *Any=* variable. For example, if you wanted the “Any” entry to be “Any”, you would enter *Any* after the *Any* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Any* variable, the text label will default to *Any*.

### **Instructor**

The *Instructor* variable controls the text label beside the first field on the Course Reserve Search page. The drop-down list within this field contains the names of the instructors that have material on course reserve. Enter the text that you want to appear as the label after the *Instructor=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text label beside the Instructor drop-down list to be “Instructor:”, you would enter *Instructor:* after the *Instructor* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Instructor* variable, the text label will default to *Instructor:*. You can prevent the Instructor drop-down from appearing onscreen by deleting or commenting out the *Instructor* variable from the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza.

---

## **Department**

The *Department* variable controls the text label beside the second field on the Course Reserve Search page. The drop-down list within this field contains the departments that have material on course reserve. Enter the text that you want to appear as the label after the *Department=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text label beside the Department drop-down list to be “Department:”, you would enter *Department:* after the *Department* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Department* variable, the text label will default to *Department:*. You can prevent the Department drop-down from appearing onscreen by deleting or commenting out the *Department* variable from the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza.

## **Course**

The *Course* variable controls the text label beside the third field on the Course Reserve Search page. The drop-down list within this field contains the courses that have material on course reserve. Enter the text that you want to appear as the label after the *Course=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text label beside the Course drop-down list to be “Course:”, you would enter *Course:* after the *Course* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Course* variable, the text label will default to *Course:*. You can prevent the Course drop-down from appearing onscreen by deleting or commenting out the *Course* variable from the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza.

## **Section**

The *Section* variable controls the text label beside the fourth field on the Course Reserve Search page. The drop-down list within this field contains the course sections that have material on course reserve. Enter the text that you want to appear as the label after the *Section=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text label beside the Section drop-down list to be “Section:”, you would enter *Section:* after the *Section* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Section* variable, the text label will default to *Section:*. You can prevent the Section drop-down from appearing onscreen by deleting or commenting out the *Section* variable from the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza.

## **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to submit or activate their search. Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Submit” button after the *SubmitButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Search”, you would enter *Search* after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Submit*.

### **ClearButton**

The *ClearButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear all of the information that they have searched for in order to ensure a successful new search. The “Clear” button only displays after a search that found no results has been performed (otherwise, the “Reset” button will appear in place of the “Clear” button; see [ResetButton](#) below). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Clear” button after the *ClearButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Clear”, you would enter *Clear* after the *ClearButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ClearButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Clear*.

### **ResetButton**

The *ResetButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear the free-text field in which the search terms are entered (if you have conducted a search that did not find results, the “Clear” button will appear in place of the “Reset” button; see [ClearButton](#) above). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Reset” button after the *ResetButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Reset”, you would enter *Reset* after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Reset*.

### **Database\_Page Stanza**

The first six variables of the [Database\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

### **No\_Bib\_Data**

The *No\_Bib\_Data* variable controls the text that appears on the Database Page screen when WebVoyage encounters a server error or an error which otherwise prevents it from receiving data from the server. Enter the text of the error message after the *No\_Bib\_Data=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text of the message to be *There is no bibliographic data attached to this record.*, you would enter *There is no bibliographic data attached to this record.* after the *No\_Bib\_Data=* variable.

### **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to submit or activate their search. Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Submit” button after the *SubmitButton=* variable. For example, if

---

you wanted the text on the button to be “Search”, you would enter *Search* after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Submit*.

### ResetButton

The *ResetButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear the free-text field in which the search terms are entered (if you have conducted a search that did not find results, the “Clear” button will appear in place of the “Reset” button; see [ClearButton](#) above). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Reset” button after the *ResetButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Reset”, you would enter *Reset* after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Reset*.

### Headings\_Page Stanza

The first six variables of the [Headings\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on page 2-5 for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

---

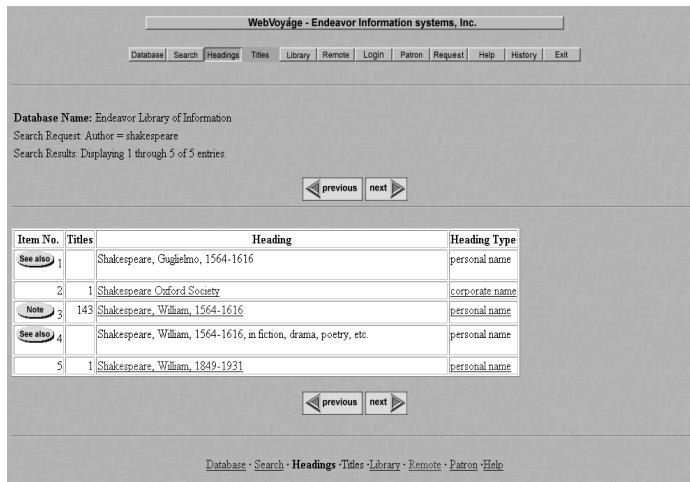


Figure 3-33. Example of Headings Page

#

The # variable controls the header text that displays above the first column of the Heading Search Results table. The text that displays after the variable will be displayed in the column header. If no text is specified, the # variable defaults to #.

### **Titles**

The *Titles* variable controls the header text that displays above the second column of the Heading Search Results table. The text that displays after the variable will be displayed in the column header. If no text is specified, the *Titles* variable defaults to *Titles*.

### **Heading**

The *Heading* variable controls the header text that displays above the first column of the Heading Search Results table. The text that displays after the variable will be displayed in the column header. If no text is specified, the *Heading* variable defaults to *Headings*.

### **Heading\_Type**

The *Heading\_Type* variable controls the header text that displays above the first column of the Heading Search Results table. The text that displays after the variable will be displayed in the column header. If no text is specified, the *Heading\_Type* variable defaults to *Heading Type*.

### **ALT\_Note**

If a scope note is associated with a heading, a scope note link will appear in the first column of the search results table on the Headings Search Results page. The *Alt\_Note* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse is held over a scope note link. Enter the text that you want to appear as the alternate text for a scope note link after the *ALT\_Note=* variable. For example, if you wanted the alternate text to be “Note”, you would enter *Note* after the *ALT\_Note* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ALT\_Note* variable, the text labels will default to *Note*.

### **ALT\_See\_Also**

If there are references associated with a heading, a reference or “see also” link will appear in the first column of the search results table on the Headings Search Results page. The *Alt\_See\_Also* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse is held over a reference link. Enter the text that you want to appear as the alternate text for a reference link after the *ALT\_See\_Also=*

---

variable. For example, if you wanted the alternate text to be "See Also", you would enter *See Also* after the *ALT\_See\_Also* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ALT\_See\_Also* variable, the text labels will default to *See Also*.

### **HotLink\_... Variables**

The **HotLink\_N** variables control which fields in the headings list on the Headings List page that will be used as hotlinks. The following variables are used:

**Table 3-10. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Description
HotLink_#	# (Row number) column)
HotLink_1	Column 2 (generally Titles)
HotLink_2	Column 3 (generally Headings)
Hotlink_3	Column 4 (generally Headings Type)
	The HotLink_1, 2, and 3 variables do not represent specific types of data - each variable refers to a particular column, no matter what is in the column.

After each variable, enter Y to indicate that this field in the headings list is to be a hyperlink to the record display page for that record. Enter N to prevent this field from being used as a link.

### **Leading#Text and Trailing#Text**

The **Leading#Text** and **Trailing#Text** variables allow you to make the hypertext link connected to the number in the # column larger. This is done by specifying extra characters that will display before and after each record number that appears in the # column. These characters simply appear onscreen in order to allow the hypertext link to be much larger than the single digits that sometimes appear in this column. Enter the text to appear before the number after the **Leading#Text** variable; enter the text to appear after the number after the **Trailing#Text** variable. Entering a pipe ("|") after the variable will cause a space to appear onscreen. (Entering spaces after the variable will not cause spaces to appear onscreen.)

### **Limit\_Page Stanza**

Search limits will only be available if the limits feature is turned on in the [Search Dialog] stanza of the WebVoyage opac.ini file. See [Search Dialog Stanza](#) on [page 3-54](#) for more information.

The first six variables of the [Limit\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza on page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

### **Top\_Background\_Color**

The *Top\_Background\_Color* variable controls the color of the background of the header and the borders around the fields of the Search Limits table on the Search Limits page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *Top\_Background\_Color=* variable to configure the color of the header background and cell borders. For example, if you wanted to make the header and cell borders white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *Top\_Background\_Color=* variable (*Top\_Background\_Color=ffffff*).

### **Table\_Background\_Color**

The *Table\_Background\_Color* variable controls the color of the background of the fields in the Search Limits table on the Search Limits page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *Table\_Background\_Color=* variable to configure the color of the cells. For example, if you wanted to make the cells white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *Table\_Background\_Color=* variable (*Table\_Background\_Color=ffffff*).

### **Font\_Color**

The *Font\_Color* variable controls the color of the label and header text in the Search Limits table on the Search Limits page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *Font\_Color=* variable to configure the color of the labels and the header. For example, if you wanted to make the labels and header, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *Font\_Color=* variable (*Font\_Color=ffffff*).

### **Page\_Title**

The *Page\_Title* variable controls the title that displays at the top of the limits page in WebVoyage. Enter the title that you want to display at the top of the limits page in WebVoyage after the *Page\_Title=* variable. For example, if you wanted the title of the limits page to display as "Limits", you would enter *Limits* after the *Page\_Title=* variable (*Page\_Title=Limits*). If nothing is entered after the *Page\_Title* variable, no title will display at the top of the limits page in WebVoyage.

---

## **Search\_Limits**

The *Search\_Limits* variable specifies the text that displays in the header of the table of limit types on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the header above the limit types after the *Search\_Limits=* variable. For example, if you wanted the header to display as “Search Limits:”, you would enter *Search Limits:* after the *Search\_Limits=* variable (*Search\_Limits=Search Limits*). If nothing is entered after the *Search\_Limits* variable, no header will display.

## **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* variable controls the text on the button at the bottom of the limits page. This is the button that puts any selected limits into effect and returns the user to the search page. Enter the information that you want to display as the text on the button at the bottom of the limits page after the *SubmitButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to display as “Set Limits”, you would enter *Set Limits* after the *SubmitButton=* variable (*SubmitButton=Set Limits*). If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Submit*.

## **Date**

The *Date* variable controls the label that displays beside the Date limit type information on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the label beside the Date limit type information on the limits page after the *Date=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as “Year”, you would enter *Year* after the *Date=* variable (*Date=Year*). If nothing is entered after the *Date* variable, the Date limit type will not appear on the limits page and will not be available to your users.

## **Language**

The *Language* variable controls the label that displays beside the Language limit type information on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the label beside the Language limit type information on the limits page after the *Language=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as “Language”, you would enter *Language* after the *Language=* variable (*Language=Language*). If nothing is entered after the *Language* variable, the Language limit type will not appear on the limits page and will not be available to your users.

## **Type**

The *Type* variable controls the label that displays beside the Type limit type information on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the label beside the Type limit type information on the limits page after the *Type=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as “Type”, you would

enter *Type* after the *Type=* variable (*Type=Type*). If nothing is entered after the *Type* variable, the Type limit type will not appear on the limits page and will not be available to your users.

### **Medium**

The *Medium* variable controls the label that displays beside the Medium limit type information on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the label beside the Medium limit type information on the limits page after the *Medium=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "Medium", you would enter *Medium* after the *Medium=* variable (*Medium=Medium*). If nothing is entered after the *Medium* variable, the Medium limit type will not appear on the limits page and will not be available to your users.

### **Location**

The *Location* variable controls the label that displays beside the Location limit type information on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the label beside the Location limit type information on the limits page after the *Location=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "Location", you would enter *Location* after the *Location=* variable (*Location=Location*). If nothing is entered after the *Location* variable, the Location limit type will not appear on the limits page and will not be available to your users.

### **Place**

The *Place* variable controls the label that displays beside the Place of Publication limit type information on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the label beside the Place of Publication limit type information on the limits page after the *Place=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "Place of Publication", you would enter *Place of Publication* after the *Place=* variable (*Place=Place of Publication*). If nothing is entered after the *Place* variable, the Place of Publication limit type will not appear on the limits page and will not be available to your users.

### **Status**

The *Status* variable controls the label that displays beside the Publication Status limit type information on the limits page. Enter the information that you want to display as the label beside the Publication Status limit type information on the limits page after the *Status=* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to display as "Publication Status", you would enter *Publication Status* after the *Status=* variable (*Status=Publication Status*). If nothing is entered after the *Status* variable, the Publication Status limit type will not appear on the limits page and will not be available to your users.

---

### **Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text**

The *Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse is held over the Limits button that appears on each of the Search pages (Keyword, Heading, Boolean, etc.). This is the button that patrons press to move from a search page to the Search Limits page, where they can define limits for their search in order to narrow or make it more specific. Rather than setting the alternate text for this button numerous times for the numerous search pages, you need only set the it here in the [Limit\_Page] stanza. Enter the alternate text for the “Limit” button after the *Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text=* variable. For example, if you wanted the alternate text to display as “Set Search Limits”, you would enter *Set Search Limits* after the *Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text* variable, the alternate text will default to *Set Search Limits*.

### **Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text**

The *Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that appears when the mouse is held over “Clear Limits” button at the bottom of the limits page (in the above screen shot, the “Clear Limits” button is an image containing an eraser and the word Limits). This is the button that clears any selected limits. Enter the alternate text for the “Clear Limits” button after the *Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text=* variable. For example, if you wanted the alternate text to display as “Clear Search Limits”, you would enter *Clear Search Limits* after the *Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text* variable, the alternate text will default to *Clear Search Limits*.

## **Logon\_Page Stanza**

The first six variables of the [Logon\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza on page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

### **LastName**

The *LastName* variable controls the label that appears beside the second free-text field on the Login Page. This is the field in which patrons enter their last name in order to acquire access to certain protected features and information (for instance, their personal information). Enter the text that you want to appear as the label beside the second free-text field after the *LastName* variable. If nothing is entered after the *LastName* variable, *Last Name:* will be used as the default.

For information about the first free-text field (the Barcode or Institution ID field) on the Patron Login page, see [Enabling and disabling WebVoyage Features](#) on [page 3-45](#).

### **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to submit their login information. Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Login” button after the *SubmitButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Login”, you would enter *Login* after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Login*.

### **ResetButton**

The *ResetButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear the fields on the Login Page. Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Reset” button after the *ResetButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Reset”, you would enter *Reset* after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Reset*.

### **DefaultCluster**

For libraries using multiple clusters, the *DefaultCluster* variable determines which cluster acts as the default in the drop-down box used to select the cluster Patrons log in to. If this variable is left blank, the clusters sort alphabetically in the drop-down box.

### **HomeLibrary**

For libraries using multiple clusters, the *HomeLibrary* variable determines the label text of the drop-down box containing the clusters available for logging in to.

### **Mail\_And\_Requests Stanza**

The [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza of the opac.ini file controls the text for the various portions of the save/print/e-mail options box that appears on all titles lists and record displays.

- The Format for Print/Save button allows users to reformat the records and save or print them.
- The e-mail box allows patrons to send the displayed information to a particular e-mail address.

- The Save To Bookbag button allows patrons to save the selected records to their Bookbag (if the Bookbag feature is enabled- see [Bookbag \(Shopping Cart\) on page 5-120](#)).

Record Options	
<b>Records</b>	Select Download Format: <input type="button" value="Full Record"/> <input type="button" value="Format for Print/Save"/> <input type="button" value="Save Search Query"/>
<input type="radio"/> All on page <input checked="" type="radio"/> Selected on page <input type="radio"/> Selected all pages	Enter your email address <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Email"/>
	Save results for later: <input type="button" value="Save To Bookbag"/>

Figure 3-34. Record Options box (on records results page)

Line#

```

1 [Mail_And_Requests]
2 Mail=Record Options
3 Format=Select Download Format:
4 Records=Records
5 All=All on Page
6 Selected=Selected On Page
7 SelectedRecsAllPages=Selected all Pages
8 Save=Format for Print/Save
9 EmailAddress=Enter your email address:
10 SaveToBookbag1=Save results for later:
11 SaveToBookbag2=Save To Bookbag
12 Email=Email
13 EmailSubject1=Opac %s Search for %s
14 EmailSubject2=Contents of Bookbag
15 AuthorityRecEmailSubject=Authority Record
16 SaveSearchQuery=Save Search Query

```

Figure 3-35. Default [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza

[Table 3-11](#) details the [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza variables.

**Table 3-11. [Mail\_And\_Requests] Stanza Variables (Page 1 of 2)**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
Mail=	Heading of the Record Options box heading.	Free text	“Record Options” (same if variable is left blank)
Format=	Text next to the drop-down list used to select the format to convert the record to (for more information on formats, see <a href="#">Download Formats on page 3-112</a> )	Free text	“Select Download Format”
Records=	Heading of the section containing the record selection options (radio buttons).  This section only appears on the Record Options box on Title List pages.	Free text	“Records”
All=	Text next to the radio button used to select all of the records on the current Title List page for download.	Free text	“All on Page”
Selected=	Text next to the radio button used to select only the records checked on the current Title List page for download.	Free text	“Selected On Page”
SelectedRecsAll-Pages=	Text next to the radio button used to select only the records checked on all Title List pages for download.	Free text	“Selected All Pages”
Save=	Text of the button which reformats the relevant records according to the format selected in the Download Format drop-down list.	Free text	“Format for Print/Save”
EmailAddress=	Text next to the text box where patrons enter their e-mail address for emailing selected records.	Free text	“Enter your email address:”
SaveToBookbag1=	Text of the heading next to the button used to save Bookbag	Free text	“Save results for later”

---

**Table 3-11. [Mail\_And\_Requests] Stanza Variables (Page 2 of 2)**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
SaveToBookbag2=	Text of the button used to save records to the bookbag	Free text	“Save To Bookbag”
Email=	Text of the button used to email the selected records to patron.	Free text	“Email”
EmailSubject1=	Text of the subject line of emails of selected records sent to patrons.	Free text	“Opac %s Search for %s”. The first “%s” is the type of search executed. The second “%s” is the search string itself.
EmailSubject2=	Text of the subject line of emails sent to patrons with the contents of Bookbag (from the record options of the Bookbag page). See <a href="#">Figure 5-71</a> on <a href="#">page 5-132</a>	Free text	“Contents of Bookbag”
AuthorityRecEmail-Subject=	Text of the subject line of emails sent to patrons with Authority records attached.	Free text	“Authority Record”
SaveSearchQuery=	Text for the button used to save the selected records to your bookbag (for more information on Bookbag, see <a href="#">Bookbag (Shopping Cart)</a> on <a href="#">page 5-120</a> )	Free text	“Save Search Query”

## Download Formats

---

WebVoyage's Multiple Download Formats feature allows you to enable and select five different text formats and two MARC formats for downloading. All of the text formats may be altered to suit your library's needs.

**NOTE:**

The two MARC formats are not configurable, nor are they available for email from WebVoyage.

For example, you can have different pre-configured text formats for a brief record view, a full record view, and a citation record view. Additionally, you can have formats for upload into specific software packages, such as EndNote®.

The procedure for configuring download formats follows.

### **formats.ini file**

Configure the names of the available format for all WebVoyage display directories in the [Download\_Formats] stanza of the formats.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage). Figure 3-36 shows the default formats.ini file.

---

Line#

```
1 [Download_Formats]
2 Save1.cfg=Full Record
3 Save2.cfg=Brief Record
4 Save3.cfg=EndNote Citation
5 Save4.cfg=
6 Save5.cfg=
7 Latin1=Latin1 MARC
8 Marc8=MARC 8
9 UTF-8=UTF-8
```

---

**Figure 3-36. Sample formats.ini file**

Lines 7 and 8 show the two MARC download routines available, and only the text of the corresponding line in the download format drop-down list of the Record Options box is configurable for these. Marc8 (Raw MARC) is now included so you can retain more special characters in your records.

Line [9](#) shows the UTF-8 download routine.

Lines 2 through 6 of Figure 3-36 determine the text of the selections in the download format drop-down list corresponding to the saveX.cfg files (see Figure 3-37). For example, selecting “Brief Record” from the drop-down list will reformat the selected records according to the save2.cfg file (once the Format for Print/Save button is clicked). See Figure 3-38 for the default save2.cfg.

Save4.cfg and Save5.cfg have been left empty so you can use them to create custom formats.

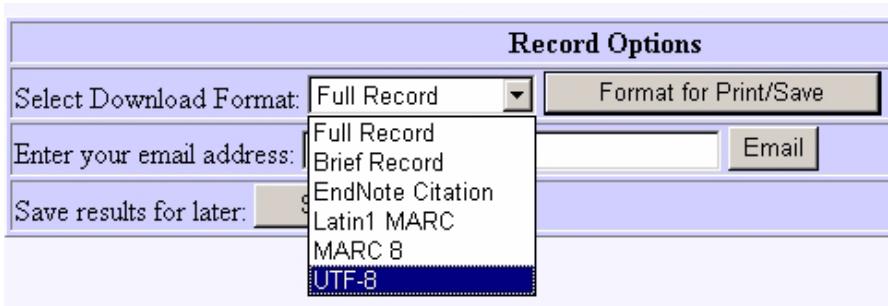


Figure 3-37. Download format drop-down list in the Record Options box

There is only one formats.ini which connects the Record Options box to the appropriate saveX.cfg, but each of these saveX.cfg's must be in each WebVoyage display directory for which they will be enabled (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local, zcit, vcit, and so on). For example, if the Save2.cfg of your formats.ini file corresponds to the Brief Record format, to have the Brief Record format available to patrons while connected to the Local database, you must have the Brief Record Save2.cfg in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local directory.

Also, if you are using the same saveX.cfg for different formats for different databases, make sure the description in the download format box is generic enough to fit all of them. If, for instance, your Save4.cfg for the vcit directory is a custom citation format, while the Save4.cfg for the local directory is a custom brief record format, configure the Save4.cfg= variable of the formats.ini to read something like Other or Custom.

To make a format unavailable from a database view, rename or remove the saveX.cfg corresponding to that format from the WebVoyage display directory for that database. That format will no longer appear in the download format drop-down box when connected to databases using that WebVoyage display directory.

For example, to make the EndNote Citation format unavailable to patrons searching the Local Database, rename or remove the Search3.cfg from the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local directory. The EndNote Citation option will then no longer appear in the download format drop-down box when connected to the Local database.

### Customizing saveX.cfg files

The default saveX.cfg's are straightforward, and can be modified in a text editor such as vi. These files are configured in much the same way as the displayn.cfg files.



### **Procedure 3-1. Modifying a saveX.cfg file**

---

Use the following steps to modify a saveX.cfg file.

1. Determine what MARC fields must be in the text format, and how they should be organized.
2. Open the appropriate saveX.cfg file in a text editor.
3. Set up the saveX.cfg as a template to organize and display the MARC field information of the records as determined in step 1.



#### **IMPORTANT:**

*Any field labels, such as "Title:" should be left-justified. Each MARC field following the label must be indented three spaces. Include all indicators you want to appear under that label.*

4. Configure the line corresponding to that saveX.cfg in the formats.ini file, so your new format can be selected from the download format drop-down list in the Record Options box (see [formats.ini file](#) on [page 3-113](#)).
5. Modify any other configuration files per your preferences, such as the footer information (saveXf.cfg) for the appropriate saveX.cfg file.

For more information on the save.cfg files, see [SAVE.CFG](#) on [page 3-235](#) through [SAVEF.CFG](#) on [page 3-235](#).

Database: +No information available  
5000

Main Author:  
100 XX aq  
110 XX ab

Conference:  
111 XX acnd

Title:  
130 XX aplskf  
240 XX {a[%}plskf"}  
245 XX ab

Primary Material:  
000 06 2

Physical Description:  
007 00 1

Includes:  
006 00 1

Publisher:  
260 XX abc

Holdings Information: +No Data Available--Ask at Reference  
9000

**Figure 3-38. Default save2.cfg (brief record) file**

---

```
Database:          College Library of Endeavor
Main Author:       Pearce, Joseph Chilton.
Title:             The crack in the cosmic egg; challenging constructs of mind
                   and reality.
Primary Material: Book
Publisher:         [New York] Julian Press, 1971.
```

---

```
Call Number:      BD331 .P39
Location:         Main Collection
```

---

```
+=====
Institution Name
Institution Address
Institution Phone Number
Institution E-mail Address
```

---

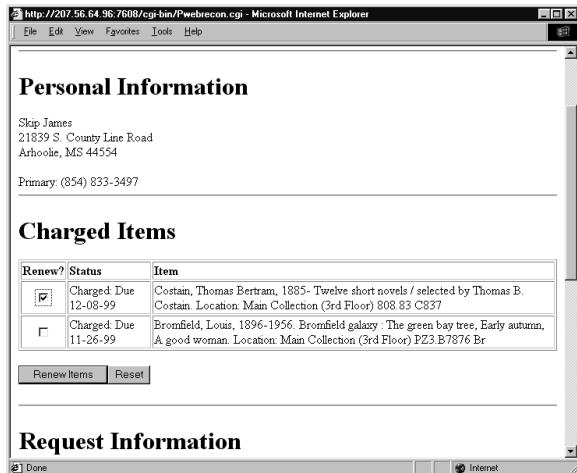
**Figure 3-39. Record formatted based on save2.cfg (brief record) file**

---

### Patron Info Stanza

The Patron Information window in WebVoyage can contain up to four sections. The [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file allows you to define whether or not the Patron Information feature will be available in WebVoyage, define whether or not the Patron Self-Renewal feature will be available in WebVoyage, whether or not patrons will be able to cancel their requests, which of the sections and subsections will display in the Patron Information window, the name of each section, the messages that will appear on each section when there is no available information, and what specific information will display for items on the Charged Items tab (second section).

If none of the sections are displayed, the Patron Information activity will not be available to patrons in WebVoyage.



**Figure 3-40. Patron Information window in WebVoyage**

The following is an example of the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

```
[Patron_Info_Page]
CancelRequests=Y
SelfRenew=Y
Personal=Personal Info
Charged=Charged Items
Fines=Fines and Fees
Requests=Request Information
NoCharges=You have no charged items!
NoFines=You have no fines or fees!
ReqPending=Pending Requests
NoReqPending=You have no requests pending!
ReqAvail=Available Requests
NoReqAvail=You have no items available!
ItemInfo=\t \i \c Location: \l
ChargedItem=Charged: Due \d \u
RenewedItem=Renewed: Due \d \u
RecalledItem=Recalled: Due \d \u
```

---

**Figure 3-41. [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file**

### **CancelRequests**

The *CancelRequests* variable controls whether or not patrons will be able to cancel requests they have made in WebVoyage. Enter *Y* after the *CancelRequests=* variable (*CancelRequests=Y*) if you want to allow patrons to cancel requests in WebVoyage. If *Y* is entered after the *CancelRequests=* variable, a Cancel Request button will appear below the Request Information section of the Patron Information window when requests are displayed in those sections. Enter *N* after the *CancelRequests=* variable (*CancelRequests=N*) if you do not want to allow patrons to cancel requests in WebVoyage. If nothing is entered after the *CancelRequests* variable, *N* will be used as the default. See [Cancel Items Available](#) on page 7-70 in the Patron Information section of this user's guide for more information.

### **SelfRenew**

The *SelfRenew* variable controls whether or not the patron self-renewal feature will be available in WebVoyage. Enter *Y* after the *SelfRenew=* variable (*SelfRenew=Y*) if you want patron self-renewal to be available in WebVoyage. If *Y*

---

is entered after the *SelfRenew*= variable, a Renew button will appear below the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window. This button will be activated if the patron has items checked out and if that patron is not “blocked” by the institution for any reason. Enter *N* after the *SelfRenew*= variable (*SelfRenew=N*) if you do not want patron self-renewal to be available in WebVoyage. If nothing is entered after the *SelfRenew* variable, *N* will be used as the default. See [Patron Self-Renewal](#) on [page 7-63](#) in the Patron Information section of this user’s guide for more information.

### **Personal**

Enter a section name after the *Personal*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file if you want the section containing patrons’ personal information to display. If nothing is entered after the *Personal*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, the section will not display and patrons will not be able to access their personal information. This personal information section may contain information such as a patron’s name, address, phone number, etc. See [Personal Information](#) on [page 7-22](#) in the Patron Information section of this user’s guide for more information. To define the name of this particular section, after the *Personal*= variable, enter the caption that you would like to display as the section name.

### **Charged**

Enter a section name after the *Charged*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file if you want the section containing patrons’ charged item information to display. If nothing is entered after the *Charged*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, the section will not display and patrons will not be able to access their charged item information or renew their charged material. This charged item information section contains patrons’ charged item information, statuses and due dates (for information about determining what information displays on this section, see [ItemInfo](#) on [page 3-122](#), [ChargedItem](#) on [page 3-123](#), [RenewedItem](#) on [page 3-124](#), and [RecalledItem](#) on [page 3-125](#)). In addition, patrons may renew charged items from the charged items section if the patron self-renew feature has been turned on (see [SelfRenew](#) on [page 3-119](#)) and if they are not “blocked”. See [Charged Items](#) on [page 7-23](#) in the Patron Information section of this user’s guide for more information. To define the name of this particular section, after the *Charged*= variable, enter the caption that you would like to display as the section name.

### **Fines**

Enter a section name after the *Fines*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file if you want the section containing patrons’ fine and fee information to display. If nothing is entered after the *Fines*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, the section will not display and patrons will not be able to access their fine and fee information. This fine and fee information section

contains monetary charges a patron has acquired, with the total amount due listed at the top. See [Fines and Fees](#) on page 7-71 in the Patron Information section of this user's guide for more information. To define the name of this particular section, after the *Fines=* variable, enter the caption that you would like to display as the section name.

### **Requests**

The *Requests* variable determines whether or not the Request Information section will display on the Patron Information page. Also, the information that you enter after the *Requests=* variable will appear as the header of the Request Information section on the Patron Information screen. For example, if you enter *Request Information* after the *Requests=* variable (*Requests=Request Information*), "Request Information" would display as the header of the request information section. If nothing is entered after the *Requests=* variable, the Request Information section (i.e., both the Requests Pending or Items Available subheadings) will not display on the Patron Information page.

### **NoCharges**

Enter a message after the *NoCharges=* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file if you want a message to display in the charged information section when the patron has no charged items. This message will also display on the printout page when the charged information section is printed. If nothing is entered after the *NoCharges=* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, no message will display on the charged information section when a patron selects that section but there is no available information. To define the NoCharges message, after the *NoCharges=* variable, enter the message that you would like to display.

### **NoFines**

Enter a message after the *NoFines=* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file if you want a message to display on the fines and fees information section when a patron selects that section but there is no available information. This message will also display on the printout page when the fines and fees information section is printed. If nothing is entered after the *NoFines=* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, no message will display on the fines and fees information section when a patron selects that section but there is no available information. To define the NoFines message, after the *NoFines=* variable, enter the message that you would like to display.

### **ReqPending**

The information that you enter after the *ReqPending=* variable will appear as the subheading above the pending requests list box in the Request Information section of the Patron Information screen. For example, if you enter *Requests*

---

*Pending* after the *ReqPending*= variable (*ReqPending*=Requests Pending), “Requests Pending” would display as the subheading above the pending requests list box in the Request Information section of the Patron Information screen. If nothing is entered after the *ReqPending*= variable, “Requests Pending” will be used as the default.

### **NoReqPending**

Enter a message after the *NoReqPending*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file if you want a message to display on the requests pending subheading when there is no available information. This message will also display on the printout page when the requests pending subheading is printed. If nothing is entered after the *NoReqPending*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, no message will display on the requests pending subheading when there is no available information. To define the NoReqPending message, after the *NoReqPending*= variable, enter the message that you would like to display on the requests pending subheading.

### **ReqAvail**

The information that you enter after the *ReqAvail*= variable will appear as the subheading above the items available list box in the Request Information section of the Patron Information screen. For example, if you enter *Items Available* after the *ReqAvail*= variable (*ReqAvail*=Items Available), “Items Available” would display as the subheading above the items available list box in the Request Information section of the Patron Information screen. If nothing is entered after the *ReqAvail*= variable, “Items Available” will be used as the default.

### **NoReqAvail**

Enter a message after the *NoReqAvail*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file if you want a message to display under the items available subheading when there is no available information. This message will also display on the printout page when the available requests section is printed. If nothing is entered after the *NoReqAvail*= variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, no message will display on the available requests section when there is no available information. To define the NoReqAvail message, after the *NoReqAvail*= variable, enter the message that you would like to display.

### **ItemInfo**

Information about a charged item, such as its title, enumeration, call number, etc., displays in the Item column on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window. The *ItemInfo* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the

opac.ini file defines the item information that will display in this column. You can enter any of the following codes after the *ItemInfo* variable to display the codes' corresponding information:

**Table 3-12. Substitution Tokens**

<b>Substitution token</b>	<b>Displays</b>
\t	the item's title
\i	the item's enumeration, chronology and year
\n	the item's copy number
\c	the item's call number
\b	the item's barcode
\l	the item's location
\a	the item's author

Any text that you enter after the *ItemInfo* variable in the opac.ini file will also display in the Item column on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window. One possible use for such text could be as a descriptive label for a value derived from one of the above codes. For example, if you wanted an item's title, enumeration, chronology and year, call number, and location (plus the label "Location:" for the actual location value) to display in the Item column, you would enter \t \i \c *Location:* \l after the *ItemInfo=* variable. It is important to note that if nothing is entered after the *ItemInfo* variable, no information will display in the Item column.

### **ChargedItem**

An item's status displays in the Status column on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window. The *ChargedItem* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file defines the information that will display in this column for items with a status of charged. Any text that you enter after the *ChargedItem* variable will display in the Status column. In addition, you can use any of the following codes to display the codes' corresponding values:

**Table 3-13. Substitution Tokens**

<b>Substitution token</b>	<b>Displays</b>
\d	displays the item's Due Date
\e	displays the item's Due Date, if the Due Date is not Today
\t	displays the item's Due Time

---

**Table 3-13. Substitution Tokens**

Substitution token	Displays
\u	displays the item's Due Time, if the Due Date is Today

For example, if you wanted a charged item's status to display as "Charged: Due (date) (time)" in the Status column on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window, you would enter *Charged: Due \d \u* after the *ChargedItem=* variable. It is important to note that if nothing is entered after the *ChargedItem* variable, no information will display in the Status column for items with a status of charged.

### **RenewedItem**

An item's status displays in the Status column on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window (as shown in [Figure 3-40](#) on [page 3-118](#)). The *RenewedItem* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file defines the information that will display in this column for items with a status of renewed. Any text that you enter after the *RenewedItem* variable will display in the Status column. In addition, you can use any of the codes listed for the *ChargedItem* variable on [3-123](#) as well as the codes listed below to display the codes' corresponding values:

**Table 3-14. Substitution Tokens**

Substitution token	Displays
\f	the item's Original Due Date
\g	the item's Original Due Date, if the Original Due Date is not Today
\v	the item's Original Due Time
\x	the item's Original Due Time, if the Original Due Date is Today

For example, if you wanted a renewed item's status to display as "Renewed: Due (date) (time) (Originally due on: (date))" in the Status column on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window, you would enter *Renewed: Due \d \u (Originally due on: \f)* after the *RenewedItem=* variable. It is important to note that if nothing is entered after the *RenewedItem* variable, no information will display in the Status column for items with a status of renewed.

## RecalledItem

An item's status displays in the Status column on the Charged Items section of the Patron Information window (as shown in [Figure 3-40 on page 3-118](#)). The *RecalledItem* variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file defines the information that will display in this column for items with a status of recalled. Any text that you enter after the *RecalledItem* variable will display in the Status column. In addition, you can use any of the codes listed for the *ChargedItem* variable on page 123 and for the *RenewedItem* variable on page 124 to display the codes' corresponding values. For example, if you wanted a recalled item's status to display as "Recalled: Due (date) (time)", you would enter *Recalled: Due \d \u* after the *RecalledItem=* variable. It is important to note that if nothing is entered after the *RecalledItem* variable, no information will display in the Status column for items with a status of recalled.

---



Figure 3-42. Patron Information window - Charged Items section

## Patron\_Info\_Page Stanza

The first six variables of the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html Body Stanza on page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

---

## Date

The *Date* variable controls the header of the column that displays the dates on which specific fines or fees were assigned. This column can be found in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display as the header of this column after the *Date* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Date* variable, *Date* will be used as the default.

## Posting

The *Posting* variable controls the header of the column that displays the amount a patron has paid. This column can be found in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display as the header of this column after the *Posting* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Posting* variable, *Posting* will be used as the default.

## Balance

The *Balance* variable controls the header of the column that displays the total monetary balance for a patron (after the posting amount, the amount a patron has paid, has been subtracted from the fee amount, the amount a patron owes). This column can be found in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display as the header of this column after the *Balance* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Balance* variable, *Balance* will be used as the default.

## FeePostingType

The *FeePostingType* variable controls the header of the column that displays the fine or fee reason (for example, "Lost Library Card"). This column can be found in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display as the header of this column after the *FeePostingType* variable. If nothing is entered after the *FeePostingType* variable, *Fee/Posting Type* will be used as the default.

## Fee

The *Fee* variable controls the header of the column that displays the fine or fee amount. This column can be found in the table in the Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display as the header of this column after the *Fee* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Fee* variable, *Fee* will be used as the default.

## **Status**

The *Status* variable controls the headers of the columns that display the statuses of items. These columns can be found in the tables in the Charged Items section and Request Information section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display as the headers of these columns after the *Status* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status* variable, *Status* will be used as the default.

## **Item**

The *Item* variable controls the headers of the columns that display certain item information. These columns can be found in the tables in the Charged Items section, Request Information section and Fines and Fees section of the Patron Information page. Enter the information that you want to display as the headers of these columns after the *Item* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Item* variable, *Item* will be used as the default.

## **Renew**

The *Renew* variable controls the header of the Renew column of the table in the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page. This column will display only if the Patron Self-Renew feature is activated (see [Patron\\_Info\\_Page\\_Stanza](#) on [page 3-125](#) for more information about activating this feature). Enter the information that you want to display as the header of the renew column after the *Renew* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Renew* variable, *Renew?* will be used as the default.

## **RenewalStatus**

The *RenewalStatus* variable controls the header of the column that displays the Renewal statuses of items that a patron has just renewed. This column is found in the table in the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page. This column only displays after a patron renews an item. If the Patron Self-Renewal feature is not activated, this column will not display (see [Patron\\_Info\\_Page\\_Stanza](#) on [page 3-125](#) for more information about activating this feature). Enter the information that you want to display as the header of the renewal status column after the *RenewalStatus* variable. If nothing is entered after the *RenewalStatus* variable, *RenewalStatus* will be used as the default.

## **NotRenewed**

The *NotRenewed* variable controls the information that displays when an item that a patron attempts to renew is not renewed. This information displays in the Renewal Status column of the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page (see [RenewalStatus](#) above for more information about the Renewal Status

---

column). Enter the information that you want to display for an item that is not successfully renewed after the *NotRenewed* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Not Renewed* will be used as the default.

### **RenewedDue**

The *RenewedDue* variable controls the information that displays when an item is successfully renewed. This information displays in the Renewal Status column of the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page (see [RenewalStatus](#) on [page 3-127](#) for more information about the Renewal Status column). Enter the information that you want to display for an item that has been successfully renewed after the *RenewedDue* variable. The renewed due date will automatically be displayed with this information. For example, if you entered *Renewed: Due* after the *RenewedDue* variable, a renewed item's information would display as *Renewed Due: (due date)*. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Renewed: Due* will be used as the default.

### **Cancel**

The *Cancel* variable controls the header of the Cancel column of the tables in the Request Information section of the Patron Information page. This column will display only if the Cancel Requests feature is activated (see [Patron Info Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-125](#) for more information about activating this feature). Enter the information that you want to display as the header of the cancel columns after the *Cancel* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Cancel* variable, *Cancel?* will be used as the default.

### **Pick\_Up\_At**

The *Pick\_Up\_At* variable controls information that displays in the status column of the Request Information section of the Patron Information page when a pickup location is specified for a request. The status column in which this information displays can be found in the Requests Pending table of the Request Information section. The pickup location will be automatically displayed after the information that you enter after the *Pick\_Up\_At* variable. For example, if you enter *Pick up at* after the *Pick\_Up\_At* variable, an item that is ready to be picked up might display as *Pick up at (location)*. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Pick up at* will be used as the default.

### **TotalAmountDue**

The *TotalAmountDue* variable controls text that applies to the total monetary amount that a patron owes. The text acts as a label for this total amount, located left of the amount in the same horizontal row. Enter the text that you want to display as the label for this total amount due after the *TotalAmountDue* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Total Amount Due* will be used as the default.

### **Position, -, Expires**

The *Position*, *-*, and *Expires* variables controls information in the status column of the Request Information section of the Patron Information page that informs patrons of the progress of their requests. The status column in which this information displays can be found in the Requests Pending table of the Request Information section. An example of the information that displays in this column might be *Position: 1 - Expires: 11-05-99*. Three parts of this information that can be configured.

The *Position* variable controls the text at the very beginning of this information. The position of the request (the number 1, 2, etc.) in the request queue will be automatically displayed after the text that you enter after the *Position* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Position* will be used as the default.

The *-* variable controls the information that separates the position information from the expiration date information. Enter the information that you want to separate the position information from the expiration date information after the *-* variable. If nothing is entered after the *-* variable, *-* will be used as the default.

The *Expires* variable controls the text in the second half of this information, which displays before the expiration date of the request. The expiration date of the request (for example, 11-6-99) will be automatically displayed after the text that you entered after the *Expires* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Expires* will be used as the default.

### **PickupLocation**

The *PickupLocation* variable controls the header of the column that displays the pickup location for available items. This column can be found in the Available items section of the Request Information section on the Patron Information page. Enter the information you want to display as the header of this column. If nothing is entered after the *PickupLocation* variable, *Pickup Location* will be used as the default.

### **CancelButton**

The *CancelButton* controls the text that displays on the button which patrons press to cancel one or more of their requests. This button is found in the Requests Information section of the Patron Information page. This button will display only if the Cancel Requests feature is activated (see [Patron\\_Info\\_Page\\_Stanza](#) on [page 3-125](#) for more information about activating this feature). Enter the information you want to display on this button after the *CancelButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *CancelButton* variable button, *Cancel Requests* will be used as the default.

---

## **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* controls the text that displays on the button which patrons press to renew one or more of charged items. This button is found in the Charged Items section of the Patron Information page. If the Patron Self-Renewal feature is not activated, this column will not display (see [Patron\\_Info\\_Page\\_Stanza](#) on [page 3-125](#) for more information about activating this feature). Enter the information you want to display on this button after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable button, *Renew Items* will be used as the default.

## **ResetButton**

The *ResetButton* controls the text that displays on two button on the Patron Information page: the reset button in the Charged Items section and the reset button in the Request Information section. Enter the information you want to display on these buttons after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable button, *Reset* will be used as the default.

## **Ref\_Page Stanza**

The first six variables of the [Ref\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body\\_Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables. The *History*, *Note*, *Search\_Also\_Under*, *Search\_Under* and *Reference\_Information* variables control different pieces of text that display on the Reference page depending on the kind of scope note that is associated with a heading. The information entered after these variables will be used as text labels or headers. The information entered after the *History* variable will be used when the 665 scope note tag is associated with a heading. The information entered after the *Note* variable will be used when the 666 or 680 tag is associated with a heading. The information entered after the *Search\_Also\_Under* variable will be used when the 360 or 663 scope note tag is associated with a heading. The information entered after the *Search\_Under* variable will be used when the 260 or 664 scope note tag is associated with a heading. If nothing is entered after these variables, the following defaults will be used: *History*, *Note*, *Search Also Under*, *Search Under*, *Reference Info*.

## **Request\_Page Stanza**

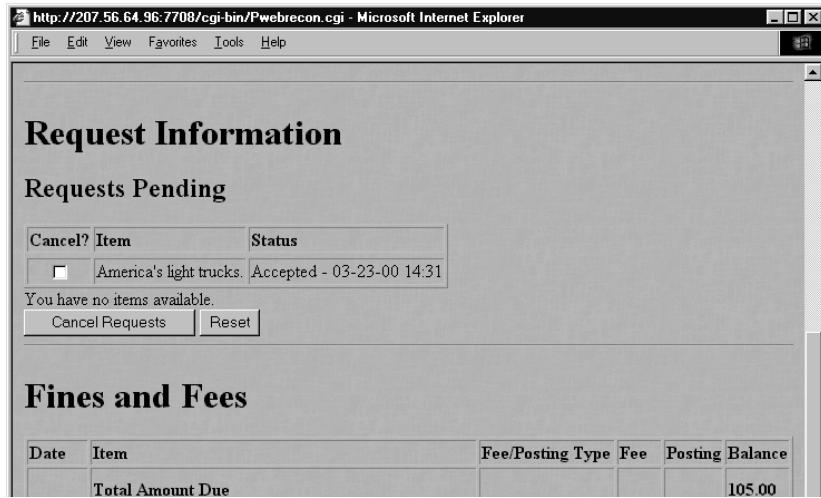
The first six variables of the [Request\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body\\_Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

### **BackToRecord**

The *BackToRecord* variable controls the pop-up text that will appear over the “Back to Record” button on the screen that appears after a request has been submitted and confirmed. Enter the information that you want to display as a pop-up after the *BackToRecord* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Back to full record display* will be used as the default.

### **CallSlipStatusCodes Stanza**

After a patron has placed a call slip request, that patron can view the status of the call slip request, as well as the date and time when the status was applied, from the Patron Information screen in WebVoyage. The statuses of call slip requests that have not been filled display in the Status column in the Requests Pending subheading of the Request Information section (as shown below; see [Requests Pending](#) on [page 7-68](#) for more information about the Requests Pending subheading). If a call slip request has been processed and Filled by a Call Slip operator, the Title of the requested item and the status of Filled will NOT display on the Requests Pending subheading of the Request Information section. Rather, the Title of the item, the date after which the item is no longer available (Expires), and the Pickup Location of the item display on the Items Available subheading. If your library charges the item when the call slip request is Filled, the item displays on the Charged Items section in addition to displaying on the Items Available subheading. The [CallSlipStatusCodes] stanza of the opac.ini file determines how the statuses of call slip requests display on the Patron Information screen in WebVoyage.



**Figure 3-43.** Patron Information window in WebVoyáge: Call Slip request statuses displayed

The following [CallSlipStatusCodes] stanza is the default stanza distributed with the generic opac.ini file that remains effective unless it is manually altered. In addition, this default remains effective even if the [CallSlipStatusCodes] stanza has not been entered in the opac.ini file.

```
[CallSlipStatusCodes]
1=Accepted
2=Printed
3=Filled
4=Not Filled
5=Expired
6=Cancelled
7=Error
```

**Figure 3-44.** [CallSlipStatusCodes] stanza of the opac.ini file

## Editing the [CallSlipStatusCodes] Stanza

**1=**

This status code is used if a call slip request has been placed by a patron but has not been viewed or processed by a Call Slip operator. After the “1=” variable, enter the status of such a call slip request as you would like it to be seen by the patron in WebVoyage. If you do not enter anything after the “1=” variable, the default status of “Accepted” will display in WebVoyage.

**2=**

This status code is used if a call slip request has been viewed by a Call Slip operator but has not yet been processed. After the “2=” variable, enter the status of such a call slip request as you would like it to be seen by the patron in WebVoyage. If you do not enter anything after the “2=” variable, the default status of “Printed” will display in WebVoyage.

**3=**

When a Call Slip operator directs a request to another Call Slip Queue before it has been processed, the request will appear in WebVoyage with a reassigned (3) status.

The 3= variable of the [CallSlipStatusCodes] stanza of the opac.ini file controls the reassigned status text display in WebVoyage (This status code is no longer n/a). You can only change the text of the 3= variable (it's function remains to report a status code of reassigned).

**4=**

This status code is used if a call slip request has been processed but not filled by a Call Slip operator. After the “4=” variable, enter the status of such a call slip request as you would like it to be seen by the patron in WebVoyage. The particular No fill reason that was chosen by the Call Slip operator will also display beside the status in WebVoyage. If you do not enter anything after the “4=” variable, the default status of “Not Filled” will display in WebVoyage.

**5=**

This status code is used if a call slip request that has not been processed has surpassed the expiration period as defined in System Administration. After the “5=” variable, enter the status of such a call slip request as you would like it to be seen by the patron in WebVoyage. If you do not enter anything after the “5=” variable, the default status of “Expired” will display in WebVoyage.

---

See “Call Slip Definitions” in the Configuring Your System section of the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide* for more information about call slip request expiration period.

**6=**

This status code is not functioning in the current release.

**7=**

This status code is used if an error has occurred during the processing of a call slip request. After the “7=” variable, enter the status of such a call slip request as you would like it to be seen by the patron in WebVoyáge. If you do not enter anything after the “7=” variable, the default status of “Error” will display in WebVoyáge.

### **Request Dialogs Stanza**

The [Request Dialogs] stanza of the opac.ini file allows you to define all of the labels that appear on the different varieties of WebVoyáge request forms. In fact, because all of the variables in the [Request Dialogs] stanza do not have default values, you must define each label if you want that label to display on the WebVoyáge request form. The following is an example of what a [Request Dialogs] stanza might look like in the opac.ini file:

```
[Request Dialogs]
Generic_Title=Opac Request:
Field1=Author:
Field2=Title:
Field3=
Field4=Publisher:
Field5=Date:
Field6=Edition:
Field7=
BibInfo=Bib Info:
Select_New_Date=Select New Reservation Date
Comment=Comment:
Instructions=Instructions:
PickUp=Pick Up At:
NotNeededAfter=Not Needed After:
Days=Day(s)
Title=Title:
Title_Short_Loan=Opac Request: Short Loan Reservation
Copy_Info=Copy Information:
Check_Item_Avail=Check Item Availability
Submit=Submit Request
Reset=Clear Form
PatronInfo=Patron Info:
Database=Database:
BibInfo=Bib Info:
CallSlipPick>Select an item:
CallSlipSpecify=Specify an issue:
AnyCopy=Any Copy
AnyCopyAt=Any Copy At:
Note=Note:
```

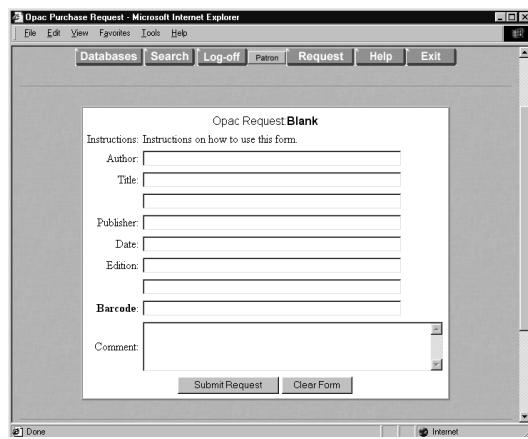
---

Figure 3-45. Sample [Request\_Dialog] Stanza

---

The *Field1*, *Field2*, *Field3*, *Field4*, *Field5*, *Field6*, and *Field7* variables correspond directly to the labels that will display beside the fields on all blank form requests that display in WebVoyage. The following is an example of a blank form request in WebVoyage.

---



---

**Figure 3-46. Example of blank form request in WebVoyage (GETME)**

### **Generic\_Title**

The information entered after the *Generic\_Title=* variable will precede the actual title in the first row of every form. This allows you to use a common title that will appear on every form in addition to the specific name of the form. For example, if you wanted the title of each form to read *WebVoyage Request: [form title]* (i.e., so that the title of the Hold form would read *WebVoyage Request: Hold Form*), you would enter *WebVoyage Request:* after the *Generic\_Title=* variable (*Generic\_Title=WebVoyage Request:*). If nothing is entered after the *Generic\_Title=* variable, the common title will read *OPAC Request*.

### **Field1**

The information entered after the *Field1=* variable will display as the label beside the first field on all blank form requests (WebVoyage Purchase Request, etc.). For example, if you wanted *Author:* to display as the label beside the first field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Author:* after the *Field1=* variable (*Field1=Author:*). If nothing is entered after the *Field1=* variable, no label will display beside the first field on all blank form requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about blank form requests.

## **Field2**

The information entered after the *Field2=* variable will display as the label beside the second field on all blank form requests (WebVoyage Purchase Request, etc.). For example, if you wanted *Title:* to display as the label beside the second field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Title:* after the *Field2=* variable (*Field2=Title:*). If nothing is entered after the *Field2=* variable, no label will display beside the second field on all blank form requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about blank form requests.

## **Field3**

The information entered after the *Field3=* variable will display as the label beside the third field on all blank form requests (WebVoyage Purchase Request, etc.). For example, if you wanted *Number:* to display as the label beside the third field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Number:* after the *Field3=* variable (*Field3=Number:*). If nothing is entered after the *Field3=* variable, no label will display beside the third field on all blank form requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about blank form requests.

## **Field4**

The information entered after the *Field4=* variable will display as the label beside the fourth field on all blank form requests (WebVoyage Purchase Request, etc.). For example, if you wanted *Publisher:* to display as the label beside the fourth field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Publisher:* after the *Field4=* variable (*Field4=Publisher:*). If nothing is entered after the *Field4=* variable, no label will display beside the fourth field on all blank form requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about blank form requests.

## **Field5**

The information entered after the *Field5=* variable will display as the label beside the fifth field on all blank form requests (WebVoyage Purchase Request, etc.). For example, if you wanted *Date:* to display as the label beside the fifth field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Date:* after the *Field5=* variable (*Field5=Date:*). If nothing is entered after the *Field5=* variable, no label will display beside the fifth field on all blank form requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about blank form requests.

## **Field6**

The information entered after the *Field6=* variable will display as the label beside the sixth field on all blank form requests (WebVoyage Purchase Request, etc.). For example, if you wanted *Edition:* to display as the label beside the sixth field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Edition:* after the *Field6=* variable

---

(Field6=Edition:). If nothing is entered after the *Field6=* variable, no label will display beside the sixth field on all blank form requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about blank form requests.

### Field7

The information entered after the *Field7=* variable will display as the label beside the seventh field on all blank form requests (WebVoyage Purchase Request, etc.). For example, if you wanted *Your Email Address:* to display as the label beside the seventh field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Your Email Address:* after the *Field7=* variable (Field7=Your Email Address:). If nothing is entered after the *Field7=* variable, no label will display beside the seventh field on all blank form requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about blank form requests.

### BibInfo

The information entered after the *BibInfo=* variable will display as the label beside the field on all bib level requests that contain an item's bibliographic information. For example, if you wanted *Bib Info:* to display as the label beside the bibliographic information field on all bib level requests, you would enter *Bib Info:* after the *BibInfo=* variable (BibInfo=Bib Info:). If nothing is entered after the *BibInfo=* variable, no label will display beside the bibliographic information field on all bib level requests. This bibliographic information field is located below the Title and Instructions fields on all bib level requests. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about bib level requests.

---

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Internet Explorer window with the title "Opac Request Form - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The main content area is titled "Opac Request: Bib Level Request". It contains several input fields and text areas. The "Title" field has the value "America's light trucks.". The "Instructions" field contains the text "Other Author(s) Motor Vehicle Manufacturers Association of the United States." Below these, there is a large text area containing bibliographic details: "Title: America's light trucks.", "Primary Material: Book", "Subject(s): Trucks--United States", "Motor vehicles--United States", "Publisher: [Detroit, Mich.: Motor Vehicles Manufacturer's Association of the United States], 1986.", "Description: 36 p. : col. ill. ; 28 cm.", "Notes: Cover title", and "Call Number: TL230 .A523". At the bottom of the form, there is a "Bib Info:" label followed by two empty lines for input.

---

**Figure 3-47. Example of a bib level request, including Bib Info field**

## **Patron Info**

The information entered after the *PatronInfo=* variable will display as a label on the e-mail message generated when a patron submits Blank Form or Bib Level requests. For example, if you wanted *Patron Information:* to display as the label on an e-mail message generated from a bib level request, you would enter *Patron Information:* after the *PatronInfo=* variable (*PatronInfo=Patron Information:*). If nothing is entered after the *PatronInfo=* variable, the label will default to *Patron Info*. The patron's name and telephone number will appear in the e-mail message following the *Patron Info* label. See "OPAC Request Forms" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about bib level requests.

## **Database**

The information entered after the *Database=* variable will display as a label on the e-mail message generated when a patron submits Blank Form or Bib Level requests. For example, if you wanted *Database:* to display as the label on an e-mail message generated from a bib level request, you would enter *Database:* after the *Database=* variable (*Database=Database:*). If nothing is entered after the *Database=* variable, the label will default to *Database*. If a patron performs a simultaneous search, displays the bib record for an item in a remote database, and then submits a bib level request for the item, the name of the database will appear in the e-mail message after the *Database:* label. See "OPAC Request Forms" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about bib level requests.

## **Select\_New\_Date**

The information entered after the *Select\_New\_Date=* variable will display as the label beside the reservation date field on the short loan request form. For example, if you wanted *Select Reservation Date:* to display as the label beside the first field on all blank form requests, you would enter *Select Reservation Date:* after the *Select\_New\_Date=* variable (*Select\_New\_Date=Select Reservation Date:*). If nothing is entered after the *Select\_New\_Date=* variable, *Select New Reservation Date* will display as the title of the Reservation Date field.

## **Comment**

The Comment field displays on all blank form requests, all bib level requests, all item level requests, and three system level requests: Call Slip request, Hold request, and Recall request. The information entered after the *Comment=* variable will display as the label beside the field in which patrons can enter any additional comments on the above mentioned requests. For example, if you wanted *Comments:* to display as the label beside the field in which patrons can enter any additional comments, you would enter *Comment:* after the *Comment=* variable (*Comment=Comment:*). If nothing is entered after the *Comment=*

---

variable, no label will display beside the field in which patrons can enter any additional comments. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about WebVoyage requests.

### **Instructions**

The Instructions field displays on all bib level requests, all item level requests, and two system level requests: Call Slip request and Remote requests (if your library uses an Automatic Retrieval System). The information entered after the *Instructions=* variable will display as the label beside the instructions field on the above mentioned requests. For example, if you wanted *Instructions:* to display as the label beside the instructions field, you would enter *Instructions:* after the *Instructions=* variable (*Instructions=Instructions:*). If nothing is entered after the *Instructions=* variable, no label will display beside the instructions field. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about WebVoyage requests.

### **PickUp**

The pick up location field displays on all bib level requests and two system level requests: Hold request and Recall request. The information entered after the *Pickup=* variable will display as the label beside the field that contains the locations at which patrons can pick up their requests. For example, if you wanted *Pick Up At:* to display as the label beside the pickup location field, you would enter *Pick Up At:* after the *PickUp=* variable (*PickUp=Pick Up At:*). If nothing is entered after the *PickUp=* variable, no label will display beside the pickup location field. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about WebVoyage requests. See "Circulation Policy Definitions" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about pickup locations.

### **NotNeededAfter**

The NotNeededAfter field displays on all bib level requests and two system level requests: Hold request and Recall request. The information entered after the *NotNeededAfter=* variable will display as the label beside the field that specifies the date after which the requested item is no longer needed by the patron. For example, if you wanted *Not Needed After:* to display as the label beside the field that specifies the date after which the requested item is no longer needed by the patron, you would enter *Not Needed After:* after the *NotNeededAfter=* variable (*NotNeededAfter=Not Needed After:*). If nothing is entered after the *NotNeededAfter=* variable, no label will display beside the field that specifies the date after which the requested item is no longer needed by the patron. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about WebVoyage requests.

## **Days**

The information entered after the *Days=* variable will display as the units for the Not Needed After value. This label displays on the Hold, Recall, Bib Level, ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy, BibU and Index New Zealand requests. For example, if you wanted *Days* to display as the label beside the Not Needed After value, you would enter *Days* after the *Days=* variable (*Days=Days*). If nothing is entered after the *Days=* variable, the label will default to *Day(s)*.

## **Title**

The Title field displays on all bib level requests, all item level requests, and four system level requests: Call Slip request, Remote Request, Hold request, and Recall request. The information entered after the *Title=* variable will display as the label beside the field in which the title of the requested item displays. For example, if you wanted "Title:" to display as the label, you would enter *Title:* after the *Title=* variable (*Title=Title:*). If nothing is entered after the *Title=* variable, no label will display beside the field in which the title of the requested item displays. See "OPAC Request Forms" in the OPAC Configuration section of the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about WebVoyage requests.

## **Title\_Short\_Loan**

The *Title\_Short\_Loan* variable controls the text header that displays at the very top of the first table on the Short Loan Request page. This information can act as a title for the request form. Enter the information that you want to display title for the Short Loan Request form after the *Title\_Short\_Loan* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Opac Request: Short Loan Reservation* will be used as the default.

## **Copy\_Info**

The information entered after the *Copy\_Info=* variable will display next to the copy selection drop-down on the Short Loan request form. For example, if you wanted *Copy Number* to display as the label beside the copy selection drop-down, you would enter *Copy Number* after the *Copy\_Info=* variable (*Copy\_Info=Copy Number*). If nothing is entered after the *Copy\_Info=* variable, the label will default to *Copy Information:*.

## **Check\_Item\_Avail**

The information entered after the *Check\_Item\_Avail=* variable will display on the button on the Short Loan request form that will manually check the database for available times on the selected date. For example, if you wanted *Check Item Availability* to display as the label beside the Not Needed After value, you would

---

enter *Check Item Availability* after the *Check\_Item\_Avail=* variable (*Check\_Item\_Avail=Check Item Availability*). If nothing is entered after the *Check\_Item\_Avail=* variable, the label will default to *Check Item Availability*.

### **Submit**

The Submit button displays on all request forms. The information entered after the *Submit=* variable will display as the name on this button. For example, if you wanted the button to be called "Submit Request", you would enter *Submit Request* after the *Submit=* variable (*Submit=Submit Request*). If nothing is entered after the *Submit=* variable, "Submit" will be used as the default.

### **Reset**

The Reset button displays on all request forms. The information entered after the *Reset=* variable will display as the name on this button. For example, if you wanted the button to be called "Clear Form", you would enter *Clear Form* after the *Reset=* variable (*Reset=Clear Form*). If nothing is entered after the *Reset=* variable, "Reset" will be used as the default.

### **CallSlipPick**

If the "Call Slip Item Required" check box on the OPAC Miscellaneous Definitions dialog box in the System Administration module is NOT checked, when a patron initiates a call slip request in WebVoyage, two radio buttons will appear on the call slip request dialog box. Clicking the upper radio button specifies that information on the item selected in the drop-down list will be submitted along with the request. Clicking the lower radio button specifies that the information on the item that the patron enters into the fields will be submitted along with the request. The information entered after the *CallSlipPick=* variable will display as the caption beside the left radio button. See [CallSlipSpecify](#) for information about the right radio button. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about the "Call Slip Item Required" check box. See [Editing the Call Slip Request Screen](#) on [page 2-128](#) of this user's guide for more information about the call slip request form in WebVoyage.

### **CallSlipSpecify**

If the "Call Slip Item Required" check box on the OPAC Miscellaneous Definitions dialog box in the System Administration module is NOT checked, when a patron initiates a call slip request in WebVoyage, two radio buttons will appear on the call slip request dialog box. The left radio button should be clicked to select from the list of available items. The right radio button should be clicked to expose a form with which the patron may specify the information associated with an item not found in the available items list. The information entered after the *CallSlipSpecify=* variable will display as the caption beside the right radio button. See [CallSlipPick](#) for information about the left radio button. See the *Voyager System Administration*

*User's Guide* for more information about the "Call Slip Item Required" check box. See [Editing the Call Slip Request Screen](#) on page 2-128 of this user's guide for more information about the call slip request form in WebVoyage.

### AnyCopy

The information entered after the *AnyCopy*= variable will display on a Hold request in WebVoyage as the label beside the radio button that a patron would select to obtain any copy of the item at any location. For example, if you wanted *Any Copy at Any Location*: to display as the label beside this radio button, you would enter *Any Copy at Any Location*: after the *AnyCopy*= variable (*AnyCopy*=*Any Copy at Any Location*:). If nothing is entered after the *AnyCopy*= variable, no label will display beside the radio button that a patron would select to obtain any copy of the item at any location. See the Patron Initiated Request section of the *WebVoyage User's Guide* for more information about the Hold request form.

### AnyCopyAt

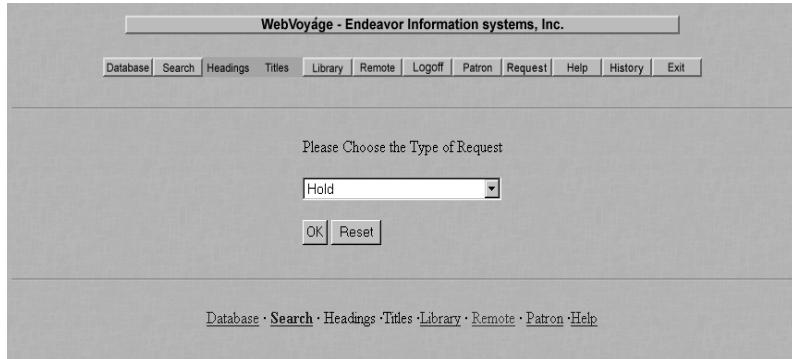
The information entered after the *AnyCopyAt*= variable will display on a Hold request in WebVoyage as the label beside the radio button that a patron would select to choose the item's specific location. For example, if you wanted *Any Copy At*: to display as the label beside this radio button, you would enter *Any Copy At*: after the *AnyCopyAt*= variable (*AnyCopyAt*=*Any Copy At*:). If nothing is entered after the *AnyCopyAt*= variable, no label will display beside this radio button. See the Patron Initiated Request section of the *WebVoyage User's Guide* for more information about the Hold request form.

### Note

The Note field displays below the Client Name field on the NLNZ BibU and the Index New Zealand request forms in WebVoyage. The information entered after the *Note*= variable will display as the label for this field on the request forms. This field will be used by both the NLNZ BibU and the Index New Zealand request forms. For example, if you wanted *Note*: to display as the label for the Note field, you would enter *Note*: after the *Note*= variable (*Note*=*Note*:). If nothing is entered after the *Note*= variable, no heading will display over the end time list.

## Request\_Select\_Page Stanza

The first six variables of the [Request\_Select\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [HelpLocation Stanza](#) on page 3-10 for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.



**Figure 3-48. Example of Request Select Page**

### **Available**

The *Available* variable controls the text that displays beside the system-defined requests in the request drop-down menu. The number of currently available requests for a specific request type will display beside this text. For example, if a patron was allowed 12 more call slip requests, and *available* was entered after the *Available* variable, "12 available" would display beside the call slip request option in the drop-down menu.

### **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* controls the text that displays on the button that patrons press to display the request form for the request type of request that they have selected to place. Enter the information that you want to display on this button after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after this button, *OK* will be used as the default.

### **ResetButton**

The *ResetButton* controls the text that displays on the button that patrons press to reset (or de-select) the type of request that they have selected to place. Enter the information that you want to display on this button after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after this button, *Reset* will be used as the default.

## Request\_ShortLoan\_Page Stanza

The first six variables of the [Request\_ShortLoan\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [HelpLocation Stanza](#) on page 3-10 for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

---

The screenshot shows a web-based form titled "Opac Request:Short Loan Reservation". It contains several input fields and dropdown menus:

- Instructions: Please select only one item
- Title: The diamond tree : Jewish tales from around the world / selected and retold...
- Barcode: (empty input field)
- Select New Reservation Date: 11-08-99 (dropdown menu)
- Pick Up At: Cardiff Short Loan Desk (dropdown menu)
- Buttons: Check Item Availability, Clear Form

Below this is a table with two rows:

Selected Reservation Date	Date
Start Time	End Time

Buttons at the bottom of the table include Back to Record and Clear Form.

---

Figure 3-49. Example of Short Loan Request Page

### TableBackgroundColor

The *TableBackgroundColor* variable controls the background color of the tables on the Short Loan Request page. The background of the tables is the header bar at the top of the tables and the footer bar containing the buttons at the bottom of the tables. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *TableBackgroundColor=* variable to configure the background color of the tables. For example, if you wanted to make the background color white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *TableBackgroundColor=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *TableBackgroundColor* variable, *990000* will be used as the default.

### TableForegroundColor

The *TableForegroundColor* variable controls the foreground color of the tables on the Short Loan Request page. The foreground of the tables is contained between the header bar at the top of the tables and the footer bar containing the buttons at the bottom of the tables. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *TableForegroundColor=* variable to configure the foreground color of the tables. For example, if you wanted to make the foreground color white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *TableForegroundColor=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *TableForegroundColor* variable, *CCCCFF* will be used as the default.

---

### **TableFontColor**

The *TableFontColor* variable controls the color of the text in the header bars at the top of the tables on the Short Loan Request page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *TableFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the font in the header bars of the tables. For example, if you wanted to make the font color white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *TableFontColor=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *TableFontColor* variable, *FFFFFF* will be used as the default.

### **SelectedReservationDate**

The *SelectedReservationDate* variable controls the text on the left side of the header of the second table on the Short Loan Request page. This header displays above where patrons select the start time for their short loan. Enter the information that you want to display as the text header after the *SelectedReservationDate* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Selected Reservation Date* will be used as the default.

### **Date**

The *Date* variable controls the text on the right side of the header of the second table on the Short Loan Request page. This header displays above where patrons select the end time for their short loan. Enter the information that you want to display as the text header after the *Date* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Date* will be used as the default.

### **StartTime**

The *StartTime* variable controls the text label that displays above the field from which patrons select the start time of their short loan. Enter the information that you want to display as the text label after the *StartTime* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Start Time* will be used as the default.

### **EndTime**

The *EndTime* variable controls the text label that displays above the field from which patrons select the end time of their short loan. Enter the information that you want to display as the text label after the *EndTime* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *End Time* will be used as the default.

### **BackToRecord**

The *BackToRecord* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that displays when the mouse is held over the Back to Record button (the button that sends a patron back to the record display). This button can be found on the lower left side

of the second table on the Short Loan Request page. Enter the information that you want to display as the alternate text after the *BackToRecord* variable. If nothing is entered after this variable, *Back To Record* will be used as the default.

### Search\_History\_Page Stanza

The first six variables of the [Search\_History\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [HelpLocation Stanza](#) on [page 3-10](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

---

Edit	Hits	Search Type	Searched For
1	1	Builder	(France)[in Keyword Anywhere] AND (museums)[in Title]
2	0	Command	'american poetry' AND surrealism
3	8	Keyword	automobiles
4	5	Author	shakespeare

---

**Figure 3-50. Example of Search History Page**

### TableColor

The *TableColor* variable controls the background color of the table on the Search History search page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *TableColor=* variable to configure the background color of the table on the Search History search page. For example, if you wanted to make the table appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *TableColor=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *TableColor* variable, the color of the table will default to the information that is entered after the *BGCColor* variable in the [Html-Body] stanza. If nothing is entered after the *BGColor* variable in the [Html\_Body] stanza, *ffffff* (white) will be used.

### TableText

The *TableText* variable controls the color of the text in the table on the Search History search page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *TableText=* variable to configure the color of the text in the table on the Search History search page. For example,

---

if you wanted to make the text appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *TableText*= variable (*TableText=ffffff*). If nothing is entered after the *TableText* variable, *ffffff* (white) will be used as the default.

### **Browse\_Simul**

The *Browse\_Simul* variable controls the entry that will be used in the Hits column (the second column of the table) on the Search History page if the search performed was a browse or simultaneous search. Enter the text that you want to display in the Hits column for browse or simultaneous searches after the *Browse\_Simul* variable. For example, if you wanted “Browse or Simul” to appear in the Hits column, you would have to enter “Browse or Simul” after the *Browse\_Simul* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Browse\_Simul* variable, “Browse/Simul” will be used as the default.

### **Edit**

The *Edit* variable controls the text header of the first column of the table on the Search History page. The first column displays the chronological number associated with each search. For example, the first search a patron conducted would have the number “1” in this column. Enter the text that you want to display as the header of the first column after the *Edit* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Edit* variable, “Edit” will be used as the default.

### **Hits**

The *Hits* variable controls the text header of the second column of the table on the Search History page. The second column displays the number of hits that resulted from each search listed on the Search History page. Enter the text that you want to display as the header of the second column after the *Hits* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Hits* variable, “Hits” will be used as the default.

### **SearchType**

The *SearchType* variable controls the text header of the third column of the table on the Search History page. The third column displays the type of each search that was conducted (Keyword, Builder, Author, etc.). Enter the text that you want to display as the header of the third column after the *SearchType* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SearchType* variable, “Search Type” will be used as the default.

## SearchFor

The *SearchFor* variable controls the text header of the fourth column of the table on the Search History page. The fourth column displays the terms that were searched for. Enter the text that you want to display as the header of the fourth column after the *SearchFor* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SearchFor* variable, "Searched For" will be used as the default.

## Sim\_Search\_Page Stanza

The first six variables of the [Sim\_Search\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [HelpLocation Stanza](#) on [page 3-10](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

## TableColor

The *TableColor* variable controls the background color of the table on the Simultaneous Search page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *TableColor=* variable to configure the background color of the table. For example, if you wanted to make the table appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *TableColor=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *TableColor* variable, the color of the table will default to the information that is entered after the *BGCColor* variable in the [Html-Body] stanza. If nothing is entered after the *BGColor* variable in the [Html\_Body] stanza, *ffffff* (white) will be used.

## TableText

The *TableText* variable controls the color of the text in the table on the Simultaneous Search page. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *TableText=* variable to configure the color of the text in the table on the Simultaneous Search page. For example, if you wanted to make the text appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *TableText=* variable (*TableText=ffffff*). If nothing is entered after the *TableText* variable, *ffffff* (white) will be used as the default.

## Simultaneous\_Searching

The *Simultaneous\_Searching* variable controls the header of the table on the Simultaneous Search screen. This header displays above the list of databases and the search results. Enter the information that you want to display as the header after the *Simultaneous\_Searching* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Simultaneous\_Searching* variable, *Simultaneous Searching* will be used as the default.

---

### **Database\_Name**

The *Database\_Name* variable controls the column header that appears on the left side of the table on the Simultaneous Search page. This header displays above the column that lists the databases being connected to. Enter the information that you want to display as the left column header after the *Database\_Name* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Database\_Name* variable, *Database Name* will be used as the default.

### **Search\_Status**

The *Search\_Status* variable controls the column header that appears on the right side of the table on the Simultaneous Search page. This header displays above the column that lists the results of searching on each database. Enter the information that you want to display as the right column header after the *Search\_Status* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Search\_Status* variable, *Search Status* will be used as the default.

### **Stop**

The *Stop* variable controls the text for the hyperlink that will cause any ongoing searches to end on the Simultaneous Search page. This link appears below the Database Name column in the table. Enter the information that you want to make the hypertext link after the *Stop* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Stop* variable, *Stop* will be used as the default.

### **Show**

The *Show* variable controls the text for the hyperlink that appears on the Simultaneous Search page. The *Show* hyperlink will cause the search results currently received to display in the Titles List or Headings List page. Note that clicking the *Show* link will cause any ongoing searches to end. This link appears below the Search Status column in the table. Enter the information that you want to make the hypertext link after the *Show* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Show* variable, *Show* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_Searching**

The *Status\_Searching* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page while searching is ongoing for a particular database. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each database as it is being searched. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_Searching* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_Searching* variable, *Searching...* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_Receiving**

The *Status\_Receiving* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when records are being received from a particular database. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each database while records are still being sent. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_Receiving* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_Receiving* variable, *Receiving: %s% of %s* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_DBFail**

The *Status\_DBFail* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a connection cannot be established to a particular database. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each database that cannot be searched. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_DBFail* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_DBFail* variable, *Database Failure* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_SearchFail**

The *Status\_SearchFail* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a search fails on a particular database. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each search that fails. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_SearchFail* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_SearchFail* variable, *Search Failed* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_SearchIncompatible**

The *Status\_SearchIncompatible* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a search is not the proper type for a particular database. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each search that is of the improper type. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_SearchIncompatible* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_SearchIncompatible* variable, *Search Incompatible* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_SearchDone**

The *Status\_SearchDone* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when the search has been completed and all records downloaded for a particular database. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each search that is completed. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_SearchDone* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_SearchDone* variable, *Done: %s Records* will be used as the default.

---

### **Status\_DBReset**

The *Status\_DBReset* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a particular database is resetting itself. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each database that resets. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_DBReset* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_DBReset* variable, *Database Resetting* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_DBVersion**

The *Status\_DBVersion* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a particular database is a version that is incompatible with your system. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each database that is incompatible. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_DBVersion* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_DBVersion* variable, *Database Version Incompatible* will be used as the default.

### **Status\_DBLicense**

The *Status\_DBLicense* variable controls the text that will display on the Simultaneous Search page when a particular database cannot be searched because of license restrictions. This text appears in the Search Status column in the table for each database that cannot be searched. Enter the description that you want to display in the Search Status column after the *Status\_DBLicense* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Status\_DBLicense* variable, *Database License Block* will be used as the default.

## **Title\_Page Stanza**

The variables in the Title\_Page stanza are grouped into the following categories: Page Appearance, Button Text/Alt Text, Hot Links, Labels, Page Layout, Titles' Availability, and Item Statuses.

### **Page Appearance**

The first six variables of the [Title\_Page] stanza work the same as the variables within the [Html\_Body] stanza. See [Html\\_Body Stanza](#) on [page 2-5](#) for explanations of the *Background*, *Text*, *BGCOLOR*, *LINK*, *VLINK*, and *ALINK* variables.

### **ActiveFontColor**

The *ActiveFontColor* variable controls the color of the text in the Simple Search block. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable to configure the color of the text that appears on the active tab. For example, if you wanted to make the descriptive text white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveFontColor=* variable (*ActiveFontColor=ffffff*).

### **ActiveTabColor**

The *ActiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the upper portion of the Simple Search block. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable to configure the background color of the tab. For example, if you wanted to make the background of the tab white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *ActiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

### **InactiveTabColor**

The *InactiveTabColor* variable controls the color of the lower portion of the Simple Search block. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable to configure the color of the tab when it is inactive and the lower portion of the search block when it is active. For example, if you wanted to make the Boolean Search tab appear white when inactive you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *InactiveTabColor=* variable (*ActiveTabColor=ffffff*).

## **Button Text/Alt Text**

### **SubmitButton**

The *SubmitButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to submit or activate their search in the Simple Search block. Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Submit” button after the *SubmitButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Search”, you would enter *Search* after the *SubmitButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SubmitButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Submit*.

### **ClearButton**

The *ClearButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button that patrons press to clear all of the information that they have searched for in order to ensure a successful new search. The “Clear” button only displays after a search that found no results has been performed (otherwise, the “Reset” button will appear in place of the “Clear” button; see [ResetButton](#) below). Enter the text that you want

---

to appear on the “Clear” button after the *ClearButton*= variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Clear”, you would enter *Clear* after the *ClearButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ClearButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Clear Selected*.

### **ResetButton**

The *ResetButton* variable controls the text that appears on the button in the Simple Search block that patrons press to clear all of the free-text fields and reset all of the drop-down menus to their default selections (if you have conducted a search that did not find results, the “Clear” button will appear in place of the “Reset” button; see [ClearButton](#) above). Enter the text that you want to appear on the “Reset” button after the *ResetButton*= variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be “Reset”, you would enter *Reset* after the *ResetButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ResetButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Reset*.

### **ThumbnailAltText**

The *ThumbnailAltText* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that displays when the mouse is held over non-scandoc thumbnail images in the last column of the Title Page search results table. Enter the information that you want to display as the alternate text for thumbnail images after the *ThumbnailAltText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ThumbnailAltText* variable, “Thumbnail Image” will be used as the default. See [Thumbnails Stanza](#) on [page 3-7](#) for more extensive information about thumbnails in WebVoyáge.

### **ScandocAltText**

The *ScandocAltText* variable controls the alternate text (pop-up text) that displays when the mouse is held over scandoc (Image Server) thumbnail image in the last column of the Title Page search results table. Enter the information that you want to display as the alternate text for scandoc (Image Server) thumbnail images after the *ScandocAltText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ScandocAltText* variable, “Scandoc Image” will be used as the default. See [Thumbnails Stanza](#) on [page 3-7](#) for more extensive information about thumbnails in WebVoyáge. See [ScanDoc](#) on [page 3-12](#) for information about ScanDoc.

## Hot Links

### **HotLink\_...** Variables

The **HotLink\_...** variables control which fields in the titles list on the Title page that will be used as hotlinks. The following variables are used:

**Table 3-15. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Description
HotLink_#	# (Row number) column
HotLink_0	Column 2 (generally Mfhd Call No.)
HotLink_1	Column 2 (generally Title)
HotLink_2	Column 3 (generally Author)
Hotlink_3	Column 4 (generally Date)

**NOTE:**

The HotLink\_0, 1, 2, and 3 variables do not represent specific types of data - each variable refers to a particular column, no matter what is in the column.

**Table 3-16. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Description
HotLink_CallNumber	Call Number (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_Location	Library Location (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_MultipleHoldings	"Title has multiple holdings" message (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_NoHoldings	"No Holdings Available" message (appears in bottom half of record)

**NOTE:**

A record will only display the item location **or** the "No Holdings" message **or** the "Multiple Holdings" message. This means that, of the **HotLink\_Location**, **HotLink\_NoHoldings**, and **HotLink\_MultipleHoldings** variables, only one will be in use for a record at a particular time.

**Table 3-17. Hotlink Variables**

Variable	Description
HotLink_Status	Item Status (appears in bottom half of record)
HotLink_Thumbnail	Last column (Thumbnail images)

---

After each variable, enter Y to indicate that this field in the titles list is to be a hyperlink to the record display page for that record. Enter N to prevent this field from being used as a link.

## Labels

#

The # variable controls the header of the first column in the Title Page search results table. This column lists the chronological order of the headings found as a result of the search as well as any note or reference links that are associated with the headings. Enter the text that you want to display as the header of the first column of the Title Page search results table after the # variable. For example, if you wanted the header of the first column to be "Result #", you would enter *Result #* after the # variable. If nothing is entered after the # variable, # will be used as the default.

## Leading#Text and Trailing#Text

The *Leading#Text* and *Trailing#Text* variables allow you to make the hypertext link connected to the number in the # column larger. This is done by specifying extra characters that will display before and after each record number that appears in the # column. These characters simply appear onscreen in order to allow the hypertext link to be much larger than the single digits that sometimes appear in this column. Enter the text to appear before the number after the *Leading#Text* variable; enter the text to appear after the number after the *Trailing#Text* variable. Entering a pipe ("|") after the variable will cause a space to appear onscreen. (Entering spaces after the variable will not cause spaces to appear onscreen.)

## RetainButton

The *RetainButton* variable controls the label on the button that the user clicks to save selected titles from any page of the search results that are to be printed or emailed at a later time. Enter the text that you want to appear on the "Retain" button after the *RetainButton=* variable. For example, if you wanted the text on the button to be "Retain Selected", you would enter *Retain Selected* after the *RetainButton* variable. If nothing is entered after the *RetainButton* variable, the text on the button will default to *Retain Selected*.

## SelectedRecsAllPages

This variable has been moved to the [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza.

### **PostSortMenuLabel**

The *PostSortMenuLabel* variable controls the label that will appear next to the post-search sort drop-down field on the Title List page. Enter the description that you want to display preceding the sort drop-down (when it is displayed). For example, if you wanted the label to be "Sort By:", you would enter *Sort By:* after the *PostSortMenuLabel* variable. If nothing is entered after the *PostSortMenuLabel* variable, *Sort By:* will be used.

### **Title**

The *Title* variable controls the description that will specify sorting by title in the post-search sort drop-down field on the Title List page. This text appears first in the drop-down list and will cause the search results to be sorted by title. Enter the description that you want to display in the sort drop-down (when it is displayed). For example, if you wanted the description to be "Title", you would enter *Title* after the *Title* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Title* variable, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list.

### **Author**

The *Author* variable controls the description that will specify sorting by author in the post-search sort drop-down field on the Title List page. This text appears second in the drop-down list and will cause the search results to be sorted by author. Enter the description that you want to display in the sort drop-down (when it is displayed). For example, if you wanted the description to be "Author", you would enter *Author* after the *Author* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Author* variable, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list.

### **PubDate**

The *PubDate* variable controls the description that will specify sorting by publishing date in the post-search sort drop-down field on the Title List page. This text appears third in the drop-down list and will cause the search results to be sorted by publishing date. Enter the description that you want to display in the sort drop-down (when it is displayed). For example, if you wanted the description to be "Publish Date", you would enter *Publish Date* after the *PubDate* variable. If nothing is entered after the *PubDate* variable, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list.

### **PubDateDesc**

The *PubDateDesc* variable controls the description that will specify sorting by publishing date (in descending order) in the post-search sort drop-down field on the Title List page. This text appears fourth in the drop-down list and will cause the search results to be sorted by publishing date (in descending order). Enter the

---

description that you want to display in the sort drop-down (when it is displayed). For example, if you wanted the description to be "Publish Date Descending", you would enter *Publish Date Descending* after the *PubDateDesc* variable. If nothing is entered after the *PubDateDesc* variable, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list.

### **Relevance**

The *Relevance* variable controls the description that will specify sorting by degree of relevance in the post-search sort drop-down field on the Title List page. This text appears fifth in the drop-down list and will cause the search results to be sorted by degree of relevance. Enter the description that you want to display in the sort drop-down (when it is displayed). For example, if you wanted the description to be "Relevance", you would enter *Relevance* after the *Relevance* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Relevance* variable, nothing will display - the item will appear as a blank space in the drop-down list.

### **Label\_Location**

The *Label\_Location* variable controls the label that will appear next to holdings information in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table. Enter the description that you want to display preceding the holdings information (when it is displayed) in the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the label to be "Location:", you would enter *Location:* after the *Label\_Location* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Label\_Location* variable, no label will display.

### **Label\_CallNumber**

The *Label\_CallNumber* variable controls the label that will appear next to the call number in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table. Enter the description that you want to display preceding the call number (when it is displayed) in the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the label to be "Call No:", you would enter *Call No:* after the *Label\_CallNumber* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Label\_CallNumber* variable, no label will display.

### **Label\_Status**

The *Label\_Status* variable controls the label that will appear next to the status in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table. Enter the description that you want to display preceding the status (when it is displayed) in the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the label to be "Status:", you would enter *Status:* after the *Label\_Status* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Label\_Status* variable, no label will display.

### **SearchBoxText**

The *SearchBoxText* variable controls the label that appears before the Find Text field in the Simple Search block on the Titles page. Enter the text that you want to appear onscreen after the *SearchBoxText* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to read “Find This:”, you would enter *Find This:* after the *SearchBoxText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *SearchBoxText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Find This:*.

### **QuickLimitsText**

The *QuickLimitsText* variable controls the label that appears before the Simple Limit drop-down in the Simple Search block on the Titles page. Enter the text that you want to appear onscreen after the *QuickLimitsText* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to read “Quick Limit:”, you would enter *Quick Limit:* after the *QuickLimitsText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *QuickLimitsText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Simple Limit*.

### **FindResultsText**

The *FindResultsText* variable controls the label that appears before the Find Results list in the Simple Search block on the Titles page. Enter the text that you want to appear onscreen after the *FindResultsText* variable. For example, if you wanted the label to read “Find Results in”, you would enter *Find Results in* after the *FindResultsText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *FindResultsText* variable, the text on the button will default to *Find Results in*:

## **Page Layout**

### **DisplayPostLimitButtonTop**

The *DisplayPostLimitButtonTop* variable controls whether post-search limiting (subjecting the current list onscreen to additional limits) will be available at the top of the title list on the Title Page. Enter Y after the *DisplayPostLimitButtonTop* variable to display the post-search limit button; enter N to hide the button. If this variable and the *DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom* variable are both set to N, post-search limiting will be unavailable. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayPostLimitButtonTop* variable, the default will be N.

### **DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom**

The *DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom* variable controls whether post-search limiting (subjecting the current list onscreen to additional limits) will be available at the bottom of the title list on the Title Page. Enter Y after the *DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom* variable to display the post-search limit button;

---

enter N to hide the button. If this variable and the *DisplayPostLimitButtonTop* variable are both set to N, post-search limiting will be unavailable. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom* variable, the default will be N.

### **DisplayPostSortMenuTop**

The *DisplayPostSortMenuTop* variable controls whether post-search sorting (sorting of the title list while it appears onscreen) will be available at the top of the title list on the Title Page. Enter Y after the *DisplayPostSortMenuTop* variable to display the post-search sort button and drop-down; enter N to hide the button and drop-down. If this variable and the *DisplayPostSortMenuBottom* variable are both set to N, post-search sorting will be unavailable. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayPostSortMenuTop* variable, the default will be N.

**NOTE:**

Post-search sorting is not available for Course Reserve searches.

### **DisplayPostSortMenuBottom**

The *DisplayPostSortMenuBottom* variable controls whether post-search sorting (sorting of the title list while it appears onscreen) will be available at the bottom of the title list on the Title Page. Enter Y after the *DisplayPostSortMenuBottom* variable to display the post-search sort button and drop-down; enter N to hide the button and drop-down. If this variable and the *DisplayPostSortMenuTop* variable are both set to N, post-search sorting will be unavailable. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayPostSortMenuBottom* variable, the default will be N.

**NOTE:**

Post-search sorting is not available for Course Reserve searches.

### **ShowDatabaseName**

The *ShowDatabaseName* variable controls whether or not the name of the database should appear on the Titles page. To make the database name appear, enter T (for True) after the *ShowDatabaseName=* variable. Enter F (for False) to make the database name disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowDatabaseName* variable, the database name will not appear.

### **ShowSearchRequest**

The *ShowSearchRequest* variable controls whether or not the search request should be displayed on the Titles page. To make the request appear, enter T (for True) after the *ShowSearchRequest=* variable. Enter F (for False) to make the request disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowSearchRequest* variable, the request will not appear.

### **ShowSearchResults**

The *ShowSearchResults* variable controls whether or not the results of the search should appear on the Titles page. To make the search results appear, enter *T* (for True) after the *ShowSearchResults=* variable. Enter *F* (for False) to make the search results disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowSearchResults* variable, the search results will not appear.

### **DisplayHoldingsInfo**

The *DisplayHoldingsInfo* variable controls whether any holdings information will appear in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table. Enter *Y* to display holdings information (in the bottom half of the row) or *N* to prevent it from displaying after the *DisplayHoldingsInfo* variable. Entering *N* will cause the entire row to disappear. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayHoldingsInfo* variable, the default will be *N*.

### **DisplaySearchFormTop**

The *DisplaySearchFormTop* variable controls whether simple searching will be available at the top of the title list on the Title Page. Enter *Y* after the *DisplayPostSortMenuTop* variable to display the simple search controls; enter *N* to hide the controls. If this variable and the *DisplaySearchFormBottom* variable are both set to *N*, simple searching will be unavailable. If nothing is entered after the *DisplaySearchFormTop* variable, the default will be *N*.

### **DisplaySearchFormBottom**

The *DisplaySearchFormBottom* variable controls whether simple searching will be available at the bottom of the title list on the Title Page. Enter *Y* after the *DisplaySearchFormBottom* variable to display the simple search controls; enter *N* to hide the controls. If this variable and the *DisplaySearchFormTop* variable are both set to *N*, simple searching will be unavailable. If nothing is entered after the *DisplaySearchFormBottom* variable, the default will be *N*.

### **DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown**

The *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable controls whether the simple limit drop-down will appear in the Simple Search block on the Title Page. Enter *Y* after the *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable to display the simple limit field; enter *N* to hide the field. If nothing is entered after the *DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown* variable, the default will be *N*.

---

## **Titles' Availability**

### **HoldingsInfoItalics**

The *HoldingsInfoItalics* variable controls whether the holdings information will display in italics or not. Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table. Enter *Y* to display holdings information in italics or *N* to prevent it from displaying in italics after the *HoldingsInfoItalics* variable. Entering *Y* will cause the entire row to be italicized. If nothing is entered after the *HoldingsInfoItalics* variable, the default will be *N*.

### **HoldingsInfoForegroundColor**

The *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor* variable controls the color of the holdings information text in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table. You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor=* variable to configure the color of the holdings information text. For example, if you wanted to make the text appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor* variable, the color of the text will default to the information that is entered after the *BGCColor* variable in the [Html-Body] stanza. If nothing is entered after the *BGColor* variable in the [Html\_Body] stanza, *ffffff* (white) will be used.

### **HoldingsInfoBackgroundColor**

The *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor* variable controls the color of the background behind the holdings information. (The holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor=* variable to configure the color of the background. For example, if you wanted to make the background appear white, you would enter *ffffff* (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor=* variable. If nothing is entered after the *HoldingsInfoForegroundColor* variable, the color of the background will default to the information that is entered after the *BGCColor* variable in the [Html-Body] stanza. If nothing is entered after the *BGColor* variable in the [Html\_Body] stanza, *ffffff* (white) will be used.

### **NoHoldingsMessage**

The *NoHoldingsMessage* variable controls the message that will appear when the title has no holdings associated with it. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display at the left-hand side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "No Holdings Available",

you would enter *No Holdings Available* after the *NoHoldingsMessage* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NoHoldingsMessage* variable, no message will display and the bottom half of the row will not appear.

### **MultipleHoldingsMessage**

The *MultipleHoldingsMessage* variable controls the message that will appear when the title has more than one item in its holdings. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display in the middle of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Title Has Multiple Holdings", you would enter *Title Has Multiple Holdings* after the *MultipleHoldingsMessage* variable. If nothing is entered after the *MultipleHoldingsMessage* variable, no message will display and the bottom half of the row will not appear.

### **NoItemsMessage**

The *NoItemsMessage* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has no items attached. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "No Items", you would enter *No Items* after the *NoItemsMessage* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NoItemsMessage* variable, no message will display.

### **MultipleItemsMessage**

The *MultipleItemsMessage* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has multiple items attached. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Multiple Items", you would enter *Multiple Items* after the *MultipleItemsMessage* variable. If nothing is entered after the *MultipleItemsMessage* variable, no message will display.

## **Item Statuses**

### **NotCharged**

The *NotCharged* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has not been charged. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Not

---

Charged", you would enter *Not Charged* after the *NotCharged* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NotCharged* variable, the default message will be *Not Charged*.

### **Charged**

The *Charged* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been charged. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Charged", you would enter *Charged* after the *Charged* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Charged* variable, the default message will be *Charged*.

### **Renewed**

The *Renewed* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been renewed. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Renewed", you would enter *Renewed* after the *Renewed* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Renewed* variable, the default message will be *Renewed*.

### **Overdue**

The *Overdue* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is overdue. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Overdue", you would enter *Overdue* after the *Overdue* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Overdue* variable, the default message will be *Overdue*.

### **RecallRequest**

The *RecallRequest* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when a recall request has been made for the title for which holdings are displayed. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Recall Request", you would enter *Recall Request* after the *RecallRequest* variable. If nothing is entered after the *RecallRequest* variable, the default message will be *Recall Request*.

### **HoldRequest**

The *HoldRequest* variable controls the message that will appear when a hold request has been made for the title for which holdings are displayed. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Hold Request", you would enter *Hold Request* after the *HoldRequest* variable. If nothing is entered after the *HoldRequest* variable, the default message will be *Hold Request*.

### **OnHold**

The *OnHold* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is on hold. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "On Hold", you would enter *On Hold* after the *OnHold* variable. If nothing is entered after the *OnHold* variable, the default message will be *On Hold*.

### **InTransit**

The *InTransit* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is currently in transit. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "In Transit", you would enter *In Transit* after the *InTransit* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransit* variable, the default message will be *On Hold*.

### **InTransitDischarged**

The *InTransitDischarged* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been discharged and is currently in transit. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "In Transit Discharged", you would enter *In Transit Discharged* after the *InTransitDischarged* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransitDischarged* variable, the default message will be *In Transit Discharged*.

---

## **InTransitOnHold**

The *InTransitOnHold* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is on hold and is currently in transit. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "In Transit On Hold", you would enter *In Transit On Hold* after the *InTransitOnHold* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InTransitOnHold* variable, the default message will be *In Transit On Hold*.

## **Discharged**

The *Discharged* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been discharged. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Discharged", you would enter *Discharged* after the *Discharged* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Discharged* variable, the default message will be *Discharged*.

## **Missing**

The *Missing* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is missing. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Missing", you would enter *Missing* after the *Missing* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Missing* variable, the default message will be *Missing*.

## **LostLibraryApplied**

The *LostLibraryApplied* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is lost and the status has been applied by a user in the library. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Lost--Library Applied", you would enter *Lost--Library Applied* after the *LostLibraryApplied* variable. If nothing is entered after the *LostLibraryApplied* variable, the default message will be *Lost--Library Applied*.

### **LostSystemApplied**

The *LostSystemApplied* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is lost and the status has been automatically applied by the system. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Lost--System Applied”, you would enter *Lost--System Applied* after the *LostSystemApplied* variable. If nothing is entered after the *LostSystemApplied* variable, the default message will be *Lost--System Applied*.

### **ClaimsReturned**

The *ClaimsReturned* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when a patron has claimed that the title for which holdings are displayed has been returned to the library. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Claims Returned”, you would enter *Claims Returned* after the *ClaimsReturned* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ClaimsReturned* variable, the default message will be *Claims Returned*.

### **Damaged**

The *Damaged* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been damaged. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Damaged”, you would enter *Damaged* after the *Damaged* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Damaged* variable, the default message will be *Damaged*.

### **Withdrawn**

The *Withdrawn* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been withdrawn by the library. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Withdrawn”, you would enter *Withdrawn* after the *Withdrawn* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Withdrawn* variable, the default message will be *Withdrawn*.

---

## **AtBindery**

The *AtBindery* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is at the bindery. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "At Bindery", you would enter *At Bindery* after the *AtBindery* variable. If nothing is entered after the *AtBindery* variable, the default message will be *At Bindery*.

## **CatalogingReview**

The *CatalogingReview* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is undergoing cataloging review. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Cataloging Review", you would enter *Cataloging Review* after the *CatalogingReview* variable. If nothing is entered after the *CatalogingReview* variable, the default message will be *Cataloging Review*.

## **CirculationReview**

The *CirculationReview* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is undergoing circulation review. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Circulation Review", you would enter *Circulation Review* after the *CirculationReview* variable. If nothing is entered after the *CirculationReview* variable, the default message will be *Circulation Review*.

## **Scheduled**

The *Scheduled* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed has been scheduled. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Scheduled", you would enter *Scheduled* after the *Scheduled* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Scheduled* variable, the default message will be *Scheduled*.

## **InProcess**

The *InProcess* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is in process. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the

message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “In Process”, you would enter *In Process* after the *InProcess* variable. If nothing is entered after the *InProcess* variable, the default message will be *In Process*.

### **CallSlipRequest**

The *CallSlipRequest* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when a patron has submitted a call slip request for the title for which holdings are displayed. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Call Slip Request”, you would enter *Call Slip Request* after the *CallSlipRequest* variable. If nothing is entered after the *CallSlipRequest* variable, the default message will be *Call Slip Request*.

### **ShortLoanRequest**

The *ShortLoanRequest* variable controls the text of the status that will appear when a patron has submitted a short loan request for the title for which holdings are displayed. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Short Loan Request”, you would enter *Short Loan Request* after the *ShortLoanRequest* variable. If nothing is entered after the *ShortLoanRequest* variable, the default message will be *Short Loan Request*.

### **RemoteStorageRequest**

The *RemoteStorageRequest* variable controls the text of the status that appears when a patron has submitted a remote storage request for the title for which holdings are displayed. (Holdings information appears in the bottom half of each record in the Title Page search results table.) Enter the message that you want to display as the status on the right side of the bottom half of the row. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Remote Storage Request”, you would enter *Remote Storage Request* after the *RemoteStorageRequest* variable. If nothing is entered after the *RemoteStorageRequest* variable, the default message will be *Remote Storage Request*.

## **View\_Record\_Page Stanza**

### **NoLocation**

The *NoLocation* variable controls the message that will appear when no location information is available for an item. Enter the message that you want to display on the Record Display page. For example, if you wanted the message to read

---

“No location information available”, you would enter *No location information available* after the *NoLocation* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NoLocation* variable, the default message will be *No location information available*.

### **ShowDatabaseName**

The *ShowDatabaseName* variable controls whether or not the name of the database should appear on the Record Display page. To make the database name appear, enter *T* (for True) after the *ShowDatabaseName=* variable. Enter *F* (for False) to make the database name disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowDatabaseName* variable, the database name will not appear.

### **ShowSearchRequest**

The *ShowSearchRequest* variable controls whether or not the search request should be displayed on the Record Display page. To make the request appear, enter *T* (for True) after the *ShowSearchRequest=* variable. Enter *F* (for False) to make the request disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowSearchRequest* variable, the request will not appear.

### **ShowSearchResults**

The *ShowSearchResults* variable controls whether or not the results of the search should appear on the Record Display page. To make the search results appear, enter *T* (for True) after the *ShowSearchResults=* variable. Enter *F* (for False) to make the search results disappear. If nothing is entered after the *ShowSearchResults* variable, the search results will not appear.

### **NoCallNumber**

The *NoCall/Number* variable controls the message that will appear when no call number information is available for an item. Enter the message that you want to display on the Record Display page. For example, if you wanted the message to read “No Call Number Available”, you would enter *No Call Number Available* after the *NoLocation* variable. If nothing is entered after the *NoLocation* variable, the default message will be *No Call Number Available*.

### **Location**

The *Location* variable controls the header that will appear over the location column in the holdings record. When Holdings Summary information is turned on, holdings information for all of the items attached to that holdings record are displayed on the Record Display page. Enter the text that you want to display above the holdings summary information. For example, if you wanted the header to read “Location”, you would enter *Location* after the *Location* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Location* variable, the default header will be *Location*.

### **CallNumber**

The *CallNumber* variable controls the header that will appear over the call number column in the holdings record. When Holdings Summary information is turned on, holdings information for all of the items attached to that holdings record are displayed on the Record Display page. Enter the text that you want to display above the holdings summary information. For example, if you wanted the header to read "Call Number", you would enter *Call Number* after the *CallNumber* variable. If nothing is entered after the *CallNumber* variable, the default header will be *Call Number*.

### **LocalDatabase**

The *LocalDatabase* variable controls the header that will appear over the Local Database column in the holdings record. When Holdings Summary information is turned on, holdings information for all of the items attached to that holdings record are displayed on the Record Display page. Enter the text that you want to display above the holdings summary information. For example, if you wanted the header to read "Local Database", you would enter *Local Database* after the *LocalDatabase* variable. If nothing is entered after the *LocalDatabase* variable, the default header will be *Local Database*.

### **Relevance**

The *Relevance* variable controls the label that will appear next to the relevance bar in the holdings record. When a record has been retrieved through a relevance search, the relevance bar appears in the Record Display. Enter the text that you want to display as the label for the relevance bar. For example, if you wanted the label to read "Relevance:", you would enter *Relevance:* after the *Relevance* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Relevance* variable, the default header will be *Relevance:*.

### **Shelved\_At**

The *Shelved\_At* variable controls the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is shelved at a particular location. Enter the message that you want to display as the message; the location of the item will be appended to the message that you enter. For example, if you wanted the message to read "Shelved At [Location]", you would enter *Shelved At* after the *Shelved\_At* variable; the location information will be automatically supplied after the text entered here. If nothing is entered after the *Shelved\_At* variable, the default message will be *Shelved At [Location]*.

---

### **Temp\_Shelfed**

The *Temp\_Shelfed* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is temporarily shelved at a particular location. Enter the text of the message that you want to display; the location of the item will be appended to the message that you enter. For example, if you wanted the message to read “Temporarily Shelved At [Location]”, you would enter *Temporarily Shelved At* after the *Temp\_Shelfed* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Temp\_Shelfed* variable, the default message will be *Temporarily Shelved At [Location]*.

### **Pre\_Order\_Process**

The *Pre\_Order\_Process* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when the title for which holdings are displayed is in the process of being ordered. Enter the text of the message that you want to display. For example, if you wanted the message to read “In the Pre-Order Process”, you would enter *In the Pre-Order Process* after the *Pre\_Order\_Process* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Pre\_Order\_Process* variable, the default message will be *In the Pre-Order Process*.

### **Copy\_Received**

The *Copy\_Received* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has arrived at the library. Enter the text of the message that you want to display; note that the number of copies will precede the message and the date will follow it. For example, if you wanted the message to read “[#] Copy Received as of [Date]”, you would enter *Copy Received as of* after the *Copy\_Received* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Copy\_Received* variable, the default message will be *[#] Copy Received as of [Date]*.

### **Copies\_Received**

The *Copies\_Received* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when more than one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed have arrived at the library. Enter the text of the message that you want to display; note that the number of copies will precede the message and the date will follow it. For example, if you wanted the message to read “[#] Copies Received as of [Date]”, you would enter *Copies Received as of* after the *Copies\_Received* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Copies\_Received* variable, the default message will be *[#] Copies Received as of [Date]*.

### **Copy\_Claimed**

The *Copy\_Claimed* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has been claimed. Enter the text of the message that you want to display; note that the number of copies will precede the message and the date will follow it. For example, if you wanted the message to read “[#] Copy Claimed as of [Date]”, you would enter *Copies Claimed as of* after the *Copy\_Claimed* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Copy\_Claimed* variable, the default message will be *[#] Copy Claimed as of [Date]*.

### **Copies\_Claimed**

The *Copies\_Claimed* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when more than one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed have arrived at the library. Enter the text of the message that you want to display; note that the number of copies will precede the message and the date will follow it. For example, if you wanted the message to read “[#] Copies Claimed as of [Date]”, you would enter *Copies Claimed as of* after the *Copies\_Claimed* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Copies\_Claimed* variable, the default message will be *[#] Copies Claimed as of [Date]*.

### **Copy\_Ordered**

The *Copy\_Ordered* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has been ordered by the library. Enter the text of the message that you want to display; note that the number of copies will precede the message and the date will follow it. For example, if you wanted the message to read “[#] Copy Ordered as of [Date]”, you would enter *Copies Ordered as of* after the *Copy\_Ordered* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Copy\_Ordered* variable, the default message will be *[#] Copy Ordered as of [Date]*.

### **Copies\_Ordered**

The *Copies\_Ordered* variable controls the text of the message that will appear when one copy of the title for which holdings are displayed has been ordered by the library. Enter the text of the message that you want to display; note that the number of copies will precede the message and the date will follow it. For example, if you wanted the message to read “[#] Copies Ordered as of [Date]”, you would enter *Copies Ordered as of* after the *Copies\_Ordered* variable. If nothing is entered after the *Copies\_Ordered* variable, the default message will be *[#] Copies Ordered as of [Date]*.

---

## **AuthorSearchRedirect**

Your institution can specify what type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to an author from the Record Display page in WebVoyage. (Redirected author searches are performed when a hyperlink to an author's name in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.)

For redirected Author searches you can specify that these searches will find titles via authority, authority browse, name/title, or name/title browse searching.

Authority performs a Name Headings Search. Authority Browse performs a name headings browse. Name/Title performs a Name/Title headings search. Name/Title Browse performs a Name/Title headings browse. The default is Authority if the search is not specified in the [Search Dialog] stanza. To designate what type of Author searching will be performed from the Builder Search tab, specify the following in the [Search Dialog] stanza:

Type *AuthorSearchRedirect*, then an equals sign (=), followed by *Authority*, *Authority Browse*, *Name/Title*, or *Name/Title Browse*.

## **AuthorSearchText**

Your institution can specify what type of search will be performed when a user selects Title, Author, Call Number, or Subject from the Builder Search tab in WebVoyage.

The description of the search type that appears for redirected author searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages can be changed by editing the text that follows the *AuthorSearchText* variable in the opac.ini file. (Redirected author searches are performed when a hyperlink to an author's name in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.) The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. If nothing is entered, no search type will display onscreen for redirected author searches.

## **TitleSearchRedirect**

Your institution can specify what type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to a title from the Record Display page in WebVoyage. (Redirected title searches are performed when a hyperlink to a title in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.)

For redirected Title searches you can specify that these searches will find titles via authority, keyword, left-anchored, or browse searching. The default is Keyword if the search is not specified, or is spelled incorrectly, in the [Search Dialog] stanza. To designate what type of Title searching will be performed from the Builder Search tab, specify the following in the [Search Dialog] stanza:

Type *TitleSearchRedirect*, then an equals sign (=), followed by *Authority*, *Browse*, *Left Anchored*, or *Keyword*.

### **TitleSearchText**

The description of the search type that appears for redirected title searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages can be changed by editing the text that follows the *TitleSearchText* variable in the opac.ini file. (Redirected title searches are performed when a hyperlink to a title in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.) The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. If nothing is entered, no search type will display onscreen for redirected title searches.

### **SubjectSearchRedirect**

Your institution can specify what type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to a subject from the Record Display page in WebVoyage. (Redirected subject searches are performed when a hyperlink to a subject in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.)

For redirected Subject searches you can specify that these searches will find titles via authority or browse searching. The default is Authority if the search is not specified in the [Search Dialog] stanza. To designate what type of Subject searching will be performed from the Builder Search tab, specify the following in the [Search Dialog] stanza:

Type *SubjectSearchRedirect*, then an equals sign (=), followed by *Authority* or *Browse*.

### **SubjectSearchText**

The description of the search type that appears for redirected subject searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages can be changed by editing the text that follows the *SubjectSearchText* variable in the opac.ini file. (Redirected subject searches are performed when a hyperlink to a subject in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.) The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the

---

Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. If nothing is entered, no search type will display onscreen for redirected subject searches.

### **CallNumberSearchRedirect**

Your institution can specify what type of search will be performed when a user selects a hyperlink to a call number from the Record Display page in WebVoyáge. (Redirected call number searches are performed when a hyperlink to a call number in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.)

For redirected Call Number searches you can specify that these searches will find call numbers via browse or left anchored searching. Left Anchored searching provides greater precision, but less recall. Browse searching provides less precision, but greater recall. The default is Left Anchored if the search is not specified, or is spelled incorrectly, in the [Search Dialog] stanza. To designate what type of Call Number searching will be performed from the Builder Search tab, specify the following in the [Search Dialog] stanza:

Type *CallNumberSearchRedirect*, then an equals sign (=), followed by *Browse* or *Left Anchored*.

### **CallNumberText**

The description of the search type that appears for redirected call number searches on the Title List, Headings List, Record Display and Search History pages can be changed by editing the text that follows the *CallNumberText* variable in the opac.ini file. (Redirected call number searches are performed when a hyperlink to a call number in a record is clicked, resulting in a search for that term instead of the old term.) The Search Type is displayed above the record display (on the Record Display page) or Results table (on the Title List or Headings List pages) below the Database Name and between the Search Request label and the term searched for. If nothing is entered, no search type will display onscreen for redirected call number searches.

### **LoginRequiredText**

The *LoginRequiredText* variable controls the message that appears in WebVoyáge to notify the patron that he/she must login before viewing an image in ImageServer. Enter the text of the message that you want to display after the *LoginRequiredText* variable. For example, if you wanted the message to read "LOGIN REQUIRED", you would enter *LOGIN REQUIRED* after the *LoginRequiredText* variable. If nothing is entered after the *LoginRequiredText* variable, no message will display.

## MARCINFO.INI

---

The marcinfo.ini file contains all possible data elements/combinations from the 000 (positions 06 and 07), 007 (position 00), and 006 (position 00) field tags of the MARC bibliographic record.

The marcinfo.ini file is located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory.

Each combination has a text descriptor that displays under one of three labels in the Voyager OPAC (the labels themselves are defined in the distributed displayn.cfg files as "Primary Material," "Physical Description," and "Includes," respectively).

You can modify all data elements in this configuration file. However, Endeavor strongly recommends that you do not delete any data elements or their corresponding variable names. This could result in a code being displayed to your patrons instead of the appropriate format, physical characteristic, or material type.

Refer to **USMARC Format for Bibliographic Data** (Washington, D.C.: Library of Congress, latest edition) for complete definitions and guidelines on the use of these three fields. As you can see by reviewing the list of data elements, Voyager includes new values effective with format integration so that your OPAC displays will use MARC bibliographic data appropriately both before and after format integration goes into effect.

## The connect.ini file

---

The connect.ini file is located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory.

The connect.ini file specifies which Voyager and Z39.50 connections display on the Select Database screen in WebVoyage. These are the databases available for WebVoyage to connect to. You can access the Select Database screen by clicking the **Database** button.

The database settings for the databases are defined in the Voyager System Administration module in the **Search>Database Definitions** section. Once defined in Voyager System Administration, the databases must also be listed in the connect.ini in order for them to be available in WebVoyage.

This is true even of databases that have had the **Public Use** check box turned off. In order for a database to appear on the Select Database screen in WebVoyage, it must be:

- listed in the connect.ini file

- either have the Public Use check box turned on, or accessible to the currently logged in patron (i.e., the patron must be a member of an Access Group given access to that database on the Database Definitions dialog).

There is no limit to the number of databases that may be listed in the Connect.ini file.

## Overview

The first type of stanza in the Connect.ini file is the [Folders] stanza, which contains the name of each set of connections that display on the Select Database screen. There is no limit to the number of set names that can be within the [Folders] stanza. Each name displays next to a list box on the Select Database screen in WebVoyage.

The contents of each set (and list box) is defined by the next type of stanza, the Set Name stanza, which bears that set's name (i.e., [*Voyager Databases*], not [*Set Name*]). A maximum of twenty items can be contained within each set name stanza. Each item listed in the set name stanza is either a database code or the stanza name of a definition of a group of databases. This stanza must be repeated for each set before defining specific locations.

After defining all the set names, you can add an optional third type of stanza; the Location stanza. These stanzas are referred to as Location stanzas because they can do one of two things:

- Specify a custom WebVoyage display directory location for that database
- Set up a group name to attach a group of databases (locations) to (for simultaneous search, for instance)

This option requires creation of another stanza (a List Location stanza).

### NOTE:

The database code for a database may be specified more than once within the lists in the connect.ini (e.g., you may add the database code to more than one list). If a database code is used as the name of a stanza, however, you may only have one stanza named after that database code.

## The connect.ini file As Distributed

- Figure 3-51 shows the default connect.ini file as distributed
- [Figure 3-52](#) shows the display of the default connect.ini in WebVoyage.

```
[Folders]
1=Local Libraries
2=Other Databases

[Local Libraries]
1=LOCAL
2=DBCODE1
3=DBCODE2

[Other Databases]
1=DBCODE3
2=DBCODE4

[DBCODE3]
Config=Vcit

[DBCODE4]
Config=vcit
```

[FOLDERS] Stanza  
Set Name

Set Name STANZA  
database code

Location Stanza

---

**Figure 3-51. Connect.ini file as Distributed**

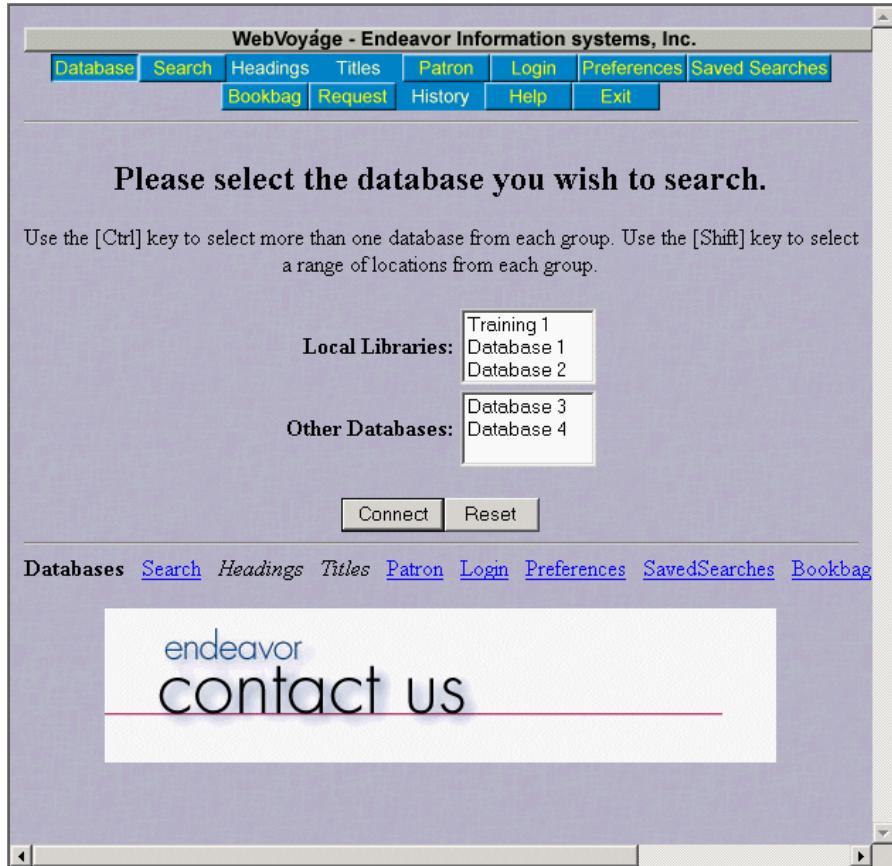


Figure 3-52. Display of default connect.ini in WebVoyage

### The [Folders] Stanza

The [Folders] stanza is where you define the groups of search connections available to patrons, and the sequence in which they display, on the Select Databases Screen. Each entry in this stanza will display a corresponding list box in WebVoyage.

On each line of this stanza, enter a number for the set (consecutively, starting with 1), an equals sign (=), followed by the name of the set (which will display as the label for the corresponding list box).

For example, if you want to create a set for Voyager databases and a set for Z39.50 databases, enter something like the [Folders] stanza in [Figure 3-53](#).

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites
```

---

**Figure 3-53.** Sample [Folders] stanza

Repeat the above instructions for each set that you want to display. The order (from the top of the file) in which the sets are typed is the order (from the top) that the sets will display on the Select Database screen in WebVoyage.

This is the first step in making the sets of databases available for selection on the Database Selection screen. [Figure 3-53](#) will eventually create two list boxes on the Database Selection screen, one labeled *Voyager Libraries*, the other labeled *Some Z3950 Sites*. Next you must create Set Name stanzas for each of the two sets.

### Set Name Stanzas

Once you have defined the set names in the [Folders] stanza, you must create a corresponding stanza specifying the databases comprising that set. These stanzas are referred to as Set Name stanzas because they are named after the sets configured in the [Folders] stanza.

Each entry in the [Folders] stanza must have a corresponding Set Name stanza, with the same name as the entry in the [Folders] stanza. For example, for the entries in the [Folders] stanza in [Figure 3-53](#), you would create two Set Name stanzas: [**Voyager Libraries**] and [**Some Z3950 Sites**] (see [Figure 3-54](#)).

---

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]

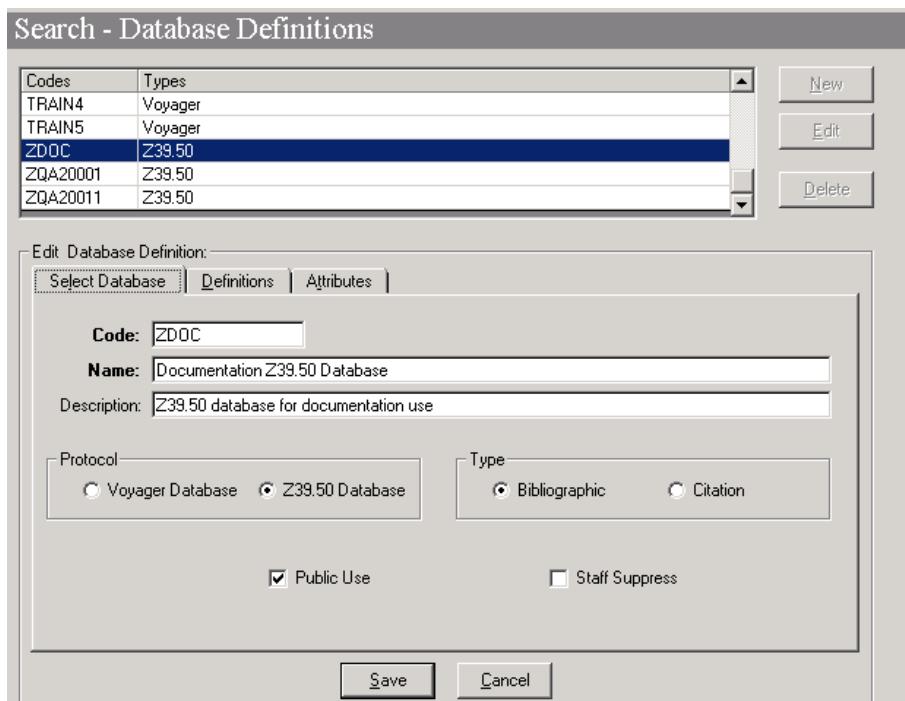
[Some Z3950 Sites]
```

---

**Figure 3-54.** Set Name stanzas added to connect.ini

While the entries in the [Folders] stanza determine the names of the list boxes on the Database Selection page in WebVoyage, the Set Name stanzas determine which databases are contained in those list boxes.

On each line of the Set Name stanza, enter a number for the database (consecutively, starting with 1), an equals sign (=), followed by the database code (as entered in Voyager System Administration>Search>Database Definitions. See [Figure 3-55](#)).



**Figure 3-55. Database information in Database Definitions**

So, to include the Documentation Z39.50 database in [Figure 3-55](#) in the **Some Z3950 Sites** list box on the Database Selection screen, create an entry in the [Some Z3950 Sites] Set Name stanza as in [Figure 3-56](#).

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

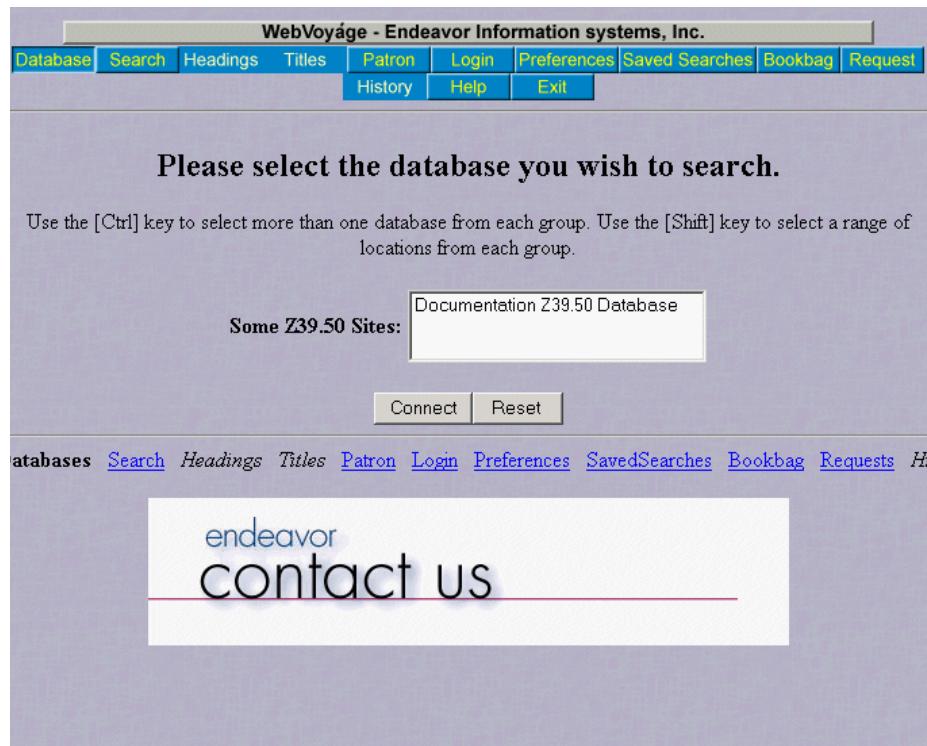
[Voyager Libraries]

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC
```

**Figure 3-56.** Sample entry in a Set Name stanza

The entry in [Figure 3-56](#) would display in WebVoyage as in [Figure 3-57](#).

---



**Figure 3-57.** Result of database entry in Set Name stanza

---

Notice that in [Figure 3-57](#) the Database Name, not the code, of the database displays in WebVoyage.

Also notice that the **Voyager Libraries** list box does not appear. This is because we have not included any databases in the [Voyager Libraries] Set Name stanza yet.



**IMPORTANT:**

*If the database code specified in a Set Name stanza is not created yet, or is incorrect, the database will not appear for selection on the database selection screen. Also, if none of the database codes in a Set Name stanza are present in Database Definitions, the set's list box itself will not display. Lastly, if there are no database codes entered into a Set Name stanza, the Set Name list box will not display.*

If we include a database code (such as *LOCAL*), in the [Voyager Libraries] Set Name stanza (see [Figure 3-58](#)), the set's list box will display (along with the *LOCAL* database's Database Name). In this case, the *LOCAL* database's name is *Training 1*. [Figure 3-59](#) shows the resulting display in WebVoyage.

---

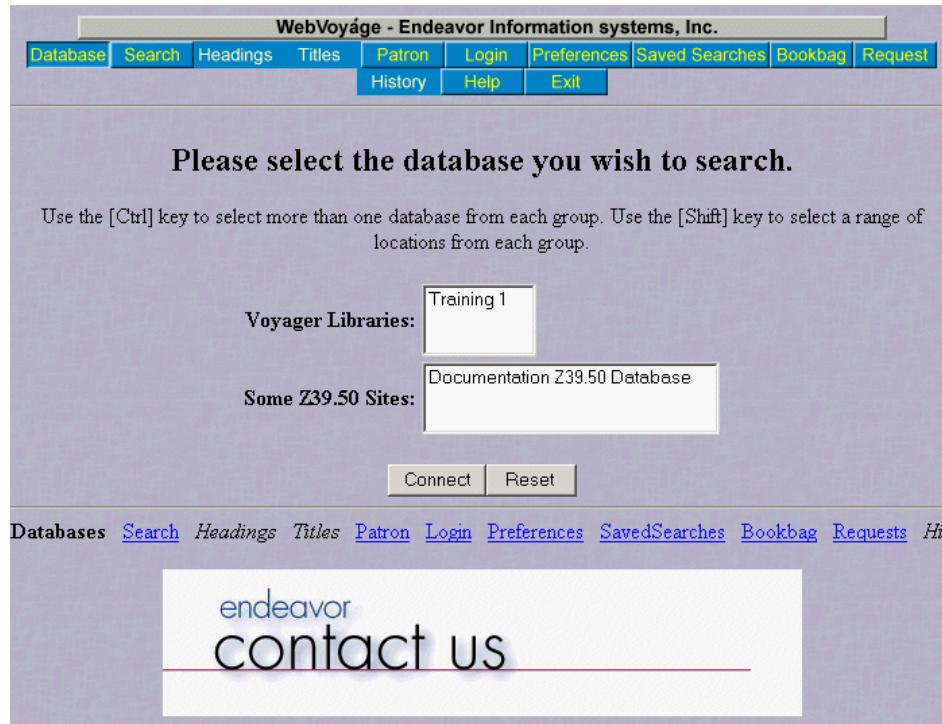
```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC
```

---

**Figure 3-58. Sample database added**



**Figure 3-59. Result of adding database to stanza**

## Location Stanza

Location stanzas are used for two things:

- To specify a custom WebVoyage display for that database

Once you have created a custom WebVoyage display directory in /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage, you can use the custom display for a database by specifying it here. This is also useful for multi-lingual WebVoyage configuration.

For more information about creating custom WebVoyage display directories, see [Customizing Displays with WebVoyage Folders](#) on page 4-11.

For more information about using location stanzas to specify custom display directory locations, see [Specifying a custom display directory for a database](#) on page 3-186.

- To set up a *group name* to attach a group of databases to (for simultaneous search, for instance).

---

You can include a list of databases for patrons to search simultaneously by selecting the group name, rather than having to select each database one at a time, on the Database Selection screen.

### List Location stanza

Once you have established a group name in a location stanza (if using the location stanza to set up a group name), you must specify the databases to include in the group. This is done in the *list location* stanza. For more information about List Location stanzas, see [Using a Location Stanza to Group Search Locations](#) on [page 3-188](#).



### Procedure 3-2. Specifying a custom display directory for a database

---

Use the following to specify a custom WebVoyage display for a database.

1. Add a stanza, with the same name as the database code, below the Set Name stanza that the database code appears in (see [Figure 3-60](#)).

---

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC

[ZDOC]
```

---

**Figure 3-60. Sample location stanza**

2. Add an entry in the new stanza including the *Config* Variable (**Config=**) followed by the name of the custom WebVoyage display directory.

You must include the variable **Config=** to the stanza to designate this location as a display directory location (as opposed to a group location).

Example:

If the name of your custom WebVoyage display directory is `zspecial`, as illustrated in [Figure 3-61](#), enter a line as in [Figure 3-62](#).

---

<code>z3950</code>	<code>dbselmsg.htm</code>	<code>formats.ini</code>	<code>local</code>
<code>search.ini</code>	<code>voyager.ini</code>	<code>connect.ini</code>	<code>footer.htm</code>
<code>header.htm</code>	<code>marcinfo.htm</code>	<code>vcit</code>	<code>zcit</code>
<b><code>zspecial</code></b>			

---

**Figure 3-61.** Sample directory in `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage`

---

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC

[ZDOC]
Config=zspecial
```

---

**Figure 3-62.** Sample config variable in location stanza

---

**Result:**

WebVoyage will use the `zspecial` directory for WebVoyage display when connected to the Documentation Z39.50 database, instead of the `z3950` directory (which is the default display directory for Z39.50 bibliographic databases).

---



### Procedure 3-3. Using a Location Stanza to Group Search Locations

Use the following to group databases in a Location stanza.

1. Add a stanza, with a code for the group, in the desired Set Name stanza. This code can be any uppercase text, but keep it concise.

Example:

The example in [Figure 3-63](#) shows a group code of **SIMULZ** added to the **[Some Z3950 Sites]** stanza. This indicates that we want the group name to appear in the **Some Z3950 Sites** list box.

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC
2=SIMULZ
```

**Figure 3-63. Sample group code in a Set Name stanza**

2. Add a *group* location stanza, with the same name as the group code, below the Set Name stanza that the group code appears in (see [Figure 3-60](#)). This is referred to as a group location stanza because it specifies a group of databases to be defined, rather than a single database code (though it is not designated to Voyager as a group location stanza yet).

**NOTE:**

If you create an entry in a Set Name stanza consisting of a group code, and you do not create a group location stanza, the group will not appear in that set in WebVoyage.

Example:

In [Figure 3-63](#), we added a group code of SIMULZ, so we will create a group location stanza named [SIMULZ] (see [Figure 3-64](#)).

---

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC
2=SIMULZ

[SIMULZ]
```

---

**Figure 3-64.** Sample group location stanza

3. Add an entry in the group location stanza to indicate to Voyager that it is a database group (see [Figure 3-65](#)).

You must include the variable **Type=G** to the stanza to designate this location as a group location (as opposed to a display directory location).

4. Add an entry in the group location stanza to specify the display name of the group in WebVoyage. This entry takes the form of **Name=** followed by the name of the group. This name can be any descriptive name you want (within screen size constraints).

For an example, see [Figure 3-65](#).

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC
2=SIMULZ

[SIMULZ]
Type=G
Name=Group of Z39.50 Databases
```

**Figure 3-65. Sample group location variables**

5. Create a *List Location* stanza, detailing the databases included in the group. This gives Voyager the list of databases to connect to when the group is selected from WebVoyage

Do this by creating a stanza named **[List group code]**. The *group code* in this case is the same group code as entered into the Set Name stanza and the group location stanza name.

Example:

For the example in [Figure 3-65](#), create a stanza named **[List SIMULZ]**.

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC
2=SIMULZ

[SIMULZ]
Type=G
Name=Group of Z39.50 Databases

[List SIMULZ]
```

---

**Figure 3-66. Sample list location stanza**

6. Add the database codes of the databases you want to include in the group in the list location stanza. Number the list entries followed by an equals sign (=), followed by the database code, just as in the Set Name stanzas.

**NOTE:**

The contents of the list location stanza will **not** appear in WebVoyage. Only the group name will appear in WebVoyage - not the individual search locations.

Example:

To add the Documentation Z39.50 database and a Z39.50 training database, we will add the database codes for these two databases (*ZDOC* and *ZTRAIN*, respectively) to the stanza (see [Figure 3-67](#)).

```
[Folders]
1=Voyager Libraries
2=Some Z3950 Sites

[Voyager Libraries]
1=LOCAL

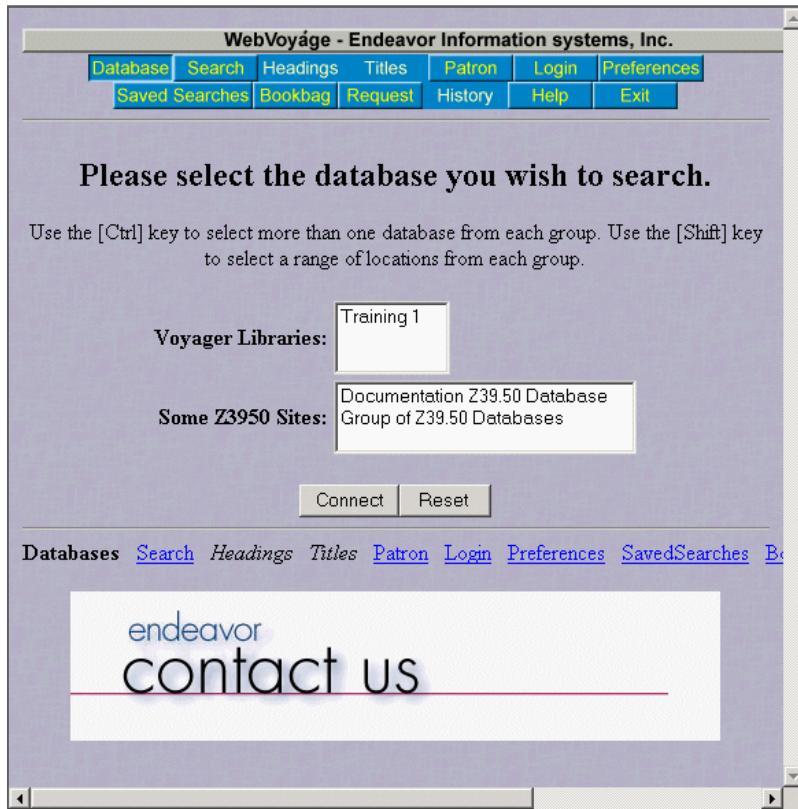
[Some Z3950 Sites]
1=ZDOC
2=SIMULZ

[SIMULZ]
Type=G
Name=Group of Z39.50 Databases

[List SIMULZ]
1=ZDOC
2=ZTRAIN
```

**Figure 3-67. Sample list location stanza**

[Figure 3-68](#) shows the corresponding display on the Database Selection screen in WebVoyage.



---

Figure 3-68. Group name included on Database Selection screen

**Result:**

Now the **Group of Z39.50 Databases** entry displays in the **Some Z3950 Sites** list box on the Database Selection Screen in WebVoyage. Selecting the **Group of Z39.50 Databases** entry from the **Some Z3950 Sites** List box on the Database Selection screen, will connect to the Z39.50 documentation and training databases (along with any other databases selected).

---

**Limits.ini**

The limits.ini file determines what limiting criteria are available to your patrons and in what order you want those limiting criteria to display in the Limits dialog box.

The limits.ini file is located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/ etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /Z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

---

## Limits Stanza

The [Limits] stanza defines the order in which the sets of limits are to appear onscreen. The **None** variable defines the label of the word "None" (meaning no quick limits apply) on the **Search Page**.

You may specify the following limit types in any order: *Language, Location, Date, Medium, Type, Place* and *Status*. Each type must be entered on its own line in the [Limits] stanza. If any are misspelled or not present, that limit type will not be available on the Limits page.

Map-related limits cannot be reordered. They will appear onscreen in a predetermined order.

### Language, Medium, Type, Status, Place Stanzas

The [Language], [Medium], [Type], [Status], and [Place] stanzas of the limits.ini file define the contents of each list that appears on the Limits screen. In these stanzas, you can edit the label text that will appear in WebVoyage. After each number and the equals sign (=) and the three letter code, type the label that you want to display in the Limits dialog. Note that the first line of every one of these stanzas **must** be **Counter=X**. X represents how many entries follow the Counter line in the stanza and should be the same as the line number of the last line of the stanza.

The order that the limit types are listed onscreen can be changed. You can change the order that the limit type lists appear onscreen in by changing the order of the limit types in that stanza.

Note that the Date and Location limit types do not require a stanza in the limits.ini. The list of Location limits is stored in the database and can be edited through the System Administration module. The Date limits cannot be changed.

If your institution uses Map Searching, there will be the following additional stanzas: [Map Projection Limits], [Map Date Type Limits], [Map Class Classification], [Map Release Classification], and [Map Type Classification]. See [Map-Related Limits in Limits.ini on page 3-197](#).

### Simple\_Limits Stanza

The [Simple\_Limits] and any following stanzas allow you to specify what limits will appear in the Simple Limits drop-down on the Simple Search screen.

The contents of the [Simple\_Limits] stanza appear as the entries in the Simple Limits drop-down menu. Note that the first line of the stanza **must** be the **Counter=X**. X represents how many entries follow the Counter line in the stanza and should be the line number of the last entry in the list. The remaining entries in

the stanza (1=, 2=, and so on) are the different limits that will appear in the list. The information that you type after each variable is the description that will appear in the drop-down list.

### **Limit Definition Stanzas**

Each remaining stanza describes each limit in turn. The name of each stanza should be the **exact** name that you entered in the [Simple\_Limits] stanza. The limit is defined by creating a list of limits under each stanza that will all be applied when that name is selected. You may have as many limits appear in a stanza as you want. For example, if you wanted a limit that would be "Musical Scores in French but published in the United States, stored at the Hagstrom Law Library," you would have a stanza that read:

Example: [Musical Scores in French, published in America...]

Example: 1=TYPE=cm

Example: 2=LANG=FRE

Example: 3=PLAC=xxu

Example: 4=LOCA=Hagstrom Law Lib.

Each stanza is made up of a numbered list of limit types and the limit to be imposed. Each list entry starts with the line number. Following the number and equals sign is a pair of expressions: **[Limit Type]=[Limit Code (or Name)]**. For example, a line might read:

Example: 1=LANG=CHI

The **Limit Type** is used to specify what kind of limit this entry is to be (i.e., Date, Language, Location, Medium, Place, Status, Item Type). The Limit Type must be in all capital letters; lowercase is not allowed. The Limit Type must be one of the following:

DATE	Date
LANG	Language
LOCA	Location
MEDI	Medium
PLAC	Place

---

STAT Status  
TYPE Item Type

For Language, Medium, Type, Status and Place limits, the **Limit Code (or Name)** is the identifying string of between one and three characters that refers to the specific limit. This code can be found in either the limits.ini file. For Location type limits, the full Location Limit Name (as defined in the System Administration module) is used.

- For Language, Medium, Type, Status and Place limits, the limit codes are all listed in the limits.ini. Under each of those respective stanzas in the limits.ini is a list of limit codes. The code in each line is the string that precedes the name of a particular limit. For example, for a Medium limit of Map, you would look for Map in the Medium Limits stanza, for which the limit code is **a**.
- The list of Location limits comes from the **Location Limit Name** field of each location limit group on the **System> Location Limit Groups** dialog in the System Administration module. Any limit groups in the list that do not have the **Suppress in OPAC** button pressed will be available to select as limits in WebVoyáge. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.
- The Date limit cannot be configured. Simply enter the dates between which you want to search, separated by a hyphen. To indicate a date before or after which you want results, enter -Date or -Date to specify "up to" or "after." The dates must be in four digit form. For example:

Example: 1=DATE=1990-2000

(e.g., between 1990 and 2000)

or

Example: 1=DATE=-1990

(e.g., before 1990)

Below is the Limits screen, as defined by the above example.

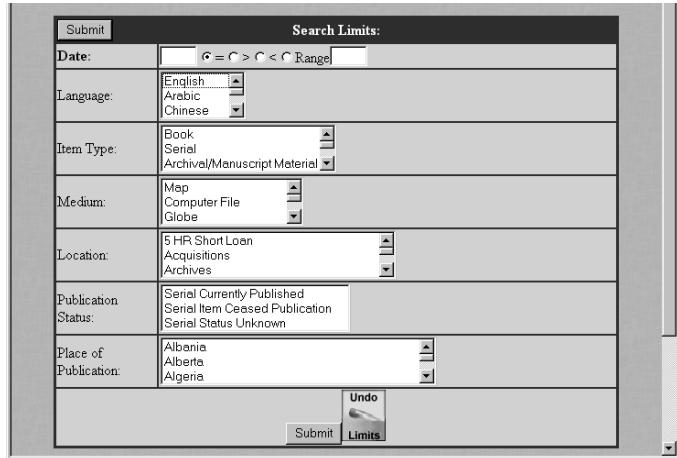


Figure 3-69. Limits Screen

### Map-Related Limits in Limits.ini

This feature may not be available if your institution does not have the Geospatial Searching tools.

Map-related limits appear after the Map Projection Limits, Map Date Type Limits, Map Class Classification, Map Release Classification, and Map Type Classification stanzas.

You can edit the information that will appear in each list of search criteria on the Search Limits screen. The information that appears to the right of the code in each line is the description that will appear in the lists on the Search Limits screen in WebVoyage.

Editing the map-related limits in the limits.ini is done the same way as for the Language Limits, Medium Limits, Type Limits, Status Limits, and Place Limits stanzas.

- Do **not** edit the stanza names (the text that appears in brackets: [ and ]). These are required by WebVoyage. Editing these will cause WebVoyage to behave unpredictably.
- You should generally **not** edit the code that immediately follows the equals sign. The code that follows the equals sign is the string that WebVoyage will look for in the fields of your MARC record. This means that, in order for a limit to be a useful option, you should make sure that the code that you enter is a code that you use in your MARC records.

- 
- You may edit the text that follows the code on each numbered line. This is the description for that limit that will appear in WebVoyage.

```
#####
#####          MAP LIMITS          #####
#####

[Map Projection Limits]
Counter=45
1=__ Projection not specified
2=aa Aitoff
3=ab Gnomic
4=ac Lambert's azimuthal equal area
5=ad Orthographic
etc.

[Map Date Type Limits]
Counter=6
1=COM Completion Date
2=EDI Edition Date
3=REP Reprint Date
4=SUR Survey Date
5=REC Receipt Date
6=REV Revision Date

[Map Class Classification]
Counter=8
1=CLS1 Class 1
2=CLS2 Class 2
3=CLS3 Class 3
4=CLS4 Class 4
5=CLS5 Class 5
etc.

[Map Release Classification]
Counter=11
1=NOB Nobody
2=SOM Somebody
3=ANB Almost nobody
4=AAB Almost anybody
5=TG This guy
etc.

[Map Type Classification]
Counter=9
1=TYP1 Type 1
2=TYP2 Type 2
3=TYP3 Type 3
4=TYP4 Type 4
5=TYP5 Type 5
etc.
```

---

**Figure 3-70. Sample Map-Related Stanzas of the LIMITS.INI File**

The above limits.ini would produce a Search Limits screen that would resemble the following:

---



**Figure 3-71. Sample Map-Related Search Limits Display**

### \*.HTM Files

---

\*.htm files are used by WebVoyage for a variety of reasons and in a variety of different circumstances. Some \*.htm files contain error, assistance or block messages that, when an error occurs, are displayed within the contents of other pages within WebVoyage; some correspond to pre-built individual context-sensitive help pages that display when a user clicks the **Help** button on any page within WebVoyage; some contain general information that is used on a number of pages in WebVoyage; and some \*.htm files correspond to other pre-built pages that can be connected to through buttons on the WebVoyage toolbars or the WebVoyage introduction page. You can modify or delete everything in the \*.htm files.

### Error, Assistance and Block Messages

The following \*.htm files correspond mainly to error, assistance or block messages that, when an error occurs, are displayed within the contents of other pages within WebVoyage. You can modify or delete everything in these \*.htm files, including changing the text the font size or color, position, and so on. You can include anything in the \*.htm files, including Java/JavaScript (and VBSCRIPT

---

with 20 lines of text maximum). However, **do not** include <BODY>, <FORM>, </FORM>, or </BODY> tags because WebVoyage provides these when the pages are dynamically built. Each line in these files must not be longer than 80 bytes (characters) and each file may contain no more than 20 lines. In addition, you cannot change where these messages display on the built WebVoyage pages. Use standard HTML codes to modify these files. These files are located in the /ml/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage subdirectories (/local, /Z3950, /vcit, and /zcit).

You may not want some of the messages from some of the files in these directories displayed. In this case, find the file name of the message you wish to disable and rename it with a .bak extension. Rename it, instead of deleting it, so you can change the extension back later if you decide to use it. For example, if you do not want the "There are no attachments for this record" message to display, rename the "noattmsg.htm" file to "noattmsg.bak".

Note that information contained in parenthesis in the Default Message column is not part of the default message.

**Table 3-18. Error Messages (Page 1 of 4)**

FILE	DEFAULT MESSAGE
arsblock1.htm	Your Patron Initiated Retrieval System Request failed. This item is not a Remote Storage item.
arsblock2.htm	Your Patron Initiated Retrieval System Request failed. This item has already been requested from Remote Storage.
arsblock3.htm	Your Patron Initiated Retrieval System Request failed. This item is not available for Remote Storage request.
arsnoitems.htm	Your Patron Initiated Automated Retrieval System Request failed. No items are available for Remote Storage request.
badformmsg.htm	The system could not interpret your search statement.
callslipblock1.htm	Your Patron Initiated Call Slip Request failed. You have placed the maximum number of Call Slip requests.
callslipblock2.htm	Your Patron Initiated Call Slip Request failed. You are not authorized to place a Call Slip request for this item.
callslipblock3.htm	Your Patron Initiated Call Slip Request failed. You already have a Call Slip request for this item.
callslipblock4.htm	Your Patron Initiated Call Slip Request failed. This item is not available for Call Slip requests.
callslipnoitems.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. No items are available for Call Slip requests.
failedmsg.htm	Your search failed!

**Table 3-18. Error Messages (Page 2 of 4)**

<b>FILE</b>	<b>DEFAULT MESSAGE</b>
failmsg.htm	Your Email Request failed!
ht_combinedsearch.htm	Informational text for Combined/Simple search
ht_buildersearch.htm	Informational text for Builder/Boolean search
ht_coursereserve.htm	Informational text for Course Reserve search
ht_geosearch_1.htm	Informational text for Rectangle map search
ht_geosearch_2.htm	Informational text for Polygon map search
ht_geosearch_3.htm	Informational text for Point and Radius map search
ht_geosearch_4.htm	Informational text for Corridor/Route map search
ht_geosearch_5.htm	Informational text for Range map search
limitmsg.htm	Search Limits are in effect!
logonidmsg.htm	Please enter your Institution ID and Last Name, then click the OK button.
logonmsg.htm	Please enter your Patron Barcode and Last Name, then click the OK button.
logonsocmsg.htm	Please enter your Social Security Number and Last Name, then click the OK button.
mailmsg.htm	Your Email was sent correctly.
noattmsg.htm	There are no Attachments for this record.
nohitsmsg.htm	Your search resulted in no hits!
noholdmsg.htm	No holdings available - check at Circulation Desk.
norequests.htm	You have no requests available on this database.
note.htm	Scope Notes
notimemsg.htm	You timed out during your search!
notocmsg.htm	There is no Table of Contents for this record.

---

**Table 3-18. Error Messages (Page 3 of 4)**

FILE	DEFAULT MESSAGE
patroniidmsg.htm	You may not have entered your institution id and name correctly. Retry your request or ask for help at the Circulation or Reference Desk.
patronmsg.htm	You may not have entered your barcode and name correctly. Retry your request or ask for help at the Circulation or Reference Desk.
patronsoc-msg.htm	You may not have entered your social security number and name correctly. Retry your request or ask for help at the Circulation or Reference Desk.
refer.htm	The references listed below may also contain information related to your search. References may include:
reqblok1.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. No Holdings Are Available.
reqblok2.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. It is on order.
reqblok3.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. It is not charged.
reqblok4.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. It is missing.
reqblok5.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. It is Lost.
reqblok6.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. It is at the bindery.
reqblok7.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. No items are available for recall.
reqblok8.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. You already have a request for it.
reqblok9.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. No recall policy is defined for this item.
reqblok10.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. No hold policy is defined for this item.
reqblok11.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. This item has been scheduled through media booking.
reqblok12.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. This item is not available for Hold.
reqbloknoin-items.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed. No items are available for Hold requests.
reqfail.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request failed.
reqgood.htm	Your Patron Initiated Request was successful.
reqsel.htm	Please Choose the Type of Request
setlimmsg.htm	Help text for limiting a search

**Table 3-18. Error Messages (Page 4 of 4)**

FILE	DEFAULT MESSAGE
truncmsg.htm	Your search was truncated!
validateitemsg.htm	The barcode you entered does not match that of the currently logged in patron. You may retry your request or log out and start over.
weberr.htm	The Online Public Access Catalog is not available. Please contact the library.

**Help Pages**

Each page within WebVoyage has a corresponding help page that can be displayed by clicking the Help button or Help link text. The following \*.htm files correspond to pre-built individual context-sensitive help pages that display when a user clicks the Help button or Help link text from specific pages within WebVoyage. You can modify or delete everything in these files. These files are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/help directory.

**Table 3-19. Help Pages (Page 1 of 3)**

FILE	DESCRIPTION
bookbag.htm	Bookbag help page
buildersearch.htm	Builder (Boolean) Search help page
callslip.htm	Call Slip Request help page
combinedsearch.htm	Combined Search help page
contents.htm	WebVoyage Help Contents page
coursereservesearch.htm	Course Reserve Search help page
database.htm	Database Connections help page
disphlp1.htm	Bibliographic Details (Record Display) help page
disphlp2.htm	Holdings Display (Record Display) help page
disphlp3.htm	Table of Contents (Record Display) help page
disphlp4.htm	Linked Resources (Record Display) help page
disphlp5.htm	MARC Format (Record Display) help page
headings.htm	Headings Index help page
history.htm	Search History help page

---

**Table 3-19. Help Pages (Page 2 of 3)**

FILE	DESCRIPTION
hdlrc1.htm	Hold/Recall Request help page
icons.htm	WebVoyage Icons help page
libinfo.htm	Library Information help page
limits.htm	Limiting a Search help page
login.htm	Patron Login help page
map_srch.htm	Map Searching (Geospatial) help page
myopac.htm	MyOPAC help page
patron.htm	Patron Information help page
pin.htm	Personal Identification Number help page
preferences.htm	Preferences help page
purchase.htm	Purchase Order Request help page
refer.htm	References help page
remote.htm	Remote Library Selection help page (Remote button)
request.htm	Request Selection help page
savedsearch.htm	Saved Searches help page
sdi.htm	Selective Dissemination of Information help page
status.htm	Status bar (links at bottom of pages) help page
titles.htm	Titles Index help page
default_ns.css	Cascading Style Sheet for use with the Netscape browser.  <b>NOTE:</b> Not officially supported but you can use this stylesheet to change the appearance of the help page background color and text to mimic your site's WebVoyage color scheme. To disable, rename file.

**Table 3-19. Help Pages (Page 3 of 3)**

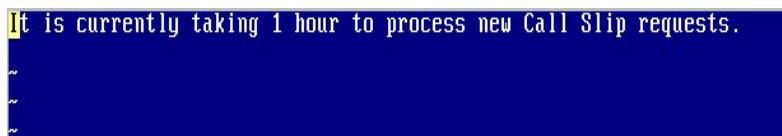
FILE	DESCRIPTION
default.css	Cascading Style Sheet for use with browsers other than Netscape.  <b>NOTE:</b> Not officially supported but you can use this stylesheet to change the appearance of the help page background color and text to mimic your site's WebVoyage color scheme. To disable, rename file.

## Other Pages

The following files correspond to content that can be displayed from WebVoyage. The webvoy.htm, webconerr.htm, libinfo.htm, and remote.htm files all are located in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html directory. The dbselmsg.htm, footer.htm and header.htm files are located in the /m1/voyage/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory.

### callslipmsg\_CODE.htm

The callslipmsg\_CODE.htm file contains the content of the call slip request message where "CODE" is the Message Code entered on the Call Slip Request Messages dialog box. See OPAC Call Slip Request Messages in the Voyager System Administration User's Guide for more information.



---

**Figure 3-72. Callslipmsg\_CODE.htm message file**

One message file is required for each code created through the **Call Slip Request Messages** function. The message files are stored on the WebVoyage server in .../etc/webvoyage/local/.

See also the *Voyager Circulation User's Guide* for information about how to select a specific call-slip-related message to display to patrons.

---

**NOTE:**

You must create `callslipmsg_CODE.htm` files from scratch if implementing Call Slip Suspension Messages (2001.1+).

Like many of the \*.htm files for WebVoyage, this is a fragment which WebVoyage.cgi pulls and inserts into the dynamically-generated HTML which you see in WebVoyage. Therefore, you should never place `<html>`, `<head>`, or `<body>` tags into these files the resulting dynamically-generated HTML would have doubles of these tags, which is against http's rules for Web display.

Apart from this, any standard HTML may be used, or the user may simply choose to enter a text statement with no HTML formatting commands.



#### **Procedure 3-4. Creating a Message**

---

Use the following steps to create the message

1. From the Voyager System Administration Module, select **OPAC Configuration > Call Slip Request Messages > New**. Create your message here and take note of the Message Code that you've assigned. Do not forget to select the **Suspension Message** check box.
  2. Connect and log in to your server as voyager (using Telnet, for example).
  3. Go to `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local`
  4. Using a text editor such as `vi`, edit the `callslipmsg_CODE.htm` (where CODE corresponds to the Message Code entered into the System Administration Module, see step 1).
  5. Type in your message, with or without HTML tags for formatting (see Figure 3-73 and Figure 3-74).
  6. When finished, save the file (in `vi`, press the **Esc** key, type `:wq!`, and press Enter).
- 

The Call Slip service will not be available today. Please try again tomorrow. If you have any questions, please contact the library.

---

**Figure 3-73. Sample message without HTML formatting tags**

```
<blockquote>
<font face="Arial" color="#0000ff"><h2>IMPORTANT!</h2></font><br>
<h3><font face="Garamond"><b>The Call Slip service will not be available
today.</b> Please try again tomorrow.<br>
<i>If you have any questions, please contact the library.</i></h3>
</blockquote>
```

---

**Figure 3-74. Sample message containing HTML formatting tags**

#### **dbselmsg.htm**

The dbselmsg.htm file controls the instructional text that appears at the top of the database selection page in WebVoyage. The database selection page displays when a user clicks the Database button on the toolbar that appear on most WebVoyage pages. The Database button will not appear on the toolbar in WebVoyage unless it is added to one of the toolbars (see [Toolbar Top and Toolbar Bottom Stanzas](#) on [page 3-66](#) for more information).

#### **footer.htm**

The footer.htm file contains the information that will be displayed at the bottom of each “generated” WebVoyage page (i.e., all pages except for webvoy.htm, remote.htm and libinfo.htm). This file can contain any text or images that your institution may want to display. If nothing is entered in this file, nothing will display onscreen.

#### **header.htm**

The header.htm file contains the information that will be displayed at the top of each “generated” WebVoyage page (i.e., all pages except for webvoy.htm, remote.htm and libinfo.htm). This file can contain any text or images that your institution may want to display. If nothing is entered in this file, nothing will display onscreen.

#### **libinfo.htm**

The libinfo.htm file corresponds to a page on which information about your library (for example, hours of operation) can be displayed. Your library can customize how this page displays and what information it contains. This library information page will display when a user presses the Library button on the WebVoyage toolbar or, if your library is using the webvoy.htm as a WebVoyage introduction page, when a user clicks the Library Information button on the WebVoyage introduction page. If you would like to use the libinfo.htm file as the library

---

information page that displays when the Library button is pressed on the toolbar, you must add it to one of the toolbars (see [Toolbar Top and Toolbar Bottom Stanzas on page 3-66](#) for more information).

### **remote.htm**

The remote.htm file corresponds to a page on which links to other sites (for example, other libraries' home pages) can be displayed. Your library can customize how this page displays and what information it contains. This page will display when a user presses the Remote button on the WebVoyage toolbar or, if your library is using the webvoy.htm as an introduction page, when a user clicks the Remote Libraries button on the WebVoyage introduction page. If you would like the remote.htm file to be called up when the Remote button is pressed on the WebVoyage toolbar, you must add it to one of the toolbars (see [Toolbar Top and Toolbar Bottom Stanzas on page 3-66](#) for more information).

### **webconerr.htm**

The webconerr.htm file corresponds to an error page that can be customized and used by your institution. This error page will display when WebVoyage times out or when any WebVoyage failure occurs. If you would like to use the webconerr.htm file as your error page, you must specify it after the *ErrorFile* variable in the [WebRecon] stanza of the opac.ini file (see [ErrorFile on page 3-79](#) for more information).

### **webvoy.htm**

The webvoy.htm file corresponds to a WebVoyage introduction and/or exit page that can be used by your institution. The introduction page will display when WebVoyage is launched and the exit page will display when a user clicks the Exit button or the large WebVoyage button at the top of most pages within WebVoyage. You can modify or delete everything in this file. In order for the Web Server to load WebVoyage's default introduction page, you must add webvoy.htm to the DirectoryIndex entry in:

/usr/local/apache/conf/httpd.conf

Example:

```
DirectoryIndex webvoy.htm index.html
```

If you would like to use the webvoy.htm file as your exit page, you must specify it after the *ExitPage* variable in the [WebRecon] stanza of the WebVoyage.ini (see page 79 for more information).

## Image Files

You can customize many of the images within WebVoyage. The /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory initially contains all of the image files as they are distributed. You can substitute your own \*.gif files for the \*.gif files that Endeavor provides. However, you must give the substitute \*.gif file the exact same name as the original \*.gif file. The following table lists all of the image files that are contained within the above mentioned directory. The *d-* or *Disabled* prefix means it is the image of a button in its depressed or unavailable state (for example, d-head.gif or DisabledHeadings.gif). The *s-* or *Up* prefix means it is the image of a button in its raised, unpressed or available state (for example, s-head.gif or UpHeadings.gif). The *u-* or *Down* prefix means it is the image of a button in its flat or unavailable or disabled state (for example, u-head.gif or DownHeadings.gif). Not all buttons or links have all three states.

**Table 3-20. Image Files (Page 1 of 7)**

NAME	DESCRIPTION
back2recd.gif	button that takes you back to the record after a request has been attempted.
banner.gif	button at very top of most WebVoyage pages that takes you to the WebVoyage exit page or to the location that is specified after the <i>ExitPage</i> variable in the [WebRecon] stanza of the WebVoyage.ini file (see <a href="#">3-6</a> for more information).
bg4.gif	image that can be used as the background of WebVoyage pages (see “ <i>Html_Body</i> stanza” of the WebVoyage.ini file on page <a href="#">for</a> information about customizing the background of WebVoyage pages).
bt_point.gif	point and radius search button (in its available state) that appears on the map searching page.
bt_polygon.gif	polygon search button (in its available state) that appears on the map searching page.
bt_range.gif	range search button (in its available state) that appears on the map searching page.
bt_rectangle.gif	rectangle search button (in its available state) that appears on the map searching page.
bt_route.gif	corridor/route search button (in its available state) that appears on the map searching page.
clear.gif	clear search limits button (in its available state) on the limits page and on a search page after limits have been set.
database.gif	remote libraries button on webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for more information about the webvoy.htm page).

---

**Table 3-20. Image Files (Page 2 of 7)**

d_bt_point.gif	point and radius search button (in its disabled state) that appears on the map searching page.
d_bt_polygon.gif	polygon search button (in its disabled state) that appears on the map searching page.
d_bt_range.gif	range search button (in its disabled state) that appears on the map searching page.
d_bt_rectangle.gif	rectangle search button (in its disabled state) that appears on the map searching page.
d_bt_route.gif	corridor/route search button (in its disabled state) that appears on the map searching page.
DisabledDatabase.gif	database button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Database page. Used in conjunction with DownDatabase.gif and UpDatabase.gif.
DisabledExit.gif	exit button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would restart WebVoyage. Used in conjunction with DownExit.gif and UpExit.gif.
DisabledHeadings.gif	headings button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the headings list page. Used in conjunction with DownHeadings.gif and UpHeadings.gif.
DisabledHelp.gif	help button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the relevant help page. Used in conjunction with DownHelp.gif and UpHelp.gif.
DisabledHistory.gif	history button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Search History page. Used in conjunction with DownHistory.gif and UpHistory.gif.
DisabledLibrary.gif	library button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Library Information page. Used in conjunction with DownLibrary.gif and UpLibrary.gif.
DisabledLogin.gif	login button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Patron Login page. Used in conjunction with DownLogin.gif, UpLogin.gif and UpLogout.gif.
DisabledPatron.gif	patron button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Patron Information page. Used in conjunction with DownPatron.gif and UpPatron.gif.
Disable-dRemote.gif	remote button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Remote Databases page. Used in conjunction with DownRemote.gif and UpRemote.gif.

**Table 3-20. Image Files (Page 3 of 7)**

Disable-dRequest.gif	request button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Request Type page. Used in conjunction with DownRequest.gif and UpRequest.gif.
Disabled-Search.gif	search button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Search page. Used in conjunction with DownSearch.gif and UpSearch.gif.
DisabledTitles.gif	titles button (in its disabled state) in the toolbar that otherwise would take you to the Title List page. Used in conjunction with DownTitles.gif and UpTitles.gif.
d-next.gif	next button (in its disabled state) on all search result indexes and record displays that takes you to the next entries in the index or the next record.
DownDatabase.gif	database button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Database page. Used in conjunction with DisabledDatabase.gif and UpDatabase.gif.
DownExit.gif	exit button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would restart WebVoyage. Used in conjunction with DisabledExit.gif and UpExit.gif.
DownHeadings.gif	exit button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Headings List page. Used in conjunction with DisabledDatabase.gif and UpDatabase.gif.
DownHelp.gif	help button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the relevant Help page. Used in conjunction with DisabledHelp.gif and UpHelp.gif.
DownHistory.gif	history button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Search History page. Used in conjunction with DisabledHistory.gif and UpHistory.gif.
DownLibrary.gif	library button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Library Information page. Used in conjunction with DisabledLibrary.gif and UpLibrary.gif.
DownLogin.gif	login button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Patron Login page. Used in conjunction with DisabledLogin.gif, UpLogin.gif and UpLogout.gif.
DownPatron.gif	patron button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Patron Information page. Used in conjunction with DisabledPatron.gif and UpPatron.gif.
DownRemote.gif	remote button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Remote Databases page. Used in conjunction with DisabledRemote.gif and UpRemote.gif.

---

**Table 3-20. Image Files (Page 4 of 7)**

DownRequest.gif	request button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Request Type page. Used in conjunction with DisabledRequest.gif and UpRequest.gif.
DownSearch.gif	search button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Search page. Used in conjunction with DisabledSearch.gif and UpSearch.gif.
DownTitles.gif	request button (in its unavailable state) that otherwise would take you to the Request Type page. Used in conjunction with DisabledTitles.gif and UpTitles.gif.
d-prev.gif	previous button (in its disabled state) on all search result indexes and record displays that takes you to the next entries in the index or the next record.
eisi.gif	Endeavor logo that appears at the bottom of the webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
email.gif	email button in the Save Options box - sends selected information to an email account.
footer.gif	image that displays at the bottom of all of the generated screens (i.e., not in webvoy.htm, libinfo.htm or remote.htm).
help.gif	help button on the webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
libinfo.gif	library information button on the webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
limit.gif	search limits button on the search pages that takes you to the search limits page.
locat.gif	local catalog button on the webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
logo.gif	large logo at the top of the webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
note.gif	note link that displays beside entries in a Headings Index that have scope notes.
patinfo.gif	patron information button on the webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
point_ll.gif	lower-left coordinate graphic that appears on the map search page.
point_ur.gif	upper-right coordinate graphic that appears on the map search page.

**Table 3-20. Image Files (Page 5 of 7)**

range_horz.gif	horizontal range coordinates graphic that appears on the map search page.
range_vert.gif	vertical range coordinates graphic that appears on the map search page.
remote.gif	remote button on the webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
save.gif	save button in the Save Options box - saves the selected information to a file.
search.gif	search button on webvoy.htm page (see <a href="#">webvoy.htm</a> on <a href="#">page 3-208</a> for information about the webvoy.htm file).
seealso.gif	see also link that displays beside entries in a Headings Index that either have references or references and scope notes.
s-next.gif	next button (in its available state) on all search result indexes and record displays that takes you to the next page of entries in the index or the next record.
s-prev.gif	previous button (in its available state) on all search result indexes and record displays that takes you to the previous page of entries in the index or the next record.
s-rel1.gif	image of single bar indicating the highest level of relevance (i.e., this image is repeated five times to create five relevance measurement units) - used to display the amount of relevance a particular result has for a keyword/relevance search (for example, if dots were being used as the relevance measurement unit, five dot).
s-rel1h.gif	image of one-half bar indicating four and one-half relevance measurement units (i.e., this image is used when 5 1/2 relevance units are to be displayed) - used to display the amount of relevance a particular result has for a keyword/relevance search (for example, if dots were being used as the relevance measurement unit, four and one-half dots).
s-rel2.gif	image used to display four relevance measurement units.
s-rel2h.gif	image used to display the one-half part of three and one-half relevance measurement units.
s-rel3.gif	image used to display three relevance measurement units.
s-rel3h.gif	image used to display the one-half part of two and one-half relevance measurement units.
s-rel4.gif	image used to display two relevance measurement units.
s-rel4h.gif	image used to display the one-half part of four and one-half relevance measurement units.

---

**Table 3-20. Image Files (Page 6 of 7)**

s-rel5.gif	image used to display one relevance measurement unit.
s-rel5h.gif	image used to display one-half of one relevance measurement unit (lowest level of relevance).
UpDatabase.gif	database button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Database page. Used in conjunction with DisabledDatabase.gif and DownDatabase.gif.
UpExit.gif	exit button (in its available state) on the toolbar that restarts Web-Voyage. Used in conjunction with DisabledExit.gif and DownExit.gif.
UpHeadings.gif	headings button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Headings List page. Used in conjunction with DisabledHeadings.gif and DownHeadings.gif.
UpHelp.gif	help button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the appropriate Help page. Used in conjunction with DisabledHelp.gif and DownHelp.gif.
UpHistory.gif	history button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Search History page. Used in conjunction with DisabledHistory.gif and DownHistory.gif.
UpLibrary.gif	library button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Library page. Used in conjunction with DisabledLibrary.gif and DownLibrary.gif.
UpLogin.gif	login button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Patron Login page. Used in conjunction with DisabledLogin.gif, DownLogin.gif and UpLogout.gif.
UpLogout.gif	logout button (in its available state) on the toolbar that logs the patron out of WebVoyage. Used in conjunction with DisabledDatabase.gif, DownDatabase.gif and UpDatabase.gif.
UpPatron.gif	patron button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Patron Information page. Used in conjunction with DisabledPatron.gif and DownPatron.gif.
UpRemote.gif	remote button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Remote Databases page. Used in conjunction with DisabledRemote.gif and DownRemote.gif.
UpRequest.gif	request button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Request Type page. Used in conjunction with DisabledRequest.gif and DownRequest.gif.
UpSearch.gif	search button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Search page. Used in conjunction with DisabledSearch.gif and DownSearch.gif.

**Table 3-20. Image Files (Page 7 of 7)**

UpTitles.gif	titles button (in its available state) on the toolbar that takes you to the Title List page. Used in conjunction with DisabledTitles.gif and DownTitles.gif.
view1.gif	first button on an item's record display (in its raised state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display1.cfg file.
view1a.gif	first button on an item's record display (in its disabled state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display1.cfg file (for example, Bibliographic Information).
view2.gif	second button on an item's record display (in its raised state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display2.cfg file (for example, Holdings Information).
view2a.gif	second button on an item's record display (in its disabled state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display2.cfg file (for example, Holdings Information).
view3.gif	third button on an item's record display in its (raised state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display3.cfg file (for example, Table of Contents).
view3a.gif	third button on an item's record display (in its disabled state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display3.cfg file (for example, Table of Contents).
view4.gif	fourth button on an item's record display (in its raised state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display4.cfg file (for example, Linked Resources).
view4a.gif	fourth button on an item's record display (in its disabled state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display4.cfg file (for example, Linked Resources).
view5.gif	fifth button on an item's record display (in its raised state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display5.cfg file (for example, MARC View).
view5a.gif	fifth button on an item's record display (in its disabled state) - displays information that corresponds to the data within the display5.cfg file (for example, MARC View).

## DISPLAY.INI

The display.ini file specifies the names, order, and alternate text for the Record Details display. The display.ini file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /Z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

---

The numeric variable names correspond directly to the *displayn.cfg* files (described on page 216). Thus, the variable named 1 corresponds to the *display1.cfg* file.

You can modify all data elements in this configuration file. In addition, you can delete any variable name and its corresponding data element. However, if you delete a variable name and its corresponding data element, you will prohibit your users from accessing information listed in the corresponding *displayn.cfg*.

---

```
[Display]
Count=3
1=Short View
2=Detailed View
3=MARC21 Format
```

---

**Figure 3-75. Sample DISPLAY.INI file**

To edit the [Display] stanza, type a character (i.e. Type 1 or a for the first tab), then an equals sign (=), followed by the name of the tab as you want it to display in the Record Display.

Repeat the above instructions for each tab that you want to display. Be sure not to use the same character for the variable names. The order (from the top of the file) that the tabs are typed is the order (from the left) that the tabs will display. In addition, the numeric value assigned to each tab name based on this position is the number that must be used for the associated *displayn.cfg* file.

For example, if your institution deletes the last line (3=US MARC Format), the user will not be able to access the MARC View, as defined in *display3.cfg*, for any record retrieved from WebVoyáge.

## DISPLAYN.CFG

The *displayn.ini* file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/ webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

When a user selects a record entry from a WebVoyáge index to display the record's detail, the system looks for data in the MARC bibliographic record, the MARC holdings record, the line item in the purchase order, and the item record. Whenever any of these records are present, the system displays data based on a variety of factors including:

- Definitions in the \*.ini and \*.cfg files (described in this section)

- Available data in the MARC bibliographic record
- Available data in the linked MARC holdings record(s)
- Available data in the linked line item copy or copies of a purchase order(s)
- Available data in the linked item record(s)

However, before the system constructs a display from this data, it first considers whether or not records have been set for suppression from WebVoyage displays. This is ALWAYS accomplished by the manual or automatic setting of the Suppress from OPAC values in either the MARC bibliographic record or the MARC holdings record, or both.

The displayn.cfg files dictate the information that displays in the Record Details in the OPAC.

The displayn.cfg files, along with the print.cfg, save.cfg, and email.cfg files, can contain any tag, indicator, subfield combination from a MARC Bibliographic record, as well as text labels for those combinations.

In addition, the file can contain one of the following codes:

- 2000 Table of Contents (505 subfields a, r, t, g)
- 3000 856 Links (Linked Resources from 856 field)
- 4000 Marc record
- 5000 Database name of Bib Record
- 9000 Holdings Information, which is defined in the displayh.cfg (see page 229 for more information).
- 9500 Display Holdings Summary information.

In order to display Unicode characters in WebVoyage, you will need to use a web browser capable of supporting the UTF8 encoding scheme. Both Microsoft Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator introduced Unicode capabilities with versions 4.0. However, it may be necessary for you to enable support for the UTF8 encoding scheme in your web browser. For more information, see Appendix I: UNICODE in the this User's Guide.

You can modify or delete everything in the displayn.cfg files. However, deleting certain information could disable your patrons from accessing available information about your bibliographic information. A sample displayn.cfg file is shown in [Figure 3-76 on page 3-219](#).

For each label, you assign one or more MARC field tags, indicator values, and subfields. You may add other labels, change any already supplied, or delete any already supplied, reassign field tags/subfields to other labels, remove subfields, add subfields, specify different indicator values, etc. You can also reorder the

---

labels to suit your needs, reorder the sequence of multiple fields displaying under one label, or split out the grouped field tags with individual labels. If you want, you can completely redo the entire configuration although Endeavor believes that you will only need to edit these to meet local needs rather than completely redo them.

You can also add a hypertext title link to the WebVoyage display of author, title, subject or call number fields. After the end of the tag subfields for which you want a link, add a T (for title), S (subject), A (Author), D (Date) or C (call number) and the subfields for the hypertext. See [Search Re-directs on page 3-220](#) for more information.

Example:

Supersedes:

780 02 at T t

780 03 at T t

In the following .cfg files, "XX" indicates that any indicator values apply. To indicate a blank, use the pipe or vertical bar ( | ). Notice the labels used for the 000, 006, 007, and 008 fields. When the system finds these byte position values in the MARC record, it then uses the displayn.cfg file to supply the labels, and then retrieves the actual text descriptor from the marcinfo.ini file (see page 177).

To display bibliographic information in the Record Display, in the appropriate displayn.cfg file, specify the following:

1. Type the label for the bibliographic information as you want it to display in the Record Display. This label should be typed flush against the left margin.
2. Optional: You can also include textual messages to display when no information is returned for a particular label. After the label, type a space followed by a plus sign (+) and then the message that you want displayed. For example, typing *+No Data Available* after the Holdings Information label will display that message when no information is available from the MARC holdings record.

**NOTE:**

Be aware that the system uses the textual messages for all records, e.g., if you added "+No recent issues received" as a display constant for the "Recent Issues" label (information that displays from a serial receipt history, not the MARC holdings record), that display constant would appear for all monographic materials as well since they do not have serial receipt histories.

3. Type the appropriate code (as listed above) or the MARC bibliographic tag, followed by the indicators (use XX if the indicator values can be anything), indicators, and subfields in the format below:

100 XX aq

This line must be indented 3 spaces from the left margin.

If no there is no information associated with the code or MARC tag, then nothing will display (including the label), unless information is included after the plus sign (see step 2).

You can leave up to one blank line between all labels and codes or tags. If you insert more than one blank line, only one blank line will display.

Repeat the above instructions for all the bibliographic information that you want to display. A sample displayn.cfg file is shown below.

---

```
Main Author:  
    100 XX aq  
    110 XX ab  
  
Title:  
    130 XX aplskf  
    240 XX aplskf  
    245 XX ab  
  
Primary Material:  
    000 06 2  
  
Physical Description:  
    007 00 1  
  
Includes:  
    006 00 1  
  
Holdings Information: +No Data      --->  
Available--Ask at Reference  
9000
```

---

**Figure 3-76. Sample display.cfg File**

### Search Re-directs

You can re-direct your searches by adding a hypertext link for Author, Title, Subject, Call Number, and Date after your search display information. After the search display config information, add a space and enter an A(author), T(title), S(subject), C(callnumber), or D(date) and the subfields in which you want to build

---

a hypertext linked display. The search responds however you have your searches set up in the opac.ini file (left-anchored and so on). For example, in the example below, a hypertext link for an Author search was created for the 100 field and will build a display from subfield a and q. The 110 field contains a hypertext link for an Author search and builds a display from subfields a and b (and so on - see Title example below). After the display information, insert a space (in the appropriate stanza for Author, Title, Subject, Call Number, or Date) and the appropriate letter (A, T, S, C, D) and the subfields in which to build your search display.

**NOTE:**

If a particular search is not included on the Builder Search tab, no hypertext link will display for that subfield.

---

```
Main Author:  
100 XX aq A aq  
110 XX ab A ab  
Title:  
130 XX aplskf T apl  
240 XX aplskf T apl  
245 XX ab T apl
```

---

**Figure 3-77. Sample display.cfg File (hypertext links)**

### Adding Punctuation to a Configuration File

Libraries need not manually input MARC record punctuation, but can instead use the enhanced functionality of display, e-mail, request, and save configuration files to provide for the correct display of records in WebVoyage. For example, the forward slash between the 245 \$b and \$c is added to a display configuration file. When a patron searches for and displays a bibliographic record in WebVoyage, the system uses the appropriate display configuration file to add the punctuation to the record display.

Voyager does not automatically add any punctuation to records. Changing the configuration files to include punctuation allows some sites to forego the manual input of punctuation into MARC records and to customize the display of records in WebVoyage without altering the contents of the records themselves.

Those sites which have added punctuation explicitly will continue to do so without any problems in record display. However, all sites should review their current configuration files in regard to the 240 and 6xx fields. Punctuation for those fields (the brackets for the 240 field and the double hyphens for the 6xx fields) was previously hardcoded for correct display in WebVoyage. In the Voyager 2001.1 release, the punctuation is included in the standard configuration files that all sites receive upon upgrade.

**!** **IMPORTANT:**

*If you have edited any of your configuration files, please do not automatically replace the standard Voyager files with your edited files without first comparing the 240 and 6xx fields.*

In order to display proper punctuation in WebVoyage, several configuration files must be edited to include the punctuation (for a list of these files, see [Configuration Files](#) on [page 3-223](#)). The new syntax which is used to display punctuation in WebVoyage signals the system to look for subfield data in the MARC record and add the punctuation specified in the configuration file.

There are three pieces of information that interact to display punctuation in WebVoyage.

- Punctuation
- Configuration files
- New syntax

In other words, punctuation is added to configuration files using a new syntax to correctly display bibliographic, holdings, and authority information in WebVoyage.

## Punctuation

[Table 3-21](#) lists some examples of punctuation which can be added implicitly by adding the punctuation to the standard configuration files used by Voyager for record display. Voyager does not impose any kind of restriction on the punctuation which can be used for MARC records.

**Table 3-21. Punctuation**

Character	Label
.	Period
;	Semicolon
:	Colon
-	Hyphen

---

**Table 3-21. Punctuation**

Character	Label
(	Left parenthesis
)	Right parenthesis
,)	Comma and right parenthesis
/	Forward slash
+	Plus sign
=	Equal sign
--	Double hyphens
[	Left square bracket
]	Right square bracket
<	Left angle bracket
>	Right angle bracket



**IMPORTANT:**

*The brackets for the 240 field and the double hyphens for 6xx fields will be added to the display configuration files that all sites receive upon upgrading to Voyager 2001.1.*

## Configuration Files

In Voyager, each site can determine what bibliographic, holdings, and authority data should display in WebVoyage. Voyager uses multiple configuration (.cfg) files to properly display MARC record information in WebVoyage. [Table 3-22](#) lists the configuration files to which punctuation can be added.

**Table 3-22. Configuration Files**

File	Description
display1.cfg	Full or abbreviated MARC bibliographic record data
display2.cfg	Full or abbreviated MARC bibliographic record data
display3.cfg	Table of contents (505 field) from bibliographic record
display4.cfg	Linked resources (856 field) from bibliographic record
display5.cfg	MARC view of bibliographic record
displayA1.cfg	Full MARC authority record details. Available to sites who have purchased Web Authorities.

**Table 3-22. Configuration Files**

File	Description
displayA2.cfg	Linked resource (856 field) from authority record. Available to sites who have purchased Web Authorities.
displayA3.cfg	MARC view of authority record. Available to sites who have purchased Web Authorities.
email.cfg	Bibliographic record data that can be e-mailed
emailA.cfg	Authority record data that can be e-mailed. Available to sites who have purchased Web Authorities.
emailh.cfg	MARC holdings record data that can be e-mailed
request.cfg	Bibliographic level requests
requesth.cfg	MARC holdings level requests
save.cfg	Bibliographic record data that can be saved
saveA.cfg	Authority record data that can be saved. Available to sites who have purchased Web Authorities.
saveh.cfg	MARC holdings record data that can be saved

**New Syntax**

Punctuation is added to the configuration files using a new syntax. The new syntax determines how each line of MARC tag information is to be read and displayed in WebVoyage. There are four basic variables which are used by the new syntax.

**Table 3-23. New Syntax**

Symbol	Description
{ Left-hand brace	This symbol indicates the start of a section of a MARC record which has associated punctuation.  The left-hand brace must always be used in a pair with the right-hand brace.  <b>NOTE:</b> If no braces are associated with a particular subfield, the system will insert the text that already exists in the record, without additional punctuation.

---

**Table 3-23. New Syntax**

<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Description</b>
}	This symbol indicates the end of a section of a MARC record which has associated punctuation.  The right-hand brace must always be used in a pair with the left-hand brace.  <b>NOTE:</b> If no braces are associated with a particular subfield, the system will insert the text that already exists in the record, without additional punctuation.
%	This symbol identifies the textual data that already exists within the bibliographic or authority subfield which is to be inserted for display.  The percent sign must always be used with the left- and right-hand braces.
“ ”	These symbols are used to indicate ending punctuation, such as a period.

Voyager reads each line in the configuration file, pulls the corresponding data from the MARC record, adds the designated punctuation, and displays the result in WebVoyage.

Figure 3-78 shows a 650 line from a display configuration file which includes the new syntax and implicit punctuation, followed by a sample 650a and 650x in a record (see Figure 3-79):

---

Subject(s):  
650 xx abcd{v--%}{x--%}{z--%}{y--%}

---

**Figure 3-78. Sample 650 line**

---

650 | | 0 | ‡a Literature ‡x History and criticism.

---

**Figure 3-79. Sample 650a and 650x in record**

Based on the 650 line in the configuration file in Figure 3-78, Voyager displays the 650 information presented in Figure 3-79 as follows:

- Displays the `a` subfield information as it appears in the record.
  - Since there is a `fx`, the information from the `fx` is preceded by double hyphens, followed by the data from the `fx` subfield (see Figure 3-80).
- 

**Subject(s): Literature--History and criticism.**

---

**Figure 3-80. Sample corresponding 650 in WebVoyáge display**

### Syntax Rules

There are a few general rules that must be followed when adding punctuation implicitly to configuration files. These rules provide for the correct WebVoyáge display of the record.

#### Rule 1

An opening brace must always be followed by a closing brace.

Correct:

650 xx abcd{v--%}{x--%}{z--%}{y--%}

Incorrect:

650 xx abcd{v--% {x--% {z--% {y--%

#### Rule 2

Each subfield must be contained within its own pair of braces.

Correct:

650 xx abcd{v--%}{x--%}{z--%}{y--%}

Incorrect:

650 xx abcd{v--% x--% z--% y--%}

---

### Rule 3

If braces are present in a line of a configuration file, the spaces must be added to the configuration file exactly as it should display.

MARC record:

650 xx †a Education buildings †z Washington (D.C.) †y 1890-1910

Correct Spacing in Configuration file:

650 xx abcd{v--%}{x--%}{z--%}{y--%}

Correct WebVoyage display:

Educational buildings--Washington (D.C.)--1890-1910

Incorrect Spacing in Configuration file:

650 xx abcd {v-- %} {x-- %} {z-- %} {y-- %}

Incorrect WebVoyage display:

Educational buildings -- Washington (D.C.) -- 1890-1910

### Rule 4

The next rule accounts for the position of the punctuation in the configuration file. Any implicit punctuation must *follow* the identification of the subfield rather than preceding the subfield delimiter as in the MARC display.

In the examples below, look at the syntax for †v. The system must first identify the subfield, then insert the punctuation (a double hyphen) followed by the subfield data. The same is true for †x, †z, and †y. The system identifies the subfield first, then inserts the punctuation followed by the subfield data.

In other words, reading the configuration line from left to right, the character immediately following a left brace must always be a valid subfield value. This format is required to display the punctuation properly if the identified subfield does not exist in a record.

MARC record:

650 xx †a Education buildings †z Washington (D.C.) †y 1890-1910

Correct Punctuation in Configuration file:

650 xx abcd{v--%}{x--%}{z--%}{y--%.}

Correct WebVoyage display:

Educational buildings--Washington (D.C.)--1890-1910.

Incorrect Punctuation in Configuration file:

650 xx abcd{--v%}{--x%}{--z%}{--y%}

Incorrect WebVoyage display:

Educational buildings

## Rule 5

You can mix implicit and explicit punctuation at the field level. This means sites can add punctuation for most fields implicitly by adding the punctuation to the configuration files. For special situations, however, sites may want to add punctuation explicitly to the MARC record. As long as the implicit punctuation is used for fields other than those used by the explicit punctuation, records will display correctly in WebVoyage.

If you applied implicit punctuation (defined in the configuration file) to a MARC record which contained explicit punctuation (defined in the MARC record) for the same tags, the punctuation will be duplicated in the WebVoyage display.

For example, if the MARC record includes explicit punctuation as:

650 xx #a Education buildings--#z Washington (D.C.)--#y  
1890-1910

and the configuration file includes the line:

650 xx abcd{v--%}{x--%}{z--%}{y--%}

then the record displays in WebVoyage as:

Educational buildings----Washington (D.C.)---1890-1920

## Special Considerations

This change to how Voyager handles punctuation only affects the full record display, not index displays. Any time a patron searches WebVoyage using a headings search, the results display in a headings or index list rather than a title list. If a site chooses to add implicit punctuation to their configuration files, then the index list displays without punctuation. However, any explicit punctuation added to a MARC record will display correctly in WebVoyage.

The following examples illustrate how a 245 tag in a bibliographic record displays in an index list in WebVoyage using implicit punctuation.

For example, if the MARC record includes implicit punctuation:

---

245 xx †a Van Loon's geography †b the story of the world we live in †c written and illustrated by Hendrik Willem van Loon

the titles list displays in WebVoyage as:

Van Loon's geography the story of the world we live in written and  
illustrated by Hendrik Willem van Loon

If the same tag was added to the MARC record with explicit punctuation, that is, the punctuation is manually inserted into the record, the titles list display would include the punctuation.

For example, if the MARC record includes explicit punctuation:

245 xx †a Van Loon's geography : †b the story of the world we live in / †c written and illustrated by Hendrik Willem van Loon

the titles list displays in WebVoyage as:

Van Loon's geography : the story of the world we live in / written and  
illustrated by Hendrik Willem van Loon



### Procedure 3-5. Editing a Configuration File for Punctuation

---

In order to display proper punctuation in WebVoyage, the configuration files must be edited to include the punctuation. The new syntax which is used to display punctuation in WebVoyage signals the system to look for subfield data in the MARC record and add the appropriate punctuation specified in the configuration file.

Punctuation can be added to any of the configuration files listed in [Table 3-22](#) on [page 3-223](#). Basic configuration files for release 2001.1 include the square brackets used by the 240 tag and the double hyphens used by the 6xx fields.

1. Open the configuration file you want to edit.
2. In the appropriate line, add the necessary syntax symbols, subfields, punctuation, and spacing.
3. Save and close the configuration file.
4. Verify that any additions to the configuration files are displaying correctly in WebVoyage.

Continue editing the configuration files as needed.

---

### The display.cfg File

The displayh.ini file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /Z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

The displayh.cfg file, along with the printh.cfg, saveh.cfg and emailh.cfg files, can contain any tag, indicator, subfield combination from a MARC Holdings record (refer to **USMARC Format for Holdings Data** for definitions), as well as text labels for those combinations.

You can also include other information from the System Administration module as specified by one of the following codes:

**Table 3-24. Codes From System Administration**

Code	Description
1000	OPAC Display Name for the Location (copy and location info for item)
1002	Database Name for the Item
1010	Number of Items linked to the MARC holdings record
1012	Item Status from the Item Record. If there is only one existing item, its status will always display. If there is more than one item linked to the MARC holdings record, only the items with exceptional statuses (charged, lost, in bindery, etc.) will have their statuses displayed. Exceptional statuses are any status but Available or Not Charged. See <a href="#">Customizing Item Statuses Display</a> on <a href="#">page 3-14</a> for information about defining item status terminology in WebVoyage.
1020	Recent Issues from Serials as taken from the serial receipts for base components as recorded in Serials Check-In
1022	Supplemental Issues from Serials as taken from the serial receipts for supplement components as recorded in Serials Check-In
1024	Indexes from Serials as taken from the serial receipts for index components as recorded in Serials Check-In
1030	Order Status as shown in the line items of purchase orders. See <a href="#">Order Statuses</a> on <a href="#">page 3-51</a> for information about defining order status terminology in OPAC.
1040, 1042, 1044	Compressed Serials information from MFHD 853/863, 854/864, and 855/865 fields. See "Serial Issue Collapsing" in the <i>Voyager Acquisitions User's Guide</i> for more information.
1050	E-item information

---

The information contained in this file is only accessed when the 9000 code is included in one of the displayn.cfg files (see page 216 for more information). You cannot include any of these codes in the displayn.cfg files.

You can modify or delete everything in this configuration file. However, deleting certain information could disable your patrons from accessing available information about your holdings.

## E-Items

You can set whether WebVoyáge is to display e-items. E-Items are electronic journals or other items that are accessible over the Web. Adding the code 1050 to the displayh.cfg file will permit WebVoyáge to display the link to e-items, which can then be accessed by clicking the link. You may also add descriptive text to the file. For example, if you wanted the caption "E-Items" to display before the 1050 code, you would type:

E-Items:

1050

## Holdings Information

To display holdings information in the Record Display, first list the 9000 code in one of the displayn.cfg files. Then, in the displayh.cfg, specify the following:

1. Type the label for the holdings information, as you want it to display in the Record Display. This label should be typed flush against the left margin.
2. Optional: You can also include textual messages to display when no information is returned for a particular label. After the label, type a space followed by a plus sign (+) and then the message that you want displayed. For example, typing *+No call number available* after the Call Number: label will display that message when no call number is included in the MARC holdings record.

### NOTE:

Be aware that the system uses the textual messages for all records, e.g., if you added "+No recent issues received" as a display constant for the "Recent Issues" label (information that displays from a serial receipt history, not the MARC holdings record), that display constant would appear for all monographic materials as well since they do not have serial receipt histories.

3. Type the appropriate code (as listed above) or the MARC holdings tag, followed by the indicators (use XX for all indicator values), and subfields in the format below:

852 XX khij

This line must be indented 3 spaces from the left margin

If no there is no information associated with the code or MARC tag, then nothing will display (including the label), unless information is included after the plus sign (see step 2).

You can leave up to one blank line between all labels and codes or tags. If you insert more than one blank line, only one blank line will display. Repeat the above instructions for all the holdings information that you want to display.

## **Temporary Location Display**

---

To display the temporary location in place of the permanent location, for holdings records where all items have temporary locations. Do this by including the 1005 display directive in the `displayh.cfg` file.

## **Request.cfg and Requesth.cfg**

The request.cfg and requesth.cfg files are located in each of the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage` database sub-directories (`/local`, `/Z3950`, `/vcit`, `/zcit`, etc.). Use these files to configure what bibliographic information appears with "Bib Level" requests. The files request.cfg and requesth.cfg must appear in the display config subdirectory of each local and remote voyager system you connect to. These are configured just like any other displayX.cfg file, and determine what bib info gets shown in the Request window.

## **SEARCH.INI**

The search.ini file is located in each of the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage` database sub-directories (`/local`, `/Z3950`, `/vcit`, `/zcit`, etc.).

The search.ini file specifies which types of searches will be available to your patrons, as well as which Search tab will be displayed first on the Search dialog box. You can modify all the data elements in this configuration file.

### **NOTE:**

When simultaneously searching Voyager and Z39.50 databases, a default Simultaneous Search search.ini determines the search options available. Results then display based on the WebVoyage display of the Local folder. For the default Simultaneous Search search.ini, see [Simultaneous Search search.ini file](#) on [page 3-64](#).

```
[Valid Tabs]
Simple Search
Boolean Search
Course Reserve
Geospatial Searching

[Simple_Search_Codes]
Counter=10
1=FT Keyword Search
2=AUTH+ Author Browse
3=TALL Left Anchored Title
4=CALL+ Call Number Browse
5=SUBJ+ Subject Browse
6=JKEY Journal Title Keyword
7=CMD Command Line Search
8=008D Date Search (Left Anchored)
9=NAME Name Title
10=XXXX Test for XXXX Index
```

**Figure 3-81. Sample search.ini File**

#### **ValidTabs Stanza**

The **Valid Tabs** stanza of the search.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage) specifies the order in which the search tabs will appear onscreen. The stanza contains a list of search types. Each line in the list contains the name of the search. No line numbers are necessary. The first tab listed will appear on the left-hand side and will be the default. You must use the following terms to create the list: **Simple Search**, **Boolean Search**, **Course Reserve** or **Geospatial Search**. If a term is not entered into the list, that tab will not be available onscreen.

For example, if you wanted the Course Reserve, Simple Search and Boolean Search screens to appear in that order, and did not want the Geospatial Search screen to appear at all, your Valid Tabs stanza might appear as follows:

Example: [Valid Tabs]

Example: Course Reserve

Example: Simple Search

Example: Boolean Search

The Search tab names themselves are defined by the Tab\_Text variable in each of their respective html page stanzas of the opac.ini file. However, regardless of the text entered into those variables, you must still enter Simple Search, Boolean Search, Course Reserve, or Geospatial Search in this stanza to indicate which tabs will appear in WebVoyage.

### **Simple\_Search\_Codes Stanza**

The [Simple\_Search\_Codes] stanza of the search.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage) allows you to specify what search options will appear in the **Find Results in** list on the Simple Search screen, and what type of search will be performed by each option.

Each line of the stanza defines a single entry in the Find Results in list. Each line must follow the form **[Line Number]=[Search Code] [Search Description]**. There must be at least one space between the Search Code and the Search Description.

The Search Description is the text that will appear in the drop-down list on the Simple Search screen. You can enter any text that you want to display; however, if you enter more than about 70 characters, the description will not display entirely onscreen.

The Search Code must be one of the codes listed on either the Search Definitions, Composite Definitions or Keyword Searches dialogs (in the Voyager System Administration module). In addition to the search codes on those dialogs, you may use the following codes:

FT        Full-Text Keyword Search

CMD or BTCommand Search

You may enter a **plus (+)** sign following the Search Code. This will turn that particular search into a Browse search. For example, entering **AUTH+** would specify an Author Browse search type.

---

You may enter an **asterisk (\*)** sign following the Search Code. This will cause that search to be performed with Relevance. For example, entering CMD\* will indicate a Command Search with Relevance search type.

## SAVE.CFG

The save.ini file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

The save.cfg dictates the information that your patrons can save. You can include all the information that can be included in the displayn.cfg files (page 216). You can also delete all information in this configuration file. However, note that since this configuration file dictates the information that your patrons can save, deleting all information from this file would prohibit them from saving any information.

## SAVEH.CFG

The saveh.cfg file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

The saveh.cfg dictates the holdings information that your patrons can save. You indicate that holdings information should be saved by typing the Holdings code, 9000, in the save.cfg file.

You can specify the information as can be included in the displayh.cfg files (page 216). You can also delete all the information in this configuration file. However, note that since this configuration file dictates the holdings information that your patrons can save, deleting all information from this file would prohibit them from saving any holdings information.

## SAVEF.CFG

The savef.cfg file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

The savef.cfg file contains the text that you want to appear at the bottom of the page when saving or printing record information in WebVoyage. Any time the Save/Print button is clicked on the Title List or Record Display screens in WebVoyage, the resulting text that displays will have the contents of the savef.cfg appended after all of the record information. The savef.cfg may contain any text.

## EMAIL.CFG

The email.cfg file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

The email.cfg dictates the information that your patrons can email. You can include all the information that can be included in the displayn.cfg files (page 216). You can also delete all information in this configuration file. However, note that since this configuration file dictates the information that your patrons can email, deleting all information from this file would prohibit them from emailing any information.

### **EMAILH.CFG**

The emailh.cfg file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /Z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

The emailh.cfg dictates the holdings information that your patrons can email. You indicate that holdings information should be emailed by typing the Holdings code, 9000, in the email.cfg file.

You can specify the information as can be included in the displayh.cfg files (page 216). You can also delete all the information in this configuration file. However, note that since this configuration file dictates the holdings information that your patrons can email, deleting all information from this file would prohibit them from emailing any holdings information.

### **EMAILF.CFG**

The emailf.cfg file is located in each of the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage database sub-directories (/local, /Z3950, /vcit, /zcit, etc.).

The emailf.cfg file contains the text that you want to appear at the bottom of the page when saving or printing record information in WebVoyage. Any time the Email button is clicked on the Title List or Record Display screens in WebVoyage, the resulting text that displays will have the contents of the savef.cfg appended after all of the record information. The savef.cfg may contain any text.

## **Troubleshooting**

---

Because WebVoyage allows a high level of customization, your institution needs to be aware of certain areas which might cause WebVoyage to fail.

1. You must not remove any information that invokes the Pwebrecon.cgi program. This will cause WebVoyage to fail.
2. You cannot rename or modify the length of any of the variables within the \*.ini files. A variable is information in an \*.ini file that comes before the equals sign (=). For example, *ResetTime* is the variable of *ResetTime=120*.

---

However, you can modify the data the follows the variables within the \*.ini files.

3. You can substitute your own \*.gif files for the ones that we distribute.  
However, you **MUST** use the exact same name and location for those new \*.gif files.
4. You can include almost any HTML information in the error, assistance and block \*.htm files (see page 199). You may include Java/JavaScript and VBSCRIPT with 20 lines of text maximum. You must **not** include <BODY>, <FORM>, </FORM>, or </BODY> tags because WebVoyage provides these when the pages are dynamically built. These \*.htm files are generated and included as messages in various built WebVoyage pages.
5. However, you cannot alter where these messages appear on the built WebVoyage pages. For example, your institution cannot include information that displays between the search text box and the Search button.
6. When editing WebVoyage pages on the server, and testing them using a browser, be sure to refresh the browser frequently. This ensures that the browser reflects the changes you have made recently.



---

[REDACTED]

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Displaying Information

# 4

---

## Contents

Local Folder	4-2
Voyager System Administration	4-3
• Connections	4-3
• Information You Will Need	4-4
• Quick Start	4-5
<b>Connecting to Resources within Voyager</b>	<b>4-5</b>
• Define a Database in System Administration	4-5
Sample Search Scenarios	4-6
View Connection in WebVoyáge	4-7
Troubleshooting	4-7
<b>Simultaneous Search</b>	<b>4-8</b>
<b>Hook To Local Holdings</b>	<b>4-10</b>
<b>Customizing Displays with WebVoyáge Folders</b>	<b>4-11</b>
• WebVoyáge Folders	4-12
The Local Folder	4-12
VCIT, ZCIT, and Z39.50 Folders	4-13

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---



## Contents

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Displaying Information

# 4

---

In this section you will learn how to connect to remote resources and how they display in WebVoyáge. Following are the topics included in this section.

- Define a database in System Administration
- Add database codes to the connect.ini file
- Set up duplication check in Simultaneous Search profile
- Set up citation database to display local holdings

One of the more powerful features of Voyager is its ability to connect to a wide variety of databases and electronic resources. This section includes instructions for connecting Voyager to:

- your local database
- remote Voyager databases
- Z39.50 compliant databases
- citation databases via Voyager or Z39.50

Also included are instructions for using WebVoyáge to access resources on the Web, TN3270, or telnet connections.

On the WebVoyáge search screen is the **Database** button. The Database page allows you to select which databases you want to connect to when performing searches. The list of databases that are available to select from are specified in the connect.ini file.

---

The Database button uses the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza of the opac.ini file. Each WebVoyage display directory (for example, local, vcit, zcit) has a corresponding opac.ini file. For more information on the Top and Bottom Toolbars, see [Toolbar\\_Top and Toolbar\\_Bottom Stanzas on page 3-66](#).

The connect.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage) defines the connections that can be accessed on the Database screen. Note that the connect.ini file contains references to database definitions. You will use the System Administration module to create these references.

The WebVoyage client, as a whole, interfaces with the **voyager.ini file** or the **WebVoyage.ini file**, which tells WebVoyage where to connect with the WebVoyage server. The **opac.ini file** contains the client preferences.

## Local Folder

The **Local folder** contains initialization (.ini) files and configuration (.cfg) files you can use to define your connectivity preferences, such as:

- search types
- limits
- help text for searches
- display preferences
- request messages
- fields to print, E-mail, and save to text files

This information in the local folder also resides in three distinct folders: Vcit, Zcit, and Z39.50. The type of connection and database type, as defined in System Administration, determines which folder a database will use. You can define additional folders. You can specify additional folders in the connect.ini file.

**Table 4-1. WebVoyage Display Directories**

Connection type	Database type	Default folder
Voyager	Bibliographic	Local
Voyager	Citation	Vcit
Z39.50	Bibliographic	Z3950
Z39.50	Citation	Zcit

## Voyager System Administration

In addition to files on the client or server, settings in the System Administration module play a large role in setting up Voyager connections. The Search Configuration screen contains the major options you will use to connect Voyager:

- Database Definition
- Simultaneous Search
- Hook to Holdings

### Database Definition

The Database Definition button defines the database connections accessed from the Database button in WebVoyage. Here you define whether you are accessing a bibliographic or citation database, and whether it is a Voyager or Z39.50-compliant database.

### Simultaneous Search

The Simultaneous Search button defines the fields used to eliminate duplicates from result sets. Bibliographic records are de-duped against bibliographic records and citation records are de-duped against other citation records. Bibliographic records are not de-duped against citation records and vice versa.

### Hook to Holdings

If you have Endeavor's Citation Server® software, the Hook to Holdings button allows you to define profiles that determine which indices are used in matching records from a citation search with existing records in the local database. This will let you view the local holdings available for a particular citation record. Once the profiles are defined, they are selected within the Database Definition screen for citation databases.

## Connections

---

Below are the types of Voyager connection and database types.

**Table 4-2. Database and Connection Types**

Connection type	Database type
Local Voyager to Voyager (Same compatible version of software)	Bibliographic

---

**Table 4-2. Database and Connection Types**

Local Voyager to Voyager	Local Citation database (biblio-graphic records without holdings records)  <b>NOTE:</b> Citation Server required
Local Voyager to Z39.50	Bibliographic
Local Voyager to Z39.50	Citation  <b>NOTE:</b> Citation Server required

### **Information You Will Need**

---

Before you can start setting up connections you will need to collect some information from your library and some information about the target sites to which you are connecting. Following is the information you will need before you begin.

- Know the type of connection(s) of your target resource(s)
  - Your local database (LOCAL)
  - Remote Voyager systems
  - Z39.50 database systems
  - Citation databases
- Server (IP) addresses of the target systems
- Ports of target systems
- Voyager version number for Voyager to Voyager connections (Voyager versions 97.2 or later are compatible.)
- Whether or not a Logon ID and password are required for each target system when using Z39.50
- Attribute types and attribute codes for Z39.50 searches (The server requires a numeric equivalent of the search codes.) Types of searches the Z39.50 target system will allow. See the citation or Z39.50 database vendor's documentation or target site's support staff to get this information.
- Access control, if any (patron groups who will be able to use each database—faculty, graduate students, etc.)

## Quick Start

---

The Quick Start section takes you through the steps required in connecting Voyager to target databases.

1. For Z39.50 connections, get the IP address, port, and attributes from target site.
2. Open System Administration > Search > Database Definitions and add the target site.
3. Set up stanzas in connect.ini.
4. Check the connection in WebVoyage.
5. For Citation Server (optional Endeavor software), define a hook to holdings profile. Open System Administration > Search Configuration > Hook to Holdings.
6. Attach the profile to database in Database Definitions.

## Connecting to Resources within Voyager

---

To connect to resources within Voyager you will first define a target database in System Administration. For the target system you will define the connection type (Voyager or Z39.50) and the database type (bibliographic or citation). For all Z39.50 connection types, you will have to define attributes supported by the target system's search engine. You will then add the database to the connect.ini file. In Simultaneous Search you will define the fields used to eliminate duplicates when performing a search on multiple databases. For Voyager connections to citation databases, you have the option to display local holdings, if present, associated with the cited reference. You will use the Hook to Holdings to define the profile for your local holdings. Step-by-step instructions with sample data will guide you through the requirements for connecting to resources within Voyager.

### Define a Database in System Administration

---

Settings in the System Administration module play a large role in setting up Voyager connections. The Search Configuration screen contains the major options you will use to connect Voyager:

- Database Definition
- Simultaneous Search
- Hook to Holdings

---

See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information about these configuration components.

## Sample Search Scenarios

The sample search recommendations that follow are general suggestions that may help in defining your search attributes.

### Keyword Search

When setting up a Keyword search you may use the following attributes.

**Table 4-3. Keyword Search Attribute Example**

Attribute	Selection
Relationship	<unspecified>
Position	any position in field
Structure	word
Completeness	<unspecified>

### Left-Anchored Search

When setting up a left-anchored search you may use the following attributes.

**Table 4-4. Left-Anchored Search Attributes**

Attribute	Selection
Relationship	<unspecified>
Position	first in field
Structure	phrase
Completeness	<unspecified>

In general, for keyword searches, you will want to

- check Boolean enabled box
- check Right-hand truncation boxes.

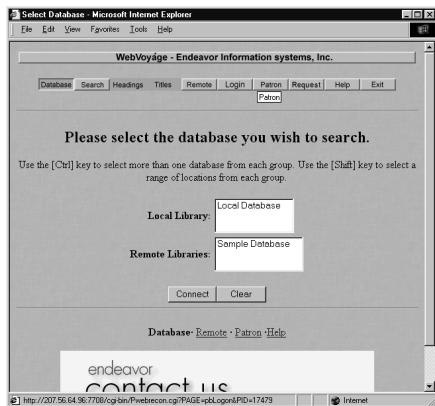
For left-anchored searches, you will want to

- check right-hand truncation box.

## View Connection in WebVoyáge

To check the connection, follow the steps below.

1. Open WebVoyáge.
  2. Click the **Database** button in the tool bar.
  3. Scroll down in the Remote Databases list to see if your institution's name appears.
- 



---

**Figure 4-1. Connection Options in the Database Screen of WebVoyáge**

If the connect.ini has been edited properly, you should see the name of the institution that represents the database you set up.

## Troubleshooting

**Connection Options Display Problems.** If you experience problems on the above display, you need to resolve them within the connect.ini file. (1) Remember that the database code that you set up in Database Definitions is case sensitive and must match the code you enter in the connect.ini file. (2) The information you enter within the folders must match the data you enter in the stanzas.

**Connection Problems.** If you experience connection problems, you need to check the Database Definitions that you set up.

---

## Simultaneous Search

---

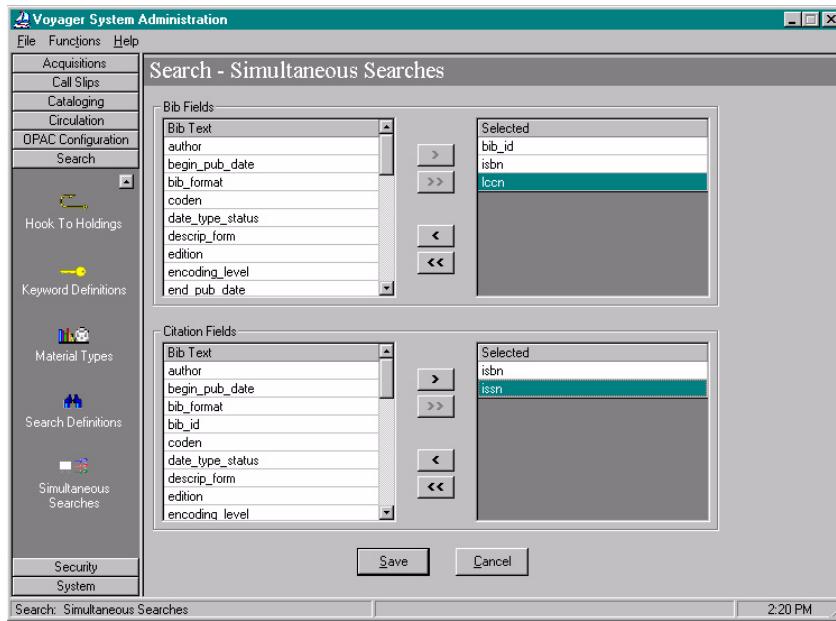
The Simultaneous Search feature lets you define criteria that will eliminate duplication of bibliographic titles when searching more than one database. If this de-dupe specification determines that duplicate records exist, the database with the highest weight will display the record. For more information, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

The following search configurations must be in place in order for simultaneous search to work:

- Database Definitions (for access to databases through the WebVoyage client).
- Search configurations (codes and attributes given to search terms so that databases have a common search language). See the "Search Definition Tables" appendix to the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.
- search index display priorities (defines which database has priority for displaying records).
- fields to use for merging result set.

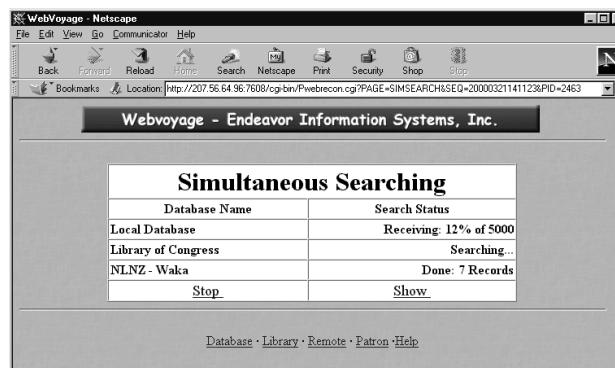
Search results are divided into two different result sets, Bibliographic records and Citation records. This is the window where you specify the hierarchies to check in the event of duplicate records.

All bibliographic records will be de-duped using the criteria in the first set of fields (Bib. fields) while the second set of fields will be used for citation records. Bibliographic records are not de-duped against citation records. In the event of duplication, the record that displays is the one from the highest weighted database.



**Figure 4-2. Simultaneous Search De-Duplication Profile**

Simultaneous search accommodates both fast and slow search engines. Slow search engines will not hold up search results from quicker engines that return results more promptly. The “Show” link in WebVoyáge (used to retrieve records) allows you to view the records currently received as soon as any of the search results are available. This will abort the search.



**Figure 4-3. WebVoyáge Search Status**

---

If you are searching a Voyager bibliographic database that is version 97.1 or older, you must connect via Z39.50. Simultaneous search can only function with versions 97.2 or later.

Simultaneous search relies on WebVoyage display configurations. In the opac.ini file, make sure that the reset time is set to 120 or greater so that the simultaneous search function has time to search the databases.

For a single remote Voyager connection, all standard WebVoyage search features are available including headings, limits, call number, and relevance ranking. If you are connecting to Z39.50 sites or citation databases, you will only be able to perform standard WebVoyage searches, such as, author, subject, and title.

## **Hook To Local Holdings**

---

The Hook to Holdings feature is used only in conjunction with Citation Server (optional software from Endeavor).

You must first set up a Hook to Holdings profile, which lists the match points for "hooking" holdings data from the local catalog to a citation, e.g. a citation from a journal article. The hook usually matches a standard number in the citation record against a standard number in the local catalog. You specify which fields to use for the hook fields when you create the configuration in the Hook to Holdings profile window. If there is a match to the bibliographic record for the journal title, all of the local holdings display along with the citation including the following.

- location
- call#
- serials receipts
- circulation status
- MFHD holdings

[Short View](#) [Long View](#) [MARC View](#)

*Who are the real wealth creators?.*

**Relevance:** ■

**Database:** HW Wilson Databases

**Title:** Who are the real wealth creators?.

**Author(s):** [Lieber, Ronald B.](#)

**Source:** *Fortune*  
v.134 (Dec. 9 '96) p. 107-8 +

**Page(s):** p.107-8 + :

**Digital Resources:** [FULL TEXT, HTML VERSION,](#)  
[FULL TEXT, PDF VERSION.](#)

**Local Library Holdings**

---

**Location:** Stacks (floors 2-4)

**Call Number:** HF5001 .F7

**Status:** Not Charged

---

**Location:** Periodicals

**Call Number:** HF5001 .F7

**Status:** No information available

**Summary Holdings:** v.119-126 (1989-1992)  
LACKS: v.125; no.13 (1992)  
v.130: no.10-13 (1994; Nov 14-Dec 26)  
v.131: no.1-12 (1995; Jan 16-Jun 26)  
v.132: no.1-4 (1995; Jul 10-Aug 21)

**Notes:** Current issues in periodicals. Some volumes available electronically; ask at REFERENCE.

[LinkFinder](#)  
click here for full text

---

**Figure 4-4. WebVoyage Display-Hook to Holdings**

For more information about Hook to Holdings, see the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*, and the *Citation Server User's Guide*.

---

## Customizing Displays with WebVoyage Folders

---

For detailed information on various required elements see [Required Elements](#) on [page 3-1](#).

---

## WebVoyage Folders

---

The contents of the folders in the **/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc /webvoyage** directory and its subdirectories configure the WebVoyage displays. The areas that can be configured are:

- search tabs display
- help text on the search tabs
- radio button text on the headings tab
- record display tabs
- tab labels
- MARC contents of each record display tab
- MARC tags for E-mail, print, save or request forms.

In Voyager, each site has the ability to define the bibliographic and holdings displays in WebVoyage. This includes

- define labels
- determine which MARC fields/subfields to include under the labels
- the sequence and spacing of information on the WebVoyage screen.

The configuration files are located in the **/voyager/xxxdb/etc/ WebVoyage** directory.

The folders that appear in the WebVoyage directory can be configured for each Voyager or Z39.50 database that appear in the System Administration module under Database Definition. The names of the folders linked to the database code are located on your server in:

- m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/connect.ini

If Hook to Holdings are used (Citation databases only), the contents of the folder will be affected accordingly.

## The Local Folder

The local folder is used to configure results from your local catalog. The **local folder** contains initialization (.ini) files and configuration (.cfg) files you can use to define your connectivity preferences, such as:

- search types
- limits
- help text for searches

- display preferences
- request messages
- fields to print, E-mail, and save to text files

This information in the local folder also resides in three distinct folders: Vcit, Zcit, and Z39.50. The type of connection and database type, as defined in System Administration, determines which folder a database will use. You can define additional folders. You can specify additional folders in the connect.ini file.

**Table 4-5. Default WebVoyage Display Directories**

Connection type	Database type	Default directory
Voyager	Bibliographic	Local
Voyager	Citation	Vcit
Z39.50	Bibliographic	Z3950
Z39.50	Citation	Zcit

### VCIT, ZCIT, and Z39.50 Folders

Voyager Citation databases are those citation databases like a Wilson abstracts database (i.e. Wilson Arts Abstracts Index), which Endeavor has loaded onto your server into a Voyager file. To identify these databases, determine how the databases are updated. If the answer is the cataloging module or bulk import, the database is a Voyager Citation database. If the answer is "A new tape is loaded from the vendor," or "We connect directly to the vendor," the database is a Z39.50 citation database.

Searches available are key differences between Voyager and Z39.50 citation databases. In a Voyager database, left-anchored heading searches and keyword searches are available. In a Z39.50 database, only keyword searches are available.

- **Vcit** is the default folder used with Voyager Citation databases.
- **Zcit** is the default folder used with Z39.50 Citation server databases.
- **Z39.50** is the default folder used with Z39.50 library connections.
- **Simultaneous Searches:** If you are searching two or more databases of a different type (for example, a Voyager citation database and a Z39.50 citation database) at a time, the Default Simultaneous Search search.ini (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage) is used for the search options.

---

Any changes to the configurations in these folders will affect the displays of all the corresponding searches. If you want to customize one or more displays, without changing the default settings, you can make a copy of a folder, rename it, and specify its use in the connect.ini file. See [Location Stanza](#) on [page 3-185](#) for information about specifying the use of a WebVoyage display configuration folder.

To change contents among databases:

1. Copy the display folder.
2. Change the name of the copy to match the name of the database code in Database Definitions.
3. Add config=*new folder name* after the appropriate stanza of the connect.ini file.

### **VCIT and ZCIT Folders**

You may need to change files below when connecting to a Voyager citation database.

1. **Search.ini Course reserves** - Course Reserves can be turned off because they are not used in conjunction with a citation database.
2. **Displayn.cfg** - Examine the MARC tags listed in your displayn.cfg files to see whether the tags being used reflect the tags used in citation records and not bibliographic records. While citation databases use MARC tags, just like bibliographic databases, the meaning of tags will differ.
3. **Print files** - While E-mail and save files may remain the same, look at the print.cfg, printh.cfg and printf.cfg files to see if the information being printed at your institution is appropriate for a Voyager citation database. Author, title, location and call number are needed if hook-to-holdings is available at your institution. Check to see if you need OCLC number, ISSN or ISBN. Check to see if there are tags that can be deleted. Determine whether you want full text or abstracts to print.
4. **Helptext.ini** - Modify with appropriate examples for a citation search.
5. **Limits.ini**-The limits.ini file determines what limiting criteria are available to your patrons and in what order you want those limiting criteria to display in the Limits dialog.

### **Search Codes in the Z3950 and ZCIT Folders**

You can define different types of searches that can be made available depending on whether a Z30.50 or a local connection is being made. This means that you can change the types of searches available to the users to types that will be more

appropriate and effective for Z39.50 searches. For example, ISSN and ISBN are extremely useful staff searches for Z39.50 databases, so you might want to add a search for ISSN or ISBN to your Simple Search list.

This can be done by editing the Simple\_Search\_Codes stanza in the search.ini file in your **Z3950** or **ZCIT** directory and adding the appropriate search types. WebVoyage will use the search.ini in the Z3950 directory for Z39.50 bibliographic connections and the search.ini in the ZCIT directory for Z39.50 citation connections.

1. Review the list of attributes for the indexes in Voyager System Administration (**Search>indexes Index Type**) and decide what the most useful index searches for the searcher will be. (Remember that your staff will be using this as well.) ISSN and ISBN are extremely useful staff searches for Z39.50 databases. For instance:

**Table 4-6. Useful Z39.50 Search Codes**

Attribute	Code
Author	auth
Title	tkey
Subject	skey
ISSN	ISSN
ISBN	ISBN

2. In the search.ini, go to the [Simple\_Search\_Codes] stanza. Each variable is a unique number. The first string of two to four characters after the equals sign is the Attribute Code as listed in the System Administration module. The attribute code is followed by a space and then the descriptions of each search type. The labels can contain any text, but the search attributes must be as listed in the System Administration module in order to function properly. Appending a plus sign ("+") to the search code indicates a browse search. For example:

```
[Simple_Search_Codes]
Counter=5
1=AUTH Author Search
2=TKEY Title Search
3=SKEY Subject Search
4=ISSN ISSN Search
5=ISBN ISBN Search
```

**Figure 4-5.** A Sample [Simple\_Search\_Codes] Stanza

**NOTE:**

Be sure that the number after the Count variable reflects the number of search types listed in the stanza (i.e., that the Count variable should match the line number of the last line).

The search.ini used for simultaneous searches is in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory and uses the local folder for WebVoyage display. For more information on this search.ini file, see [Simultaneous Search search.ini file](#) on [page 3-64](#).

1. **Displayx.cfg** - In Z39.50 databases, no heading indexes are available. Searching is keyword only. It is less confusing for the searcher if redirected searches (hypertext on author, title, subject or call number) do not appear. In display2.cfg and displayh.cfg, remove the appropriate codes. For example:

**Display2.cfg Example****Table 4-7.**

<b>Before</b>	<b>After</b>
Main Author: 100 XX aqd <b>A aq</b>	Main Author: 100 XX aqd
Title 130 XX aplskfmnor <b>T apl</b>	Title 130 XX aplskfmnor
Subject 600 XX adfklmnopqrstuvwxyz <b>S adfklmnopqrstuvwxyz</b>	Subject 600 XX adfklmnopqrstuvwxyz

**Displayh.cfg Example****Table 4-8.**

<b>Before</b>	<b>After</b>
Call number 852 XX khij c hi	Call number 852 XX khij

If the following are available tags from the vendor, add the information to either display1.cfg or display2.cfg.

Source:

773 XX t  
773 XX g  
300 XX a

Abstract:

520 XX a

Full Text:

3000

1. **Request files** - Review the request.cfg and requesth.cfg to see if additional tags are warranted. Suggested to add:

Record Number:

035 XX a  
020 XX a

---

022 XX a

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

<b>Searching in WebVoyáge</b>	<b>5-1</b>
• The Initial WebVoyáge Page	5-1
• Customizing the Initial WebVoyáge Page	5-3
• Database Page	5-3
Configuring the Database Page	5-6
• Search Page	5-7
• Simple Search	5-8
Configuring the Simple Search	5-10
• Builder Search	5-12
Configuring the Builder Search	5-14
Combining Builder Searches (Optional)	5-16
Combined Builder Search Configuration	5-20
Enabling and Disabling Combined Builder Searches	5-20
Customizing the Search History Page	5-21
Enabling relevance ranking for Combined Builder Searches	5-22
<b>Course Reserve Search</b>	<b>5-23</b>
• Course Reserve Drop-Down interface	5-23
• Configuration Overview	5-25
Setting the Course Reserve Display Type to Drop-Down	5-25
Enabling Drop-Down boxes and labels	5-25
Informational text	5-27
• Course Reserve Browse interface	5-27
• Configuration Overview	5-30
• Setting the Course Reserve display type to the browse interface	5-31
• Configuring the Course Reserve Location Selection screen	5-31
• Configuring the Course Reserve Browse Alphabetical List page	5-33
• Configuring the Individual Browse Screens	5-34

---

## Contents

Editing the html block messages	5-36
<b>WebVoyáge OpenURL features</b>	<b>5-37</b>
<b>WebVoyáge OpenURL Linking</b>	<b>5-37</b>
• Enabling OpenURL Links on the Record Display Page	5-37
• Configuring View Record Page OpenURL link display for WebVoyáge	5-38
The opac.ini file	5-38
Directing Voyager to the LinkFinder server	5-38
Directing WebVoyáge to the LinkFinder button	5-38
Setting the mouse-over text of the LinkFinder button	5-39
The linkfinder.cfg file	5-41
Configuring parsing profiles for MARC record information extraction	5-41
<b>OpenURL Item requests</b>	<b>5-46</b>
• Enabling OpenURL Item Requests	5-46
• Configuring the variables in the opac.ini	5-47
• The RequestURI.cfg File	5-47
• Relais-related configuration notes	5-49
Including the Call Number using the CN parsing tag	5-49
Logging into Relais ILL	5-49
<b>General MARC Field Parsing Variables for OpenURL</b>	<b>5-50</b>
Including Genre Information Automatically	5-53
The genre Variable Format	5-54
<b>Map Searching in WebVoyáge</b>	<b>5-54</b>
• Rectangle Searching	5-54
Customizing the Rectangle Search	5-56
• Customizing All Map Search Pages	5-57
• Polygon Searching	5-59
• Point and Radius Searching	5-61
• Corridor/Route Searching	5-64
• Range Searching	5-68
Customizing the Range Search	5-68
• Command Search	5-69
<b>Search History Page</b>	<b>5-70</b>
• Limiting a Search	5-73
• Viewing Search Results	5-78
Simultaneous Searching	5-79
Heading List	5-81

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Heading Browse List	5-85
Title List	5-89
Record Display	5-99
<b>Saved Searches</b>	<b>5-106</b>
• Configuring Saved Searches	5-107
Enabling Saved Searches	5-108
Customizing the Search Queries Page	5-108
Customizing the Saved Searches buttons	5-109
Customizing the Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page	5-110
Customizing the Save Query button on the Patron Information page	5-111
• Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI)	5-112
• Configuring SDI	5-113
Enabling SDI	5-113
Configuring SDI options	5-113
Customizing the search results URL page sent to patrons by SDI	5-115
Customizing the help text for SDI	5-117
• Using Saved Searches/SDI	5-117
Saving new search queries	5-118
Editing, running and deleting saved search queries	5-118
<b>Bookbag (Shopping Cart)</b>	<b>5-120</b>
• Bookbag Configuration	5-120
Customizing the Bookbag page	5-121
Customizing the Bookbag button on the Patron Information page	5-124
Customizing Bookbag features in Record Options box of the Search Results page	5-129
Customizing Bookbag messages	5-132
• Using Bookbag	5-133
Saving a record to the Bookbag	5-134
Managing your Bookbag	5-135
<b>Saving, Printing and Emailing Information</b>	<b>5-140</b>
• Saving a Record	5-140
• Printing a Record	5-142
• Print Setup	5-144
• Emailing a Record	5-144
• Exiting WebVoyáge	5-146
• Saving a record to your Bookbag (Optional)	5-146
<b>Bibliographic ID redirect to WebVoyáge</b>	<b>5-148</b>

---



## Contents

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

## Searching in WebVoyáge

When you start WebVoyáge initially, or when WebVoyáge is restarted, the initial page will display. To begin searching in WebVoyáge, you must first click the **Local Catalog** button. This will allow you to specify which databases you want to search, or to simply begin your search. You can then select a Search Type (see [Search Page](#) on [page 5-7](#)). After you execute a search, you can view the results in different displays. At any time, you can add or remove search locations by clicking the **Database** button.

### The Initial WebVoyáge Page

The page that appears when WebVoyáge is first started up or when it is started over by a patron is the initial page. This page displays a large WebVoyáge banner, the **local catalog** button, the **remote libraries** button, the **library information** button, the **patron information** button and the **help** button.



Figure 5-1. WebVoyage Initial Page

Table 5-1. Initial WebVoyage page buttons

Button	Function
local catalog	connects to the main search page
remote libraries	connects to a list of links to other libraries or other resources on the web
library information	displays information about the library
patron information	displays information about the current patron. The patron must be logged into WebVoyage before the information can be displayed.
help	connects to the WebVoyage Help page.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

## Customizing the Initial WebVoyáge Page

---

Customizing the initial page in WebVoyáge is done differently from most of the other pages in WebVoyáge. The initial page is its own specific HTML file that is loaded when you link to the page. The initial page can be customized by editing the contents of the **webvoy.htm** file in the **/m1/xxxdb/webvoyage/html** directory. This page can be customized as you would any other HTML file. You can add any type of information to this file, or use it for a different purpose entirely. However, in order to customize it, you must be conversant in HTML.

For more information on configuring the initial WebVoyáge page, see [Initial WebVoyáge Page \(Webvoy.htm\) on page 2-10](#).

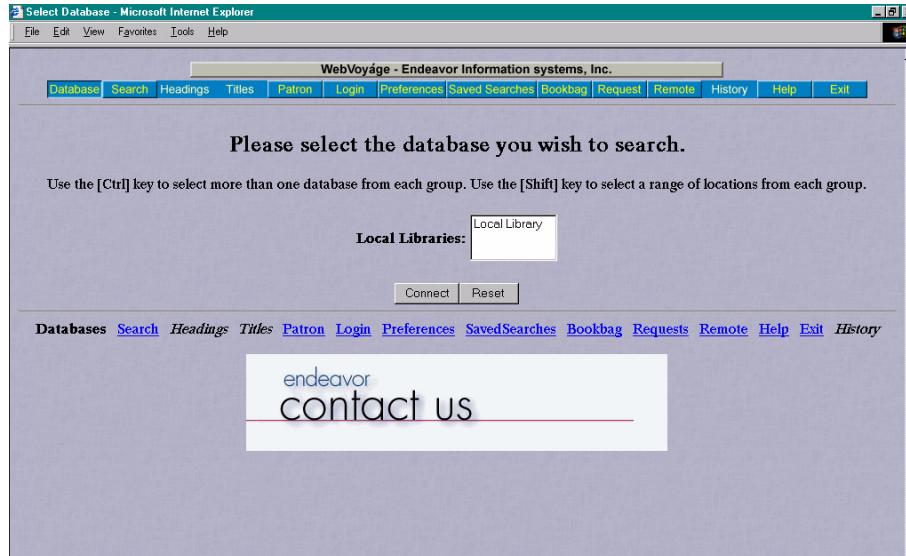
## Database Page

---

When you initially open the Search page, WebVoyáge automatically connects to your local Voyager database. If this is the database that you want to search, then you can simply proceed with your search. However, if there are other databases that you want to search, you must specify which ones they are.

To get to the Database page, click the **Database** button in the banner on the search page (or from any of the screens with buttons in the banner).

---



---

Figure 5-2. Database Page

---

The Database page contains lists of databases that can be searched. Depending on your institution's policies, you may have to log in to WebVoyáge before certain databases will be displayed in the database lists. If you do not log on, only the databases that currently appear on the Database page will be available to you.

If a user has not previously logged in, that user will be presented only with the database(s) that have been designated for "Public Use" in the Database Definitions section of the System Administration module. In order for the system to present a user with the specific database(s) that the institution allows that user to search, that user must login. See "Access Control tab" in the Database Definition section of the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.



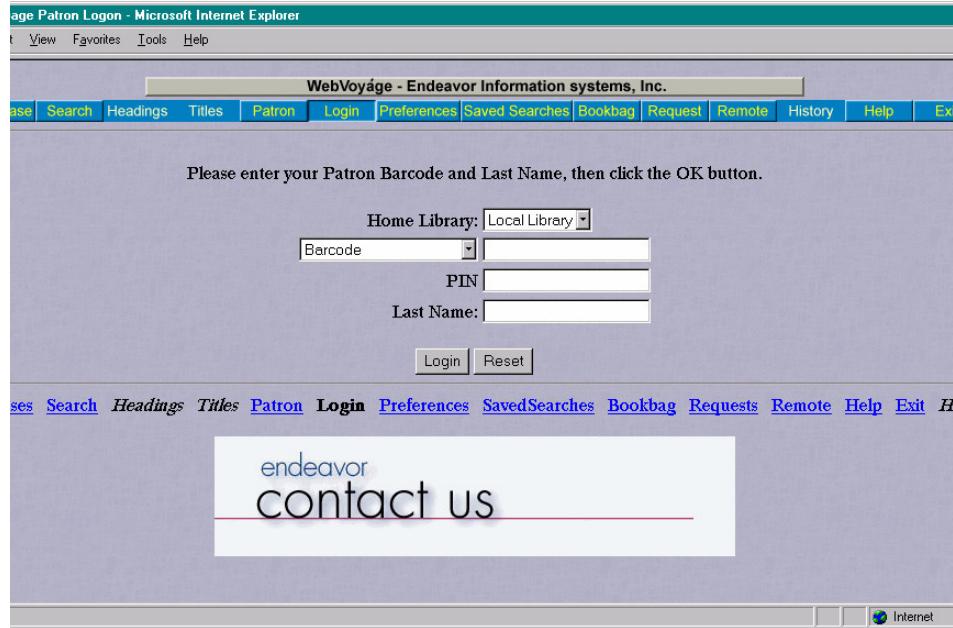
### Procedure 5-1. Selecting a Database

---

Use the following steps To select a database to search.

**OPTIONAL:**

1. *If you are not currently logged in, click the **Login** button to display the WebVoyáge Patron Login page (see [Figure 5-3](#)).*



---

**Figure 5-3. Patron Login page**

2. Enter your Patron Barcode (your institution may use Social Security Number or Institution ID rather than Patron Barcode) and Last Name in the appropriate fields and click the **Login** button. Click the **Reset** button to clear the contents of the fields on screen.

**NOTE:**

If your institution is using the PIN feature, you must also enter your PIN in the PIN field. The PIN you enter the first time you log in after enabling the PIN feature depends on how the default PIN is set by your institution. If you do not know your PIN, contact your Circulation Desk.

For more information about PINs and setting the default PIN, see [PIN on page 7-3](#).

Result: When you have successfully logged in, you are returned to the **Databases** screen.

- 
3. Click the databases in the list that you want to connect to.  
To select more than one database in a list, press the **Ctrl** key while clicking additional databases.  
To select multiple databases adjacent to one another in a list, press the **Shift** key while clicking additional databases.  
If you have clicked on too many databases and want to de-select all of the databases, click the **Clear** button.
  4. To connect to the databases and return to the main Search page, click the **Connect** button. This will allow you to search all of the selected databases simultaneously from the main Search page.

If no database is selected and the Connect button is pressed, the Local Database will be used.

**NOTE:**

Your library may require you to log in before allowing you to access certain databases. Only after logging in can the system provide you with the specific database options that your library allows you. If you are not forced to log in, and you have not previously logged in, only the default databases that your library makes available (for example, the Local Database) will display for you to access.

---

## Configuring the Database Page

**NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Database\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Database page include:

**Table 5-2.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Informational text	dbselmsg.htm

**Table 5-2.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Database List labels	connect.ini
Databases in each list	connect.ini / System Administration module
Connect button label	SubmitButton
Clear button label	ClearButton

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-3.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file
Limits button image	limit.gif
Values in Records Per Page drop-down	[Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Database page, see [Editing the Database Selection Screen on page 2-55](#).

Your library determines which databases you can connect to. The connect.ini file, in conjunction with Database Definitions in the System Administration module, defines the databases that will display on the Databases page in WebVoyage. See [The connect.ini file on page 3-177](#) for information about setting up the connect.ini file. See the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for information about defining databases in the System Administration module.

---

## Search Page

When you first open the Search page, WebVoyage automatically connects to your local Voyager database. If you want to change your a Search Location, you must open the Database Page and select which locations you want to search. Otherwise, you can simply begin searching. You can click one of the search type

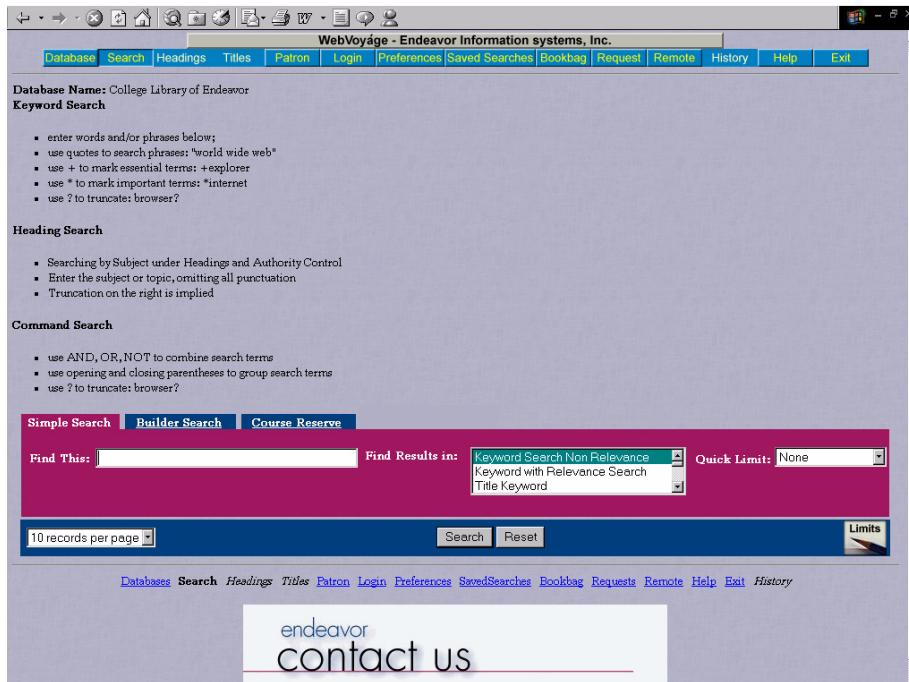
buttons (see [Figure 5-4](#)) to specify whether you want to perform a regular search (Simple Search, or Combined Search), an advanced search (Builder Search), or a search of Course Reserve materials (Course Reserve).



**Figure 5-4.** WebVoyage Search Type Buttons

### Simple Search

The Simple Search page (see [Figure 5-5](#)) allows you to perform a normal search. You can specify the search terms, the type of search (Keyword, Author, Title, etc.), and a single limit on the search. You can also select from the main list of limits before performing your search.



**Figure 5-5.** Simple Search Page



## Procedure 5-2. Performing a Simple Search

---

Use the following steps to perform a simple search.

1. Enter the words you want to search for in the **Find this:** field.

**NOTE:**

Select the type of search that you want to perform by choosing a search type from the **Find Results in:** list. Depending on how your library has this configured, it may be a drop-down arrow or a list.

In order to perform a command search, you should enter your command-line style term in the Find This: field, and then select Command-Line Search from the Find Results In: list.

When entering a command search, AND, OR and NOT may be in upper or lower case.

**OPTIONAL:**

2. Choose what type of limit you want applied to the search by either:
  - Selecting a limit from the **Simple Limit** menu, or
  - Clicking the **Limits** button and choosing from the entire list of limits.
3. Specify how many entries of the search results you want to have display on each page by clicking the drop-down arrow and selecting the number of records in the ...records per page field.
4. Click the **Submit** button to execute the search. You can also click the **Reset** button to clear the information entered into the page.

Your library defines which of the following searches are available. The searches available may include the following:

- Keyword - Looks for the desired words anywhere in a record. For example, a keyword search on the word "shakespeare" would return all the titles which contain the word Shakespeare anywhere in the record. You can also allow items to be weighted for importance.
  - Use a space between multiple words.
  - Use a question mark (?) after a search term to indicate truncation.
  - Use quotation marks ("") to search for specific phrases.

- 
- Use a plus sign (+) before a term to indicate an essential term. This indicates that a record will be listed with more relevance if that term is found somewhere in the record.
  - Use an asterisk (\*) before a term to indicate an important term. This indicates that a record will be listed with more relevance if that term is found somewhere in the record (but it will be listed with less relevance than a term marked by a plus sign).
  - Use an exclamation point (!) before a term to indicate that records containing the term are not to be displayed.

Example:

For example, a Keyword search on *space physics* would return at the top of the list (most relevant) all records with space and physics as a subject, followed by records with only *space* or only *physics* as a subject (less relevant). The more words you include in your search text, the more specific your search results will be.

The search results are displayed in a Title List. For more information, see [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#).

- Left-Anchored - Left-Anchored (or Headings) search looks for the desired words only at the beginning of the appropriate field.  
A left-anchored search scans an index and returns every subject, author, title, call number, or publication date that begins with what you typed. For example, a heading search on the subject “medi” would return the topics: *medicaid*, *medical*, *medicare*, *medici*, *medicine*, *medieval* and *mediterranean*.

The search results are displayed in a browseable Heading List for Subject and Author searches. Journal Title and Call Number searches display in a Title List. For more information, see [Heading List](#) on [page 5-81](#) and [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#).

---

## Configuring the Simple Search

### NOTE:

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Combined\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Simple Search include:

**Table 5-4.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Text on Simple Search tab	Tab_Text
Informational text	ht_combinedsearch.htm
Find This label	SearchBoxText
Find Results in label	FindResultsText
Contents of Results in list	System Administration
Simple Limit label	QuickLimitsText
Displaying Quick Limits drop-down	DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown
Contents of Simple Limit list	limits.ini
Search Button label	SubmitButton
Reset Button label	ResetButton
Clear Button label	ClearButton
Color of Simple Search tab	ActiveTabColor
Color of Simple Search tab when inactive	InactiveTabColor
Color of lower portion of Simple Search tab	InactiveTabColor
Color of text on Simple Search tab	ActiveFontColor
Color of text on Simple Search tab when inactive	InactiveFontColor
Color of inactive tabs and text for Builder, Course Reserve, Map Searching	See Builder, Course Reserve, Map Search sections on changing tab and text colors
Search limits in effect msg	limitmsg.htm
search resulted in no hits msg	nohitsmsg.htm

---

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-5.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file
Limits button image	limit.gif
Values in Records Per Page drop-down	[Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file

For more information on customizing Simple Searches, see [Editing the Simple Search Screen on page 2-18](#).

## Builder Search

---

A Builder search finds records using keywords located anywhere in a record, or only in specific fields.

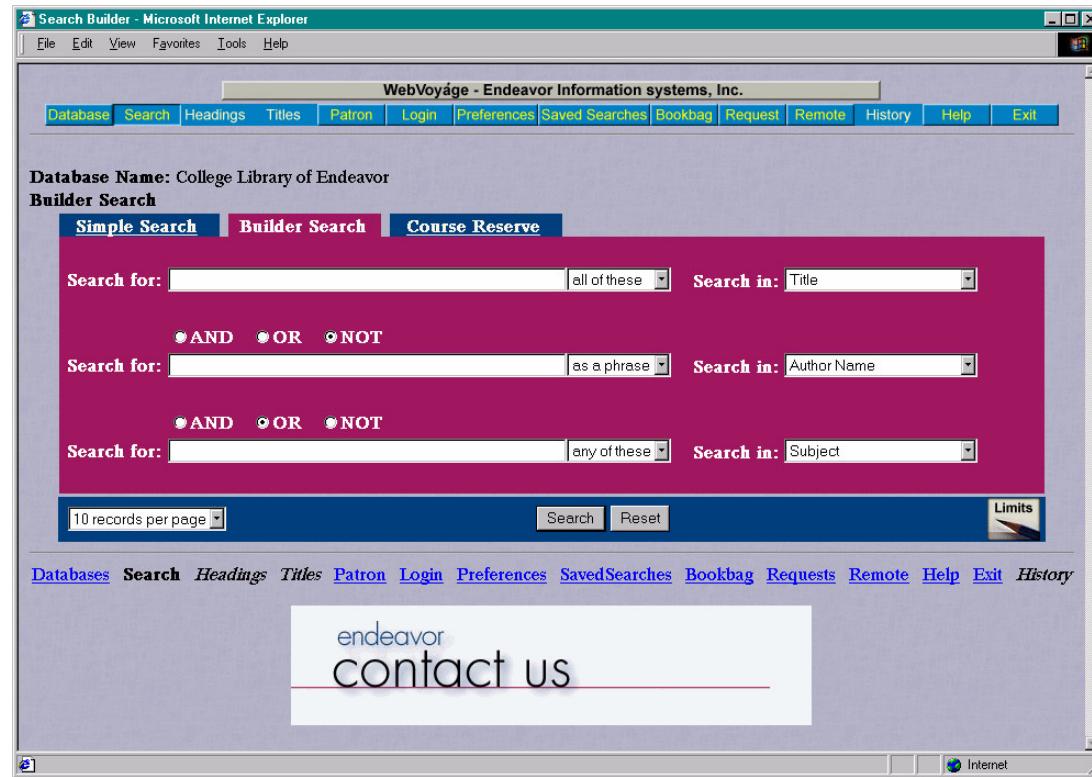


Figure 5-6. Builder Search page



### Procedure 5-3. Performing a Builder Search

---

Use the following steps to perform a Builder search:

1. On the Simple Search page, click the **Builder** tab. The Search Builder page appears.
2. Type in the search term(s) you want to find in the first **Search for** field. (Punctuation, case, and word order are ignored.)
3. Default search criteria can be modified for your search:
  - Select from the drop-down list whether you want to search for **all of these** search terms, **any of these** search terms, or the search terms **as a phrase**. For standard or call numbers, you must select to search 'as a phrase'.

- 
- Select the data fields in which you want to search for your search term(s) from the **Search In** drop-down list. Note that all of the search terms in the Search In drop-down list are keyword searches. Your library defines which fields are available in the System Administration module. For more information, see “Keyword Searches” in the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.
  - Select which Boolean operator you want applied to the next search statement(s), if applicable, from the drop-down list: **AND**, **OR**, or **NOT**. If you are adding additional search statements, you must click a Boolean operator.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for any additional terms that you want to search for and all of the relevant criteria.
  5. Click the **Limits** button to limit your search by specific criteria (optional). For more information, see [Limiting a Search](#) on [page 5-73](#).
  6. Click **Search** to begin the search. Click **Reset** to clear all items from the **Search in** text boxes.

The search results are displayed in a Title List (see [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#)).

**NOTE:**

If Combined Searches is enabled, you can combine Builder Searches to further focus or expand your search. For Combined Search configuration and use, see [Combining Builder Searches \(Optional\)](#) on [page 5-16](#).

---

## Configuring the Builder Search

**NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Boolean\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Builder Search include:

**Table 5-6.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK

**Table 5-6.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Text on Builder Search tab	Tab_Text
Informational text	ht_buildersearch.htm
Find This label	SearchBoxText
Visible size of Find This: field	InputBoxSize
Max. characters in Find This: field	InputBoxMaxLength
Search For label	Search_For
Search In label	Search_In
Retain/remove blank lines	StripBlankLines
Search Button label	SubmitButton
Reset Button label	ResetButton
Clear Button label	ClearButton
Number of rows of search terms, default settings of Search In drop-down, any/all/as a phrase drop-down, and AND/OR/NOT button	NumSets XXX_SearchGroup XXX_WithinField XXX_NextSetOper
Color of Builder Search tab	ActiveTabColor
Color of Builder Search tab when inactive	InactiveTabColor
Color of lower portion of Builder Search tab	InactiveTabColor
Color of text on Builder Search tab	ActiveFontColor
Color of text on Builder Search tab when inactive	InactiveFontColor
Color of inactive tabs and text for Simple, Course Reserve, Map Searching	See Simple, Course Reserve, Map Search sections on changing tab and text colors
Search limits in effect msg	limitmsg.htm
search resulted in no hits msg	nohitsmsg.htm

---

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-7.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file
Limits button image	limit.gif
Values in Records Per Page drop-down	[Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Builder Search, see [Editing the Builder Search \(Boolean Search\) Screen](#) on [page 2-24](#).

### Combining Builder Searches (Optional)

If Combine Builder Searches is enabled, you can combine Builder Searches to further focus or expand your search. After performing two or more Builder Searches, you can combine them from the History page and perform them together as one search. Combined Builder Searches adds the selected builder search strings together using the AND operator. The combined builder search retains the operators of the builder searches used in the original searches.

For an example of a combined builder search string, see the Search Request line of [Figure 5-8](#) on [page 5-18](#).

After performing combined builder searches, the searches appear on the History page, and can be edited just like normal searches, by clicking the hyperlinked text in the Edit column of that search (see [Figure 5-9](#) on [page 5-19](#)). When editing a combined builder search (from the Builder Search screen), you can enter a maximum of 98 search terms. One new search term box is added each time you run the cumulative search from the Builder Search screen (to a maximum of 98 search term boxes). For an example, see [Figure 5-10](#) on [page 5-20](#).



#### **IMPORTANT:**

*Combined Builder Searches only works with Builder Searches.*



### Procedure 5-4. Performing a Combined Builder Search

To perform a Combined Builder Search (After performing two or more Builder searches):

1. Go to the **History** page.
2. In the **Combine** column, select the check box to the left of each search to use in the combined builder search.
3. Click the **Search** button.

Figure 5-7 illustrates two Builder searches selected for a combined builder search. Figure 5-8 shows the results of this search.

The screenshot shows the WebVoyáge History page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links: Database, Search, Headings, Patron, Login, Bookbag, Request, History, Help, and Exit. Below the navigation bar is a table titled "Search Type". The table has three columns: "Combine", "Edit", and "Hits". There are two rows in the table:

Combine	Edit	Hits	Search Type	Searched For
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">1</a>	563	<a href="#">Builder</a>	(ethics) [in Keyword Anywhere] OR ("moral?") [in Keyword Anywhere]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">2</a>	59	<a href="#">Builder</a>	(science) [in Title/Subject] AND ("philosophy") [in Title/Subject]

Below the table is a "Search" button. At the bottom of the page, there is a footer with links: Databases, Search, Headings, Patron, Login, Bookbag, Requests, History, Help, and Exit. To the right of the footer is a "endeavor contact us" logo.

Figure 5-7. Two Builder Searches on the History page, selected for a combined builder search

**WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.**

---

[Database](#) [Search](#) [Headings](#) [Titles](#) [Patron](#) [Login](#) [Bookbag](#) [Request](#) [History](#) [Help](#) [Exit](#)

**Database Name:** Local Library

Search Request: Builder = (ethics)[in Keyword Anywhere] OR ("moral 3F")[in Keyword Anywhere]  
AND (science)[in Title/Subject] AND ("philosophy")[in Title/Subject]

Search Results: Displaying 1 through 10 of 372 entries.

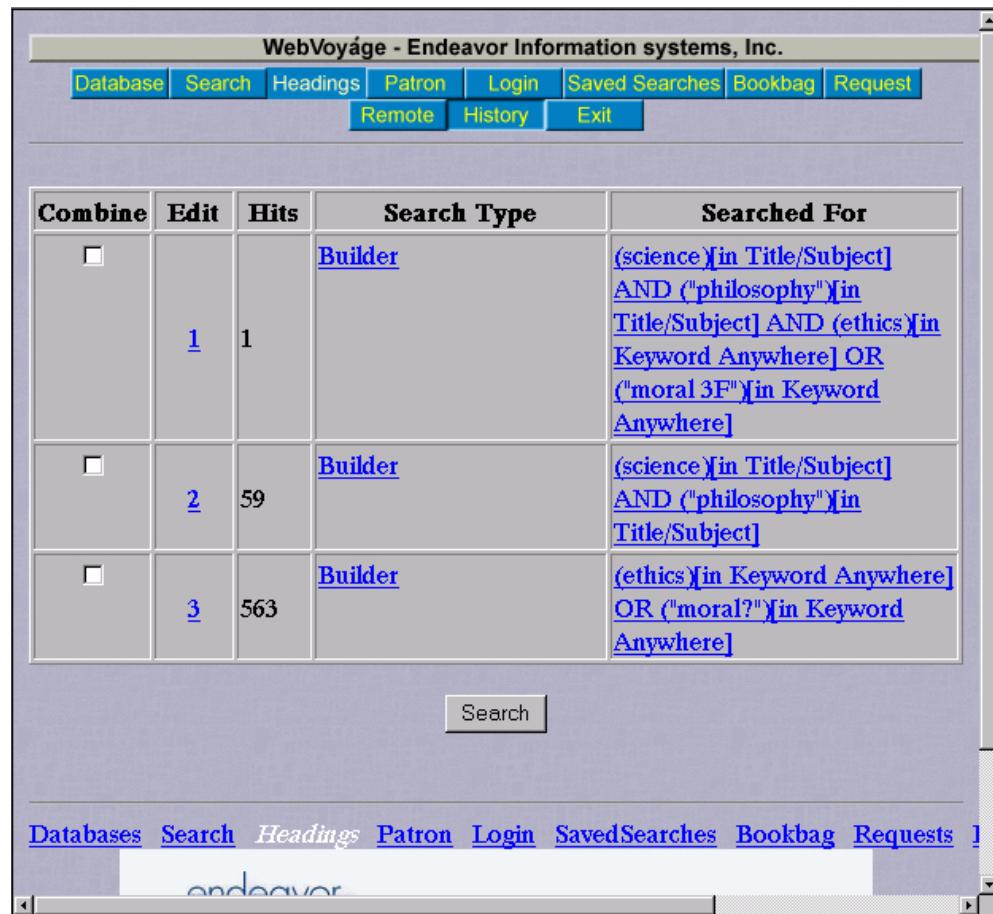
◀ previous [1](#) [11](#) [21](#) [31](#) [41](#) [51](#) ... [371](#) next ▶

---

Sort by:  Post Limit

#	Full Title	Author	Format
<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	<a href="#">Adventures on the borderlands of ethics / by Richard C. Cabot.</a>	Cabot, Richard C. (Richard Clarke), 1868-1939.	Book
	<i>Library Location: Main Collection      Call Number: BJ1725 .C3      Status: Not Charged</i>		
<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	<a href="#">After virtue : a study in moral theory / Alasdair MacIntyre.</a>	MacIntyre, Alasdair C.	Book

Figure 5-8. Results of the combined builder search in Figure 5-7



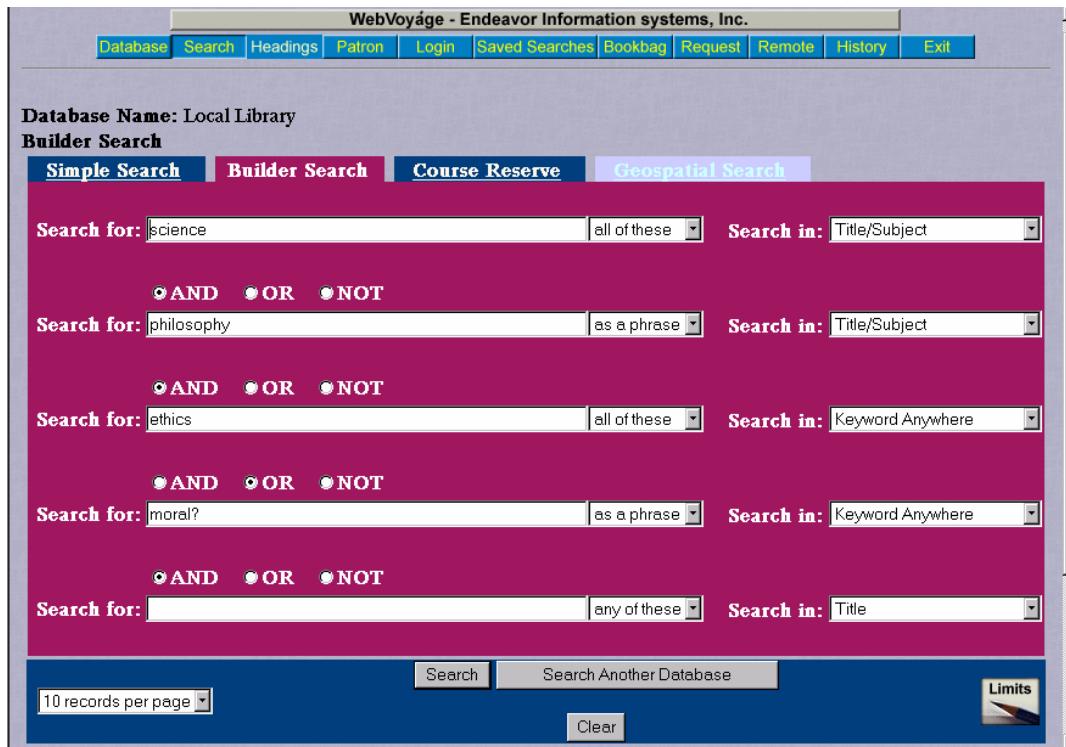
The screenshot shows the WebVoyáge History Page. At the top, a menu bar includes Database, Search, Headings, Patron, Login, Saved Searches, Bookbag, Request, Remote, History, and Exit. Below the menu is a table titled "Search Type" with three rows. The first row has a "Combine" checkbox checked, "Edit" link (labeled 1), "Hits" 1, and "Searched For" the query "(science)[in Title/Subject] AND ("philosophy")[in Title/Subject] AND (ethics)[in Keyword Anywhere] OR ("moral 3F")[in Keyword Anywhere]". The second row has a "Combine" checkbox checked, "Edit" link (labeled 2), "Hits" 59, and "Searched For" the query "(science)[in Title/Subject] AND ("philosophy")[in Title/Subject]". The third row has a "Combine" checkbox checked, "Edit" link (labeled 3), "Hits" 563, and "Searched For" the query "(ethics)[in Keyword Anywhere] OR ("moral?"[in Keyword Anywhere]). A "Search" button is located below the table. At the bottom, a navigation bar lists Databases, Search, Headings, Patron, Login, Saved Searches, Bookbag, Requests, and a user name Endeavor.

Combine	Edit	Hits	Search Type	Searched For
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">1</a>	1	<a href="#">Builder</a>	(science)[in Title/Subject] AND ("philosophy")[in Title/Subject] AND (ethics)[in Keyword Anywhere] OR ("moral 3F")[in Keyword Anywhere]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">2</a>	59	<a href="#">Builder</a>	(science)[in Title/Subject] AND ("philosophy")[in Title/Subject]
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">3</a>	563	<a href="#">Builder</a>	(ethics)[in Keyword Anywhere] OR ("moral?"[in Keyword Anywhere])

[Search](#)

Databases [Search](#) [Headings](#) [Patron](#) [Login](#) [Saved Searches](#) [Bookbag](#) [Requests](#) [Endeavor](#)

Figure 5-9. Combined builder search as a separate search on History Page



**Figure 5-10.** Search term box added to a combined builder search when editing

### Combined Builder Search Configuration

Combined Search configuration consists of the following:

- [Enabling and Disabling Combined Builder Searches](#)
- [Customizing the Search History Page](#)
- [Enabling relevance ranking for Combined Builder Searches](#)

#### Enabling and Disabling Combined Builder Searches

You enable Combined Builder Searches in the `CombinedSearches` variable of the `opac.ini` file (`/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage`). For the default `CombinedSearches` variable, see line 5 of Figure 5-11.

- To enable Combined Builder Searches, set this variable to **Y**.
- To disable Combined Builder Searches, set this variable to **N**.

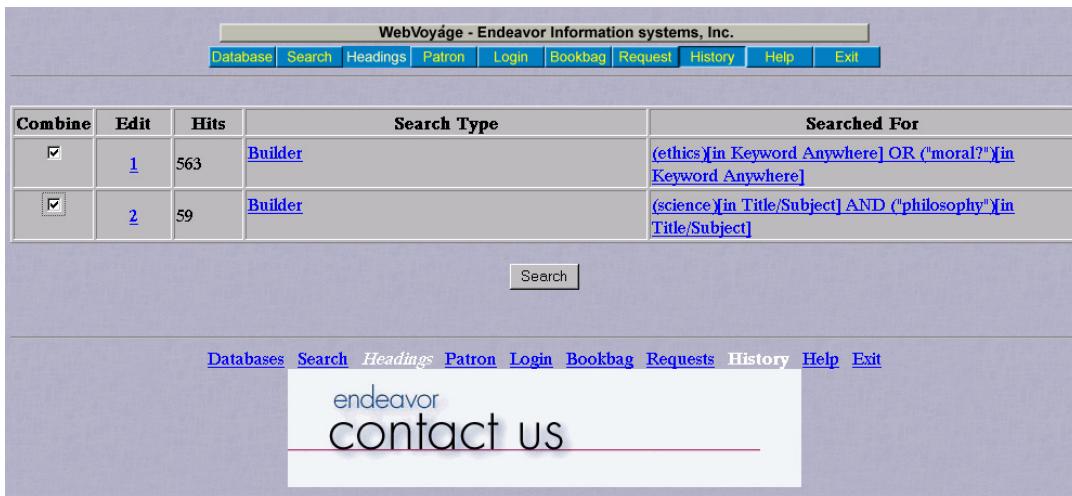
```
Line#
1 [Search_History_Page]
2 Background=
3 Text=
4 -----Display Truncated-----
5 CombinedSearches=Y
6 Combine=Combine
7 Search=Search
8 msg1=You have not selected any searches to
      combine.
9 msg2=Search string cannot exceed 3,000
      characters. Please edit and retry your
      search.
```

---

**Figure 5-11. Default [Search\_History\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file**

### Customizing the Search History Page

You can customize the heading of the column containing the check boxes used to determine which searches are combined. This is done in the **Combine** variable of the **[Search\_History\_Page]** stanza of the opac.ini file (see line 6 of Figure 5-11). The text after this variable is the text of the heading of the **Combine** check box column, and the default is shown in Figure 5-12.



**Figure 5-12. Search History page with Combined Searches enabled**

You can customize the text of the button used to perform combined builder searches from the Search History page. This is done in the `Search` variable of the `[Search_History_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file (see line 7 of Figure 5-11). The text after this variable is the text of the button used to perform combined builder searches, and the default is shown in Figure 5-12.

### Enabling relevance ranking for Combined Builder Searches

You can set the Combined Builder Searches feature to rank the results of combined builder searches by relevance. You set this in the `CombinedRelevance` variable of the `opac.ini` file (`/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage`). For the default `CombinedSearches` variable, see line 5 of Figure 5-13.

- To have combined builder search results ranked by relevance, set this variable to `Y` (the default).
- To have combined builder search results not ranked by relevance, set this variable to `N`. Search results will be ranked alphabetically by title.

```
Line#
1 [Search Dialog]
2 BooleanRelevance=N
3 SingleDisplay=True
4 Limits=True
5 CombinedRelevance=Y
```

---

**Figure 5-13. Default [Search Dialog] stanza**

## Course Reserve Search

---

A Course Reserve search allows you to search for active items on reserve for various classes.

**NOTE:**

You cannot Limit a course reserve search.

There are two available interface styles for Course Reserve searches:

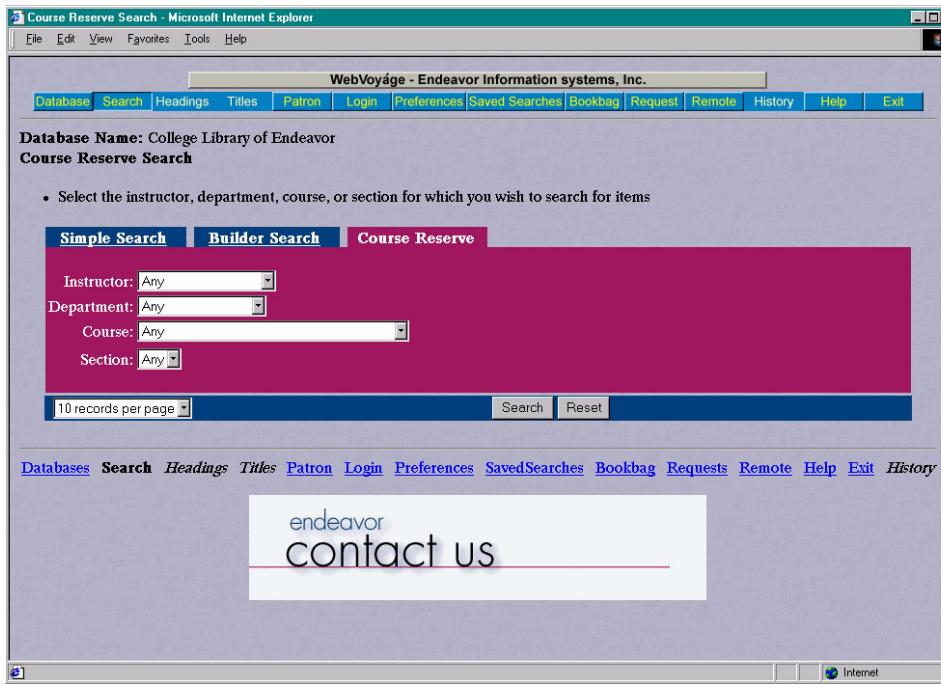
- Drop-down interface- Contains drop-down lists of course reserve information such as instructor and department (see [Course Reserve Drop-Down interface on page 5-23](#)).
- Browse interface- Contains abbreviated alphabetical browse lists of reserve items (see [Course Reserve Browse interface on page 5-27](#))

### Course Reserve Drop-Down interface

---

The Course Reserve drop-down interface contains drop-down boxes, organized by instructor, course, department, section, or any combination thereof. The course reserve information entered into the Voyager Circulation module appears here.

[Figure 5-14](#) shows an example of the Course Reserve drop-down interface.



**Figure 5-14.** Course Reserve Search page (Drop-Down style)

#### **Procedure 5-5. Performing a Course Reserve Search**

To perform a Course Reserve search:

1. On the Simple Search page, click the **Course Reserve** tab.
  2. Select one item from one (or more) of the following drop-down lists: **Instructor**, **Department**, **Course**, or **Section**. Performing a search without selecting at least one of the items will cause the search to fail. Depending on your library's policies, one or more of the above drop-downs may not be available. For information about configuring available drop-down boxes, see [Course Reserve Search Page Stanza on page 3-97](#).
  3. Click **Search** to begin the search. Click **Reset** to clear all selected items from the lists.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

**Result:**

The search results are displayed in a Title List (see [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#)).

**Configuration Overview**

---

This section contains a brief configuration overview. For detailed configuration, see [Course\\_Reserve\\_Search\\_Page\\_Stanza](#) on [page 3-97](#). The majority of the configuration for the Course Reserve drop-down interface is done in the [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyageDisplayDirectory).

**Setting the Course Reserve Display Type to Drop-Down**

To set the Course Reserve interface type, configure the CourseReserveBrowse variable in the [Options] stanza of the opac.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyageDisplayDirectory).

- CourseReserveBrowse=N sets the course reserve interface to the drop-down style.

**Enabling Drop-Down boxes and labels**

Determine which categories of information are available to patrons by adding or removing text from the variables listed in [Table 5-8](#).

**Table 5-8. Course Reserve Drop-Down Variables**

Variable	Drop-down box effected
Instructor	Instructor
Department	Department
Course	Course
Section	Section

- To exclude a drop-down box from the Course Reserve Search page, remove all text after the variable (with the exception of the = symbol).

**NOTE:**

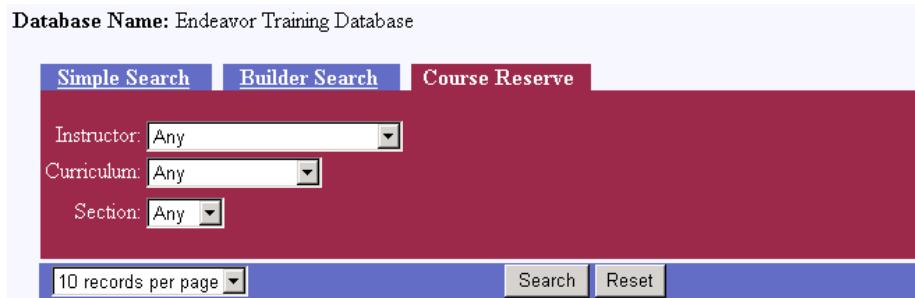
If you prefer not to delete any text from the stanza, you can exclude the drop-down from the page by commenting its variable out, instead of deleting the label text.

- If any text exists after the variable, that text displays as the label of the corresponding drop-down box.

For example, the example stanza in [Figure 5-15](#) would remove the course drop-down box from the Course Reserve Search page, and change the label of the department drop-down box (from the default of **Department:**) to **Curriculum:** (see [Figure 5-16](#)).

```
[Course_Reserve_Search_Page]
-----
Instructor=Instructor:
Department=Curriculum:
Course=
Section=Section:
```

**Figure 5-15. Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza**



- Select the instructor, department, course, or section for which you wish to search for items

**Figure 5-16. Corresponding Course Reserve screen**

**NOTE:**

The reserve information from the Voyager Circulation Module determine the drop-down box contents, and related records.

Again, the same results can be attained by using the following as the course variable:

```
#Course=Course:
```

## Informational text

Configure the informational text on the Course Reserve Search Page in the ht\_coursereserve.htm file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/webvoyageDisplayDirectory). You can also change the position of this text in the [HelpPosition] stanza of the WebVoyáge.ini file (see [HelpLocation Stanza](#) on [page 3-10](#)).

## Course Reserve Browse interface

---

WebVoyáge can display Course Reserve information in a browse-interface format. Patrons can search for their Course Reserve information by:

- instructor
- department
- course

**NOTE:**

You may display Course Reserve Information in WebVoyáge in either the drop-down list form or the browse-interface display, but not both.

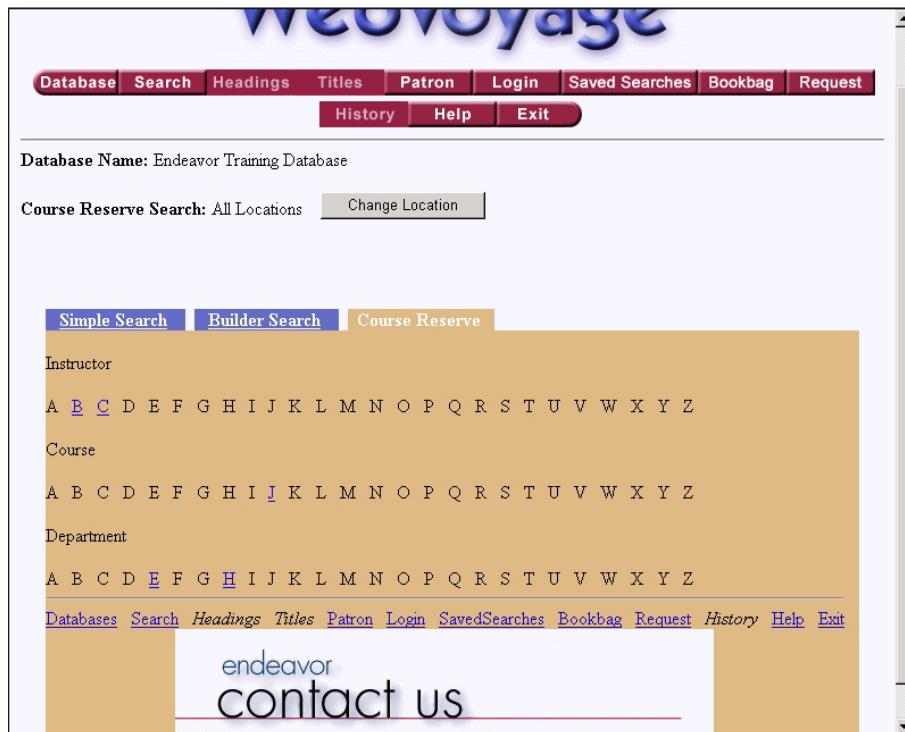


Figure 5-17. Course Reserve Alphabetical List page (Browse style)

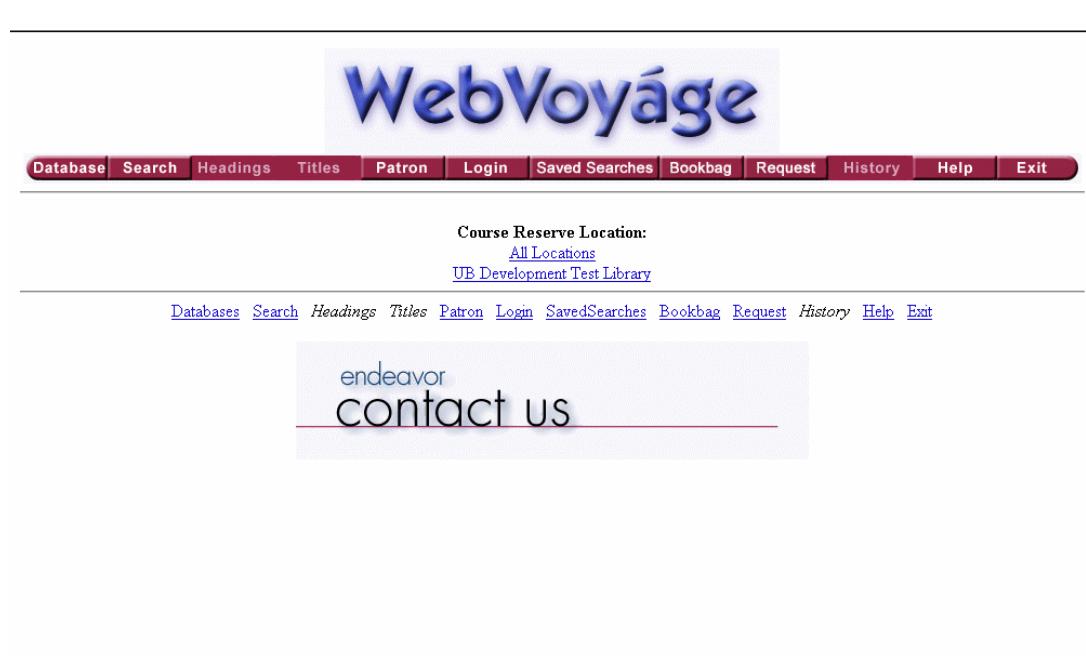


#### Procedure 5-6. Performing a Course Reserve Browse

To perform a Course Reserve browse:

1. On the Simple Search page, click the **Course Reserve** tab.

Result: The Course Reserve Browse Location page displays.



---

**Figure 5-18. Course Reserve Browse Locations page**

2. Select a location.

Result: The Course Reserve Alphabetical List page displays (see [Figure 5-17](#) on [page 5-28](#)).

3. Select a letter or number from one of the following alphabetical lists: **Instructor, Department, or Course**.

Result: A detailed list of Course Reserve material for that letter or number displays. The information displayed varies, according to the alphabetical list type from which the letter or number was selected (see [Figure 5-19](#)).

**NOTE:**

All letters of the alphabet appear in each list of the page, and letters with corresponding Course Reserve items appear as links. Numbers and accented letters will only appear on the list page if there is Course Reserve material associated with them.



**Figure 5-19. Course Reserve Browse detail list screen (Course)**

4. Select the desired section, instructor, or department.

Result: The material on reserve is displayed in a Title List (see [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#)).

## Configuration Overview

Configuring the Course Reserve browse interface includes the following:

- [Setting the Course Reserve display type to the browse interface](#)
- [Configuring the Course Reserve Location Selection screen](#)
- [Configuring the Course Reserve Browse Alphabetical List page](#)
- [Configuring the Individual Browse Screens](#)

- [Editing the html block messages](#)

### Setting the Course Reserve display type to the browse interface

---

To set the Course Reserve interface type, configure the CourseReserveBrowse variable in the [Options] stanza of the opac.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyageDisplayDirectory).

- CourseReserveBrowse=Y sets the course reserve interface to the Browse style.
- CourseReserveBrowse=N sets the course reserve interface to the drop-down box style.

### Configuring the Course Reserve Location Selection screen

---

The screen from which patrons select course reserve list circulation locations (see Figure 5-20) is customizable. Edit this screen in the Course\_Reserve\_Alpha\_Page stanza in the opac.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyageDisplayDirectory). [Figure 5-21](#) shows a sample [Course\_Reserve\_Location\_Page] stanza.

---



Figure 5-20. Course Reserve Location screen

```
[Course_Reserve_Location_Page]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
TableColor=
TableText=
ActiveTabColor=
InactiveTabColor=
ActiveFontColor=
InactiveFontColor=
Tab_Text=
```

**Figure 5-21. Course\_Reserve\_Location\_Page stanza**

The variables listed in [Figure 5-21](#), [Figure 5-22](#) act exactly as their counterparts in the [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza (see [\[Combined\\_Search\\_Page\] Stanza](#) on [page 3-88](#)), with the exception of the Active\*Color variables, which are not applicable on the Course Reserve Browse Locations page.

**NOTE:**

The inactive tab variables (InactiveTabColor, InactiveFontColor) and the Tab\_Text variable in the Course\_Reserve\_Location\_Page stanza determine the tab text of the Course Reserve tab on the Search page.

## Configuring the Course Reserve Browse Alphabetical List page

---

```
[Course_Reserve_Alpha_Page]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
TableColor=
TableText=
ActiveTabColor=
InactiveTabColor=
ActiveFontColor=
InactiveFontColor=
Instructor_Name=
Department_Name=
Course_Name=
Instructor_Name_Display
Department_Name_Display
Course_Name_Display
List_Entry_Style=
```

---

**Figure 5-22. Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Alpha\_Page] stanza**

Table 5-9 details the Course Reserve Browse Alphabetical List page-specific variables

**Table 5-9. Detailed [Course\_Reserve\_Alpha\_Page] variable descriptions**

Variable	Description
Instructor_Name	Heading text above the Instructor alphabetical list
Department_Name	Heading text above the Department alphabetical list
Course_Name	Heading text above the Course alphabetical list

---

**Table 5-9. Detailed [Course\_Reserve\_Alpha\_Page] variable descriptions**

Variable	Description
Instructor_Name_Display	Order of the three alphabetical lists on the page
List_Entry_Style	Include CSS2 compliant code here to customize list text (the letters/numbers available for selection on the Alphabetical list page).  Example: List_Entry_Style=font-size:16pt; letter-spacing: 1px
Instructor_Name_Display	Determines the display and the order of display on the Course Reserve Alphabetical page. For each information category (instructor, department, course), set these variables to 1, 2, or 3, depending on the order in which you want them to appear. To hide one of them, enter a 0 after the *_Name_Display variable.
Department_Name_Display	
Course_Name_Display	

### Configuring the Individual Browse Screens

---

Each of the categories has a corresponding information screen. These screens display the information for that category, linked to the material available.

Configure the display options for these pages in the corresponding stanzas:

- [Course\_Reserve\_Instructor\_Page]
- [Course\_Reserve\_Course\_Page]
- [Course\_Reserve\_Department\_Page]

```
[Course_Reserve_Instructor_Page]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
TableColor=
TableText=
ActiveTabColor=
InactiveTabColor=
ActiveFontColor=
InactiveFontColor=
Tab_Text
```

---

**Figure 5-23.** Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Instructor\_Page] stanza

---

```
[Course_Reserve_Course_Page]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
TableColor=
TableText=
ActiveTabColor=
InactiveTabColor=
ActiveFontColor=
InactiveFontColor=
Tab_Text=
```

---

**Figure 5-24.** Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Course\_Page] stanza

---

---

```
[Course_Reserve_Department_Page]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
TableColor=
TableText=
ActiveTabColor=
InactiveTabColor=
ActiveFontColor=
InactiveFontColor=
Tab_Text=
```

---

**Figure 5-25. Sample [Course\_Reserve\_Department\_Page] stanza**

The variables listed in [Figure 5-23](#), [Figure 5-24](#), and [Figure 5-25](#) act exactly as their counterparts in the `[Combined_Search_Page]` stanza (see [\[Combined\\_Search\\_Page\] Stanza on page 3-88](#)).

#### Editing the html block messages

The informational messages displayed on the Course Reserve Browse pages are in the `/m1/voyager/xxxxdb/webvoyage/html` directory. [Table 5-10](#) details html block messages and the Course Reserve Browse pages they affect.

**Table 5-10. Course Reserve Browse html block message detail**

Message file	Page
<code>course_reserve_alpha.htm</code>	Course Reserve Browse alphabetical screen
<code>course_reserve_course.htm</code>	Course selection screen
<code>course_reserve_dept.htm</code>	Department selection screen
<code>course_reserve_instructor.htm</code>	Instructor selection screen
<code>course_reserve_locs.htm</code>	Course Reserve Browse location selection screen

## WebVoyáge OpenURL features

---

WebVoyáge uses the OpenURL standard to generate links and obtain information from external sources. The features which use the OpenURL standard are:

- [WebVoyáge OpenURL Linking on page 5-37](#)

This feature sends information gathered from the MARC record in WebVoyáge to an OpenURL-compliant linking server to obtain full text articles and more.

- [OpenURL Item requests on page 5-46](#)

This feature sends requests for items to external services (such as Relais™) using information gathered from the MARC record.

These features require configuration (in configuration files) specific to the features, as well as OpenURL parsing profile configuration generic to all OpenURL features. The feature-specific configuration can be found in the section for each feature. For the generic OpenURL parsing profile information, see [General MARC Field Parsing Variables for OpenURL on page 5-50](#).



### IMPORTANT:

*For the target service to process your URI, the URI must be constructed according to the service's requirements. Even if the service accepts OpenURL formatted requests, it may have additional requirements. Make sure you check with your target service before you configure the RequestURI.cfg file.*

## WebVoyáge OpenURL Linking

---

From the WebVoyáge Record Display Page, Voyager can generate a URI in OpenURL format from information in the MARC record. When sent to an OpenURL-compliant linking server, the information in this URI is used to locate corresponding full text records.

### Enabling OpenURL Links on the Record Display Page

---

Enabling OpenURL links on the Record Display Page consists of:

- Setting the path (in the opac.ini file) to the LinkFinder server (see [The opac.ini file on page 5-38](#)).

- Adding stanzas to the `linkfinder.cfg` file for each of the databases using LinkFinder, switching LinkFinder on for those databases, as well as detailing the parsing rules for MARC record information extraction for those databases.

For more information, see [Configuring parsing profiles for MARC record information extraction](#) on [page 5-41](#).

## Configuring View Record Page OpenURL link display for WebVoyáge

The following sections detail configuring OpenURL support for WebVoyáge.

### The opac.ini file

The first step in the process of configuring OpenURL is to direct Voyager to the LinkFinder server. This is done in the `LinkFinderServer` variable of the `[View_Record_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file. You must configure this stanza in the `opac.ini` of each WebVoyáge Display Directory used by a database using LinkFinder, including any custom WebVoyáge Display Directories you have created.

Example: You are enabling OpenURL for use with all Voyager citation databases, and all Z39.50 citation databases. Configure this stanza in the `opac.ini` file of both the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/vcit` and the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/zcit` directories.

The mouse-over text for the LinkFinder button, displaying on the **Record** screen in WebVoyáge, is also set in the `[View_Record_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file.

### Directing Voyager to the LinkFinder server

Line 2 of [Figure 5-26](#) shows a sample `LinkFinderServer` variable. Enter the IP address of the server on which the LinkFinder program resides in the `xxx.xx.xx.xx` section of the variable. The remainder of the variable is the path on the server of the LinkFinder program, including the filename.

### Directing WebVoyáge to the LinkFinder button

Place the button desired for connecting to LinkFinder in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory and include the name of the button in the `LinkFinderButtonGraphic=` variable.

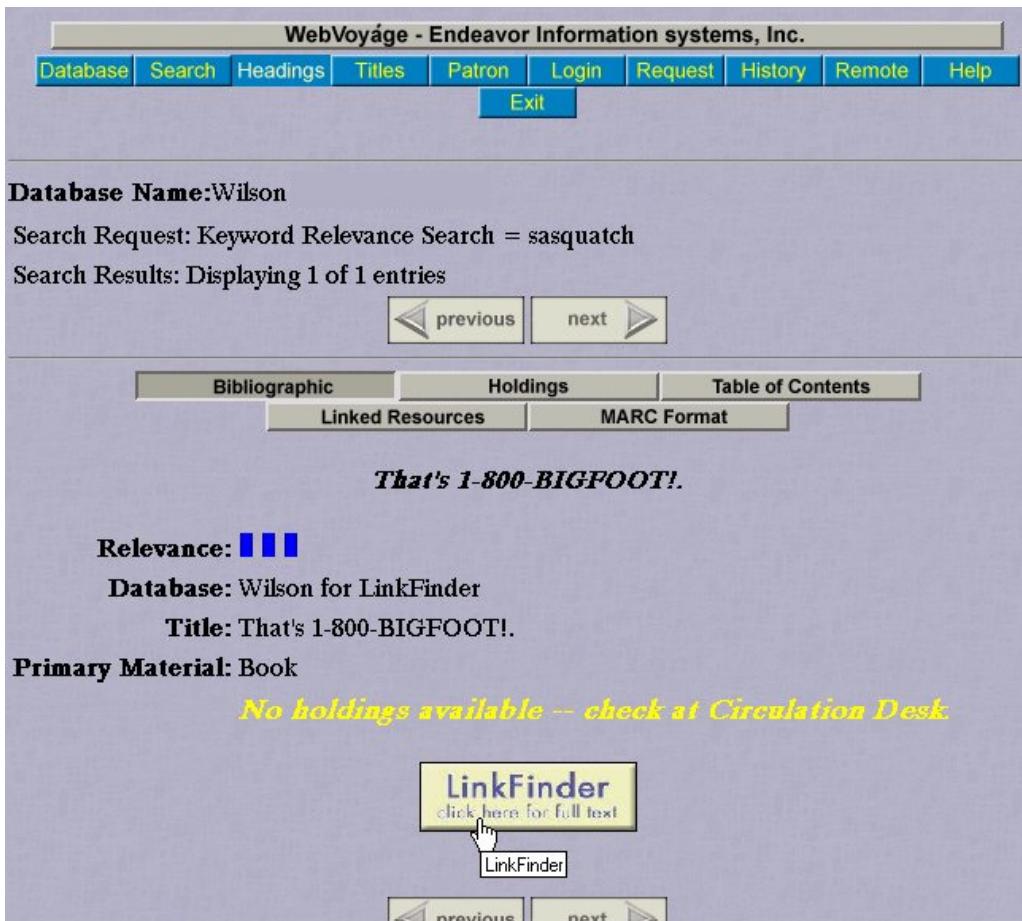
### Setting the mouse-over text of the LinkFinder button

Line 1 of [Figure 5-26](#) shows the sample `LinkFinderButton` variable. Enter the mouse-over text of the LinkFinder button here. [Figure 5-27](#) shows sample mouse-over text of the LinkFinder button.

Line#

```
1 LinkFinderButton=LinkFinder  
2 LinkFinderServer=http://xxx.xx.xx.xx/LinkFinder/  
    LinkFinder.jsp10?  
3 LinkFinderButtonGraphic=LinkFinderPlusButton.jpg
```

**Figure 5-26.** Sample LinkFinderButton and LinkFinderServer variables in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file



**Figure 5-27.** LinkFinder button with mouse-over text (as set in the opac.ini file)

### The linkfinder.cfg file

The next step in LinkFinder configuration is setting up parsing profiles for LinkFinder to use in creating active URLs.

#### Configuring parsing profiles for MARC record information extraction

You must tell Voyager which information to extract from the MARC records in the citation databases being searched. This is done in the `linkfinder.cfg` file in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage` directory. LinkFinder uses the information extracted to build active URLs for each record when the LinkFinder button is clicked from the record information. Each database you are using LinkFinder with must have a stanza associated with it in the `linkfinder.cfg` file, where you provide the MARC information extraction profile for that database.

[Figure 5-28](#) shows some variables for inclusion in these stanzas. The `[Database]` stanza name is the name of the database as entered in the **Database Code** field of **Database Definitions** in **System Administration**. Each variable in the stanza corresponds to the piece of information being extracted from the MARC records being viewed in WebVoyáge.

---

Line#

```
1 [Database]
2 LinkFinderDisplay=Y
3 USE_LFV3=Y
4 title=245/a/0///0/
5 aulast=100/a/0//, /0/
6 aufirst=100/a/0/, //0/
7 date-year=260/c/4//./0/
8 issn=022/a/9///0/
9 isbn=020/a/10///0/
10 coden=030/a/6///0/
```

---

**Figure 5-28. Variables in a database stanza in the linkfinder.cfg file**

The stanza consists of the following three component types:

- 
1. The LinkFinderDisplay variable which enables or disables LinkFinder and the LinkFinder button for the specified database (see line 2 of [Figure 5-28](#)).

**NOTE:**

Omitting the database specification from the linkfinder.cfg file entirely also disables the Linkfinder button on that database.

2. The SID (service identifier) variable which directs Voyager to add the SID to the generated URI (see line 3 of [Figure 5-28](#)). This variable uses the following format:

USE\_LFV3=Y/N

- Set this variable to Y to include the SID in the URI sent to LinkFinder.
- Set this variable to N to omit the SID from the URI sent to LinkFinder.

**NOTE:**

The SID (service identifier) for voyager is: sid=Endeavor:Citation Server. This cannot be edited or changed.

3. The MARC field parsing specification variables (or meta-tags). These variables are dictated by the OpenURL standard (see line 4 through 10 of [Figure 5-28](#)). [Table 5-13](#) on [page 5-50](#) details the meta-tags supported by the OpenURL standard.

[Figure 5-29](#) shows an example of a stanza, set to parse a standard citation record like the one in [Figure 5-30](#), with detailed descriptions of each variable and parsing elements.

---

Line#

1	[SDIRECT]
2	LinkFinderDisplay=Y
3	USE_LFV3=Y
4	title=245/a/0///0/
5	aulast=100/a/0//, /0/
6	aufirst=100/a/0/, //0/
7	date-year=260/c/4//./0/
8	issn=022/a/9///0/

---

**Figure 5-29. Sample database stanza in the linkfinder.cfg file**

- **title=245/a/0///0/** (from the 245 field, subfield a, extract all data)  
Use the following to extract all of the title information from the 245a field.
  1. Specify the **245** field as the Tag element.
  2. Specify the **a** subfield as the Subfield element.
  3. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the beginning of the string, the Length of Start Field element will be 0.
  4. Since we do not want to specify any text after which to begin extracting, leave the Parse Start After element blank.
  5. Since we do not want to specify any text before which to end extracting, leave the Parse End Before element blank.
  6. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the end of the string, the Length of End Field element will be 0.
- **aulast=100/a/0//, /0/** (from the 100 field, subfield a, extract all data up to the first , character and single space found).  
Use the following to extract the Author last name information from the 100a field.
  1. Specify the **100** field as the Tag element.
  2. Specify the **a** subfield as the Subfield element.
  3. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the beginning of the string, the Length of Start Field element will be 0.
  4. Since we do not want to specify any text after which to begin extracting, leave the Parse Start After element blank.
  5. To extract only the text up to the , character and space, enter “, ” in the Parse End Before element blank.
  6. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the end of the string, the Length of End Field element will be 0.
- **aufirst=100/a/0/, //0/** (from the 100 field, subfield a, extract all data after the , character).  
Use the following to extract the Author first name information from after the , character in the 100a field.
  1. Specify the **100** field as the Tag element.
  2. Specify the **a** subfield as the Subfield element.

- 
- 3. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the beginning of the string, the Length of Start Field element is 0.
  - 4. Since we want to begin extracting after the , text, enter “,” in the Parse Start After element.
  - 5. Since we do not want to specify any text before which to end extracting, leave the Parse End Before element blank.
  - 6. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the end of the string, the Length of End Field element is 0.
- **date-year=260/c/4//./0/** (from the 260 field, subfield c, extract the four characters starting at the beginning of the subfield, up to the first . character).

Use the following to extract the four-digit year information up to the . character in the 260c field.

- 1. Specify the 260 field as the Tag element.
  - 2. Specify the c subfield as the Subfield element.
  - 3. Since we want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the beginning of the string (four), the Length of Start Field element will be 4.
  - 4. Since we do not want to specify any text after which to begin extracting, leave the Parse Start After element blank.
  - 5. Since we want to extract all information up to the first . in the subfield, set the Parse End Before element to “.”.
  - 6. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the end of the string, the Length of End Field element will be 0.
- **issn=022/a/9///0/** (from the 022 field, subfield a, extract the first nine characters).

Use the following to extract the nine ISSN characters from the 022a field (see line 18 of [Figure 5-30](#)).

- 1. Specify the 022 field as the Tag element.
- 2. Specify the a subfield as the Subfield element.
- 3. Since we want to specify nine characters to extract from the beginning of the string, the Length of Start Field element will be 9.
- 4. Since we do not want to specify any text after which to begin extracting, leave the Parse Start After element blank.

- 
5. Since we do not want to specify any text before which to end extracting, leave the Parse End Before element blank.
  6. Since we do not want to specify a limited number of characters to extract from the end of the string, the Length of End Field element will be 0.
- 

Line#

1	000 00848pam 2200241 i 45
2	001 31761
3	008 800813s1981 nyua j 000 1 eng
4	010 __  a 80021402 /AC
5	020 __  a 0395301718 (lib. bdg.) :  c \$8.95
6	035 __  a ocm06666043
7	040 __  a DLC  c DLC  d m.c.  d SHC
8	049 __  a SHCM
9	050 0_  a PZ7.C2344  b Be 1981
10	082 0_  a [E]  2 19
11	100 1_  a Carrick, Carol.
12	245 10  a Ben and the porcupine /  c by Carol Carrick ; pictures by Donald Carrick.
13	260 __  a New York :  b Houghton Mifflin/Clarion Books,  c [c1981]
14	300 __  a [32] p. :  b col. ill. ;  c 23 x 24 cm.
15	520 __  a After his dog tangles with a porcupine, Christopher fears for his pet's safety until he thinks of a way to pacify the porcupine.
16	590 __  a \$9.42 B&T 5-30-89 MM
17	650 _1  a Porcupines  x Fiction.
18	650 _1  a Dogs  x Fiction.
19	700 1_  a Carrick, Donald.
20	

---

Figure 5-30. MARC information of record parsed by [Figure 5-29](#)

## **OpenURL Item requests**

---

OpenURL-formatted item requests sends requests for an item to an external source, using a link formatted according to the OpenURL standard. The link is activated when a patron clicks the OpenURL request button from the View Record Page in WebVoyage. Determine which patron groups have access to this feature in the configuration file.

WebVoyage uses a configuration file (`RequestURI.cfg`) to extract information from a MARC record on view, and constructs a URI (more specifically, an OpenURL formatted link) from that information. This link is then sent to an OpenURL compliant service or server to request an item.

Configure the `RequestURI.cfg` file (`/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local`) to suit your target service or server. Obtain the requirements from them before configuring the file. For more, see [The RequestURI.cfg File](#) on [page 5-47](#).

### **Enabling OpenURL Item Requests**

---

The WebVoyage button that sends the OpenURL item request displays according to the following:

- Variables in the opac.ini file (see [Configuring the variables in the opac.ini](#) on [page 5-47](#))
- The database(s) listed in the `RequestURI.cfg` file
- The patron groups listed as eligible to place OpenURL Item requests in the `RequestURI.cfg` file
- Patron must be logged into WebVoyage and belong to a patron group authorized (in a `PatronGroupCODE=CanRequest` variable) to make OpenURL item requests

### **Configuring the variables in the opac.ini**

---

The OpenURL Item Request-specific variables in the `[View_Record_Page]` stanza of the opac.ini file (`/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local`) are detailed in Table 5-11.

**Table 5-11. OpenURL Item Request opac.ini variables**

<b>Variable</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>RequestURIServer=</code>	The server address of the target. For example: <code>http://www.myserver.edu</code>

**Table 5-11. OpenURL Item Request opac.ini variables**

Variable	Description
RequestURIButton=	Alternate text of the send OpenURL Item Request button
RequestURIButtonGraphic=	Graphic of the send OpenURL Item Request button  <b>NOTE:</b> The default path on the web server for the button is /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images.

### The RequestURI.cfg File

The RequestURI.cfg file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage) contains the configuration for the OpenURL Item Request feature.

Create a stanza for each database for which you want OpenURL item requests available. The stanza name should be the database code as entered in **Database Definitions** in the Voyager System Administration module.

[Figure 5-31 on page 5-47](#) shows a sample RequestURI.cfg.

```
[LOCAL]
title=773/t/0///0/
aulast=092/a/3/.///
auinit=0
volume=773/g/0/Volume:/, Issue:/0/
issue=035/g/0/Issue:/, Date:/0/
date-year=773/g/0/Date://4/
spage=300/a/0///0/
issn=0
part=
PatronGroupFAC=CanRequest
PatronGroupUGD=CanRequest
UsePI=IID
```

**Figure 5-31. Sample RequestURI.cfg file**

```

UsePS=Y
genre=*m:Book
genre=*a:Book Item
genre=*b:Article
CN=050/a/0///0/

```

**Figure 5-31. Sample RequestURI.cfg file (Continued)**

Table 5-12 details the RequestURI.cfg file components.

**Table 5-12. RequestURI.cfg file components**

Component	Description	Variable
MARC record OpenURL parsing profiles	Determine how information gathered from the MARC record maps to OpenURL tags	See <a href="#">General MARC Field Parsing Variables for OpenURL</a> on <a href="#">page 5-50</a>
Patron Group specifications	Determine which patrons can use the OpenURL Item Request feature	PatronGroupCODE=CanRequest
Patron ID inclusion option	<b>OPTIONAL:</b> <i>For use with Relais ILL services. Includes the Patron ID and surname, based on WebVoyage patron login. This allows WebVoyage patrons to log into Relais automatically when requesting items.</i>	UsePI= <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SSN- Sends the Voyager SSN as the Relais Patron ID</li> <li>• IID- Sends the Voyager IID as the Relais Patron ID</li> <li>• Barcode- Sends the Voyager Barcode as the Relais Patron ID</li> </ul>
Patron Surname inclusion option		UsePS= Sends the Last name of the currently logged in Voyager patron to Relais ILL as the Patron Surname.
Genre specification	<b>OPTIONAL:</b> <i>Substitutes the genre specification for the code in the variable.</i>	genre= For more, see <a href="#">Including Genre Information Automatically</a> on <a href="#">page 5-53</a>

## Relais-related configuration notes

---

The OpenURL-formatted Item Requests feature can be used with any OpenURL compatible request service. Check with the request service provider for specific (non-OpenURL) requirements, and edit the RequestURI.cfg file accordingly. This section includes additional configuration for Relais ILL solutions.

- Including the Call Number using the CN parsing tag
- Logging into Relais ILL using the usePI and usePS variables in the RequestURI.cfg file

### Including the Call Number using the CN parsing tag

To include the Call number (from the bibliographic record) for record requests to Relais ILL, include the `CN=` variable in the RequestURI.cfg file (see [Figure 5-31](#) on [page 5-47](#) for an example). Determine which MARC field your bibliographic records use for the Call number, and create the `CN=` variable from that, using the MARC field parsing variables ([Table 5-13](#)).

Example:

`CN=050/a/0///0/`

This variable adds the contents of the 050a MARC field to the URI as the call number.

### Logging into Relais ILL

Use the `usePI` and `usePS` variables to send your Relais Patron ID and your Patron Surname to Relais ILL when requesting an item from WebVoyage. The information corresponding to the PI (Patron ID) in the Voyager patron record (SSN, IID, or Barcode) must correspond to the patron's PI in the Relais database.



#### IMPORTANT:

*You must use Voyager patron information (for the PI) corresponding to your Relais PI. The Voyager patron SSN, IID or Barcode must correspond to the Relais PI for each patron account.*

Alternatively, you can include your UL (User Login) and UP (User Password) in the URL stem in the `RequestURIServer` variable in the opac.ini. The UL and UP specified in the configuration file will be used for *all* requests made to Relais using that Voyager database. Therefore you should only use this method if you have a single Relais account for your entire staff (using that Voyager database).

---

### The RequestURI.cfg file.

If you are a Relais ILL customer, build your RequestURI.cfg file based on the information you use to request records using Relais ILL. Think of the OpenURL Item Request feature as entering the information into the request form for you, in one long string of characters.

## General MARC Field Parsing Variables for OpenURL

---

Use the MARC field parsing variables to construct OpenURL-compliant URLs. The format of the URLs that you build are dictated by the site or service you are sending the URLs to.

[Table 5-13](#) details the MARC field parsing variables used for parsing MARC record fields for use with OpenURL.

**Table 5-13. MARC field parsing variables (meta-tags) (Page 1 of 2)**

META-TAG	Value	Description
aulast		A string with the first author's last name
aufirst		A string with the first author's first name
auinit		A string with the first author's first and middle initials
auinit1		A string with the first author's first initial
auinitm		A string with the first author's middle initials
issn		An ISSN number
eissn		An ISSN that refers to the electronic version of a serial publication
coden		A CODEN
isbn		An ISBN number
sici		A SICI of a journal article, volume or issue. Compliant with ANSI/NISO Z39.56-1996 Version 2 (see <a href="http://sunsite.berkeley.edu/SICI/">http://sunsite.berkeley.edu/SICI/</a> )
bici		A BICI for a section of a book, to which an ISBN has been assigned. Compliant with <a href="http://www.niso.org/bici.html">http://www.niso.org/bici.html</a> Book Item and Component Identifier
title		The title of a bundle (journal, book, conference)
stitle		The abbreviated title of a bundle

**Table 5-13. MARC field parsing variables (meta-tags) (Page 2 of 2)**

META-TAG	Value	Description
atitle		The title of an individual item (article, preprint, conference proceeding, part of a book)
volume		The volume of a bundle
part		The part of a bundle
Issue		The issue of a bundle
spage		The start page of an individual item in a bundle
epage		The end page of an individual item in a bundle
pages		Pages covered by an individual item in a bundle. The format of this field is ' spage-epage'
genre	journal, book, conference, article, pre-print, proceeding, book item	The type of material
arnum		The number of an individual item, in cases where there are no pages available.
date	YYYY-MM-DD YYYY-MM YYYY	The publication date of the item or bundle encoded in the "Complete date" variant of ISO8601 (see <a href="http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-datetime">http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-datetime</a> ). This format is YYYY-MM-DD where YYYY is the four-digit year, MM is the month of the year between 01 (January) and 12 (December), and DD is the day of the month between 01 and 28 or 29 or 30 or 31, depending on length of the month and whether it is a leap year.
ssn	winter   spring   summer   fall	The season of publication
quarter	1   2   3   4	The quarter of publication
CN		Call number.  <b>NOTE:</b> Voyager-specific tag. Not part of the OpenURL specification.

**NOTE:**

This list is complete as of the time of publication, but is subject to change. More information about these variables can be found at *The NISO AX Committee for the OpenURL website*

---

The information entered into the MARC field parsing specification variables depends on how you want the OpenURL compliant linkserver to parse the information in the MARC record. The general parsing format is as follows:

***Variable (meta-tag)=Tag/Subfield/Length of Start Field/Parse Start After/Parse End After/Length of End Field***

[Table 5-14](#) describes the parsing elements, as well as the possible values for each.

**NOTE:**

Do not worry about including too many MARC field parsing specification variables. Voyager looks for matches one meta-tag specification at a time, and adds the results together. If, for example, a record contains a match in all but one field, Voyager will simply include the information for all but that one field in the URI.

**Table 5-14. Parsing element descriptions**

Element	Description	Possible values
Tag	MARC field from which information is drawn for variable	Valid MARC field number
Subfield	MARC subfield from which information is drawn for variable	Valid MARC subfield letter
Length of Start Field	You can specify a fixed number of characters to extract from a field, or use this element in conjunction with the Information to parse from Parse Start After element as a starting point for extraction	Valid number or 0
Parse Start After	Text of field/subfield after which extraction is to begin.	Text of field/subfield
Parse End Before	Text of field/subfield at which extraction is to end. This must be a unique character or set of characters, because Voyager will start parsing at the beginning of the string for the Parse End Before element.	Text of field/subfield

**Table 5-14. Parsing element descriptions**

<b>Element</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Possible values</b>
Length of End field	You can specify a fixed number of characters to extract from a field, or use this element in conjunction with the Information to parse from Parse End Before element as an end point for extraction.	Valid number or 0

### Including Genre Information Automatically

Voyager will include the genre information for a record in the constructed URI, based on the record's leader 6 and 7, if you set the genre variable in the configuration file. If a record is processed using any of the WebVoyage OpenURL features, WebVoyage compares the record's leader 6 and 7 value, to the leader 6 and 7 components in the genre variables in the OpenURL configuration file. If a match is found, WebVoyage adds the corresponding genre specification to the URI.

Example:

For example, to include the genre specification of *Book* in the URI's of all MARC records with a leader 6 value of *a* and leader 7 value of *m*, include the following in the RequestURI.cfg file.

```
genre=*m:Book
```

Sample leader: 01461pam a2200325 a 45

For any MARC records with a leader 6 and 7 value of *am*, using an OpenURL feature, WebVoyage would include the genre specification of *Book* in the URI:

```
http://www.linkserveraddress.edu/
abcdefg&genre=book&lmnop
```

### The genre Variable Format

The `genre` variable takes the following general form:

```
genre=leader6leader7:genre specification
```

WebVoyage uses the `leader6` and `leader7` components to find a match to the MARC record. Enter the leader 6 and leader 7 values which you want to use this genre specification.

---

You can use the \* symbol as a wildcard when including the genre leader specification. For example, you could set `genre=*a:Book Item` to include the *Book Item* genre specification in the URI of all MARC records with *any* leader 6 value, and a leader 7 value of a.

For more information about the *genre* OpenURL meta-tag, see Table 5-13 or the *The NISO AX Committee for the OpenURL on the Web*.

## Map Searching in WebVoyáge

---

**NOTE:**

This feature may not be available if your institution does not have the Geospatial Searching tools.

WebVoyáge provides you with a variety of options when searching for map-related items in your database. You can conduct a search for geospatial items by specifying a region which must be covered, in part or in whole, by the item. This region can be a rectangle, a polygon, a point or circle, a corridor or route, or a range.

To begin map searching, from the main search page click the **Maps** button. This will display the map-related search functions.

**NOTE:**

If your institution has customized your version of WebVoyáge, the names of buttons on screen may be different from those listed in this section. The names used in this section assume that your installation uses the default captions and settings.

### Rectangle Searching

---

The Rectangular Search function allows you to perform a search on a rectangular area. To define the area, you must provide the lower-left corner and the upper-right corner of the rectangle.

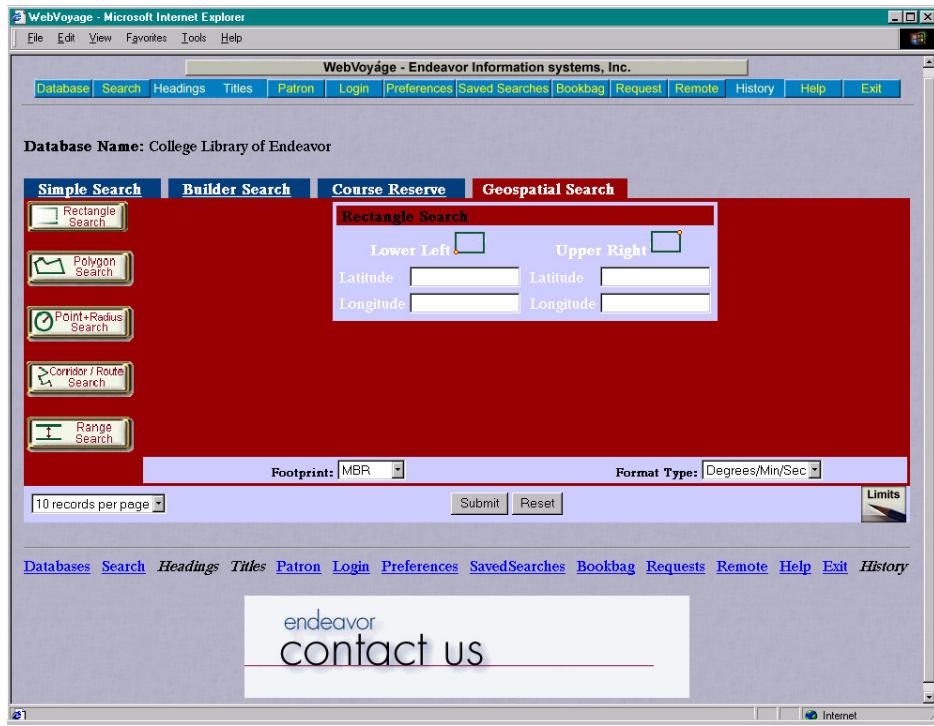


#### Procedure 5-7. Performing a Rectangle Search

---

To perform a search on a rectangular area:

1. Click the **Rectangle Search** button. The Rectangle Search tools appear on screen.



**Figure 5-32. Map Searching - Rectangle Search Page**

2. Enter whether you want your search to include only the area covered by the map or the Minimum Bounding Rectangle (the smallest rectangular area that would enclose the entire map) by selecting **Polygon** or **MBR** from the **Footprint** drop-down list.
3. Enter which units you want to use in order to describe the coordinates by clicking the **Format Type** drop-down and selecting a type from the list. You can select **Degrees/Minutes/Seconds**; **Degrees/Decimal Minutes**; **Decimal Degrees**; **UTM Meters**; **MGRS**; or **UPS**.
4. Enter the coordinates for the lower-left point of the area into the field(s) in the Lower Left column. If you selected units of Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, Degrees/Decimal Minutes, or Decimal Degrees, you must enter a Latitude value and a Longitude value. If you selected UTM Meters, MGRS, or UPS, you must enter the point into the field in that format.

- 
5. Enter the coordinates for the upper-right point of the area into the field(s) in the Upper-Right column. If you selected units of Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, Degrees/Decimal Minutes, or Decimal Degrees, you must enter a Latitude value and a Longitude value. If you selected UTM Meters, MGRS, or UPS, you must enter the point into the field in that format.
  6. Select how many records you want to appear on each page of search results by clicking the **Records Requested** drop-down and selecting a number from the list.
  7. Click the **Search** button to perform the search; or click the **Clear** button to reset the fields on screen.

## Customizing the Rectangle Search

### **NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Map\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to Rectangle Searching include:

**Table 5-15.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Informational text	ht_geosearch_1.htm
Text of header of search data entry table	Rectangle_Search
Lower Left column header text	Lower_Left
Upper Right column header text	Upper_Right
Rectangle Search button, pressed	d-bt_rectangle.gif

Configurations used on other Map Search screens include those in [Table 5-16](#).

**Table 5-16.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Latitude field label	Latitude
Longitude field label	Longitude
UTM Meters field label	UTM_Meters

Some of these settings are used for more than one type of map searching (but not all); for example, the **Latitude**, **Longitude** and **UTM\_Meters** variables appear on the Rectangle Search, Polygon Search, Point and Radius Search, and Corridor/Route Search pages.

### **Customizing All Map Search Pages**

---

**NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Map\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations that apply to all of the Map Search pages include:

**Table 5-17.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Submit button label	SubmitButton
Reset button label	ResetButton
Map Search tab color	ActiveTabColor
Map Search tab text	TabText
Header color	Top_BackGround_Color
Background color of search data entry table	Table_Background_Color
Rectangle Search button	(d-)bt_rectangle.gif
Polygon Search button	(d-)bt_polygon.gif
Point and Radius Search button	(d-)bt_point.gif
Corridor/Route Search button	(d-)bt_route.gif
Range Search button	(d-)bt_range.gif)
Limits screen button	limit.gif

---

**Table 5-17.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Footprint field labels	Footprint variable in [Map_Footprint] stanza
Footprint field font color	FontColor variable in [Map_Footprint] stanza
Format Type field labels	FormatType variable in [Map_FormatType] stanza
Format Type field font color	FontColor variable in [Map_FormatType] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-18.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file
Limits button image	limit.gif
Values in Records Per Page drop-down	[Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Rectangle Search, see [Editing the Map Search Screen on page 2-37](#).

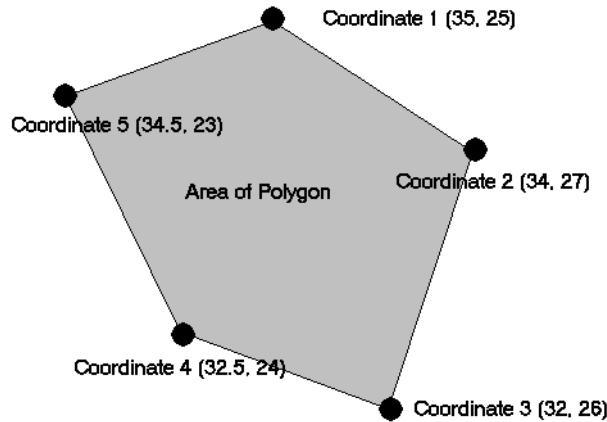
## Polygon Searching

---

The Polygon Searching function allows you to perform a search on an area that is not rectangular. You can enter up to ten points into the list. The area that will be searched is created by connecting each coordinate with the next in the order in which they were entered. (The first and last coordinates are also connected together.)

For example, if you entered Latitude and Longitude information into the fields Coordinate 1 through Coordinate 5, Coordinate 1 would be connected with Coordinates 2 and 5; Coordinate 2 would be connected to Coordinates 1 and 3; and so on. A visual representation of the polygonal area would appear as the following:

---



---

**Figure 5-33. Area Defined in a Polygonal Search**



---

#### **Procedure 5-8. Searching on a Polygon area**

---

To perform a search on a polygonal area:

1. Click the **Polygon Search** button. The Polygon Search tools appear on screen.
2. Enter whether you want your search to include only the area covered by the map or the Minimum Bounding Rectangle (the smallest rectangular area that would enclose the entire map) by selecting **Polygon** or **MBR** from the **Footprint** drop-down list.
3. Enter which units you want to use in order to describe the coordinates by clicking the **Format Type** drop-down and selecting a type from the list. You can select **Degrees/Minutes/Seconds**; **Degrees/Decimal Minutes**; **Decimal Degrees**; **UTM Meters**; **MGRS**; or **UPS**.

- 
4. Enter the coordinates for each point of the area to be searched (in the order that they are to be connected to form the polygon; the last point in the list will be connected to the first point in the list) into the Coordinate fields. If you selected units of Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, Degrees/Decimal Minutes, or Decimal Degrees, you must enter a Latitude value and a Longitude value for each coordinate. If you selected UTM Meters, MGRS, or UPS, you must enter the coordinates into the field in that format.
  5. Select how many records you want to appear on each page of search results by clicking the **Records Requested** drop-down and selecting a number from the list.
  6. Click the **Search** button to perform the search; or click the **Clear** button to reset the fields on screen.

### **Customizing the Polygon Search**

**NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Map\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to Polygon Searching include:

**Table 5-19.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Informational text at top of screen	ht_geosearch_2.htm
Header text of the search data entry table	Polygon_Search
Lower Left column header text	Lower_Left
Upper Right column header text	Upper_Right
Rectangle Search button, pressed	d-bt_rectangle.gif

Configurations used on other Map Search screens include:

**Table 5-20.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Latitude field label	Latitude
Longitude field label	Longitude

**Table 5-20.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Coordinate field label	Coordinate
UTM Meters field label	UTM_Meters

Some of these settings are used for more than one type of map searching; for example, the **Coordinate** variable is used on the Polygon Search and Corridor/Route Search pages. The **Latitude**, **Longitude** and **UTM\_Meters** variables are used on the Rectangle Search, Polygon Search, Point and Radius Search, and Corridor/Route Search pages.

Other aspects of the page are applied to all of the Map Search pages in the same way, and some apply to other pages of WebVoyáge as well. For more information on aspects of the Map Search pages that can be customized, see [Customizing All Map Search Pages on page 5-57](#).

For more information on configuring the Polygon Search, see [Editing the Map Search Screen on page 2-37](#).

## **Point and Radius Searching**

---

The Point and Radius Searching function allows you to perform a search for a single point, or for a circular area centered around a point.

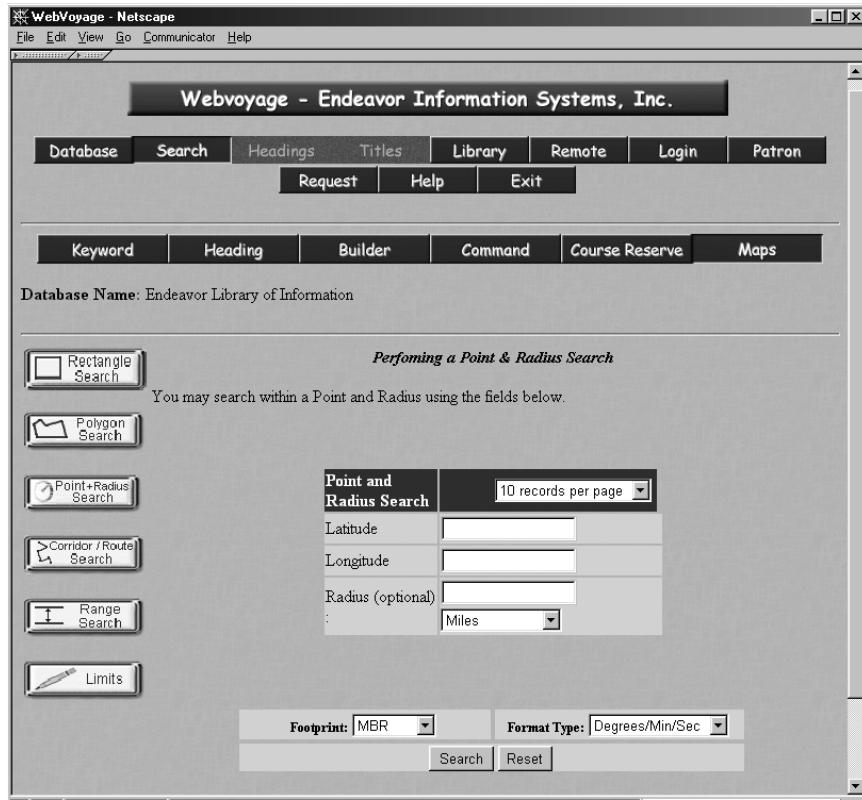


### **Procedure 5-9. Searching on a Circular Area**

---

To perform a search on a circular area:

1. Click the **Point and Radius Search** button. The Point and Radius Search tools appear on screen.



**Figure 5-34. Map Searching - Point and Radius Search Page**

2. Enter whether you want your search to include only the area covered by the map or the Minimum Bounding Rectangle (the smallest rectangular area that would enclose the entire map) by selecting **Polygon** or **MBR** from the **Footprint** drop-down list.
3. Enter which units you want to use in order to describe the coordinates by clicking the **Format Type** drop-down and selecting a type from the list. You can select **Degrees/Minutes/Seconds**; **Degrees/Decimal Minutes**; **Decimal Degrees**; **UTM Meters**; **MGRS**; or **UPS**.
4. Enter the coordinates for the center point of the circle into the field(s) in the Point and Radius block. If you selected units of Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, Degrees/Decimal Minutes, or Decimal Degrees, you must enter a Latitude value and a Longitude value. If you selected UTM Meters, MGRS, or UPS, you must enter the point into the field in that format.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

5. Enter the dimension of the radius of the circle into the Radius field, and select a unit of measurement for the radius from the Radius drop-down menu. Entering a Radius measurement is optional.
6. Select how many records you want to appear on each page of search results by clicking the **Records Requested** drop-down and selecting a number from the list.
7. Click the **Search** button to perform the search; or click the **Clear** button to reset the fields on screen.

### Customizing the Point and Radius Search

#### NOTE:

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Map\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to Point and Radius Searching include:

**Table 5-21.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Informational text at top of screen	ht_geosearch_3.htm
Header text of search data entry table	Point_Search
Radius field label	Radius_Text
Point and Radius Search button, pressed	d-bt_point.gif

Configurations used on other Map Search screens include:

**Table 5-22.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Number of search points appearing on screen	Number_Of_Coordinates
Latitude field label	Latitude
Longitude field label	Longitude
UTM Meters field label	UTM_Meters

---

Some of these settings are used for more than one type of map searching; for example, the **Latitude**, **Longitude** and **UTM\_Meters** variables are used on the Rectangle Search, Polygon Search, Point and Radius Search, and Corridor/Route Search pages.

Other aspects of the page are applied to all of the Map Search pages in the same way, and some apply to other pages of WebVoyage as well. For more information on aspects of the Map Search pages that can be customized, see [Customizing All Map Search Pages](#) on [page 5-57](#).

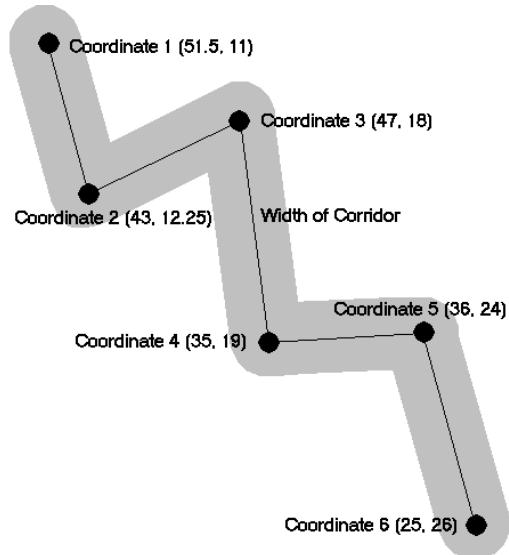
For more information on configuring the Point and Radius Search, see [Editing the Map Search Screen](#) on [page 2-37](#).

## **Corridor/Route Searching**

---

The Corridor/Route Searching function allows you to perform a search on an area defined as a path along a series of points. You can enter up to ten points into the list. The area that will be searched is created by connecting each coordinate with the next in the order in which they were entered, and then measuring tangentially away from each 'leg' of the path. (Unlike the Polygon Search, however, the first and last coordinates are not connected together, and no interior range is searched.)

For example, if you entered Latitude and Longitude information into the fields Coordinate 1 through Coordinate 6, Coordinate 1 would be connected with Coordinate 2; Coordinate 2 would be connected to Coordinates 1 and 3; and so on. A visual representation of the corridor would appear as the following:

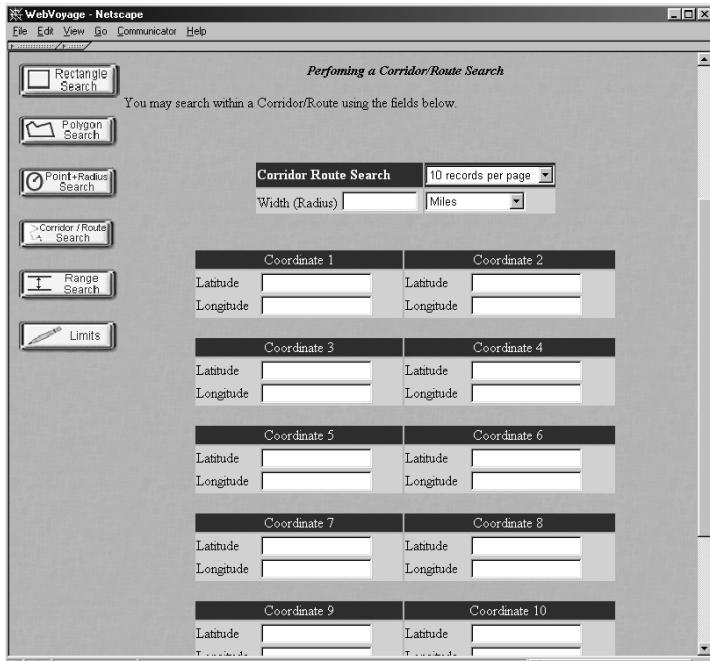


---

**Figure 5-35. Area Defined in a Corridor Search**

To perform a search on a corridor or route:

1. Click the **Corridor/Route Search** button. The Corridor/Route Search tools appear on screen.



**Figure 5-36. Map Searching - Corridor/Route Search Page**

2. Enter whether you want your search to include only the area covered by the map or the Minimum Bounding Rectangle (the smallest rectangular area that would enclose the entire map) by selecting **Polygon** or **MBR** from the **Footprint** drop-down list.
3. Enter which units you want to use in order to describe the coordinates by clicking the **Format Type** drop-down and selecting a type from the list. You can select **Degrees/Minutes/Seconds**; **Degrees/Decimal Minutes**; **Decimal Degrees**; **UTM Meters**; **MGRS**; or **UPS**.
4. Enter the coordinates for each point of the route to be searched (in the order in which they are to be connected to form the route; unlike the Polygon Search, however, the last point in the list will not be connected to the first point in the list) into the Coordinate fields. If you selected units of Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, Degrees/Decimal Minutes, or Decimal Degrees, you must enter a Latitude value and a Longitude value for each coordinate. If you selected UTM Meters, MGRS, or UPS, you must enter the coordinates into the field in that format.
5. Select how many records you want to appear on each page of search results by clicking the **Records Requested** drop-down and selecting a number from the list.

6. Click the **Search** button to perform the search; or click the **Clear** button to reset the fields on screen.

### Customizing the Corridor/Route Search

**NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Map\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to Corridor/Route Searching include:

**Table 5-23.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Informational text at top of screen	ht_geosearch_4.htm
Header text of search data entry table	Route_Search
Width field label	Width
Corridor/Route Search button, pressed	d-bt_route.gif

Configurations used on other Map Search screens include:

**Table 5-24.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Number of search points appearing on screen	Number_Of_Coordinates
Latitude field label	Latitude
Longitude field label	Longitude
Coordinate field label	Coordinate
UTM Meters field label	UTM_Meters

Some of these settings are used for more than one type of map searching; for example, the **Coordinate** variable is used on the Polygon Search and Corridor/Route Search pages. The **Latitude**, **Longitude** and **UTM\_Meters** variables are used on the Rectangle Search, Polygon Search, Point and Radius Search, and Corridor/Route Search pages.

---

Other aspects of the page are applied to all of the Map Search pages in the same way, and some apply to other pages of WebVoyage as well. For more information on aspects of the Map Search pages that can be customized, see [Customizing All Map Search Pages](#) on [page 5-57](#).

For more information on configuring the Corridor/Route Search, see [Editing the Map Search Screen](#) on [page 2-37](#).

## Range Searching

---

The Range Search function allows you to perform a search on a partially bounded area. To define the area, you may provide any combination of upper, lower, left and right coordinates.

To perform a search over a range:

1. Click the **Range Search** button. The Range Search tools appear on screen.
2. Enter whether you want your search to include only the area covered by the map or the Minimum Bounding Rectangle (the smallest rectangular area that would enclose the entire map) by selecting **Polygon** or **MBR** from the **Footprint** drop-down list.
3. Enter which units you want to use in order to describe the coordinates by clicking the **Format Type** drop-down and selecting a type from the list. You can select **Degrees/Minutes/Seconds**; **Degrees/Decimal Minutes**; **Decimal Degrees**; **UTM Meters**; **MGRS**; or **UPS**.
4. Enter the coordinate for each limit of the range into the field(s) in the Lower Left column. If you selected units of Degrees/Minutes/Seconds, Degrees/Decimal Minutes, or Decimal Degrees, you must enter a Latitude value and a Longitude value. If you selected UTM Meters, MGRS, or UPS, you must enter the point into the field in that format.
5. Select how many records you want to appear on each page of search results by clicking the **Records Requested** drop-down and selecting a number from the list.
6. Click the **Search** button to perform the search; or click the **Clear** button to reset the fields on screen.

## Customizing the Range Search

### NOTE:

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Map\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to Range Searching include:

**Table 5-25.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Informational text at top of screen	ht_geosearch_5.htm
Header text of search data entry table	Range_Search
Header over Vertical Line Search field	Vertical_Line_Search
Header over Horizontal Line Search field	Horizontal_Line_Search
Left Longitude field label	Left_Longitude
Right Longitude field label	Right_Longitude
Upper Latitude field label	Upper_Latitude
Lower Latitude field label	Lower_Latitude
Range Search button, pressed	d-bt_range.gif
Image to right of Vertical Line Search header	range_vert.gif
Image to right of Horizontal Line Search header	range_horz.gif

Other aspects of the page are applied to all of the Map Search pages in the same way, and some apply to other pages of WebVoyáge as well. For more information on aspects of the Map Search pages that can be customized, see [Customizing All Map Search Pages](#) on [page 5-57](#).

For more information on configuring the Range Search, see [Editing the Map Search Screen](#) on [page 2-37](#).

## Command Search

---

Command-Line searches can be performed through the Simple Search page. Depending on your library's policies, this may be given a different name or may not be allowed.



### Procedure 5-10. Performing a Command Line Search

To perform a command-line search, you must do the following:

1. Click the **Simple Search** tab. This will cause the Simple Search tab to display.
2. Enter the command-style term you want to search for in the **Find This:** field.
3. In the **Find Results in:** list, select **Command-Line Search**.
4. Click the **Submit** button to execute the command-line search.

## Search History Page

The Search History page allows you to re-execute or edit any of your previous searches. To access the Search History page, you must first complete at least one search. This makes the Search History page available through the **History** button in the toolbar.

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Internet Explorer window titled "Search History - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The address bar displays "WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Favorites, Tools, and Help. A toolbar below the menu bar contains buttons for Database, Search, Headings, Patron, Login, Preferences, Saved Searches, Bookbag, Request, Remote, History, Help, and Exit. The main content area is a table titled "Search Type" with two rows of data. The first row shows a search for "Builder" with the query "(burt){in Keyword Anywhere} NOT ('ernie'{in Keyword Anywhere})". The second row shows a search for "Keyword Non-Relevance Search" with the query "alfred einstein". At the bottom of the page, there is a footer with links for Databases, Search, Headings, Patron, Login, Preferences, Saved Searches, Bookbag, Requests, Remote, Help, Exit, and History. Below the footer is a contact us form with fields for Name, E-mail, and Message, and a "Send" button.

Combine	Edit	Hits	Search Type	Searched For
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">1</a>	90	Builder	(burt){in Keyword Anywhere} NOT ('ernie'{in Keyword Anywhere})
	<a href="#">2</a>	603	Keyword Non-Relevance Search	alfred einstein

Figure 5-37. Search History Page

The Search History page lists a link to edit the search (Edit), number of items found for each search (Hits), the type of search performed (Search Type), and what was searched (Searched For).



### Procedure 5-11. Re-Executing a Previous Search

---

To re-execute a previous search:

1. Click the **History** button in the banner. This will open the Search History page.
2. Click the entry in either the **Search Type** or the **Searched For** field for the search that you want to repeat. This will re-execute the search. Depending on the type of search being executed, either the Title List or the Headings List will appear next.

**NOTE:**

The **History** tab does not retain information about search limits. If you re-execute or edit a search, any current limits in effect will be used instead of limits you specified previously.



### Procedure 5-12. Editing and Executing a Previous Search

---

To edit a previous search and execute the edited search:

1. Click the **History** button in the banner. This will open the Search History page.
2. Click the number in the **Edit** field for the search that you want to edit. This will open up the search page from which the search was originally performed, with the search text and any search settings as they were previously set.
3. Edit the terms of the search.
4. Click **Search** to begin the search. Click **Reset** to clear all search text and all selected items from the lists.

### Customizing the Search History

**NOTE:**

Unless the stanza name is specified, all of the variables listed below come from the **Search\_History\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

---

Configurations specific to the Search History screen include:

**Table 5-26.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Simultaneous Search	Browse_Simul
Edit	Edit
Hits	Hits
Search Type	SearchType
Searched For column label	SearchFor
Table color	TableColor
Color of text in table	TableText

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-27.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file
Limits button image	limit.gif
Values in Records Per Page drop-down	[Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Search History, see [Editing the Search History Screen on page 2-164](#).

## **Limiting a Search**

---

You can limit your searches according to any of the limits appearing on screen. The Limit page displays each limit type and, next to the limit type, the set of limit values of that specific type. You can select as many values from any number of limit types as you want. Using the limit values that you select, WebVoyáge performs limiting according to the following rules:

- The relationship between multiple limit values of the same limit types is considered to be “OR.” This means that selecting “English” and “French” will return only records that are in either English or French.
- The relationship between limit values of different limit types is considered to be “AND.” This means that selecting “English” (of limit type Language) and “Book” (of limit type Item Type) will return only records that are books in English.
- When there are multiple item types each with multiple limit values involved, each limit value is combined with every other limit value of the other limit types when determining the result set.

Example:

For example, the result set that would be returned if English, French, Book and Serial were selected would be books in English and French as well as serials in English or French.

As a boolean expression this relationship would be written out as:

(English OR French) AND (Book OR Serial)

Additional limit types would have an AND relation to the rest of the limit types as well. For example:

(English OR French) AND (Book OR Serial) AND (Denmark OR Hong Kong)

The list of locations can be customized in the System Administration module. (See the section on “Location Limit Groups” in the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide*.) To customize other limits, see Chapter III of this user’s guide.

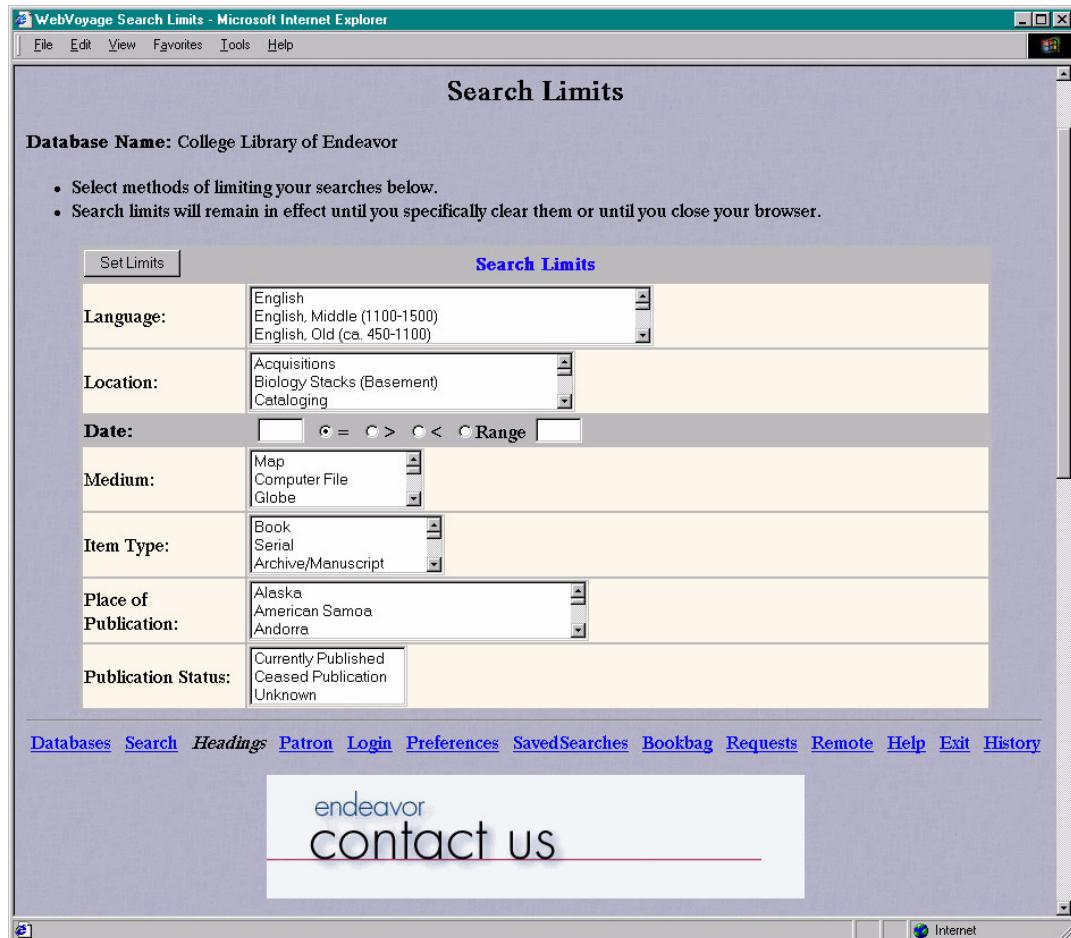


Figure 5-38. Limits Page



#### Procedure 5-13. Customizing the List of Locations

Use the following to customize the list of locations.

1. Click the **Limits** button. The Limits page displays.
2. Highlight the limits that you want to add to your search.  
To set multiple limits of the same type, hold down the **Ctrl** button while you click the limits in the list that you want to apply.

3. To remove the highlight from a particular limit in the Limit List, hold down the **Ctrl** button while you click the limit. To clear all limits from the Limit List, click the **Erase Limits** button.
4. Click **Submit** to accept the limiting criteria.

### Customizing Search Limits

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Limit\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to Search Limits include:

**Table 5-28.**

CUSTOMIZATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Heading at top of page	Page_Title
Informational Text	setlimmsg.htm
'Limits in effect' message	limitmsg.htm
Text of Search Limits table header	Search_Limits
Color of Search Limits table header	Font_Color
Language label	Language
Location label	Location
Date label	Date
Medium label	Medium
Item Type label	Type
Place of Publication label	Place
Publication Status label	Status

---

**Table 5-28.**

CUSTOMIZATION	SOURCE
Set Limits button	limit.gif
Label on Set Limits button	SubmitButton
Alternate text for Set Limits button	Set_Limits_Button_Alt_Text
Clear Limits button	clear.gif
Alternate text for Clear Limits button	Clear_Limits_Button_Alt_Text
Color of label in the table and of instructional text	Text
Color behind headers and dividing cells in table	Top_Background_Color
Table cell color	Table_Background_Color

You can configure mapping-related limits as well. All of the map limit-related variables are contained in the Map\_Limits\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file. Note that these variables will only appear if your institution does not have the Geospatial Searching tools. You can make the following changes to map-related limits:

**Table 5-29.**

CUSTOMIZATION	SOURCE
Color of Map Limits header	Top_BackGround_Color
Color of Map Limits header text	Font_Color
Color of cells in Map Limits table	Table_Background_Color
Text of the Map Limits header	Map_Limits
Scale Denominator label	Scale_Denominator_Label
Range Scale label	Range_Scale
Projection label	Projection_Label
Map Dates label	Map_Dates_Label
Map Dates header label	Date_Title
Primary check box label	Primary

**Table 5-29.**

CUSTOMIZATION	SOURCE
Secondary check box label	Secondary
Tertiary check box label	Tertiary
Quaternary check box label	Quaternary
Date label	Date
Range label	Range
Date Type label	Date_Type
Controlled Element label	Controlled_Element_Label
Document Classification label	Document_Classification
Record Classification label	Record_Classification
Classification label	Classification_Label
Classification Column 1 header	Col1
Classification Column 2 header	Col2
Classification Column 3 header	Col3
Set Limits Button alternate text	Set_Limits_Button_Alt_Text
Clear Limits Button alternate text	Clear_Limits_Button_Alt_Text

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyáge screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-30.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file

---

**Table 5-30.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Limits button image	limit.gif
Values in Records Per Page drop-down	[Records_Requested] stanza in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Search History, see [Editing the Search History Screen on page 2-164](#).

## Viewing Search Results

---

After you perform a search, results can be displayed in three ways:

**Table 5-31.**

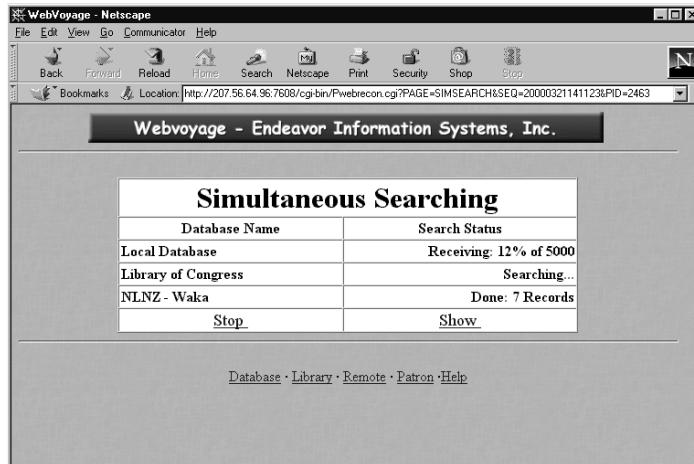
Display Method	Result
Heading List	displays headings as a result of a Heading Search.
Heading Browse List	displays headings as a result of a browse-type Heading Search.
Title List	displays titles selected from the Heading List or as a result of a Journal Title or Call Number search. A Keyword Title List displays titles from a Keyword Search.
Record Display	displays the bibliographic records selected from the Title List.

When WebVoyage is searching for your search items, it is aware of the timeout value set by the client in the **voyager.ini** file. In some cases, if your search statement is very general, WebVoyage will not be able to complete searching the entire database before the timeout value is reached. In this case, WebVoyage returns as many items as it can before the timeout value. To reduce the chance of this happening, either narrow your search or increase the timeout value in the OPAC section of the **voyager.ini** file. See Chapter III of this user's guide for more information.

## Simultaneous Searching

If you are performing a simultaneous search, before the records display you will see a page that informs you about the progress of the search. Instead of having to wait for the entire search to be completed, you can view the titles or headings that have already been found, and when your server has downloaded the rest of the records, you can view the rest of them.

---



---

**Figure 5-39. Simultaneous Search Page**

The Simultaneous Searching block lists the databases being searched and the status of each search. **Searching** means that the search is being performed on the database. **Receiving** means that the result set is being downloaded from the database; a percentage of the total number of records downloaded is given. **Done** means that the results have been downloaded; the total number of records is given.

To view the search results, you should wait until all of the records have been downloaded. Once all searches are complete, click the **Show** link. However, if you do not want to wait for all of the search results to be downloaded, you can click the **Show** link; this will display all of the records that have been currently received. However, this also ends the search - the search will not continue if you click **Show** before the search is completed.

If you want to simply end the search, click the **Stop** link. You can then choose to view the records that have been downloaded by clicking **Show**, or redo your search by clicking the **Search** button.

---

## Customizing the Simultaneous Search

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Sim\_Search\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to Simultaneous Search include:

**Table 5-32.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Background color of table	TableColor
Color of text in table	TableText
Table Header	Simultaneous_Searching
Table Column Header, Left	Database_Name
Table Column Header, Right	Search_Status
Stop link text	Stop
Show link text	Show
Ongoing Search message	Status_Searching
Receiving Records message	Status_Receiving
Failed Database Connection message	Status_DBFail
Failed Search message	Status_SearchFail
Incompatible Search message	Status_SearchIncompatible
Completed Search message	Status_SearchDone
Database Resetting message	Status_DBReset
Incompatible Database Version message	Status_DBVersion

**Table 5-32.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Database License Restriction message	Status_DBLicense

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyáge screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-33.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Simultaneous Search, see [Editing the Simultaneous Search Screen on page 2-59](#).

## Heading List

Each entry in the Heading List is a standardized name of the Subject or Author. The Heading List will automatically display after a headings search is performed. You can display the Heading List yourself by clicking the **Headings** button in the toolbar. The Heading List displays the headings found in your most recent Headings search.

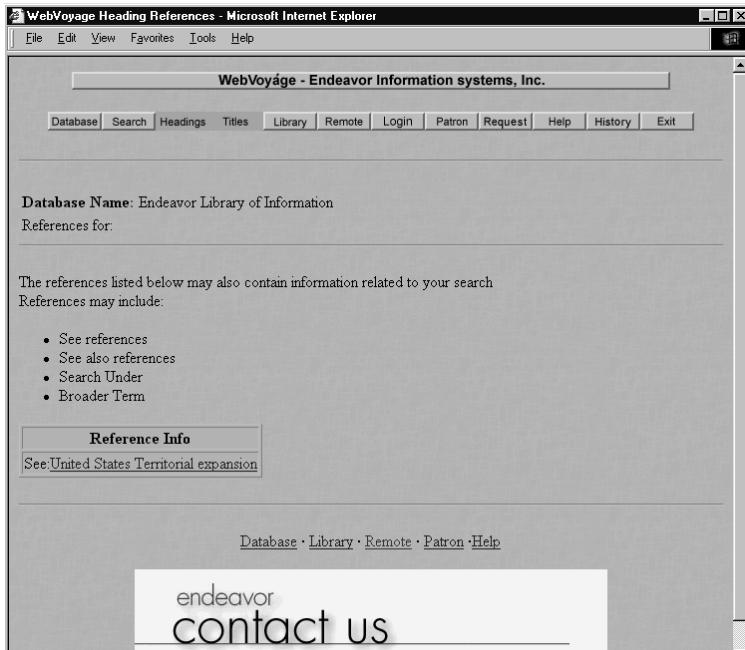
Item No.	Titles	Heading	Heading Type
[ 51 ]	1	<a href="#">United States. Air Force Procurement Periodicals.</a>	LC subject headings
[ 52 ]	1	<a href="#">United States. Air Mobility Command Pictorial works.</a>	LC subject headings
<a href="#">See also</a> 53		United States. Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Administration. National Institute of Mental Health	LC subject headings
<a href="#">See also</a> 54		United States. Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Administration. National Institute on Drug Abuse	LC subject headings
<a href="#">See also</a> 55		United States Aliens	LC subject headings
[ 56 ]	1	<a href="#">United States. Altitudes.</a>	LC subject headings
[ 57 ]	2	<a href="#">United States. Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990.</a>	LC subject headings
[ 58 ]	1	<a href="#">United States. Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 Government policy.</a>	LC subject headings
<a href="#">See also</a> 59		United States Annexations	LC subject headings

**Figure 5-40. Heading List Page**

You can navigate through the list by clicking the **previous** and **next** buttons above and below the Heading list; this will cause the preceding or the following set of headings to display. You can also jump to a particular part of the list by clicking the number in the **Jump Bar** (between the previous and next buttons) that is closest to the point in the list that you want to view.

You can select a heading to view by clicking the name of the heading or the line number. This will cause the Titles List to display with the titles under that heading. You can then view more information about the headings you selected in the Title List. You can also display the Title List for selected headings by double-clicking a Heading entry.

Authority information also displays in the Heading List. This information is indicated by an oval-shaped **Note** or **See Also** button in the **Item No.** column. To view the authority information, click the button. The Reference Information page displays.



**Figure 5-41. Reference Information page**

This page lists the reference(s) for a specific heading. To perform a search on a listed reference, click the reference. Use the Back command in your browser to return to the Headings List page (in IE, this is **Alt + Left Arrow**).

### Customizing the Headings List

#### NOTE:

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Headings\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Headings List include:

**Table 5-34.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

**Table 5-34.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Search Request label	Search_Request variable in Results stanza
Search Request Text for simple Searches	See <a href="#">Descriptions of Simple Search Types in Web-Voyage on page 3-62.</a>
Search Request Text for Redirected Searches	AuthorSearchText, TitleSearchText, Subject-SearchText, CallNumber-Text in View_Record_Page stanza
Search Results label	Search_Results variable in Results stanza
Search Results text	Regular variable in Results stanza
# Column header	#
Titles column header	Titles
Heading column header	Heading
Heading Type column header	Heading_Type
Alternate Text Over Scope Note	ALT_Note
Alternate Text over See Also	Alt_See_Also
# (Row number) column	HotLink_#
Column 2 (generally Titles)	HotLink_1
Column 3 (generally Headings)	HotLink_2
Column 4 (generally Headings Type)	Hotlink_3
Leading Text for # Column	Leading#Text
Trailing Text for # Column	Trailing#Text

**Table 5-34.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Table Color	MainData variable in Table_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyáge screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

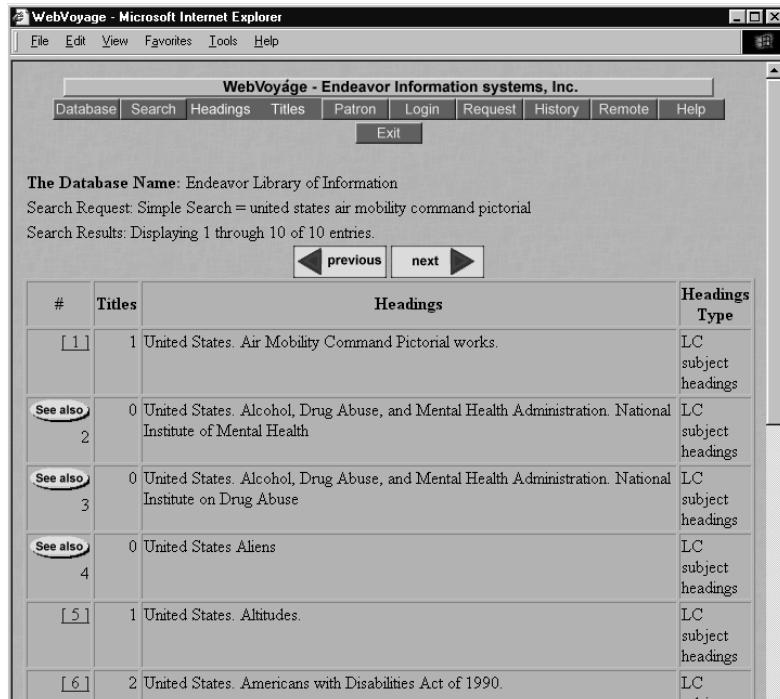
**Table 5-35.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Headings List, see [Editing the Headings List Screen](#) on page 2-63.

### Heading Browse List

Each entry in the Heading Browse List is a standardized name of the Subject or Author. The Heading Browse List will automatically display after a browse-type headings search is performed. You can display the Heading Browse List yourself by clicking the **Headings** button in the toolbar. In a Heading Browse List, the entire list of headings in your system is displayed in alphabetical order, beginning with the point in the list that best matches the terms of your search. This allows the list to be scrolled through. (A regular headings list displays only the headings that match your search.)

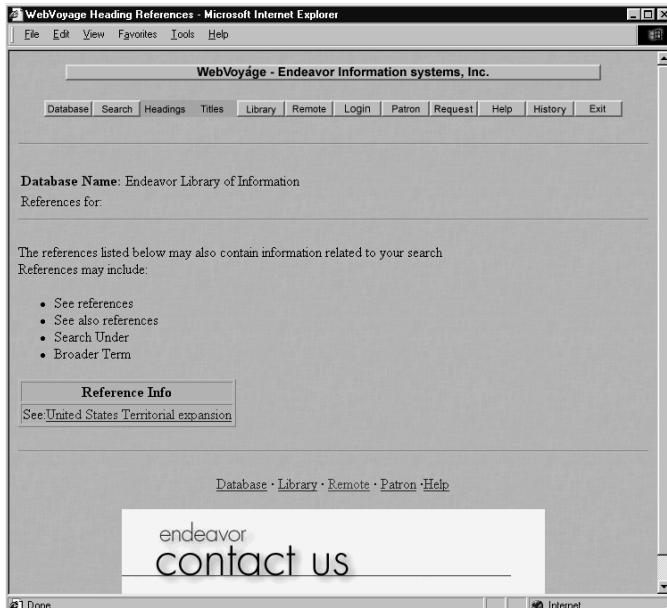


**Figure 5-42. Heading Browse List Page**

You can navigate through the list by clicking the **previous** and **next** buttons above and below the Heading list; this will cause the preceding or the following set of headings to display.

You can select a heading to view by clicking the line number. This will cause the Titles List to display with the titles under that heading. You can then view more information about the heading you selected in the Title List.

Authority information also displays in the Heading Browse List. This information is indicated by an oval-shaped **Note** or **See Also** button in the **Item No.** column. To view the authority information, click the button. The Reference Information page displays.



**Figure 5-43. Reference Information page**

This page lists the reference(s) for a specific heading. To perform a search on a listed reference, click the reference. Use the Back command in your browser to return to the Headings Browse List page (in IE, this is **Alt + Left Arrow**).

### Customizing the Headings Browse List

#### NOTE:

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Browse\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Headings Browse List include:

**Table 5-36.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

**Table 5-36.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Search Request label	Search_Request variable in Results stanza
Search Request Text for Simple Searches	See <a href="#">Descriptions of Simple Search Types in Web-Voyage on page 3-62.</a>
Search Request Text for Redirected Searches	AuthorSearchText, TitleSearchText, Subject-SearchText, CallNumber-Text in View_Record_Page stanza
Search Results label	Search_Results variable in Results stanza
Search Results text	Regular variable in Results stanza
# Column header	#
Titles column header	Col1
Heading column header	Col2
Heading Type column header	Col3
Alternate Text Over Scope Note	ALT_Note
Alternate Text over See Also	Alt_See_Also
# (Row number) column	HotLink_#
Column 2 (generally Titles)	HotLink_1
Column 3 (generally Headings)	HotLink_2
Column 4 (generally Headings Type)	Hotlink_3
Leading Text for # Column	Leading#Text
Trailing Text for # Column	Trailing#Text
Table Color	MainData variable in Table_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-37.**

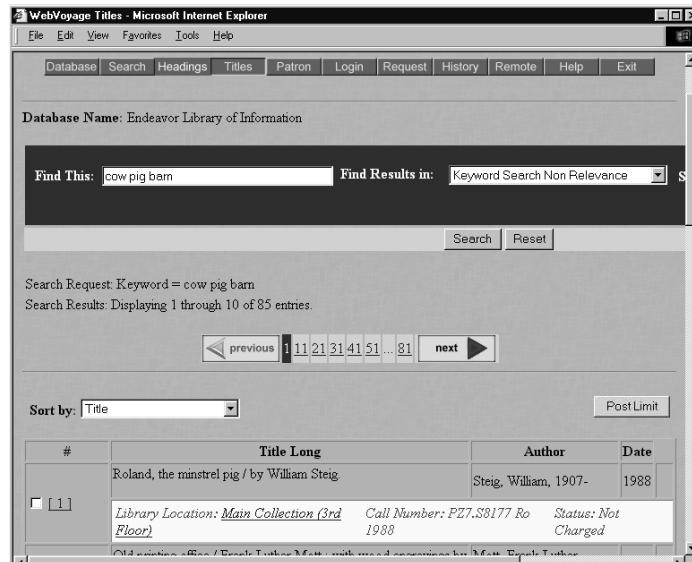
CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Heading Browse List, see [Editing the Headings List Screen](#) on page 2-63.

## Title List

The Title List will display automatically after a title search has been performed. You can display the Title List yourself by double-clicking the **Titles** button in the toolbar. The Title List displays the titles found in the most recent search. The Title List display includes Author, Title, and Publication Information.

---



---

**Figure 5-44. Title List page**

---

You can view the records of specific titles by clicking the line number in the # column or by clicking the hyperlinked portion of the record in the **Title Long** column. This will display bibliographic information about the titles in the Record Display (see [Record Display](#) on [page 5-99](#)). You can specify which information can be hyperlinked to the Record Display page (see [Title Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#)).

If you want to narrow down the currently displayed result set, you can click the **Post Limits** button that appears above the title list to add limits to the current search result set. The limits that you set on the Limits page will be applied to all of the records in the search result set. Any records that do not fall within the boundaries of the newly applied limits will be hidden from view. After having applied limits in this fashion, you can restore the result set or add or remove additional limits by clicking the **Post Limits** button again.

Depending on your institution's policies, holdings records may also be automatically sorted depending on the location of your computer or the patron group that you are associated with. This can be configured in the System Administration module. For more information, see "OPAC Holdings Sort Group Definitions" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

You can navigate through the list by clicking the **previous** and **next** buttons above and below the Heading list; this will cause the preceding or the following set of records to display. You can also jump to a particular part of the list by clicking the number in the **Jump Bar** (between the previous and next buttons) that is closest to the point in the list that you want to view.

For multiple-branch libraries, note that holdings records for items in your local holdings may appear before items at other branches. Your institution can specify whether local holdings will appear first or not.

You can sort your result set by any of the columns on screen by clicking in the **Sort by:** drop-down to specify what type of sort will be performed. The search results will be resorted according to your selection.

**NOTE:**

This option is not available for Course Reserve searches.

You can mark specific titles on any of the pages of the result set by clicking in the check box in the # column. Marking records allows you to save, print or E-mail information about those titles. You can unmark titles by clicking in the check box a second time (so that the check mark disappears). You can select records from multiple pages for saving, printing or emailing. After you have selected records on a page, in order to preserve those selections you must click the **Retain Selected** button before moving to the next page; otherwise, these selections will not be preserved. You must press **Retain Selected** on each page whenever you select records that you want to preserve. If you want to change the selections that you

have preserved for a particular page, you must make the changes and again click the **Retain Selected** button. You can also click the **Clear Selected** button to clear all of the selections from the page and from the list of saved selections. Once the set of records has been selected, it can be saved, printed or emailed. See [Saving, Printing and Emailing Information](#) on [page 5-140](#).

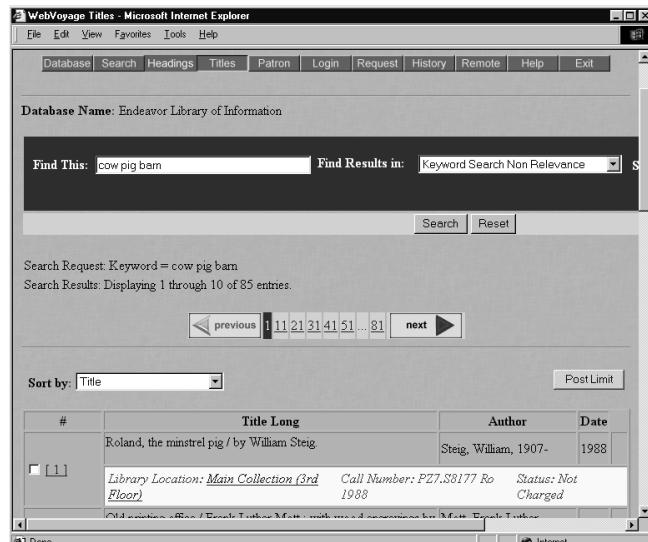
You can modify and execute the previous search directly from the results list. This new feature allows you to change the terms and limits of the search if your search results in too many or too few hits. If you want to perform a new search, you can enter the search terms into the **Find This:** field in the **Simple Search** block and click the **Search** button. The Simple Search block can appear at the top or bottom of the page (or both). The Simple Search block is similar to the search block on the regular Simple Search page. For more information, see [Title Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-152](#).

There are two types of Title Lists: Basic and Relevancy (Keyword). Your institution defines which Title Lists are available.

### Basic Title List

The Basic Title List displays the titles associated with headings selected from the Headings List or the direct results of other searches (for instance, journal title or call number searches).

---



---

Figure 5-45. Basic Title List

---

Each record found appears in its own row containing the row number (the # column); the **Title Long** field; the **Author** field; the **Date** field; and the **Location** field. If the institution possesses an item that appears in the title list, the location of the item will appear in the Location field. If the institution owns more than one of a particular item, a message will display reading "Title has multiple holdings."

You can view bibliographic information about a title by clicking the hyperlinked portion of the record (such as the row number or on the location of the item).

You can sort the title list that appears on screen by clicking the **Sort By** drop-down arrow and selecting the type of sort from the menu. This will resort the search list on screen.

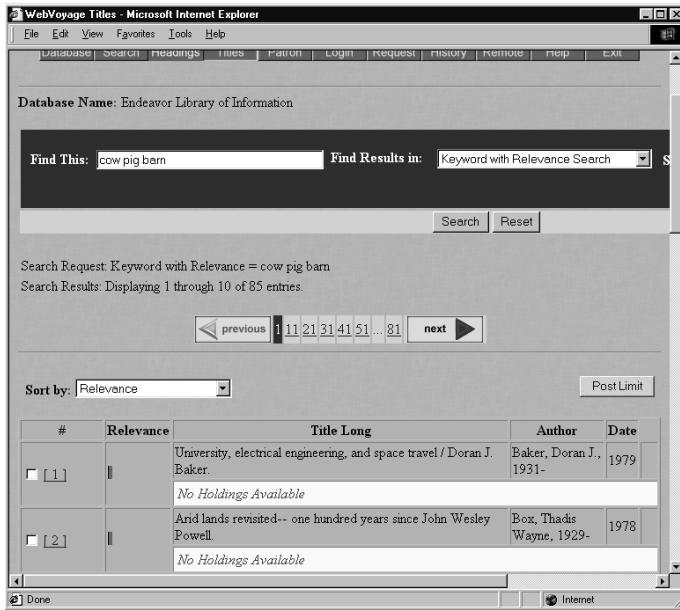
After the search is complete, you can place further limits on the set of search results by clicking the **Post Limit** button. This will open the Search Limits page. Submitting the limits from that page will apply the new limits to the search results and a new titles list will be displayed. You can also use the Post Limit button to remove limits in the same way.

### **Keyword (Relevancy) Title List**

The Keyword Title List displays the same information as a Basic Title List along with one addition: a relevancy rating. The relevancy rating is a bar made up of a series of circles and half-circles in the **Relevance** column of the Title List display. This bar indicates the probable degree of relevance the title has to the search items you entered.

An example of a relevancy display is shown in Figure 5-46. This figure displays the results from a Keyword search statement of: *cow pig barn*. The results of a search are displayed in order of relevance, determined by the search engine and based on the search terms entered. The record with more search terms occurring in it will be listed as more relevant than other records.

The titles are ranked from the longest bar (most relevant) to the shortest bar (least relevant). The bars are also colored, according to the relevancy ranking. The colors (from most to least relevant) are: red, green, blue, brown, and black.



**Figure 5-46. Keyword Title List**

### Customizing the Title List

#### NOTE:

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Title\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Title List include:

**Table 5-38. (Page 1 of 6)**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Search Request label	Search_Request variable in Results stanza

---

**Table 5-38. (Page 2 of 6)**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Search Request Text for Combined Searches	See <a href="#">Descriptions of Simple Search Types in Web-Voyage on page 3-62</a> .
Search Request Text for Redirected Searches	AuthorSearchText, TitleSearchText, Subject-SearchText, CallNumber-Text in View_Record_Page stanza
Search Results label	Search_Results variable in Results stanza
Search Results text	Regular variable in Results stanza
# Column Header	#
Color of Label Text in Simple Search block	ActiveFontColor
Color of Upper Half of Simple Search block	ActiveTabColor
Allow records to be saved or printed in MARC format	MarcAllowed
Text of "At Bindery" Message	AtBindery
Author Listing in Drop-Down Menu	Author
Text of "Call Slip Request" Message	CallSlipRequest
Text of "Cataloging Review" Message	CatalogingReview
Text of "Charged" Message	Charged
Text of "Circulation Review" Message	CirculationReview
Text of "Claims Returned" Message	ClaimsReturned
Text on Clear Button	ClearButton
Text of "Damaged" Message	Damaged
Text of "Discharged" Message	Discharged

**Table 5-38. (Page 3 of 6)**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Holdings Information at bottom of row	DisplayHoldingsInfo
Displaying Lower Post-Search Limit Button	DisplayPostLimitButton-Bottom
Displaying Upper Post-Search Limit Button	DisplayPostLimitButton-Top
Displaying Lower Post-Search Sort Button	DisplayPostSort-MenuBottom
Displaying Upper Post-Sort Sort Button	DisplayPostSortMenuTop
Displaying Quick Limits drop-down	DisplayQuickLimitsDrop-Down
Displaying Simple Search form at bottom of list	DisplaySearchFormBottom
Displaying Simple Search form at top of list	DisplaySearchFormTop
Label of Find Results List in Simple Search block	FindResultsText
Contents of Find Results drop-down list in Simple Search block	[Title_Page] stanza of search.ini
Color of Background of Holdings Information	HoldingsInfoBackgroundColor
Color of Holdings Information	HoldingsInfoForegroundColor
Displaying Holdings Info in Italics	HoldingsInfoItalics
Text of "Hold Request" Message	HoldRequest
Hotlink in # (Row number) column	HotLink_#
Hotlink in Column 2 (generally Mfhd Call No.)	HotLink_0
Hotlink in Column 2 (generally Title)	HotLink_1

---

**Table 5-38. (Page 4 of 6)**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Hotlink in Column 3 (generally Author)	HotLink_2
Hotlink in Column 4 (generally Date)	HotLink_3
Hotlink in Call Number (appears in bottom half of record)	HotLink_CallNumber
Hotlink in Library Location (appears in bottom half of record)	HotLink_Location
Hotlink in "Title has multiple holdings" message (appears in bottom half of record)	HotLink_MultipleHoldings
Hotlink in "No Holdings Available" message (appears in bottom half of record)	HotLink_NoHoldings
Hotlink in Item Status (appears in bottom half of record)	HotLink_Status
Hotlink in Last column (Thumbnail images)	HotLink_Thumbnail
Color of Lower Half of Simple Search block	InactiveTabColor
Text of "In Process" Message	InProcess
Text of "In Transit" Message	InTransit
Text of "In Transit Discharged" Message	InTransitDischarged
Text of "In Transit On Hold" Message	InTransitOnHold
Label for Call Number	Label_CallNumber
Label for Holdings Information	Label_Location
Label for Record Status	Label_Status
Size of Left Side of Link in # Column	Leading#Text

**Table 5-38. (Page 5 of 6)**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Text of "Lost--Library Applied" Message	LostLibraryApplied
Text of "Lost--System Applied" Message	LostSystemApplied
Text of "Missing" Message	Missing
Text of "Multiple Holdings" Message	MultipleHoldingsMessage
Text of "Multiple Items" Message	MultipleItemsMessage
Text of "No Holdings" Message	NoHoldingsMessage
Text of "No Item" Message	NoItemsMessage
Text of "Not Charged" Message	NotCharged
Text of "On Hold" Message	OnHold
Text of "Overdue" Message	Overdue
Label for Post-Sort Drop-Down Menu	PostSortMenuLabel
Publishing Date Listing in Drop-Down Menu	PubDate
Publishing Date (Descending) Listing in Drop-Down Menu	PubDateDesc
Label of Quick Limits field in Simple Search block	QuickLimitsText
Contents of Quick Limits drop-down list in Simple Search block	Limits.ini
Text of "Recall Request" Message	RecallRequest
Relevance Listing in Drop-Down Menu	Relevance
Text of "Remote Storage Request" Message	RemoteStorageRequest
Text of "Renewed" Message	Renewed

---

**Table 5-38. (Page 6 of 6)**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Text of Reset Button in Simple Search block	ResetButton
Text on Retain Button	RetainButton
Alternate Text over ImageServer thumbnails	ScandocAltText
Text of "Scheduled" Message	Scheduled
Label of Find Text field in Simple Search block	SearchBoxText
Label on Select All Pages button	SelectedRecsAllPages
Text of "Short Loan Request" Message	ShortLoanRequest
Display Database Name	ShowDatabaseName
Display Search Request	ShowSearchRequest
Display Search Results	ShowSearchResults
Alternate Text over non-ImageServer thumbnails	ThumbnailAltText
Title Listing in Drop-Down Menu	Title
Size of Right Side of Link in # Column	Trailing#Text
Text of "Withdrawn" Message	Withdrawn
Table Color	MainData variable in Table_Colors stanza of the opac.ini file

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-39.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm

**Table 5-39.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Title List, see [Editing the Titles List Screen](#) on [page 2-76](#).

## Record Display

You can display the details of records you selected in the Title List by double-clicking the row number or location of a title entry.

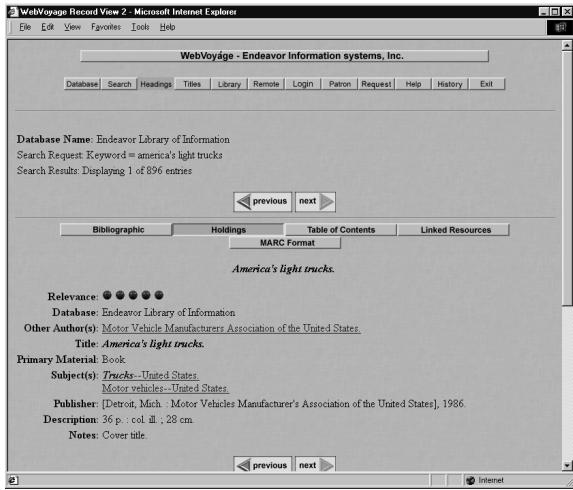
Your library determines the appearance of information in the Record Display, including font type, size, and tab width, and whether 856 links will be made accessible. For more information, see Chapter III of this user's guide.

An 856 link can contain a hypertext link in the form of either a DOI or a URN. When a MARC record contains an 856 link, a hypertext link appears on the **Linked Resources** tab of the bibliographic record.

The Record Display can include everything in the Title List display and information in the following tabs: Bibliographic, Holdings, Table of Contents, Linked Resources, and MARC Format. Your library can change the names of these tabs to aid users, but the activities (if available) remain as they are described below. You must first complete at least one search before you can view the Record Display. For Keyword searches, the search terms you entered display in boldface text.

### Holdings and Bibliographic Tabs

The Holdings and Bibliographic tabs generally list information about the record, including where the item is located, what the call number is, what the status of the item is (charged or not charged, # of Holds placed, # of Recalls placed) and related headings. For all Searches (except for Heading Searches), the search terms you typed in display as boldface text.

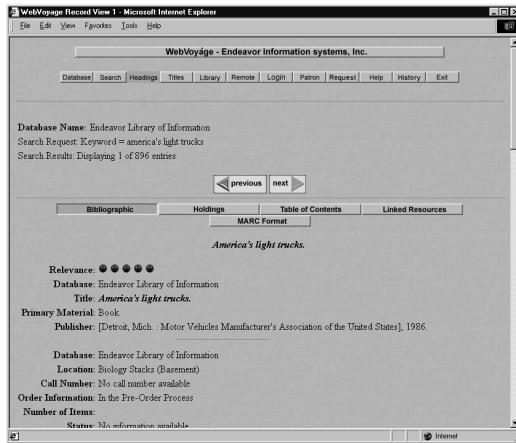


**Figure 5-47. Record Display - Holdings tab**

These tabs can show related subject, author, or title headings in blue underlined text. If you use the mouse to click one of these names or phrases, a new search is executed using that name or phrase. The results are displayed in a Heading List.

These tabs can also list the status of the item. The status field can contain the following information: Charged or Not Charged, the number of Holds that have been placed on the item, and the number of Recalls that have been placed on the item. The status is listed as "Not Charged" when all items counted in the "Number of Items" row are available. The status is listed as "Charged" when one or more items are checked out or on hold. These items are listed with their current status. Items that are not checked out are not listed.

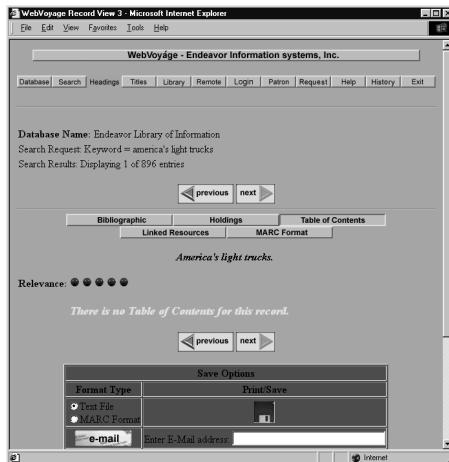
The Holdings and Bibliographic tabs can also indicate at what point of the acquisitions process the item is in. For example, an item that is on a purchase order in the Acquisitions module, could display: Pending - in the pre-order process.



**Figure 5-48.** Record Display - Bibliographic tab

### Table of Contents Tab

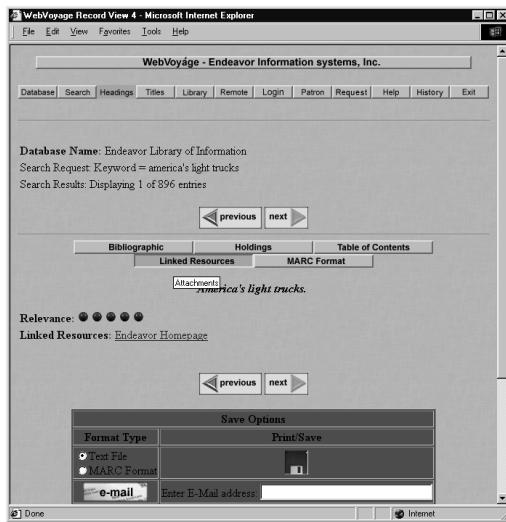
The Table of Contents tab can be available when a table of contents is provided in the bibliographic record. If the Table of Contents tab is not displayed, either there is no table of contents provided in that record, your library has put this information on another tab, or your library has chosen not to display this information.



**Figure 5-49.** Record Display - Table of Contents tab

## Linked Resources Tab

The Linked Resources tab displays any electronic resources that are contained in the MARC record you are viewing. If the Linked Resources tab is not displayed, your library may have put this information on another tab, or your library may have chosen not to display this information.



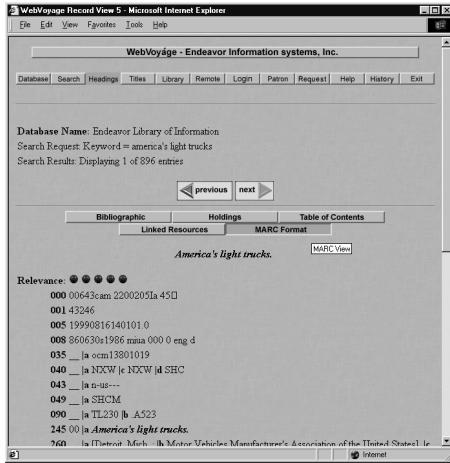
**Figure 5-50. Record Display - Linked Resources tab**

To view a linked resource, click the blue underlined text to view the linked resource. The linked page will display in your web browser.

To return to WebVoyage after having followed linked pages, click the **Back** button in your browser until WebVoyage appears again; or re-enter WebVoyage's address in your browser.

## MARC Format Tab

The MARC Format tab displays the current record in MARC format. If the MARC Format tab is not displayed, your library may have put this information on another tab, or your library may have chosen not to display this information.



**Figure 5-51. Record Display - MARC Format tab (partial)**

### Customizing the Record Display

#### NOTE:

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **View\_Record\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Record Display include:

**Table 5-40.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Search Request label	Search_Request variable in Results stanza
Search Request Text for Combined Searches	See <a href="#">Descriptions of Simple Search Types in Web-Voyáge</a> on page 3-62.

**Table 5-40.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Search Request Text for Redirected Searches	AuthorSearchText, TitleSearchText, Subject-SearchText, CallNumber-Text in View_Record_Page stanza
Search Results label	Search_Results variable in Results stanza
Search Results text	Regular variable in Results stanza
Selecting buttons to be displayed	Count variable in Display stanza of display.ini
Changing alternate text for buttons	1=, 2=, 3=, 4=, and 5= variables in Display stanza of display.ini
Allow records to be saved or printed in MARC format	MarcAllowed
Item Title	TitleDisplay variable in Results stanza
Formatting Dates and Times	Time stanza of the opac.ini file
No Location Message	NoLocation
No Call Number Message	NoCallNumber
Location Column Header	Location
Call Number Column Header	CallNumber
Local Database Column Header	LocalDatabase
Relevance Bar label	Relevance
Shelved At message	Shelved_At
Temporarily Shelved At message	Temp_Shelved
Item in Pre-Order Process message	Pre_Order_Process
Copy Received message	Copy_Received
Copies Received message	Copies_Received

**Table 5-40.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Copy Claimed message	Copy_Claimed
Copies Claimed message	Copies_Claimed
Copy Ordered message	Copy_Ordered
Copies Ordered message	Copies_Ordered
Type of Search for Redirected Author Searches	AuthorSearchRedirect
Search Request Text for Redirected Author Searches	AuthorSearchText
Description of Search Type for Redirected Title Searches	TitleSearchRedirect
Search Request Text for Redirected Title Searches	TitleSearchText
Description of Search Type for Redirected Subject Searches	SubjectSearchRedirect
Search Request Text for Redirected Subject Searches	SubjectSearchText
Description of Search Type for Redirected Call Number Searches	CallNumberSearchRedirect
Search Request Text for Redirected Call Number Searches	CallNumberText
Database Name	ShowDatabaseName
Search Request	ShowSearchRequest
Search Results	ShowSearchResults
Error Page for Holdings	noholdmsg.htm
Error Page for Table of Contents	notocmsg.htm
Error Page for Linked Resources	noattmsg.htm
Background colors and image for Bibliographic page	View1_Page stanza
Background colors and image for Holdings page	View2_Page stanza

---

**Table 5-40.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background colors and image for Table of Contents page	View3_Page stanza
Background colors and image for Linked Resources page	View4_Page stanza
Background colors and image for MARC Format page	View5_Page stanza

Other configurations control things that display not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will display everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 5-41.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Bottom] and [Toolbar_Top] stanzas in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Record Display, see [Editing the Record Display on page 2-95](#).

## Saved Searches

---

The Saved Searches option is part of the MyOPAC functionality but can be enabled independently of the other MyOPAC options. Saved Searches allows patrons to save search strings to run on command (on all databases connected to in a given session) and/or automatically (if SDI is enabled and configured) at specified intervals, on the local database.

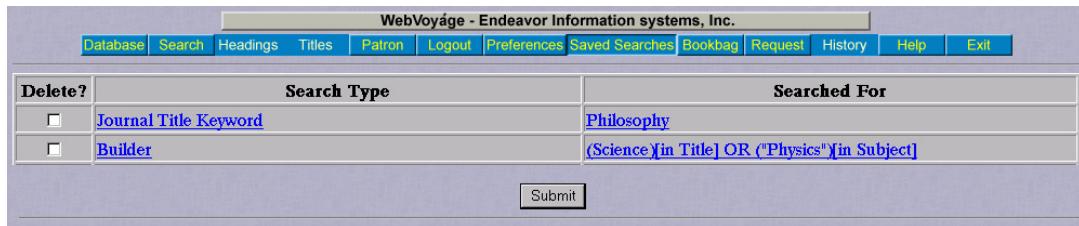
**NOTE:**

Saved Searches is disabled when remote patrons are logged in to UB-enabled databases. While logged in to that database, they will not be able to save search queries or run them.

Saved Search strings can be deleted or edited from the Search Query screen at any time. The following sections detail configuring Saved Searches and using saved searches from a patron's point of view.

- Figure 5-52 shows two saved searches on the Search Queries page without SDI enabled.
- Figure 5-53 shows two saved searches on the Search Queries page with all SDI options enabled.

---

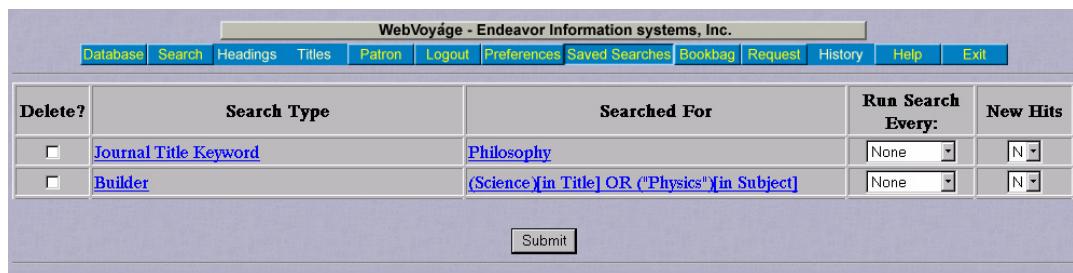


The screenshot shows a search interface titled "WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc." with a menu bar including Database, Search, Headings, Titles, Patron, Logout, Preferences, Saved Searches, Bookbag, Request, History, Help, and Exit. Below the menu is a table with two rows. The first row has a "Delete?" checkbox next to "Journal Title Keyword" and "Searched For" containing "Philosophy". The second row has a "Delete?" checkbox next to "Builder" and "Searched For" containing "(Science) [in Title] OR ("Physics") [in Subject]". A "Submit" button is at the bottom.

Delete?	Search Type	Searched For
<input type="checkbox"/>	Journal Title Keyword	Philosophy
<input type="checkbox"/>	Builder	(Science) [in Title] OR ("Physics") [in Subject]

Figure 5-52. Sample Search Queries page (without SDI enabled)

---



This screenshot is identical to Figure 5-52, showing the same search interface and table structure. It includes additional columns for "Run Search Every:" and "New Hits" in the header of the table, which are empty in this view.

Delete?	Search Type	Searched For	Run Search Every:	New Hits
<input type="checkbox"/>	Journal Title Keyword	Philosophy	None	N
<input type="checkbox"/>	Builder	(Science) [in Title] OR ("Physics") [in Subject]	None	N

Figure 5-53. Sample Search Queries page (with SDI enabled)

---

## Configuring Saved Searches

---

Use the following to configure Saved Searches.

- [Enabling Saved Searches](#)
- [Customizing the Search Queries Page](#)

The following steps are optional

- [Customizing the Saved Searches buttons](#)
- [Customizing the Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page](#)
- [Customizing the Save Query button on the Patron Information page](#)

```
[Search_Queries_Page]
SaveOption=N
Search_Qualifiers=Search Queries
SearchFor=Search For
SearchType=SearchType
Submit=Submit
NoSearches=You have no saved search queries.
```

**Figure 5-54. Default [Search\_Queries\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

## Enabling Saved Searches

Use the following to give patrons the ability to save search strings.

You enable/disable the Saved Searches in the SaveOption variable of the [Search\_Queries\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file. The following is the default SaveOption variable:

SaveOption=N

The SaveOption= variable must be set to Y or N:

- To enable patrons to save search strings (turn Saved Searches on), set this variable to **Y**.
- To disable Saved Searches, set this variable to **N**.

## Customizing the Search Queries Page

After enabling Saved Searches, you can customize the Search Queries page per your preferences. Do this from the [Search\_Queries\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. Figure 5-55 contains an example of the [Search\_Queries\_Page] stanza. Table 5-42 details the functions and descriptions of each variable in the stanza.

```
[Search_Questions_Page]
SaveOption=N
Search_Questions=Search Questions
SearchFor=Search For
SearchType=SearchType
Submit=Submit
NoSearches=You have no saved search queries.
```

**Figure 5-55. Default [Search\_Questions\_Page] stanza**

[Table 5-42](#) details the components of the [Search\_Questions\_Page] stanza.

**Table 5-42. Components of the [Search\_Questions\_Page] stanza**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
SaveOption=	Switches Saved Searches on and off	Y or N	N
Search_Questions=	Label for Search Questions page	Free text	Search Questions
SearchFor=	Label of column containing search strings	Free text	Search For
SearchType=	Label of column containing search types of saved search strings	Free text	Search Type
Submit=	Label of button used to update saved searches	Free text	Submit
NoSearches=	Message text displayed when no search strings are saved	Free text	You have no saved search queries.

### Customizing the Saved Searches buttons

The three graphics (.gif) files which serve as the Saved Searches buttons in the Top Toolbar section of WebVoyáge are configured according to Table 5-43.

---

To customize these buttons, edit the corresponding files in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory. Remember to save the default files as something else (as a backup) before editing them.

**Table 5-43. Saved Searches Toolbar buttons**

Graphic name	Corresponding button
UpSavedSearch.gif	Displayed in top toolbar when not on Search Queries Page
DownSavedSearch.gif	Displayed in top toolbar when on Search Queries Page
DisabledSavedSearch.gif	Displayed in top toolbar when Search Queries Page not available (for example, when no search queries are saved)

#### **Customizing the Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page**

The text of the Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page is set in the SaveSearchQuery variable of the [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza of the opac.ini file.

The text following this variable displays on the save search queries button in the Record Options section of the Title Index page. To change the text on this button, enter the text you wish to display after the variable. The following is the default SaveSearchQuery variable in the [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza:

SaveSearchQuery=Save Search Query

Figure 5-56 shows the Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page, based on the default SaveSearchQuery variable configuration.

<b>Record Options</b>	
<b>Records</b> <input type="radio"/> All on page <input checked="" type="radio"/> Selected on page <input type="radio"/> Selected all pages	<b>Select Download Format:</b> <input type="button" value="Full Record"/> <input type="button" value="Format for Print/Save"/> <input type="button" value="Save Search Query"/> <hr/> Enter your email address <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Email"/> <hr/> Save results for later: <input type="button" value="Save To Bookbag"/>

**Figure 5-56.** Sample Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page

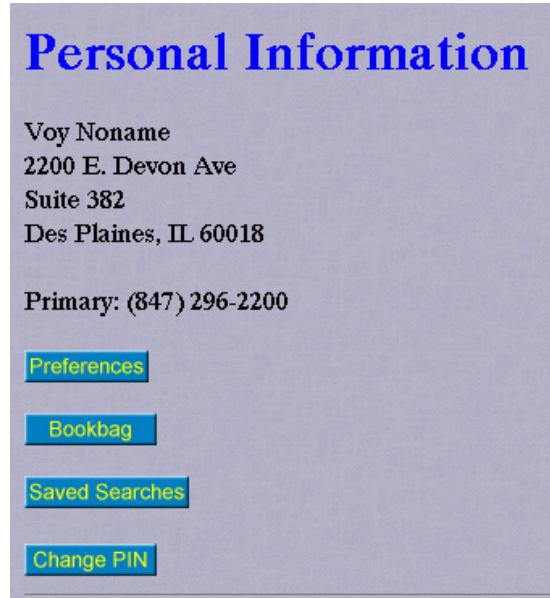
### Customizing the Save Query button on the Patron Information page

If your library is using Saved Searches, your WebVoyáge will include a Saved Query button on the Patron Information page of WebVoyáge, allowing patrons to access their Saved Searches from their Patron Information screen.

To change the Save Query button on the Patron Information page of WebVoyáge, edit the `savequerybutton.gif` file in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory. Remember to save the default `savequerybutton.gif` as something else (as a backup) before editing it. Figure 5-57 shows the default Save Query button.

#### Button alternate (Mouse-Over) text

Set the alternate (mouse-over) text of the **Saved Searches** button in the `SavedSearches_Button_Alt_Text` variable of the `[Patron_Info_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file.



**Figure 5-57.** Sample Save Query button on the Patron Information page

If you want to enable SDI, allowing Voyager to perform saved searches (on the local database) automatically at set intervals, and E-mail the results to patrons, go to the [Configuring SDI on page 5-113](#).

If you do not want to enable SDI, allowing patrons to run saved search queries only on command, go to [Using Saved Searches/SDI on page 5-117](#).

## Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI)

SDI is a component of MyOPAC, and Saved Searches must be enabled to use SDI. SDI allows patrons to choose intervals for each saved search query to be run automatically (on the local database) and the results emailed to them in the form of a URI. The intervals available to patrons are set on the Saved Search Queries page.

### NOTE:

- Saved Searches must be enabled and configured before enabling SDI. For more information on enabling/configuring Saved Searches, see [Configuring Saved Searches on page 5-107](#).

- SDI does not work for course reserve searches.
- SDI uses the E-mail address specified in the patron record.
- Opacjob job number 2 (SDI Searches) must be run for SDI to run search queries. For more information on Opacjob, see “SDI Searches program” in the *Voyager Technical User’s Guide*.
- Opacjob job number 2 (SDI Searches) must be set to run at least as often as the shortest SDI “run search every” interval. For example, in order for SDI to run a search query every day, Opacjob must be run every day.

## Configuring SDI

---

Use the following to configure SDI:

- [Enabling SDI](#)
- [Configuring SDI options](#)
- [Customizing the search results URL page sent to patrons by SDI](#)

The following steps are optional.

- [Customizing the help text for SDI](#)

### Enabling SDI

You enable/disable SDI in the SDIOption variable of the [SDI\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file, by setting the variable to Y. The following is the default SDIOption variable:

SDIOption=N

The SDIOption= variable must be set to Y or N:

- Setting this variable to Y enables SDI.
- Setting this variable to N disables SDI.

### Configuring SDI options

Figure 5-58 contains an example of the [SDI\_Page] stanza. Table 5-44 details the functions and descriptions of each variable in the stanza

---



---

```
[SDI_Page]
SDIOption=N
RunSearchEvery=Run Search Every:
GetNewHits=Y
NewHits>New Hits
None=None
Daily=Daily
Weekly=Weekly
Bi-Weekly=Bi-Weekly
Monthly=Monthly
```

---

**Figure 5-58.** The default [SDI\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file

**Table 5-44.** Components of the [SDI\_Page] stanza

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
SDIOption=	Switches SDI on and off	Y or N	N
RunSearchEvery=	Heading of column listing options for SDI/saved search intervals	Free text	Run Search Every
GetNewHits=	Switches the E-mail search results only if new search result information exists on and off.	Y or N  Y enables option to send results of query to patron only if new search result information exists.  N Disables option to send results of query to patron only if new search result information exists (results are sent by SDI whenever saved searches are performed).	Y

**Table 5-44. Components of the [SDI\_Page] stanza**

<b>Variable Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Default Value</b>
NewHits=	Heading of column containing the Y/N (yes/no) drop-down to select/deselect E-mail search results only if new search result information exists option. Only available if GetNewHits= above is set to Y.	Free text	New Hits?
None=	Text in drop-down list box of the Run Search Every column corresponding to no automated search execution.	Free text	None
Daily=	Text in drop-down list box of the Run Search Every column corresponding to the E-mail results every day option.	Free text	Daily
Weekly=	Text in drop-down list box of the Run Search Every column corresponding to the E-mail results weekly option.	Free text	Weekly
Bi-Weekly=	Text in drop-down list box of the Run Search Every column corresponding to the E-mail results bi-weekly option.	Free text	Bi-Weekly
Monthly=	Text in drop-down list box of the Run Search Every column corresponding to the E-mail results Monthly option.	Free text	Monthly

### **Customizing the search results URL page sent to patrons by SDI**

The page(s) containing the URLs sent to patrons by SDI, based on the saved search queries is customizable. This is done in the `sdiemail.ini` file. This file is in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/ini` directory.

---

## Components of the sdiemail.ini file

This file is in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/ini directory (see Figure 5-59 for the default). Customize the sections of this file according to your preferences. Figure 5-60 shows an email generated by SDI.

### NOTE:

- Make sure that the Address= entry in the [Webvoyage\_Server] stanza contains the correct address of the server WebVoyáge is running on. (For example: Address=10.111.111.96:7008 or Address=www.seekandfind.edu).
- Any fields in the [Email] stanza left blank will yield the default text.
- The 80 character maximum length per line restriction includes the variable name and “=” sign.
- The footer for this e-mail uses the emailf.cfg file (/m1/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local).

---

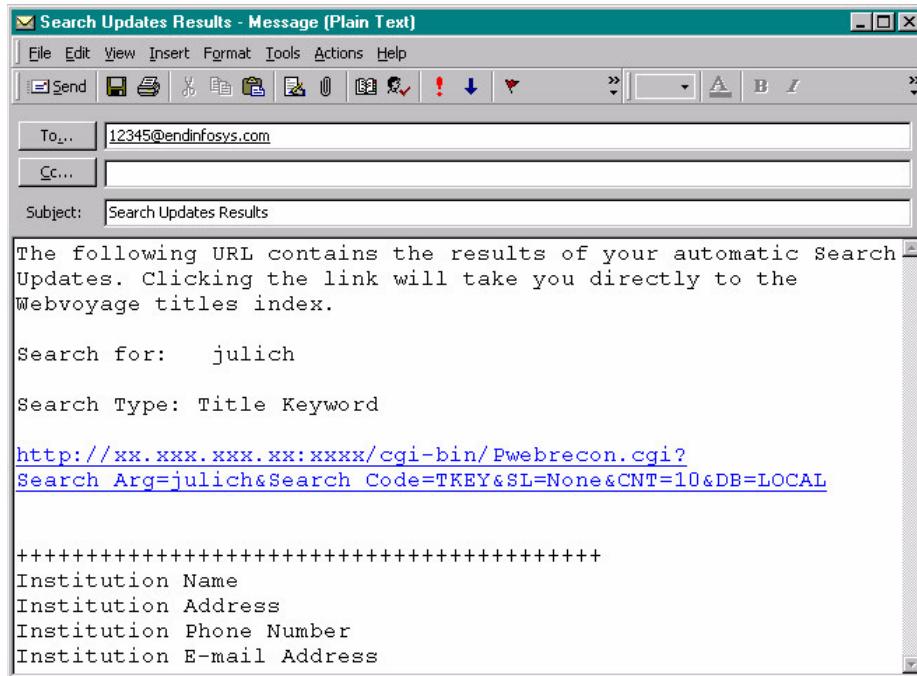
```
##NOTE 80 character max for length of lines.

[Email]
Subject=Search Updates Results
Body1=The following URL contains the results of your automatic Search
Body2=Updates. Clicking the link will take you directly to the
Body3=WebVoyáge titles index.
SearchString=Search for:
SearchType=Search Type:

[Webvoyage_Server]
Address=XXXX
```

---

**Figure 5-59. Default sdiemail.ini file**



---

Figure 5-60. Sample e-mail containing url pointing to Saved Search results

### Customizing the help text for SDI

The help text displayed for SDI is customizable. This is done in the `sdi.htm` file. This file can be found in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/help` directory.

### Using Saved Searches/SDI

---

There are two ways to use saved search queries:

- Edit/Run previously saved search queries on command (only saved search query option available when SDI not enabled).
- Save new search queries to use later, including automatically run queries (requires SDI be enabled and configured).

**NOTE:**

The following searches will not work with SDI:

- Browse searches
- Course Reserve searches
- Map searches

**NOTE:**

Limits placed in the original search are not retained in the saved search.

### Saving new search queries

New search queries are saved after running the search (on the local database) as usual. After running the search, go to the Record Options section of the Titles Index page and click the Save Search Query button (see Figure 5-61).

For more information about editing the Save Search Query button, see [Customizing the Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page](#) on page 5-110.

Record Options	
<b>Records</b>	Select Download Format: <input type="button" value="Full Record"/> <input type="button" value="Format for Print/Save"/> <input type="button" value="Save Search Query"/>
<input type="radio"/> All on page <input checked="" type="radio"/> Selected on page <input type="radio"/> Selected all pages	Enter your email address <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Email"/>
	Save results for later: <input type="button" value="Save To Bookbag"/>

**Figure 5-61. Sample Save Search Query button in the Record Options section of the Titles Index page**

Clicking the Save Search Query button calls up the Saved Search Queries screen. This is where you edit, run, and delete saved search queries.

### Editing, running and deleting saved search queries

If SDI is not enabled, after saving search queries, the queries can be deleted or run on command from the Saved Search Queries screen.

To run a search query on command, click the hyperlinked text in either the Search Type or the Search For columns (see Figure 5-62 and Figure 5-63).



Figure 5-62. Clicking the hyperlinked text in the Searched For (or the Search Type)

<b>Database Name:</b> Local Library			
Search Request: Builder = (Science){in Title} OR ("Physics"){in Subject}			
Search Results: Displaying 1 through 10 of 862 entries.			
Sort by:	<input type="button" value="▼"/>		Post Limit
<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	<i>ABC pol sci. Advance bibliography of contents: political science &amp; government.</i> <i>Library Location: Main Collection</i> <i>Call Number: Z7161 .A214</i> <i>Status: Not Charged</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	<i>Abstracts and indexes in science and technology: a descriptive guide, by Dolores B. Owen and Marguerite M. Hanchey.</i> <i>Library Location: Reference Department (non-circulating)</i> <i>Call Number: Z7403 .O95</i> <i>Status: Not Charged</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> [3]	<i>Abusing science : the case against creationism / Philip Kitcher.</i> <i>Library Location: Main Collection</i> <i>Call Number: QH371 .K57 1982</i> <i>Status: Not Charged</i>		

Figure 5-63. Results of the saved search from Figure 5-62.

To delete a search query, select the check box next to that query and click the **Submit** button.

#### If SDI is enabled:

If you are saving a query for the first time, and SDI is enabled, you must set up search query options on the Saved Search Queries screen. If you are viewing previously saved search queries, and SDI is enabled, you can edit the query options on this screen.

---

To perform a saved search query on command, click the hyperlinked text in either the Search Type or the Search For columns (For an example, see Figure 5-62 and Figure 5-63).

To delete a saved search query, select the check box next to that query and click the Submit button.

To set saved search queries to run automatically, select one of the two following options:

- **Run Search Every** (only available when SDI is enabled): This determines with what frequency search queries are run automatically. Set this according to your preferences, depending on the different options made available by your library.
- **New Hits** (only available when enabled and when SDI is enabled): Set this to **y** to make SDI send results of the query to the patron only if new search result information exists. Set this to **n** to make SDI send the results to the patron whenever SDI runs the search, whether there are new results or not.

## **Bookbag (Shopping Cart)**

---

This feature allows patrons to save bibliographic records from various search results for later viewing, editing and printing in different formats. The maximum number of records which can be saved to the Bookbag is 1000, and these records may be from any database.

**NOTE:**

Bookbag is disabled when remote patrons are logged in to UB-enabled databases. While logged in to that database, they will not be able to save records to their Bookbag, or makes changes to records in their Bookbag.

## **Bookbag Configuration**

---

The following sections detail Bookbag configuration:

- [Customizing the Bookbag page](#)
- [Customizing Bookbag features in Record Options box of the Search Results page](#)
- [Customizing Bookbag messages](#)
- [Setting the name of the Bookbag page in the Title Bar](#)

## Customizing the Bookbag page

The Bookbag page displays all of the records saved to a patron's bookbag, as well as the options for working with the saved records. The components of the Bookbag page are configured in the [Saved\_Records\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file. This is also where the Bookbag feature is enabled.

**NOTE:**

The Author, Title, and Publisher\_date column headings cannot be changed in Voyager 2001.1.

Also note that if there is no information in the appropriate fields in the record, the information for those fields will not display on the Bookbag page.

- For author information to appear on the Bookbag page, at least one of the 1xx fields must be populated in the record saved to the Bookbag.
- For title information to appear on the Bookbag page, at least one of the 240, 242, or 245 fields must be populated in the record saved to the Bookbag.
- For publication date information to appear on the Bookbag page, the 260c field must be populated in the record saved to the Bookbag.

Figure 5-64 shows a sample Bookbag page.

WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.

---

Database Search Headings Titles Patron Logout Bookbag Request History Help Exit

---

Delete?	author	title	publisher_date	Save Date
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">MacLaurin, Colin, 1698-1746.</a>	Account of Sir Isaac Newton's philosophical discoveries. With a new introd. and index of names by L. L. Laundan.	1968.	2001-10-15 15:49:01
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Muralt, André de.</a>	Idea of phenomenology : Husserlian exemplarism / André de Muralt ; translated by Garry L. Breckon.	1974.	2001-10-18 16:59:17
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edie, James M.</a>	Invitation to phenomenology; studies in the philosophy of experience. Edited with an introd. by James M. Edie.	1965.	2001-10-18 16:59:17
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Langer, Monika M.</a>	Merleau-Ponty's Phenomenology of perception : a guide and commentary / Monika M. Langer.	c1989.	2001-10-18 16:59:18
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Tibbetts, Paul.</a>	Perception; selected readings in science and phenomenology. Edited with an introd. by Paul Tibbetts.	[1969]	2001-10-18 16:59:18

**Record Options**

Select Download Format:

Figure 5-64. Sample Bookbag page

Figure 5-65 shows the variables of the default [Saved\_Records\_Page] stanza.

```
[Saved_Records_Page]
SaveRecords=N
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
Delete?=Delete?
SaveDate=SaveDate
DeleteSavedRecords=Delete Selected Titles
ClearBookbag=Clear Bookbag
ClearBookbagConfirm=Clearing the book bag deletes all records. Do you want to
proceed?
```

**Figure 5-65. Sample [Saved\_Records\_Page] stanza**

Figure 5-67 details the possible configurations of the variables in the stanza.

**Table 5-45. Components of the [Saved\_Records\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value	Page Number Reference
SaveRecords=	Enables or disables the Bookbag	Y or N Y enables Bookbag N disables Bookbag	N	N/A
Background=	Background graphic (or color)	Valid graphic file or hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff.	None	<a href="#">Background Image on page 2-56</a>
Text=	Text color	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Text Color on page 2-56</a>

**Table 5-45. Components of the [Saved\_Records\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

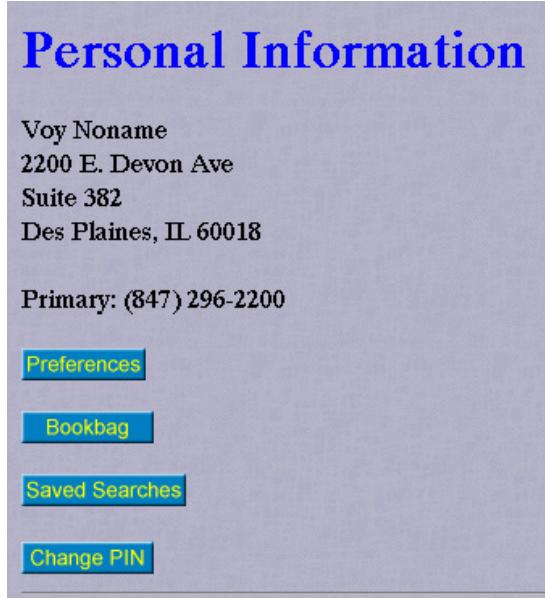
Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value	Page Number Reference
BGCOLOR=	Background color	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Background Color on page 2-56</a>
Delete?=	Heading of the check box column of the Bookbag page used to designate records for deletion (upon clicking the Delete button)	Free text	Delete?	<a href="#">See Delete? column of the Sample Bookbag page (Figure 5-64 on page 5-122)</a>
SaveDate=	Heading of the column of the Bookbag page displaying the time and date each record was saved to the bookbag	Free text	Save Date	<a href="#">See Save Date column of the Sample Bookbag page (Figure 5-64 on page 5-122)</a>
DeleteSave-dRecords=	Text of button used to delete selected records.	Free text	Delete Selected Titles	<a href="#">See Delete Selected Titles button of the Sample Bookbag page (Figure 5-64 on page 5-122)</a>
ClearBookbag-Confirm=	Confirmation dialog box text displayed when deleting the entire contents of bookbag	Free text	See file	N/A

### Customizing the Bookbag button on the Patron Information page

If your library is using Bookbag, your WebVoyáge will include a Bookbag button on the Patron Information page of WebVoyáge, allowing patrons to access their Bookbag from their Patron Information screen.

To change the Bookbag button on the Patron Information page of WebVoyáge, edit the `cartbutton.gif` file in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory. Remember to save the default `cartbutton.gif` as something else (as a backup) before editing it.

---



---

Figure 5-66. Sample Bookbag button on the Patron Information page

#### Button alternate (Mouse-Over) text

Set the alternate (mouse-over) text of the Bookbag button in the `Bookbag_Button_Alt_Text` variable of the `[Patron_Info_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file.

#### Customizing buttons/linked text on the WebVoyáge toolbars

The **Bookbag** button and linked text on the Top and bottom Toolbars is configured in the `[Toolbar_Top]` and `[Toolbar_Bottom]` stanzas of the `opac.ini` file. As with the other toolbar buttons, the graphics files for these buttons are in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory.

Figure 5-67 is an example of the `[Toolbar_Top]` stanza and Figure 5-68 is an example of the `[Toolbar_Bottom]` stanza. These are followed by steps explaining how to configure the stanzas to display buttons for the Bookbag screen. For more information on customizing the Top and/or Bottom Toolbars, see [Toolbar\\_Top and Toolbar\\_Bottom Stanzas](#) on page 3-66.

Line

```
[Toolbar_Top]
1 Count=14

2 TextFont=WingDings
3 TextFontSize=
4 TextSeparator=||

5 Btn01Text=DATABASES
6 Btn01GraphicUp=UpDatabase.gif
7 Btn01GraphicDown=DownDatabase.gif
8 Btn01GraphicDisabled=DisabledDatabase.gif
9 Btn01Function=DATABASE
10 Btn01Link=
-----Display Truncated-----

11 Btn07Text=PREFERENCES
12 Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
13 Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif
14 Btn07GraphicDisabled=DisabledPref.gif
15 Btn07Function=PREFERENCES
16 Btn07Text=Preferences
17 Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
18 Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif

19 Btn08Text=BOOKBAG
20 Btn08GraphicUp=UpBookbag.gif
21 Btn08GraphicDown=DownBookbag.gif
22 Btn08GraphicDisabled=DisabledBookbag.gif
23 Btn08Function=BOOKBAG
```

**Figure 5-67. Details of the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza**

Lines 19 through 23 of Figure 5-67 illustrate the button variables and settings in the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza. The referenced graphics files must be placed in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory with the other button graphics files. For an explanation of these variables, see Table 5-46.

**Table 5-46. Top Toolbar component descriptions**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
BtnxxText=	Rollover text of Bookbag button, or text of link if not using a button	Free text	Bookbag
BtnxxGraphicUp=	Filename of Bookbag graphic in the “up” position	Valid .gif graphic filename	UpBookbag.gif
BtnxxGraphicDown=	Filename of Bookbag graphic in the “down” position	Valid .gif graphic filename	DownBookbag.gif
BtnxxGraphicDisabled=	Filename of Bookbag graphic when disabled	Valid .gif graphic filename	DisabledBookbag.gif
BtnxxFunction=	Points WebVoyáge to correct screen	BOOKBAG	BOOKBAG

Line#

```
[Toolbar_Bottom]
1 Count=14

2 TextFont=
3 TextFontSize=
4 TextSeparator=||

5 Btn01Text=DATABASES
6 +Btn01GraphicUp=UpDatabase.gif
7 +Btn01GraphicDown=DownDatabase.gif
8 +Btn01GraphicDisabled=DisabledDatabase.gif
9 Btn01Function=DATABASE
10 Btn01Link=
-----Display Truncated-----

11 Btn07Text=PREFERENCES
12 +Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
13 +Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif
14 +Btn07GraphicDisabled=DisabledPref.gif
15 Btn07Function=PREFERENCES

16 Btn08Text=BOOKBAG
17 +Btn08GraphicUp=UpBookbag.gif
18 +Btn08GraphicDown=DownBookbag.gif
19 +Btn08GraphicDisabled=DisabledBookbag.gif
20 Btn08Function=BOOKBAG
```

**Figure 5-68. Details of the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza**

Lines 19 through 23 of Figure 5-68 illustrate the button variables and settings in the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza. The referenced graphics files must be placed in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory with the other button graphics files. For an explanation of these variables, see Table 5-47.

**Table 5-47. Top Toolbar component descriptions**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
BtnxxText=	Rollover text of Bookbag button, or text of link if not using a button	Free text	Bookbag
BtnxxGraphicUp=	Filename of Bookbag graphic in the “up” position	Valid .gif graphic file-name	UpBookbag.gif
BtnxxGraphicDown=	Filename of Bookbag graphic in the “down” position	Valid .gif graphic file-name	DownBookbag.gif
BtnxxGraphicDisabled=	Filename of Bookbag graphic when disabled	Valid .gif graphic file-name	DisabledBookbag.gif
BtnxxFunction=	Points WebVoyáge to correct screen	BOOKBAG	BOOKBAG

### Customizing Bookbag features in Record Options box of the Search Results page

There are three Bookbag features in the Record Options box on the Search Results page which are configurable (see [Figure 5-74](#) on [page 5-134](#)). This is done in the [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza of the opac.ini file. Figure 5-69 shows the Record Options box. Figure 5-70 shows the default [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza, and details the variables in this stanza.

Figure 5-71 shows a “contents of Bookbag” email with the “Contents of Bookbag” Subject line, corresponding to line 3 of the default [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza in Figure 5-70. The structure of this email is configured in the email.cfg file.

<b>Record Options</b>	
<b>Records</b>	Select Download Format: <input type="button" value="Full Record"/> Format for Print/Save
<input type="radio"/> All on Page	Enter your email address: <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Selected On Page	<input type="button" value="Email"/>
<input type="radio"/> Selected all Pages	Save results for later: <input type="button" value="Save To Bookbag"/>

Figure 5-69. Record Options box

Line#

[Mail_And_Requests]
Mail=Record Options
Format=Select Download Format:
Records=Records
All=All on Page
Selected=Selected On Page
SelectedRecsAllPages=Selected all Pages
Save=Format for Print/Save
EmailAddress=Enter your email address:
1 SaveToBookbag1=Save results for later:
2 SaveToBookbag2=Save To Bookbag
Email=Email
EmailSubject1=Opac %s Search for %s
3 EmailSubject2=Contents of Bookbag
AuthorityRecEmailSubject=Authority Record
SaveSearchQuery=Save Search Query

Figure 5-70. Default [Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza

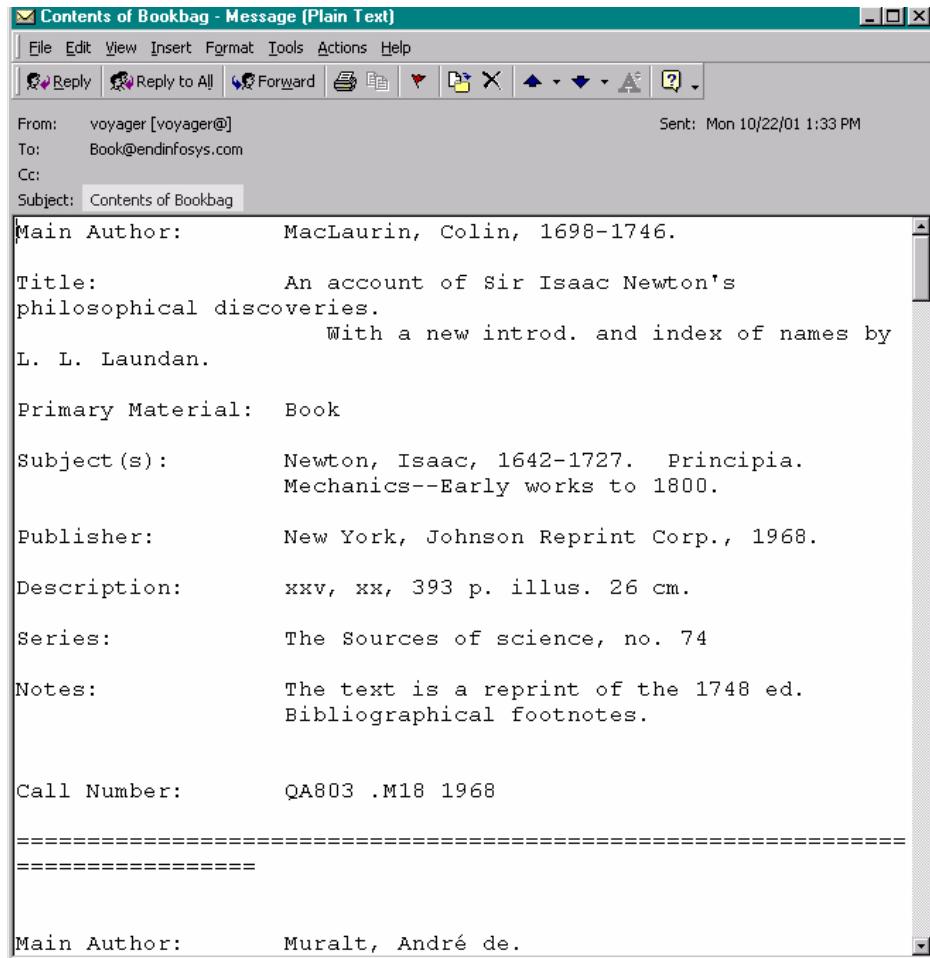
Table 5-48. Details of Bookbag-related variables

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
SaveToBookbag1=	Text of the heading next to the button used to save Bookbag	Free text	Save results for later:

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

**Table 5-48. Details of Bookbag-related variables**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
SaveToBookbag2=	Text of the button used to save records to the bookbag	Free text	Save To Bookbag
EmailSubject2=	Text of the subject line of emails sent to patron with the contents of Bookbag (from the record options of the Bookbag page). See Figure 5-71	Free text	Contents of Bookbag



**Figure 5-71. Example Contents of Bookbag email.**

### Customizing Bookbag messages

Bookbag uses seven messages, all of which are straightforward and can be customized per your preferences. This is done in the [Bookbag\_Messages] stanza.

To modify the [Bookbag\_Messages] stanza, change the text of the variables to your preference for each message.

Figure 5-72 shows the default [Bookbag\_Messages] stanza.

```
[Bookbag_Messages]
BookbagMessage1=Record Not Found or Has Been Deleted
BookbagMessage2=Database is no longer available
BookbagMessage3=No email address has been entered. Please enter an email
address.
BookbagMessage4=No records have been selected to save to the Bookbag
BookbagMessage5=To save to the Bookbag, you must login to your account
BookbagMessage6=%s records have been added to the Bookbag
BookbagMessage7=You may not save more than 1000 records to the Bookbag
```

---

**Figure 5-72.** Default [Bookbag\_Messages] stanza

#### Setting the name of the Bookbag page in the Title Bar

To change the name of the Bookbag page in the Title Bar by modifying the [Title\_Bar] stanza: Change the text after the Bookbag= variable in the [Title\_Bar] stanza of the Opac.ini file. Choose the name of this title per your preferences, as it will display in the title bar. [Figure 5-73](#) shows a sample Bookbag variable.

---

```
Bookbag=View My Bookbag
```

---

**Figure 5-73.** Bookbag variable

### Using Bookbag

---

When the Bookbag feature is enabled, patrons can select records to save to their bookbag from the Search Results screen. After at least one record has been saved to the bookbag, the record(s) can be edited, deleted, or printed in different formats from the Bookbag Records screen.

The following sections detail using the Bookbag feature:

- [Saving a record to the Bookbag](#)
- [Managing your Bookbag](#)
  - [Deleting a record from your Bookbag](#)
  - [Clearing the contents of your Bookbag](#)
  - [E-mailing the contents of your Bookbag](#)

— [Downloading the contents of your Bookbag](#)

### Saving a record to the Bookbag

To save records to your bookbag, from any **Results** page, select the check box to the left of the title of any and all desired records on that page and click the **Save to Bookbag** button in the **Record Options** box (see Figure 5-74).

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [7]	<a href="#">Invitation to phenomenology; studies in the philosophy of experience. Edited with an introd. by James M. Edie.</a>	Edie, James M.	1965
	<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: B829.5 .E3 Status: Not Charged</i>		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [8]	<a href="#">Merleau-Ponty's Phenomenology of perception : a guide and commentary / Monika M. Langer.</a>	Langer, Monika M.	1989
	<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: B2430.M3763 P475 Status: Not Charged</i>		
<input type="checkbox"/> [9]	<a href="#">New essays in phenomenology; studies in the philosophy of experience. Edited with an introd. by James M. Edie.</a>		1969
	<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: B105.E9 N43 Status: Not Charged</i>		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [10]	<a href="#">Perception; selected readings in science and phenomenology. Edited with an introd. by Paul Tibbetts.</a>	Tibbetts, Paul.	1969
	<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: BF311 .T53 Status: Not Charged</i>		

Sort by:

Post Limit

**Record Options**

<b>Records</b>	Select Download Format: <input type="button" value="Full Record"/> <input type="button" value="Format for Print/Save"/>
<input type="radio"/> All on Page <input checked="" type="radio"/> Selected On Page <input type="radio"/> Selected all Pages	Enter your email address: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Email"/>
	Save results for later: <input type="button" value="Save To Bookbag"/>

Figure 5-74. Sample Search Results screen with records checked to be saved to Bookbag

This invokes a # Records have been added to the Bookbag message (see Figure 5-75 on [page 5-135](#)).



---

Figure 5-75. # records have been added to the Bookbag message

After clicking OK, you remain on the search results screen in order to continue reviewing your search results (and placing more records in the Bookbag if you so choose). To view the contents of your Bookbag when finished viewing your search results, click the **Bookbag** button or linked text on the top or bottom toolbar. This invokes the **Bookbag** screen (The **Bookbag** screen can also be accessed from the **Patron Information** page).

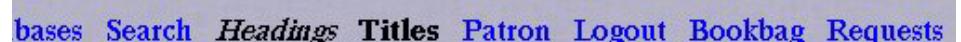
---



---

Figure 5-76. Bookbag button on Top Toolbar

---



---

Figure 5-77. Bookbag linked text in Bottom Toolbar

---

### Managing your Bookbag

Once on the Bookbag screen, you can view, edit, delete, and print records saved to your Bookbag. For an example of the Bookbag screen, see Figure 5-78.

Clicking the linked text under the Author column takes you to that record.

**WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.**

---

<b>Delete?</b>	<b>author</b>	<b>title</b>	<b>publisher_date</b>	<b>Save Date</b>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">MacLaurin, Colin, 1698-1746,</a>	Account of Sir Isaac Newton's philosophical discoveries. With a new introd. and index of names by L. L. Laundan.	1968.	2001-10-15 15:49:01
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Muralt, Andr�e de,</a>	Idea of phenomenology : Husserlian exemplarism / Andr�e de Muralt ; translated by Garry L. Breckon.	1974.	2001-10-18 16:59:17
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Edie, James M.,</a>	Invitation to phenomenology; studies in the philosophy of experience. Edited with an introd. by James M. Edie.	1965.	2001-10-18 16:59:17
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Langer, Monika M.,</a>	Merleau-Ponty's Phenomenology of perception : a guide and commentary / Monika M. Langer.	c1989.	2001-10-18 16:59:18
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Tibbets, Paul,</a>	Perception; selected readings in science and phenomenology. Edited with an introd. by Paul Tibbets.	[1969]	2001-10-18 16:59:18
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Beck, Lewis White,</a>	Commentary on Kant's Critique of Practical Reason, by Lewis White Beck.	[c1960]	2001-10-18 17:02:36

**Delete Selected Titles**

**Clear Bookbag**

**Record Options**

Select Download Format:
Full Record
Format for Print/Save

Enter your email address:

Email

**Figure 5-78.** Six records in a patron's Bookbag

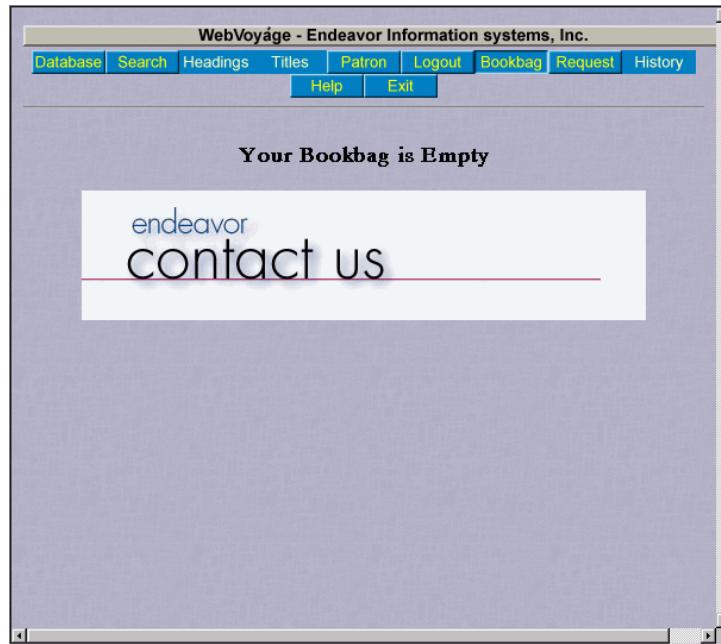
#### Deleting a record from your Bookbag

1. Select the check box (in the **Delete?** column) next to the record.
2. Click the **Delete Selected Titles** button.

#### Clearing the contents of your Bookbag

1. Click the **Clear Bookbag** button.

This deletes all records from your Bookbag and invokes a screen indicating that your Bookbag is empty (see Figure 5-79).



---

Figure 5-79. Bookbag screen invoked when your Bookbag is empty

#### E-mailing the contents of your Bookbag

In the Record Options box (see Figure 5-80):

1. Enter the email address to send the contents of the bookbag to in the **Enter your email address:** field.
2. Click the **Email** button.

For a sample email of Bookbag contents, see [Figure 5-71](#) on [page 5-132](#).

---

A screenshot of a "Record Options" dialog box. It has three main sections: "Select Download Format:" with options for "Full Record" and "Format for Print/Save"; "Enter your email address:" with a text input field and an "Email" button; and a "Record Options" title bar at the top.

---

Figure 5-80. Record Options box on the Bookbag screen

---

## **Downloading the contents of your Bookbag**

You can select a format from the **Record Options** box, and download the contents of your Bookbag (to a file or a printer):

In the **Record Options** box,

1. Select a format to download from the **Select Download Format** drop-down box.
2. Click the **Format for Print/Save** button.

Result: This will reformat the contents of your Bookbag to plain text (see Figure 5-81).

Author:	MacLaurin, Colin, 1698-1746.
Title:	An account of Sir Isaac Newton's philosophical discoveries. With a new introd. and index of names by L. L. Laundan.
Primary Material:	Book
Subject(s):	Newton, Isaac, 1642-1727. Principia. Mechanics--Early works to 1800.
Publisher:	New York, Johnson Reprint Corp., 1968.
Description:	xxv, xx, 393 p. illus. 26 cm.
Series:	The Sources of science, no. 74
Notes:	The text is a reprint of the 1748 ed. Bibliographical footnotes.
Call Number:	QA803 .M18 1968
Location:	Main Collection
=====	
Author:	Muralt, André de.
Title:	[Idée de la phénoménologie. English] The idea of phenomenology : Husserlian exemplarism / André de Muralt ; translated by Garry L. Breckon.
Primary Material:	Book
Subject(s):	Husserl, Edmund, 1859-1938. Phenomenology.
Publisher:	Evanston : Northwestern University Press, 1974.

---

**Figure 5-81. Contents of Bookbag in the Full Record format**

3. Use your Internet browser's capabilities to print or save your Bookbag's contents.

## Saving, Printing and Emailing Information

From the Record Options box (formerly the Save Options box), you can save, print, or email any or all of the records that are part of the entire result set that were found as a result of your search (see Figure 5-82). After you have performed a search, and you have selected all the records in the entire result set that you want to preserve, you can choose to save, print or email those records.

For more information about configuring the Record Options box, see [Mail And Requests Stanza](#) on [page 3-109](#).

Record Options	
<b>Records</b>	<b>Select Download Format:</b> <input type="button" value="Full Record"/> <input type="button" value="Format for Print/Save"/> <input type="button" value="Save Search Query"/>
<input type="radio"/> All on page <input checked="" type="radio"/> Selected on page <input type="radio"/> Selected all pages	Enter your email address <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Email"/> Save results for later: <input type="button" value="Save To Bookbag"/>

Figure 5-82. Record Options box

### Saving a Record

You can save information about records only after specifying on either the Title List or the Record Display which records are to be saved. Your institution determines what specific information is saved from a record.

You can save records in the following ways:

- If you are on the Record Display page, you can save that record to a file.
1. On the Record Display page, in the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Select Download Format** drop-down box, select the desired format. These formats are determined in the [Download\_Formats] stanza of the opac.ini file (for more information on configuring download formats, see [Download Formats](#) on [page 3-112](#)).
  2. Click the **Format for Print/Save** button. Depending on what you selected in the Format Type field, the record will appear onscreen in either regular text or MARC format.

3. In the menu bar of your browser, click **File>Save As**. When the Save dialog appears (in IE, this is the **Save Web Page** dialog) and enter the name of the file that you want to save into the **File Name** field. You can also specify what format the record is to be saved in by selecting from the **Save as type** drop-down menu or the encoding type by selecting from the **Encoding** drop-down menu.
  4. Click the **Save** button to save the records.
    - If you are on the Title List page, you can save either all of the records onscreen or selected records.
1. On the Title List page, you must first select all of the records that you want to save by placing a check in the check box in the **#** column in the row of each record you plan to save.

You may select records from multiple pages for saving, printing or emailing. After you have selected records on a page, in order to preserve those selections you must click the **Retain Selected** button before moving to the next page; otherwise, these selections will not be preserved. You must press **Retain Selected** on each page whenever you select records that you want to preserve. If you want to change the selections that you have preserved for a particular page, you must make the changes and again click the **Retain Selected** button. You can also click the **Clear Selected** button to clear all of the selections from the page and from the list of saved selections.

If you want to save all of the records onscreen, you do **not** have to check any of the check boxes.

2. In the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Records** column, click the **All on page** radio button to save all of the records listed on the page, the **Selected on page** button to print the selected records on the current page or the **Selected all pages** button to print the records selected across all of the pages of the result set.

**NOTE:**

If you click **Selected on page** and there are no records selected, WebVoyáge will save all of the records onscreen.

3. On the Record Display page, in the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Select Download Format** drop-down box, select the desired format. These formats are determined in the [Download\_Formats] stanza of the opac.ini file (for more information on configuring download formats, see [Download Formats on page 3-112](#)).
4. Click the **Print/Save** button. Depending on what you selected in the Format Type field, the record will appear onscreen in either regular text or MARC format.

- 
5. In the menu bar of your browser, click **File>Save As**. When the Save dialog appears (in IE, this is the **Save Web Page** dialog) and enter the name of the file that you want to save into the **File Name** field. You can also specify what format the record is to be saved in by selecting from the **Save as type** drop-down menu or the encoding type by selecting from the **Encoding** drop-down menu.
  6. Click the **Save** button to save the records.

### Customizing Saved Record or Title Lists

Your library can automatically append information in a footer file to anything that you print or save. For example, you can add the library's address and hours to every notice that gets saved or printed. This information is contained in the **save.cfg** file. The files may include only text. See [SAVE.CFG](#) on [page 3-235](#) for information about the print and save footer files.

You can also customize the colors and labels of the Save Options blocks that appear at the bottom of the Title List and Record Display screens. The configuration information for each is kept with the general configuration information for each page. For more information on configuring the Search Options block, see [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#) or [Record Display](#) on [page 5-99](#).

## Printing a Record

---

You can print information about records only after specifying on either the Title List ([Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#)) or the Record Display ([Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#)) which records are to be saved. Your institution determines what specific information in the record will be printed.

You can print records in the following ways:

- If you are on the Record Display page, you can print the record.
1. On the Record Display page, in the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Select Download Format** drop-down box, select the desired format. These formats are determined in the [Download\_Formats] stanza of the opac.ini file (for more information on configuring download formats, see [Download Formats](#) on [page 3-112](#)).
  2. Click the **Print/Save** button. Depending on what you selected in the Format Type field, the record will appear onscreen in either regular text or MARC format.
  3. In the menu bar of your browser, click **File>Print**. When the Print dialog appears (in IE, this is the **Print** dialog) click the **OK** button to print or the **Cancel** button to exit the dialog without printing.

- If you are on the Title List page, you can print either all of the records onscreen or selected records.
1. On the Title List page, you must first select all of the records that you want to save by placing a check in the check box in the # column in the row of each record you plan to save.

You may select records from multiple pages for saving, printing or emailing. After you have selected records on a page, in order to preserve those selections you must click the **Retain Selected** button before moving to the next page; otherwise, these selections will not be preserved. You must press **Retain Selected** on each page whenever you select records that you want to preserve. If you want to change the selections that you have preserved for a particular page, you must make the changes and again click the **Retain Selected** button. You can also click the **Clear Selected** button to clear all of the selections from the page and from the list of saved selections.

If you want to save all of the records onscreen, you do **not** have to check any of the check boxes.

2. In the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Records** column, click the **All on page** radio button to save all of the records listed on the page, the **Selected on page** button to print the selected records on the current page or the **Selected all pages** button to print the records selected across all of the pages of the result set.

**NOTE:**

If you click **Selected on page** and there are no records selected, WebVoyáge will save all of the records onscreen.

3. On the Record Display page, in the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Select Download Format** drop-down box, select the desired format. These formats are determined in the [Download\_Formats] stanza of the opac.ini file (for more information on configuring download formats, see [Download Formats on page 3-112](#)).
4. Click the **Print/Save** button. Depending on what you selected in the Format Type field, the record will appear onscreen in either regular text or MARC format.
5. In the menu bar of your browser, click **File>Print**. When the Print dialog appears (in IE, this is the **Print** dialog) click the **OK** button to print or the **Cancel** button to exit the dialog without printing.
6. Click the **Save** button to save the records.

---

## Customizing Printed Record or Title Lists

Your library can automatically append information in a footer file to anything that you print or save. For example, you can add the library's address and hours to every notice that gets saved or printed. This information is contained in the **save.cfg** file. The files may include only text. See [SAVEF.CFG](#) on [page 3-235](#) for information about the print and save footer files.

You can also customize the colors and labels of the Save Options blocks that appear at the bottom of the Title List and Record Display screens. The configuration information for each is kept with the general configuration information for each page. For more information on configuring the Search Options block, see [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#) or [Record Display](#) on [page 5-99](#).

## Print Setup

---

You can choose and set up a printer through your browser. Browsers generally allow you to set up your printer through a dialog in the browser. This is generally done by selecting something like **File>Print Setup** (in IE, this is **File>Page Setup**).

Refer to your Windows documentation on how to set up your printer or your browser software documentation on how to activate the printer setup dialog.

## Emailing a Record

---

You can email information about records only after specifying on either the Title List or the Record Display which records are to be emailed. Your institution determines what specific information in the record will be printed.

### NOTE:

The two MARC formats are *not* available for email from WebVoyáge.

You can print records in the following ways:

- If you are on the Record Display page, you can email the record.
1. On the Record Display page, in the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Select Download Format** drop-down box, select the desired format. These formats are determined in the [Download\_Formats] stanza of the opac.ini file (for more information on configuring download formats, see [Download Formats](#) on [page 3-112](#)).
  2. Enter your email address into the **Enter E-Mail address** field. You **must** enter your entire email address (i.e., username@hostname.ext) or the email will not be sent.

3. Click the **email** button. Depending on what you selected in the Format Type field, the record will be emailed in either regular text or MARC format to the address that you specified.
  - If you are on the Title List page, you can email either all of the records onscreen or selected records.
1. On the Title List page, you must first select all of the records that you want to save by placing a check in the check box in the **#** column in the row of each record you plan to save.

You may select records from multiple pages for saving, printing or emailing. After you have selected records on a page, in order to preserve those selections you must click the **Retain Selected** button before moving to the next page; otherwise, these selections will not be preserved. You must press **Retain Selected** on each page whenever you select records that you want to preserve. If you want to change the selections that you have preserved for a particular page, you must make the changes and again click the **Retain Selected** button. You can also click the **Clear Selected** button to clear all of the selections from the page and from the list of saved selections.

If you want to save all of the records onscreen, you do **not** have to check any of the check boxes.

2. In the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Records** column, click the **All on page** radio button to save all of the records listed on the page, the **Selected on page** button to print the selected records on the current page or the **Selected all pages** button to print the records selected across all of the pages of the result set.

**NOTE:**

If you click **Selected on page** and there are no records selected, WebVoyáge will save all of the records onscreen.

3. On the Record Display page, in the **Save Options** block at the bottom of the page, in the **Select Download Format** drop-down box, select the desired format. These formats are determined in the [Download\_Formats] stanza of the opac.ini file (for more information on configuring download formats, see [Download Formats on page 3-112](#)).
4. Click the **email** button. Depending on what you selected in the Format Type field, the record will be emailed to the address specified in either regular text or MARC format.

---

## Customizing E-mailed Record or Title Lists

Your library can automatically append information in a footer file to anything that you email. For example, you can add an email address to email messages being sent. This information is contained in the **email.cfg** file. The file may include only text. See [EMAIL.CFG](#) on [page 3-235](#) for information about the email footer files.

You can also customize the colors and labels of the Save Options blocks that appear at the bottom of the Title List and Record Display screens. The configuration information for each is kept with the general configuration information for each page. For more information on configuring the Search Options block, see [Title List](#) on [page 5-89](#) or [Record Display](#) on [page 5-99](#).

## Exiting WebVoyáge

---

You can exit WebVoyáge by selecting the appropriate window close command from your browser's menu bar (in IE, this is **File>Close**). You can also click the **X** button to the right of the title bar to close WebVoyáge.

## Saving a record to your Bookbag (Optional)

---

If your library has the Bookbag (Shopping Cart) feature enabled, you can save records, from any search results screen, to your Bookbag for later downloading or printing.

To save records to your bookbag, from any Results page, select the check box to the left of the title of any and all desired records on that page and click the Save to Bookbag button in the Record Options box (see Figure 5-74).

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [ 7 ]	<a href="#">Invitation to phenomenology; studies in the philosophy of experience. Edited with an introd. by James M. Edie.</a>	Edie, James M.	1965
<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: B829.5 .E3 Status: Not Charged</i>			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [ 8 ]	<a href="#">Merleau-Ponty's Phenomenology of perception : a guide and commentary / Monika M. Langer.</a>	Langer, Monika M.	1989
<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: B2430.M3763 P475 Status: Not Charged 1989</i>			
<input type="checkbox"/> [ 9 ]	<a href="#">New essays in phenomenology; studies in the philosophy of experience. Edited with an introd. by James M. Edie.</a>		1969
<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: B105.E9 N43 Status: Not Charged</i>			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> [ 10 ]	<a href="#">Perception; selected readings in science and phenomenology. Edited with an introd. by Paul Tibbetts.</a>	Tibbetts, Paul.	1969
<i>Library Location: Main Collection Call Number: BF311.T53 Status: Not Charged</i>			

Sort by:

1 **11** 21

**Record Options**

<b>Records</b>	Select Download Format: <input type="button" value="Full Record"/> Format for Print/Save
<input type="radio"/> All on Page	Enter your email address: <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Email"/>
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Selected On Page	
<input type="radio"/> Selected all Pages	Save results for later: <input type="button" value="Save To Bookbag"/>

Figure 5-83. Sample Search Results screen with records checked to be saved to Bookbag

This invokes a # Records have been added to the Bookbag message (see Figure 5-75 on page 5-135).

After clicking OK, you remain on the search results screen in order to continue reviewing your search results (and placing more records in the Bookbag if you so choose). To view the contents of your Bookbag when finished viewing your search results, click the Bookbag button or linked text on the top or bottom toolbar. This invokes the Bookbag screen (The Bookbag screen can also be accessed from the Patron Information page).

---

## **Bibliographic ID redirect to WebVoyáge**

---

This feature allows WebVoyáge to receive, and display, requests containing a MARC record. The record displays in the browser using the public view.

**NOTE:**

This feature may not be compatible with early browser versions. Update your browser version if you have an older one.

Along with this feature comes a URI link specification for the WebVoyáge session redirected to. This link is set in the `bibredirect.ini` file in the `m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/cgi-bin` folder. The `RedirectURI` variable in the [BibRedirect] stanza contains the URI itself.

---

```
[BibRedirect]
RedirectURI=/cgi-bin/Pwebrecon.cgi?BBID={record_id}
```

---

**Figure 5-84. The default RedirectURI variable**

---

**NOTE:**

If the incoming record is from a different database as that pointed to in this stanza, WebVoyáge displays an incorrect record, or no record at all.

---

## Requests

# 6

---

## Contents

<b>Request Selection Page</b>	<b>6-1</b>
• Placing Holds and Recalls	6-3
• Placing Call Slip Requests	6-7
• Placing Short Loan Requests	6-12
• Placing ARTEmail Requests	6-17
• Placing Remote Storage Requests	6-24
• Blank Request Form	6-27
• Bibliographic Level Request Form	6-30
• Item Level Request Form	6-34
• WebVoyáge Universal Borrowing Request display notes	6-38
• Request Logout	6-38

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---



## Contents

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Requests

# 6

---

---

### Request Selection Page

---

The Request Selection page allows you to choose which type of request you want to submit. You can open the Request Selection page by clicking the **Request** button. If you have not logged in, the **Patron Login** page will appear; once you have logged in, the Request Selection page appears.

---



---

Figure 6-1. Request Selection Page

---

---

From this page you can select the type of request that you would like to submit and click the **Submit** button. Click the **Clear** button to restore the page to its default setting.

### Customizing Request Selection

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the Request\_Select\_Page stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Request Selection page include:

**Table 6-1.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Informational text	reqsel.htm
Wording of "Available" in request drop-down	Available
OK button label	SubmitButton variable
Reset button label	ResetButton variable

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-2.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Request Selection page, see [Editing the Request Selection Screen on page 2-110](#).

## Placing Holds and Recalls

---

If this feature is available at your institution, you can hold or recall a specific copy of an item at a specific location, any copy at a specific location, or any copy at any location. You may also be able to select the pickup location (depending on your institution's policies). Recalls can be placed only for items that are charged out. Both Holds and Recalls can only be placed from an item's Record Display. In addition, you must be logged in to place a hold or recall request.



### Procedure 6-1. Placing a hold or recall request

---

Use the following steps to place a hold or recall request on an item.

1. Execute a search for the item that you want to place a hold or recall request for. Depending on the type of search performed, the list that appears is either a **Headings List** or a **Titles List**.
2. If the **Headings List** appears, click the appropriate heading. This will cause the titles under that heading to appear on the Title List page.
3. If the **Titles List** appears, click the appropriate title. This will cause the **Record Display page** to appear.
4. Click the **Request** button on the toolbar.  
If you have already logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.  
If you have not yet logged in, the **Patron Login** page appears. See **Patron Login on 7-1** for information about logging in. Once you have logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.



**Figure 6-2. Request Selection Page**

5. In the Request Type drop down, click the drop-down arrow and select the type of patron request that you want to make, **Hold** or **Recall**, and click **OK**. (A recall can only be made (if it is available to you) when an item is checked out to another patron.) The Hold or Recall page will appear.

## Requests

---

This screenshot shows the 'Opac Request Hold' form in Microsoft Internet Explorer. The title field contains 'America's light trucks.'. The instructions field says 'Please select an item.' The 'Any Copy' radio button is selected. A dropdown menu next to it shows 'c 1 222 Offsite'. The barcode field is empty. The comment field contains 'Please save it for me! I'm nice!' The pick up at field is set to 'Cardiff Short Loan Desk'. The 'Not Needed After' field has '90 Day(s)' selected. At the bottom are 'Submit Request' and 'Clear Form' buttons.

Figure 6-3. Hold Page

---

This screenshot shows the 'Opac Request Recall' form in Microsoft Internet Explorer. The title field contains 'America's light trucks.'. The instructions field says 'Please select an item.' The 'Any Copy' radio button is selected. A dropdown menu next to it shows 'c 1 222 Offsite'. The barcode field is empty. The comment field contains 'Please save it for me! I'm nice!' The pick up at field is set to 'Cardiff Short Loan Desk'. The 'Not Needed After' field has '90 Day(s)' selected. At the bottom are 'Submit Request' and 'Clear Form' buttons.

Figure 6-4. Recall Page

---

6. On the request form click the **Any Copy** radio button to place the hold for any available copy of the item, or click the radio button next to the drop-down with the copy information in it to place the request for a specific copy. Click the drop-down arrow to select the copy that you want to any required login information.

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

- 
7. Enter any comments that you want your institution's circulation staff to view in the Comments text box.
  8. Select the location where you want to pick up the item from the "Pick Up At" drop-down list.
  9. Specify the number of days that the hold and/or recall should remain active in the "Not Needed After" text box (0-999).
  10. Click **Submit Request** to submit your request(s); or click **Clear Form** to remove information entered onto the form.

### **Customizing Holds and Recalls**

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Hold\_Recall\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Holds and Recalls request page include:

**Table 6-3.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of Hold/Recall form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:"	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Hold" or "Recall"	Form Name field in OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab
Title field label	Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

**Table 6-3.**

Any Copy field label	AnyCopy variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Any Copy At field label	AnyCopyAt variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Comment field label	Comment variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Pick Up At field label	PickUp variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Not Needed After field label	NotNeededAfter variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-4.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini

For more information on configuring the Holds and Recalls page, see [Editing the Hold and Recall Request Screens](#) on [page 2-132](#).

## Placing Call Slip Requests

If allowed by your library, you can place call slip requests for items retrieved from the Public Access catalog that are not readily available to the public. For example, you may need to place a call slip request for an item that resides in a closed stacks area. A call slip request can be made only from the Record Display page

---

for an item. (The Record Display page appears as the result of performing a search and clicking a record from the Title List page.). You must login before you can place a call slip request.

**NOTE:**

For information about what must be set up in order for the call slip feature to work properly, see the Call Slip section of the *Callslip User's Guide* and "Call Slip Print Groups" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide*.

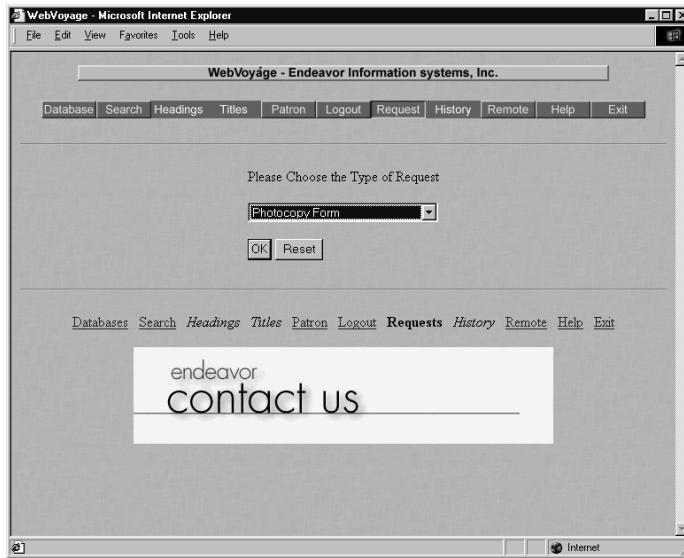


### Procedure 6-2. Placing a Callslip Request

---

Use the following steps to place a call slip request for an item:

1. Execute a search for the item that you want to place a call slip request for. Depending on the type of search performed, the list that appears is either a **Headings List** or a **Titles List**.
2. If the **Headings List** appears, click the appropriate heading. This will cause the titles under that heading to appear on the Title List page.
3. If the **Titles List** appears, click the appropriate title. This will cause the **Record Display page** to appear.
4. On the Record Display page, click the **Request** button on the toolbar. If you have not yet logged in, the **OPAC Patron Login** page appears. Enter your patron barcode and last name in the appropriate fields and then click the **Login** button. Once you have logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.



---

**Figure 6-5. Request Selection Page**

5. Click the drop-down menu and select **Call Slip** (your institution may name this differently). The number of call slip requests you are allowed to place displays in parenthesis beside "Call Slip" in the drop-down menu. Click the **OK** button. The Call Slip Request page displays.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Internet Explorer window displaying the 'WebVoyage Request Call Slip' form. The form fields include:

- Title: America's light trucks
- Instructions: Fill out form
- Select an item: C.0
- Specify an issue: Volume, Date, Year
- Pick Up At: Circulation Desk
- Barcode: [empty field]
- Comment: [large text area]

At the bottom of the form are 'Submit Request' and 'Clear Form' buttons.

**Figure 6-6. Call Slip Request Page**

6. Click the radio button for **Select an item** if you want to place a callslip request for a specific item; or click the radio button for **Specify an issue** if you want to enter the item information yourself.  
If you specify **Select an item** you must choose a specific copy from the drop-down menu.  
If you select **Specify an issue** you must enter the information on the copy of the item that you want to request into the **Volume**, **Date** and **Year** fields.

**NOTE:**

Depending on your institution's policies, one of these may be unavailable.

7. Select the location from where you want to pick up the item from the **Pick Up At** drop-down menu. This can be enabled or disabled. See "Call Slip Print Groups Definition" in the *Voyager System Administration User's Guide* for more information.
8. Enter your barcode into the **Barcode** field. Depending on your institution's policies, you may instead have to enter your Social Security Number or Institution ID.
9. Enter any comments that you want your institution's circulation staff to view in the **Comment** field.

- 
10. Click **Submit Request** to submit your request. Click **Clear Form** to reset all of the fields of the request.
- 

### Customizing Call Slip Requests

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Req\_Call\_Slip\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Call Slip request page include:

**Table 6-5.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of Call Slip form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:"	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Call Slip"	Form Name field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Title field label	Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Select an item field label	CallSlipPick variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specify an issue field label	CallSlipSpecify variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Volume field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Date field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration

---

**Table 6-5.**

Year field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Comment field label	Comment variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Pick Up At field label	PickUp variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Not Needed After field label	NotNeededAfter variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-6.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini

For more information on configuring the Call Slip page, see [Editing the Call Slip Request Screen](#) on page 2-128.

## **Placing Short Loan Requests**

---

If allowed by your library, you can place a short loan request. Short Loans allow your patrons to place a reservation on an item for a specific time period. The item is then picked up and charged out at the scheduled time. A short loan request may only be submitted for an item which has been designated as a short loanable item. The request must also be for a specific item. You may select the pickup location and the times and dates that the short loan is to occur. You must be logged in to submit a short loan request.



### Procedure 6-3. Placing a Short Loan Request

---

Use the following to place a short loan request for an item.

1. Execute a search for the item that you want to place a short loan request for. Depending on the type of search performed, the list that appears is either a **Headings List** or a **Titles List**.
2. If the **Headings List** appears, click the appropriate heading. This will cause the titles under that heading to appear on the Title List page.
3. If the **Titles List** appears, click the appropriate title. This will cause the **Record Display page** to appear.
4. Click the **Request** button on the toolbar.  
If you have not yet logged in, the **OPAC Patron Login** page appears. Enter your patron barcode and last name in the appropriate fields and then click the **OK** button. Once you have logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.



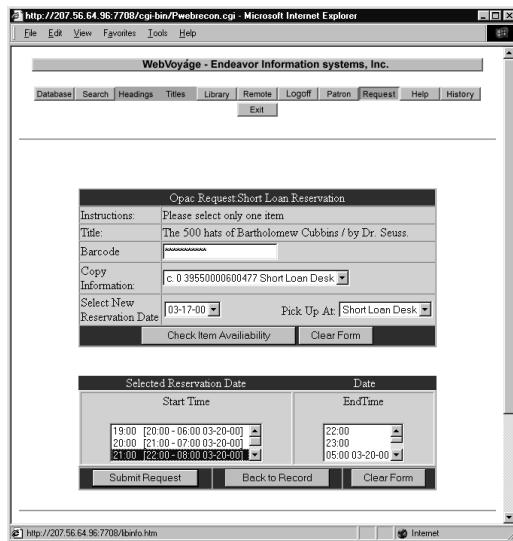
---

Figure 6-7. Request Selection Page

5. Select Short Loans from the list.

**NOTE:**

Your institution may give this form a different name. The OPAC Request: Short Loan page appears.



**Figure 6-8. Short Loan Request page**

6. Enter your barcode into the **Barcode** field. Depending on your institution's policies, you may be required to enter your Social Security Number or Institution ID instead.
7. Select the copy for which you want to submit a request by clicking the drop-down arrow in the **Copy Information** field and selecting a copy from the list.
8. Select the date upon which you want the request to occur by clicking the drop-down arrow in the **Select New Reservation Date** field and selecting a date from the list.
9. Select a pick-up location by clicking the drop-down arrow next to the **Pick Up At** field and selecting a location from the list.
10. If your browser is incapable of running Javascript, you can click this button to search for the available times on the day that you selected. The times will appear in the **Start Time** column, below.
11. Select a start time for the booking in the **Start Time** list. The available end dates will appear in the End Time list.

12. Select an end time for the booking in the **End Time** list.
  13. Click **Submit Request** to send the request; click **Clear Form** to clear the information entered into the form; or click **Back to Record** to return to the record without submitting the request. If you click **Submit Request** and the request is allowed to be submitted, a page will appear that reads "Your Patron Initiated Request was successful." Click the **Back to Record** button to continue.
- 

### Customizing Short Loan Requests

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Request\_ShortLoan\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Short Loan request page include:

**Table 6-7.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of Call Slip form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:")	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Call Slip")	Form Name field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Instructions	Instructions field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration

---

**Table 6-7.**

Title field label	Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Copy Information	Copy_Info variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Select New Reservation Date	Select_New_Date variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Pick Up At field label	PickUp variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Check Item Availability button label	Check_Item_Avail variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Form button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Selected Reservation Date table header	SelectedReservationDate
Date header	Date
Start Time column header	StartTime
End Time column header	EndTime
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Form button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Back to Record button label	BackToRecord
Table Color	TableForegroundColor
Table Header Color	TableBackgroundColor

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-8.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm

**Table 6-8.**

Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini
-----------------------------	--

For more information on configuring the Call Slip page, see [Editing the Call Slip Request Screen on page 2-128](#).

### **Placing ARTEmail Requests**

---

If allowed by your library, you can submit an ILL request for either a specific volume to be loaned, or for photocopies of a particular volume. This is done by using the ARTEmail Request Form, which is a special type of structured email that is ARTTel-compatible (Automated Request Transmission by Telecommunications). This form will be both emailed to an address specified in the System Administration module as well as output to a file on the server. You may enter information on the volume you wish to request, as well as a Not Needed After date. The fields that appear in boldface are required.



#### **Procedure 6-4. Placing an ARTEmail Request**

---

Use the following to place an ILL loan or photocopy request:

1. Execute a search for the item that you want to place a ARTEmail request for. Depending on the type of search performed, the list that appears is either a **Headings List** or a **Titles List**.
2. If the **Headings List** appears, click the appropriate heading. This will cause the titles under that heading to appear on the Title List page.
3. If the **Titles List** appears, click the appropriate title. This will cause the **Record Display page** to appear.
4. Click the **Request** button on the toolbar.  
If you have not yet logged in, the **OPAC Patron Login** page appears. Enter your patron barcode and last name in the appropriate fields and then click the **Login** button. Once you have logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.



**Figure 6-9. Request Selection Page**

5. Click the drop-down menu and select **ILL Photocopy Request** or **ILL Loan Request**. (Your institution may name these requests differently). Click the **OK** button. The page for the appropriate request type displays.

A screenshot of a Microsoft Internet Explorer window titled "WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Favorites, Tools, Help, Database, Search, Headings, Titles, Library, Remote, Logout, Patron, Request, Help, and History. A sub-menu under "Request" shows "Opac Request Book Form" selected. The form fields include: Instructions, Author, Title, Place of Pub, Publisher, Edition, Year, Volume, Barcode, and Not Needed After (with a value of 30). There are "Submit Request" and "Clear Form" buttons. At the bottom of the page, there is a "contact us" link.

**Figure 6-10. ILL Email Loan Request page**

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

6. If you submitted a request for an ILL Loan, enter the appropriate information into the **Author, Title, Place of Pub, Publisher, Edition, Year, Volume, and Barcode** fields. Fields in **boldface** are required. You may change the Not Needed After days as well. Click the **Submit Request** button to submit the request or click the **Clear Form** button to remove information entered into the fields onscreen.
- 

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Favorites, Tools, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with Database, Search, Headings, Titles, Library, Remote, Logoff, Patron, Request, Help, History, and Exit. The main content area is titled "Opac Request: Photocopy Form". It contains the following fields:

- Instructions: (empty)
- Journal Title: (empty)
- Volume: (empty)
- Part: (empty)
- Year: (empty)
- Article Title: (empty)
- Article Author: (empty)
- Pages: (empty)
- Barcode: (empty)
- Not Needed After: [30] Day(s) (with a dropdown arrow icon)

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Submit Request" and "Clear Form". At the very bottom of the page, below the footer, are links for Database, Library, Remote, Patron, and Help, along with the Endeavor logo and Internet links.

Figure 6-11. ILL email Photocopy page

7. If you submitted a request for ILL Photocopies, enter **Volume, Part, Year, Article Title, Article Author, Pages** and **Barcode** information into the fields. You may also change the Not Needed After days. Click the **Submit Request** button to submit the request or click the **Clear Form** button to remove information entered into the fields onscreen.
  8. At this point the request will be emailed.
- 

### Customizing ARTEmail Requests

#### NOTE:

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Request\_Form\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

---

Configurations specific to the ARTEmail request page include:

**Table 6-9.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of ARTEmail form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:")	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Book Form")	Form Name field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Data Fields and Field labels	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Pick Up At field label	PickUp variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Not Needed After field label	NotNeededAfter variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-10.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini

For more information on configuring the ARTEmail page, see [Editing the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens](#) on [page 2-160](#).

### Customizing ARTEmail Requests

**NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Request\_Form\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the ARTEmail request page include:

**Table 6-11.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of ARTEmail form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:")	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

**Table 6-11.**

Specific part of title (i.e., "InterLibrary Loan Form")	Form Name field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Author field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Title field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Place of Pub field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Publisher field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Edition field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Year field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Volume field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Journal Title field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration

**Table 6-11.**

Part field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Article Title field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Article Author field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Pages field label	Field Label field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Fields tab in System Administration
Pick Up At field label	PickUp variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Not Needed After field label	NotNeededAfter variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-12.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini

---

For more information on configuring the ARTEmail page, see [Editing the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens](#) on page 2-160.

## Placing Remote Storage Requests

---

If allowed by your library, you can submit a Remote Storage request for an item that is kept at an offsite location. This is done by using the Remote Storage form to request the item. The Remote Storage form is a system-defined form with a form code of ARS. Each submitted request is written to a file on the server (see “OPAC Request Forms” in the *Voyager System Administration User’s Guide* for more information). You can select which item you want to request and the location where you want to pick up the item. The fields that appear in boldface onscreen are required.



### Procedure 6-5. Placing a Remote Storage Request

---

To place a Remote Storage request:

1. Execute a search for the item that you want to place a remote storage request for. Depending on the type of search performed, the list that appears is either a **Headings List** or a **Titles List**.
2. If the **Headings List** appears, click the appropriate heading. This will cause the titles under that heading to appear on the Title List page.
3. If the **Titles List** appears, click the appropriate title. This will cause the **Record Display page** to appear.
4. Click the **Request** button on the toolbar.  
If you have not yet logged in, the **OPAC Patron Login** page appears. Enter your patron barcode and last name in the appropriate fields and then click the **Login** button. Once you have logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.

## Requests

---



**Figure 6-12.** Request Selection Page

5. Click the drop-down menu and select **Remote Storage**. (Your institution may name these requests differently). Click the **OK** button. The Remote Storage Request page displays.
- 

A screenshot of a Microsoft Internet Explorer window titled "WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.". The window has a menu bar with Database, Search, Headings, Titles, Patron, Logout, Request, History, Remote, Help, and Exit. Below the menu is a form titled "WebVoyage Request:Remote Request". The form fields include:

- Title: Sensory mechanisms.
- Instructions: Select item to retrieve
- Select an item: dropdown menu showing "c. 0"
- Pick Up At: dropdown menu showing "Circulation Desk"
- Barcode: input field

At the bottom are "Submit Request" and "Clear Form" buttons. A banner at the bottom of the page reads "Search Headings Titles Patron Logout Requests History Remote Help Exit".

**Figure 6-13.** Remote Storage Request page

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

- 
- 6. Select the specific item that you want to request by clicking the **Select an item** drop-down arrow.
  - 7. Select the pickup location by clicking the **Pick Up At** drop-down arrow (depending on your institution's policies, this may be unavailable).
  - 8. Enter the Barcode of the patron submitting the request into the **Barcode** field (depending on your institution's policies, you may instead have to provide your Social Security Number or Institution ID). Note that your institution may have changed the names of the fields.
  - 9. Click the **Submit Request** button to submit the request. Click the **Clear Form** button to restore the form to its original state.

### Customizing Remote Storage Requests

#### NOTE:

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Html\_Body** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Remote Request request page include:

**Table 6-13.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of Remote Request form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:")	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Remote Request")	Form Name field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Title field label	Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

**Table 6-13.**

Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Select an item field label	CallSlipPick variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Pick Up At field label	PickUp variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-14.**

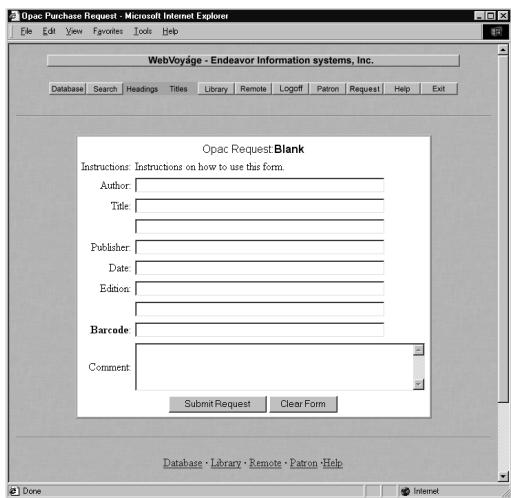
CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini

For more information on configuring the ARTEmail page, see [Editing the ARTEmail Loan and Photocopy Form Screens on page 2-160](#).

### **Blank Request Form**

---

Your institution may allow you to submit a **Blank Form** request. Your institution can define the types of information that can be entered into the form. This form may be used for any purpose and may not be called a Blank Form onscreen. The information that gets entered into this form is emailed upon submission of the form. No bibliographic or item information is transmitted with this form - only the information that is entered into this form.



**Figure 6-14. Sample Blank Request Form**

After the request form has been completed, the form is then emailed to the person specified in the System Administration module.

As an example, your library might use this form to create a "Get Me" request form for the purpose of submitting a purchase request for material that the library does not own. If you wanted to submit a "Get Me" request, you might have to do something similar to the following:

1. If the request button is not enabled, you must log in before making a request. Click **Request>Login** from the main menu to log in.
2. Click the **Request** button.  
This opens the **Available Patron Requests** page.
3. Click the drop-down arrow and from the list select **Get Me**. Click **OK**.  
This opens the "Get Me" OPAC Purchase Request page.
4. Fill out the form with the appropriate information.
5. Click **OK** to send the request, or click **Cancel** to discard the request.

### Customizing Blank Requests

#### **NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Req\_No\_Bib\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Blank Request page include:

**Table 6-15.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of Blank Request form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:")	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Blank Request")	Form Name field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Data Fields 1-7	Field1 - Field7 variables in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Comment field label	Comment variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-16.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

**Table 6-16.**

Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini

For more information on configuring the Blank Request page, see [Editing the Blank-Type Request Screen](#) on [page 2-142](#).

## Bibliographic Level Request Form

---

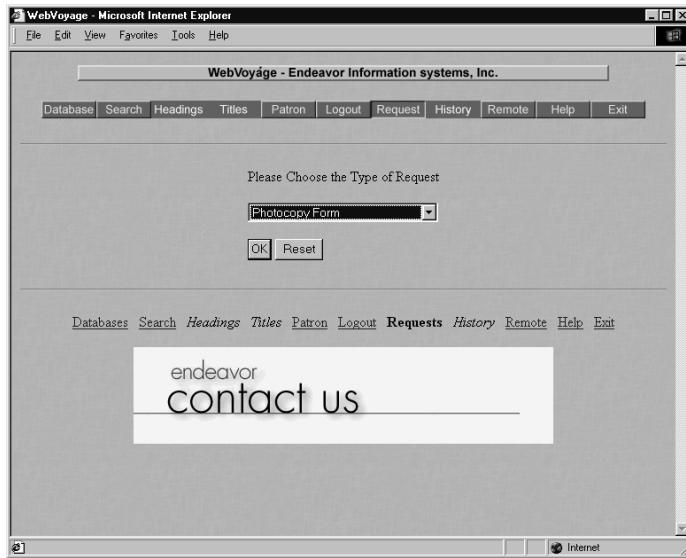
Your institution may allow you to submit a **Bibliographic Level** request. Your institution can define the types of information that can be entered into the form. This form may be used for any purpose and may not be called a Bibliographic Level request onscreen. When a Bibliographic Level form is submitted, the system looks up the information on the bibliographic record and gathers all of the information together as a single request.

The request must be submitted while a bibliographic record is on display in OPAC; the request will be placed for that item.

Once the request is placed, the bibliographic information is gathered from the database. The form is then emailed to the person specified in the System Administration module.

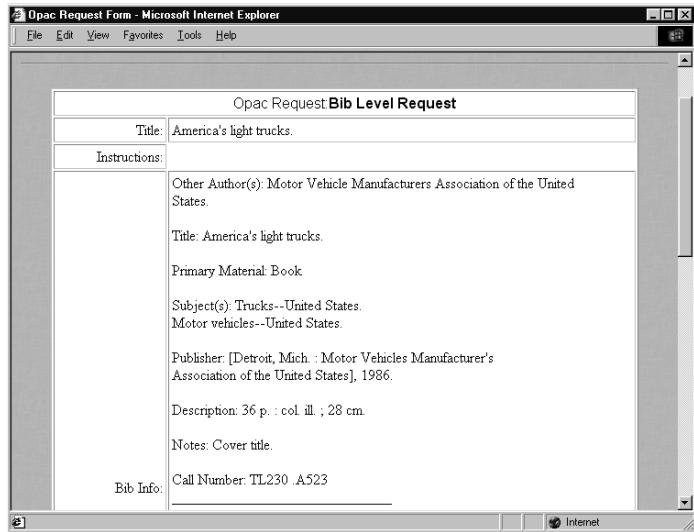
To submit a bibliographic-level request:

1. Execute a search for the item that you want to place a bibliographic level request for. Depending on the type of search performed, the list that appears is either a **Headings List** or a **Titles List**.
2. If the **Headings List** appears, click the appropriate heading. This will cause the titles under that heading to appear on the Title List page.
3. If the **Titles List** appears, click the appropriate title. This will cause the **Record Display page** to appear.
4. Click the **Request** button on the toolbar.  
If you have not yet logged in, the **OPAC Patron Login** page appears. Enter your patron barcode and last name in the appropriate fields and then click the **Login** button. Once you have logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.



**Figure 6-15. Request Selection Page**

5. Click the drop-down menu and select the bibliographic level-type request. This may be something like **Bibliographic Request**. (Your institution may name these requests differently). Click the **OK** button. The Bibliographic Level Request page displays.



**Figure 6-16. Bibliographic Level Request Form**

6. Select the pickup location by clicking the **Pick Up At** drop-down arrow (depending on your institution's policies, this may be unavailable).
7. Enter the Barcode of the patron submitting the request into the **Barcode** field (depending on your institution's policies, you may instead have to provide your Social Security Number or Institution ID). Note that your institution may have changed the names of the fields.
8. Click the **Submit Request** button to submit the request. Click the **Clear Form** button to restore the form to its original state.

#### **Customizing Bibliographic Level Requests**

##### **NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Request\_Form\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Bibliographic Level Request page include:

**Table 6-17.**

<b>CONFIGURATION</b>	<b>SOURCE</b>
Background image	Background

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

**Table 6-17.**

Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of Bib Level Request form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:"	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Bibliographic Request"	Form Name field on OPAC> OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Title field label	Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Bibliographic Information field label	BibInfo variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Comment field label	Comment variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Pick Up At field label	PickUp variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Not Needed After field label	NotNeededAfter variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

---

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-18.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini

For more information on configuring the Bibliographic Level Request page, see [Editing the Bibliographic Level Request Screens](#) on [page 2-146](#).

## Item Level Request Form

---

Your institution may allow you to submit a **Item Level** request. Your institution can define the types of information that can be entered into the form. This form may be used for any purpose and may not be called an Item Level request onscreen. When an Item Level form is submitted, the system looks up the information on that item and gathers all of the information together as a single request.

The request must be submitted while a bib record is on display in OPAC; the request will be placed for that item.

When the request is submitted, the information will be stored in the database waiting to be transferred to a file.

To submit a item-level request:

1. Execute a search for the item that you want to place a item level request for. Depending on the type of search performed, the list that appears is either a **Headings List** or a **Titles List**.
2. If the **Headings List** appears, click the appropriate heading. This will cause the titles under that heading to appear on the Title List page.
3. If the **Titles List** appears, click the appropriate title. This will cause the **Record Display page** to appear.

4. Click the **Request** button on the toolbar.

If you have not yet logged in, the **OPAC Patron Login** page appears. Enter your patron barcode and last name in the appropriate fields and then click the **Login** button. Once you have logged in, the **Request Selection** page appears.

---



---

**Figure 6-17. Request Selection Page**

5. Click the drop-down menu and select the item level-type request. This may be something like **Item Request**. (Your institution may name these requests differently). Click the **OK** button. The Item Level Request page displays.



**Figure 6-18. Item Level Request Form**

6. Select the pickup location by clicking the **Pick Up At** drop-down arrow (depending on your institution's policies, this may be unavailable).
7. Enter the Barcode of the patron submitting the request into the **Barcode** field (depending on your institution's policies, you may instead have to provide your Social Security Number or Institution ID). Note that your institution may have changed the names of the fields.
8. Click the **Submit Request** button to submit the request. Click the **Clear Form** button to restore the form to its original state.

#### **Customizing Item Level Requests**

##### **NOTE:**

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Request\_Form\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Item Level Request page include:

**Table 6-19.**

<b>CONFIGURATION</b>	<b>SOURCE</b>
Background image	Background

**Table 6-19.**

Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Color of Item Level Request form	Requests variable in [Table_Colors] stanza
Generic part of title (i.e., "WebVoyage Request:")	Generic_Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Specific part of title (i.e., "Item Request")	Form Name field on OPAC>OPAC Request Forms> Select Form tab in System Administration
Title field label	Title variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Instructions field label	Instructions variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Data Fields and Data Field labels	Field Label field of Fields tab on OPAC>Request Form dialog in System Administration module
Comment field label	Comment variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Submit Button label	Submit variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza
Clear Button label	Reset variable in [Request Dialogs] stanza

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 6-20.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm

---

**Table 6-20.**

Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in opac.ini
-----------------------------	--

For more information on configuring the Item Level Request page, see [Editing the Item Level Request Screens](#) on [page 2-151](#).

## **WebVoyage Universal Borrowing Request display notes**

---

There are a couple of notes relating to cancelling requests, as it pertains to displaying in WebVoyage:

- For a pending request, even one that has been promoted to a new library, if you cancel the request in the WebVoyage patron info page, the pending request still appears with the status of cancelled. Until you run Pcircjob 8, then it will be removed from the patron info page.
- For a processed request (the processing done in the call slip with a status of intransit on hold): In the WebVoyage, the request appears and the status reads In transit to “holding library”. If you cancel the request in the WebVoyage, it is automatically cancelled.
- For a processed request that you also log into the home library which is the pickup library and discharge the item for the first time, the item is on hold and available for pickup. In the WebVoyage status is items available, and if you select cancel request, it is automatically removed.

## **Request Logout**

---

In order to prevent other patrons from using your Patron Request session to place their own requests, you must logout of your Patron Request session.

1. Click the **Logout** button in the toolbar.

You are then logged out of the Patron Request session.

---

## Patron Functions

# 7

---

## Contents

<b>Patron Login and Logoff</b>	<b>7-1</b>
• Logging In	7-1
• Logging Off	7-3
<b>PIN</b>	<b>7-3</b>
• PIN configuration	7-3
Enabling PINs	7-4
Setting a default PIN	7-4
Customizing the PIN field name on the Login page	7-11
Customizing the Change PIN button on the Patron Information page	7-12
Customizing the layout of the Change PIN screen	7-13
Changing the PIN messages	7-16
• Using PINs	7-18
Entering a PIN	7-19
<b>Patron Information</b>	<b>7-21</b>
• Personal Information	7-22
• Charged Items	7-23
• Patron Block Display	7-23
<b>MyOPAC (Optional)</b>	<b>7-26</b>
• MyOPAC Preferences	7-27
• MyOPAC Preferences option retrieval	7-28
• Configuring MyOPAC Preferences	7-29
• Opac.ini configuration	7-30
Enabling MyOPAC Preferences	7-30
Enabling MyOPAC Preferences section(s)	7-30
Setting the name of MyOPAC Preferences in the Title Bar	7-33
Configuring the layout of the Preferences page	7-33

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

---

## Contents

Customizing MyOPAC Preferences messages	7-37
Customizing the Preferences button on the Patron Information page	7-37
Customizing buttons/linked text on the WebVoyáge toolbars	7-38
• Using MyOPAC Preferences	7-42
<b>Patron-Initiated Request</b>	<b>7-43</b>
<b>Patron Self-Registration</b>	<b>7-44</b>
• Specifying the IP address and port number of the OPAC server	7-47
• Customizing the Patron Self-Registration messages	7-48
• Customizing the layout of, and required information on the Patron Self-Registration page	7-49
• The patron.xml file	7-50
• Changing the layout of the fields in the patron.xsl file	7-54
• Patron Record Creation with Patron Self-Registration	7-57
• Configuring Patron Self-Registration in System Administration	7-58
• Adding a link to Patron Self-Registration from WebVoyáge	7-59
Adding a link to Patron Self-Registration from the Login page	7-59
<b>Status Patron Groups</b>	<b>7-60</b>
• Configuring Patron Groups to Display Charged Status	7-61
• Configuring WebVoyáge to Display Charged Messages	7-61
<b>Patron Self-Renewal</b>	<b>7-63</b>
• Allowing Patrons to Self-Renew Items	7-64
<b>Renewal Options</b>	<b>7-64</b>
The Renewal Options Drop-Down Box	7-65
• Renewal Option Button Configuration	7-66
Enabling the Renew All feature	7-67
Enabling the renew single items drop-down option	7-67
Editing the text of the Renew Single Items drop-down text	7-67
Text of the Renewal Button	7-67
Editing the Text of the Renew All Limit Message	7-67
<b>Request Information Section</b>	<b>7-68</b>
• Requests Pending	7-68
• Items Available	7-70
Cancel Items Available	7-70
Fines and Fees	7-71
• Customizing Patron Information	7-71

### **Patron Login and Logoff**

---

You must login in order to access your patron information, to place requests, or to be presented with the specific databases that your library allows you to search.

#### **Logging In**

---

If you are not logged in, the Patron Login page will display when you click the Request button. In addition, if you are not logged in and you click the Databases button, only the publicly accessible databases will be available to you. You must login in order for the system to present you with the specific databases that your library allows you to search.



#### **Procedure 7-1. Logging in**

---

Use the following steps to log in.

1. Click the Login button. The Patron Login page displays.



**Figure 7-1. Patron Login page**

**NOTE:**

If your home library is using multiple clusters, you must select your home cluster from the drop-down box. For default cluster field and dialog box configuration, see [DefaultCluster](#) on [page 3-109](#) and [HomeLibrary](#) on [page 3-109](#).

2. Select a login type from the drop-down box, and enter your login information. See the Circulation Desk for questions about your patron login information.

Your library can select whether you are required to enter your Institution ID, Social Security Number or your barcode in order to log in.

3. Click the **Login** button to login. Click the **Reset** button to clear text entered into the fields on screen.

If your login is successful, you will be returned to the page from which you clicked the **Login** button. If your login is unsuccessful, a warning message will appear on the Login page and you must re-enter your login information.

Once you successfully login, you will be able to place holds and/or recalls, and call slips for items with Patron Request. You can hold or recall a specific copy at a specific location, any copy at a specific location, or any copy at any location. You can specify the pickup location (depending on the policies of your institution). You can also submit requests specific to your library.

---

## **Logging Off**

---

If you log into WebVoyáge, you should generally log out of or reset WebVoyáge when you are done. This will prevent anyone else from being able to access your personal information or submit requests.

To log out of WebVoyáge, click the **Logoff** button.

## **PIN**

---

The PIN (Personal Identification Number) feature allows greater security for patrons, by allowing libraries to require each patron to enter a PIN whenever they log into MyOPAC, access their patron information, or submit a request.

You must set a default PIN for all patrons to use the first time, after which they can change their PINs. If you do not set a default PIN, patrons will not be able to log in and will receive an error message when attempting to do so.

However you set the default PIN, make sure to notify your patrons in advance so they will be aware of the change to their login processes.

You can also determine which staff members will have the ability to change PINs.

### **PIN configuration**

---

Use the following to configure a PIN.

- [Enabling PINs](#)
  - [Setting a default PIN](#)
  - [Giving staff users permission to change PINs](#)

The following steps are optional:

- [Customizing the PIN field name on the Login page](#)
- [Customizing the Change PIN button on the Patron Information page](#)
- [Customizing the layout of the Change PIN screen](#)

- 
- [Changing the PIN messages](#)

## Enabling PINs

To enable the PIN feature, modify the **UsePIN** variable in the [Options] stanza of the opac.ini file (/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/local, /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage/vcit, and so on), and set it to **Y**. Figure 7-2 contains an example of the default UsePIN variable in the [Options] stanza.

---

```
[Options]
UsePIN=N
```

**Figure 7-2. Default UsePIN variable in the [Options] stanza**

The UsePIN= variable must be set to **Y** or **N**.

- To enable the PIN feature, set this variable to **Y**.
- To disable the PIN feature, set this variable to **N**.

## Setting a default PIN

The default PIN is set in the DefaultPIN variable in the [Options] stanza of the opac.ini file. Figure 7-3 contains an example of the default DefaultPIN variable in the [Options] stanza.

---

```
[Options]
UsePIN=N
DefaultPIN=
```

**Figure 7-3. Default DefaultPIN variable in the [Options] stanza**

To set a default PIN, enter the PIN after the DefaultPIN= variable. PINs must be alphanumeric and between 5 and 12 characters long. Avoid using special characters in the PIN. PINs are also case sensitive.

### **!** **IMPORTANT:**

*Since Voyager can only validate PINs when patrons log in, and not before, make certain that the default PIN is valid. Otherwise every patron who tries to log in will receive a You may not have entered your barcode and name*

*correctly error message, be unable to log in, and not know why. (To customize this error message, see [Customizing the Login page error messages on page 7-16](#)).*



**IMPORTANT:**

*Make sure that your patrons are aware that PINs must be alphanumeric and between 5 and 12 characters long. They should also avoid using special characters in the PIN. The PIN is also case sensitive.*



### **Procedure 7-2. Giving staff users permission to change PINs**

---

Use the following to give or remove the ability to change patron PINs.

1. Go to **Voyager System Administration module>Security>Circulation Profiles**
2. Select the patron
3. Select the **Patron** tab

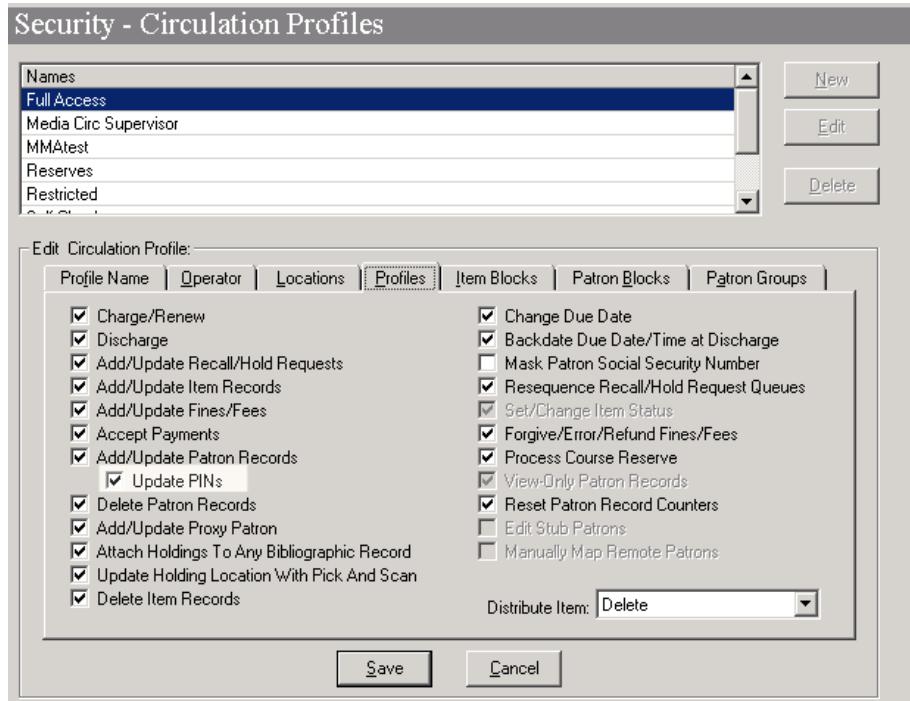
**NOTE:**

Make sure that the **Add/Update Patron Records** check box is selected (if it is not, select it now). See Figure 7-4.

4. Select the **Update PINs** check box (located below the **Add/Update Patron Records** check box). See the highlighted check box in Figure 7-4.

**NOTE:**

If the Add/Update Patron Records check box is cleared, the Update PINs check box will be inactive. If the Update PINs check box is dimmed, select the Add/Update Patron Records check box, then complete step 4.



**Figure 7-4. Update PINs check box in the Circulation Profile Definition section of System Administration (highlighted)**

- To apply changes Click the **Save** button.

To discard changes (and return to the **Security Configuration** menu), Click the **Cancel** button.

**NOTE:**

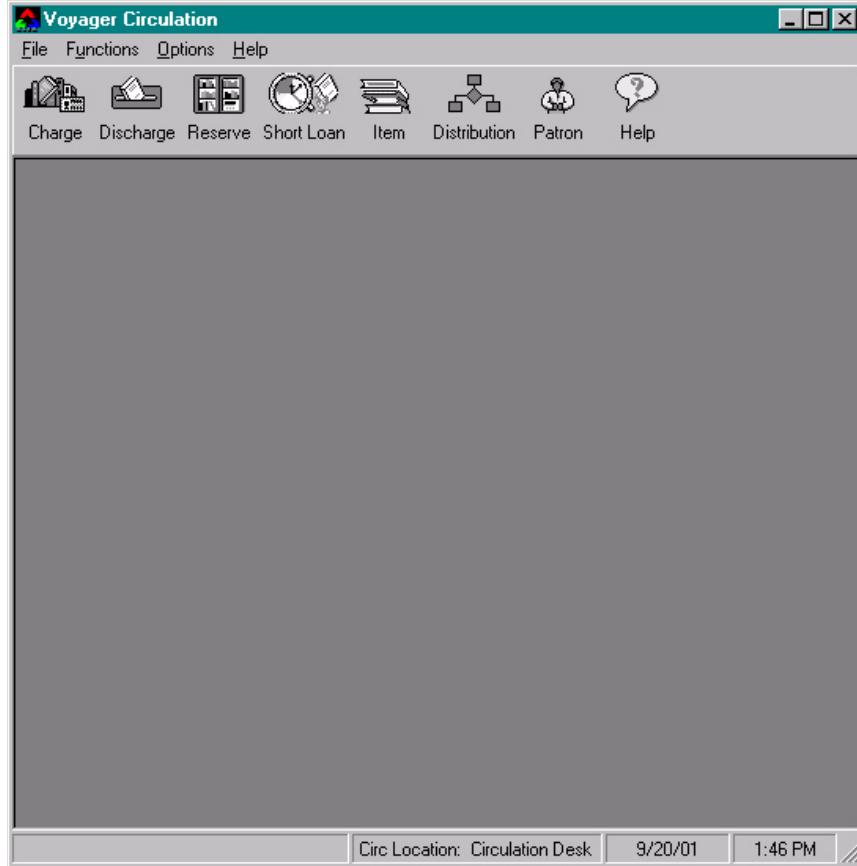
If a staff member does not have permission to change PINs, a supervisor override may be used to change a PIN, if the supervisor performing the supervisor override has permission to change PINs.



### Procedure 7-3. Changing PINs in the Circulation module

Use the following steps to change a PIN in the Circulation module.

- Log in to the **Circulation Module**.

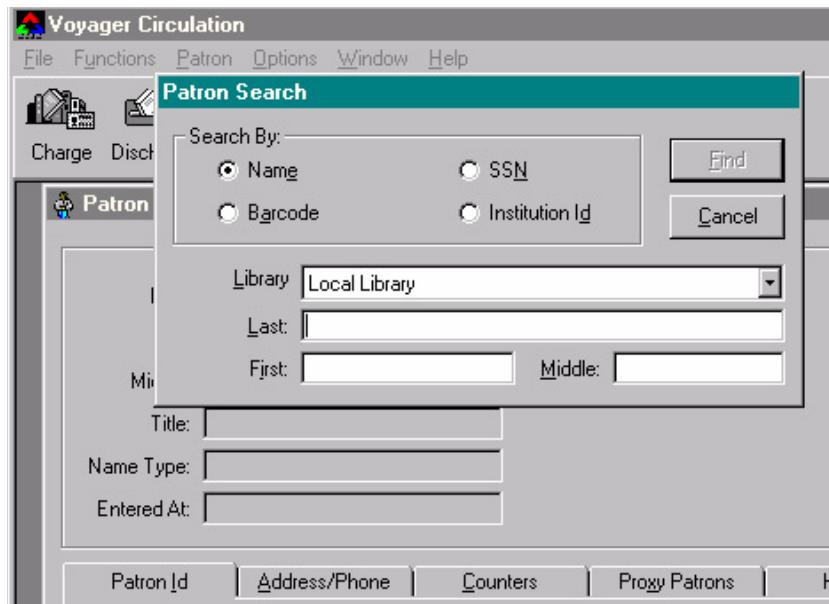


---

**Figure 7-5. Circulation module introduction screen**

If...	Then...
If no patron records are active	1. click the <b>Patron</b> button 2. select <b>Patron...</b> from the <b>Functions</b> menu, or press <b>Ctrl+P</b> .
If a patron record is already active	1. select <b>Search for patron...</b> from the <b>Patron</b> menu.

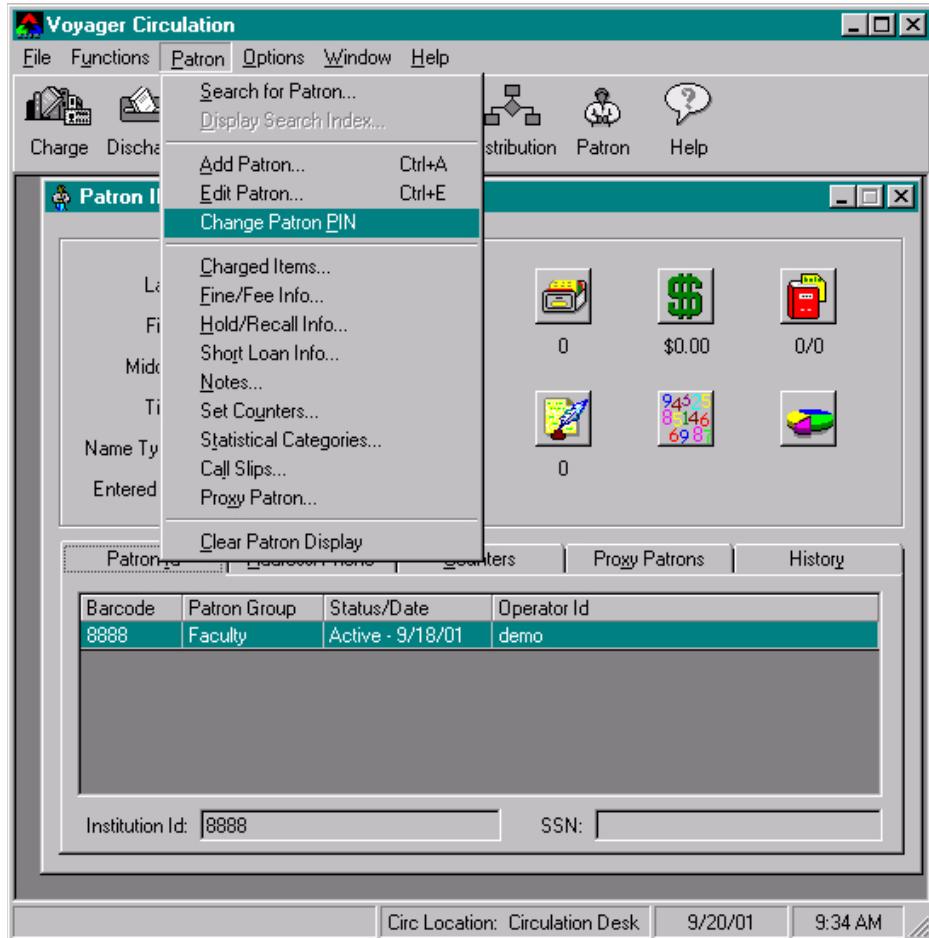
Result: This invokes the **Patron Search** box (see Figure 7-6).



**Figure 7-6. Patron Search dialog box in the Circulation module**

2. Locate the desired patron record using the Name, Barcode, Social Security Number, or Institution ID search option.
3. After locating the patron record, select the **Change Patron PIN** option from the **Patron** menu, or right-click anywhere in the **Patron ID** combo box and select the **Change Patron PIN** option.

Figure 7-7 shows the **Change Patron PIN** option in the **Patron** menu in the Circulation Module.



**Figure 7-7. Change Patron PIN option in the Patron Menu in the Circulation Module**

Selecting the **Change Patron PIN** option invokes the Change Patron PIN dialog box (see Figure 7-8).

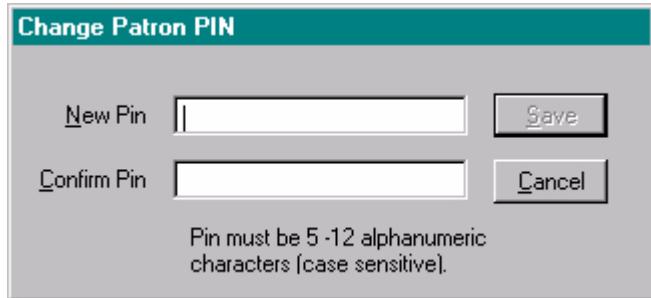


Figure 7-8. Change Patron PIN dialog box

4. Enter the new PIN in the **New PIN** field of the Change Patron PIN dialog box.



**IMPORTANT:**

*Make certain that this PIN is alphanumeric and between 5 and 12 characters long. Avoid using special characters in the PIN. The PIN is also case sensitive.*

5. Enter the PIN again, in the **Confirm PIN** field.
6. To save the new PIN, click the **Save** button.

To discard the new PIN, click the **Cancel** button.

**NOTE:**

- The **Save** button is inactive until you enter at least five characters into both the **New PIN** field and the **Confirm PIN** field.
- Both of these fields (New PIN and Confirm PIN) will not accept PINs over 12 characters long.
- If two different PINs are entered into the **New PIN** and **Confirm PIN** fields, a **PINs do not match...** error message displays (see Figure 7-9).



---

Figure 7-9. PINs do not match error message in the Circulation Module

#### Customizing the PIN field name on the Login page

If your library is using PINs, your WebVoyage will include a PIN field on the Login page of WebVoyage. This field allows patrons to enter their PINs when logging in.

To change the PIN field on the Login page of WebVoyage, locate the following variable in the [Logon\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file:

PIN=

Change the text of the PIN field heading after the variable, as you want it to appear on the Login page of WebVoyage.

The following is the default of the PIN field name set in the [Logon\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file (Figure 7-10), followed by that field name as it displays in the Login page (Figure 7-11)

---

```
[Logon_Page]
PIN=PIN:
```

---

Figure 7-10. Example of the PIN field name set in the [Logon\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file

---

Please enter your Patron Barcode and Last Name, then click the OK button.

Home Library: Local Library

Barcode

PIN:

Last Name:

Login Reset

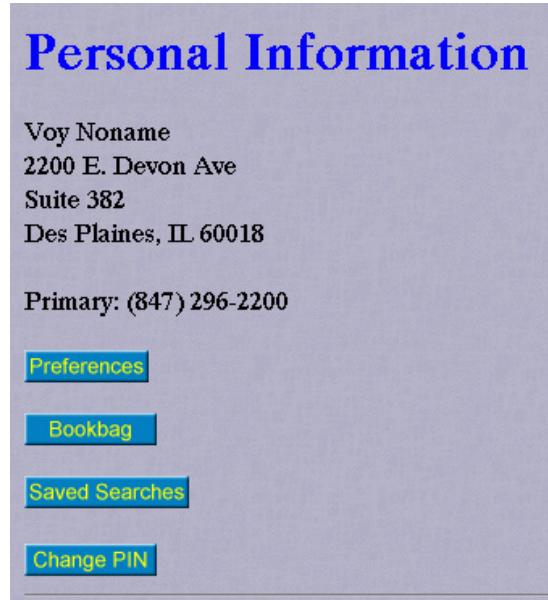
---

**Figure 7-11. Example of the PIN field name displaying in the Login page (as set in Figure 7-10)**

#### Customizing the Change PIN button on the Patron Information page

If your library is using PINs, your WebVoyage will include a Change PIN button on the Patron Information page of WebVoyage, allowing patrons to change their PINs from their Patron Information screen.

To change the Change PIN button on the Patron Information page of WebVoyage, edit the `changepin.gif` file in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory. Remember to save the default `changepin.gif` as something else (as a backup) before editing it.



---

Figure 7-12. Example of the ChangePIN button displaying on the Patron Information page

#### Customizing the layout of the Change PIN screen

You can customize the appearance of the Change PIN screen by setting the following variables in the [Change\_PIN] stanza of the opac.ini file. Figure 7-13 contains a sample [Change\_PIN] stanza in the opac.ini file.

---

```
[Change_PIN]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
CurrentPIN=Current PIN:
NewPIN>New PIN:
ConfirmPIN=Confirm PIN:
SubmitButton=Save
```

---

**Figure 7-13. Sample [Change\_PIN] stanza of the opac.ini file**

[Table 7-1](#) details the Variable settings for the [Change\_PIN] stanza of the opac.ini file.

**Table 7-1. Variable settings**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value	Page Number Reference
Background=	Background graphic (or color)	Valid graphic file or Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff.	None	<a href="#">Background Image on page 2-56</a>
Text=	Text color	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Text Color on page 2-56</a>
BGCOLOR=	Background color	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Background Color on page 2-56</a>
LINK=	Color of unclicked (unvisited) links	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Link Color on page 2-56</a>
VLINK=	Color of previously clicked (visited) links	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Visited Link Color on page 2-56</a>
ALINK=	Color of links while being clicked	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Selected Link Color on page 3-39</a>

**Table 7-1. Variable settings (Continued)**

<b>Variable Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Default Value</b>	<b>Page Number Reference</b>
CurrentPIN=	Title of field that patron enters current PIN into	Alphanumeric, between 5 and 12 characters long. Avoid special characters. Case sensitive	Current PIN:	<a href="#">PIN on page 7-3</a>
NewPIN=	Title of field that patron enters their new PIN into	Alphanumeric, between 5 and 12 characters long. Avoid special characters. Case sensitive	New PIN:	<a href="#">PIN on page 7-3</a>
ConfirmPIN=	Title of field that patron enters their new PIN into after entering it into the New PIN field, to confirm change to new PIN	Alphanumeric, between 5 and 12 characters long. Avoid special characters. Case sensitive.	Confirm PIN:	<a href="#">PIN on page 7-3</a>
SubmitButton=	Text of button used to submit the PIN change	Free text	See file	

## Changing the PIN messages

Figure 7-14 shows the default PIN messages as configured in the [Pin\_Messages] stanza of the opac.ini file. You can customize these messages per your preferences.

```
[PIN_Messages]
PINMessage1=You have not entered your current PIN correctly.
PINMessage2=Not all fields have been entered. Please try again.
PINMessage3=New PIN does not contain 5-12 characters. Please enter again.
PINMessage4=New PIN and Confirm PIN do not match. Please enter again.
PINMessage5=New PIN matches existing PIN. Please enter again.
PINMessage6=Unable to change PIN. Please ask for help at the Circulation or
Reference Desk.
```

**Figure 7-14. PIN messages configured in the [Pin\_Messages] stanza of the opac.ini file**

## Customizing the Login page error messages

You can also customize the three error message HTML files for the Login page. There are three user ID types available in the drop-down box below and to the left of the Home Library drop-down box.

Each of these user ID types has an HTML error message file associated with it. These error messages, by default, indicate an incorrect user ID or Name entry. They do not include an invalid PIN message of any sort, because PINs can be disabled. Therefore, if you want these messages to include an invalid PIN message, you must edit these files accordingly. These three files are in each of the WebVoyage view directories (local, vcit, zcit, z3950 and so on) and must be edited for each directory you use. The local, vcit, zcit, and z3950 directories are in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage directory by default.

The three user ID types appear in Table 7-3 followed by their corresponding HTML error message files.

**Table 7-2. User ID Message Files**

User ID type...	Message edited in...
Barcode	patronmsg.htm
Social Security Number	patronsocmsg.htm
Institution ID	patroniidmsg.htm

**Table 7-3. The three user ID type and their corresponding HTML files**

The default patronmsg.htm file, for example, appears in Figure 7-15.

---

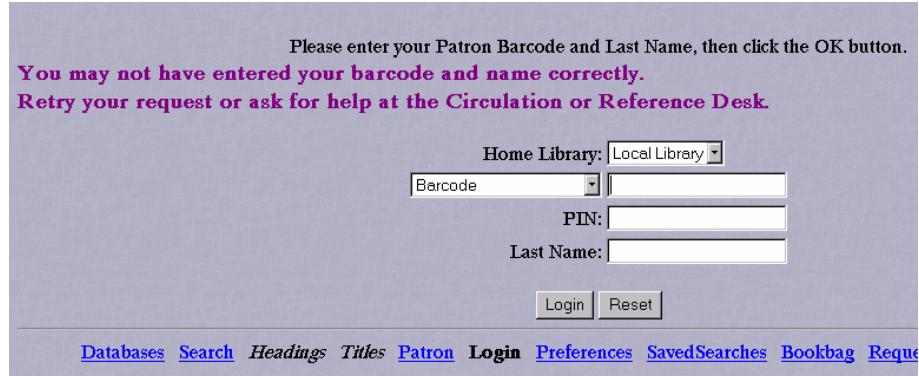
```
<B><FONT SIZE=+1 COLOR="PURPLE">  
  
You may not have entered your barcode and name correctly.  
  
<BR>Retry your request or ask for help at the Circulation or Reference Desk.  
</FONT></B>
```

---

**Figure 7-15. Default patronmsg.htm file**

Figure 7-16 shows the error message that the patronmsg.htm file generates when a patron inputs an incorrect Barcode or Name (or both).

---



---

**Figure 7-16. Error message generated by the patronmsg.htm file**

Figure 7-17 shows a customized patronmsg.htm file with additional text indicating that the PIN may not have been entered correctly.

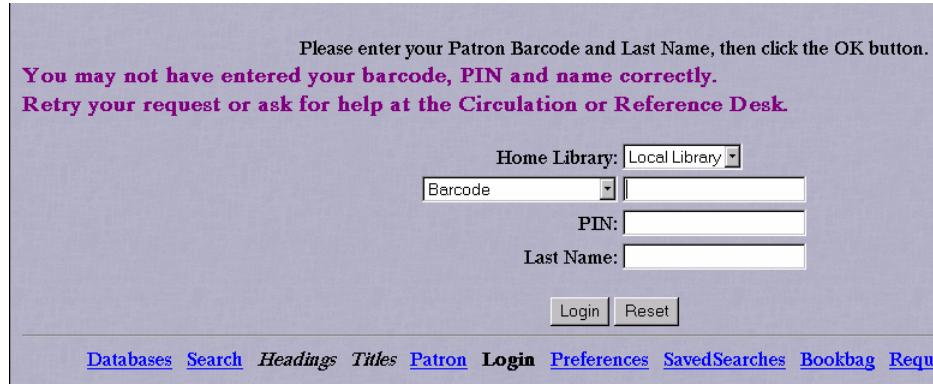
```
<B><FONT SIZE=+1 COLOR="PURPLE">

You may not have entered your barcode, PIN and name correctly.

<BR>Retry your request or ask for help at the Circulation or Reference Desk.
</FONT></B>
```

**Figure 7-17. Customized patronmsg.htm file**

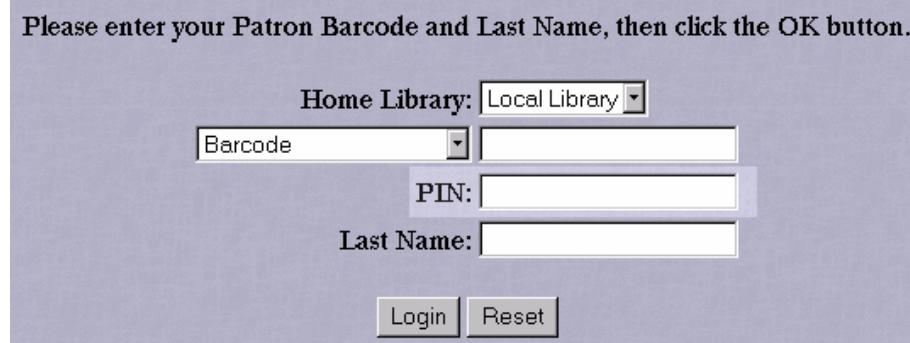
Figure 7-18 shows the error message generated by the customized patronmsg.htm file in Figure 7-17.



**Figure 7-18. Error message generated by the customized patronmsg.htm file in Figure 7-17**

## Using PINs

Once you have enabled and configured PINs, whenever a login screen is invoked, it will include the PIN field (requiring the patron enter a PIN). This field is in addition to the other information normally required on the Login screen. Figure 7-19 shows the PIN field (highlighted) on the Login screen.



---

Figure 7-19. Example of the PIN field on the Login screen

### Entering a PIN

Patrons must enter their PINs according to how you have configured the `DefaultPIN` variable in the `[Options]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file until they change their PINs.

This PIN can be changed any time by the patron from the Patron Information page (see [Changing a PIN from WebVoyage on page 7-19](#)).

For more information on setting the default PIN, see [Setting a default PIN on page 7-4](#).

For more information on changing a PIN from the Patron Information page, see [Changing a PIN from WebVoyage on page 7-19](#).

For more information on changing a PIN from the Circulation module, see [Changing PINs in the Circulation module on page 7-6](#).



### Procedure 7-4. Changing a PIN from WebVoyage

---

Patrons can change their PINs at any time from the Patron Information screen. Use the following to change a PIN.

1. Click the Patron button on the Top Toolbar of WebVoyage, or click the Patron text link on the Bottom Toolbar of WebVoyage.

Result: This invokes the Patron Information screen (see Figure 7-20).

---

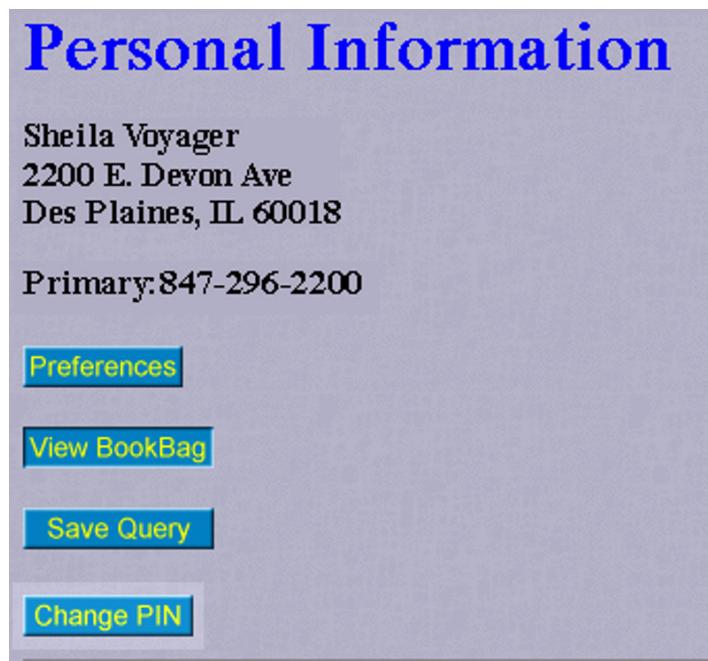
**NOTE:**

If the patron is not already logged in, the Login screen is invoked. Enter required patron information in the fields, including the current PIN.

For more information about default PINs, see [Setting a default PIN](#) on [page 7-4](#).  
For more information about entering PINs, see [Entering a PIN](#) on [page 7-19](#).

Figure 7-20 shows the Change PIN button (highlighted) on the Patron Information screen

---



---

**Figure 7-20. Example of the Change PIN button on the Patron Information screen**

2. Click the Change PIN button in the Personal Information section.

Result: This invokes the Change PIN screen (see Figure 7-21).

The image shows a close-up of a computer screen displaying a form for changing a PIN. The form has a light gray background. At the top, there are three text input fields: 'Current PIN:' with a white input box, 'New PIN:' with a white input box, and 'Confirm PIN:' with a white input box. Below these fields is a large, rectangular, light gray button labeled 'SUBMIT' in a dark gray font.

---

**Figure 7-21. Close-up of the Change PIN section of the Change PIN screen**

3. Enter the current PIN in the Current PIN field.
4. Enter the new PIN in the New PIN field.
5. Enter the new PIN, again in the Confirm PIN field.

**NOTE:**

- Make certain that this PIN is alphanumeric and between 5 and 12 characters long. Avoid using special characters in the PIN. The PIN is also case sensitive.
- Each of the above three fields will not accept PINs over 12 characters long.

6. Click the **SUBMIT** button when finished.
- 

## **Patron Information**

---

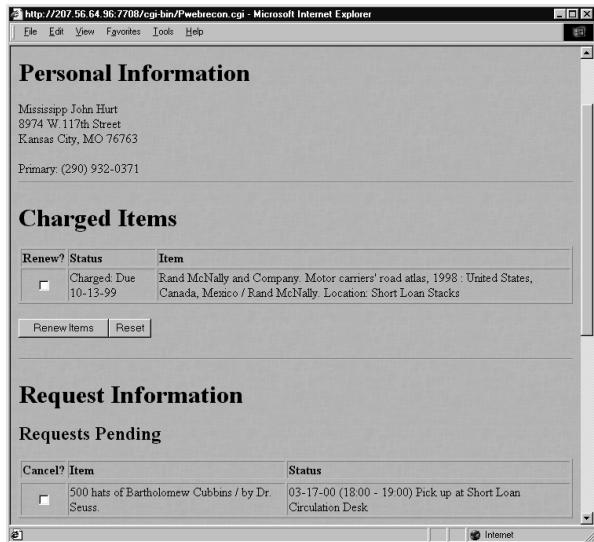
You can access your patron information by clicking the **Patron Information** on the initial page or the **Patron** button on the toolbar and entering your last name and Barcode, SSN or Institution ID (see the Circulation Desk for questions about your patron Barcode, SSN, or Institution ID).

The Patron Information window can contain up to four sections. These sections display information about you, including: Personal Information, Charged Items, Request Information, and Fines and Fees. Your library may name these sections differently or choose which tabs to display (see [Patron Info Stanza](#) on [page 3-117](#))

---

and [Patron Info Page Stanza](#) on [page 3-125](#) for information about configuring the Patron Information page). Only those people who have possession of your login information can display this information.

---



---

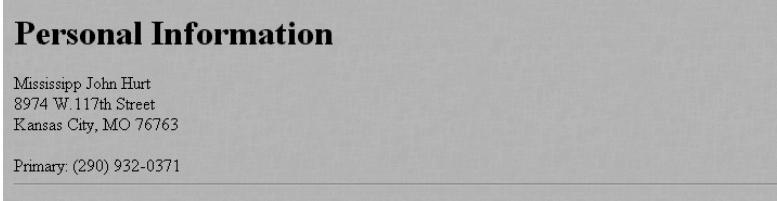
**Figure 7-22. Patron Information Page**

## **Personal Information**

---

The Personal Information section can contain a patron's name and address as well as numbers for phone and fax.

---



---

**Figure 7-23. Patron Information - Personal Information Section**

## Charged Items

---

The Charged Items section contains patrons' charged item due dates, statuses, and item information, such as title, enumeration, and chronology (see "ItemInfo", "ChargedItem", "RenewedItem", and "RecalledItem" in the Patron Info Stanza section of [Installing WebVoyage](#) to learn about configuring the information on the Charged Items tab). If your institution allows you to, you can renew a charged item by clicking in the check box next to the item and then clicking the **Renew Items** button (see [Patron Self-Renewal](#) below for more information).

---

The screenshot shows a table with three columns: 'Renew?' (with a checked checkbox), 'Status' (showing 'Charged: Due 10-13-99'), and 'Item' (describing a motor carriers' road atlas from 1998). Below the table are two buttons: 'Renew Items' and 'Reset'.

Renew?	Status	Item
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Charged: Due 10-13-99	Rand McNally and Company. Motor carriers' road atlas, 1998 : United States, Canada, Mexico / Rand McNally. Location: Short Loan Stacks

**Renew Items**   **Reset**

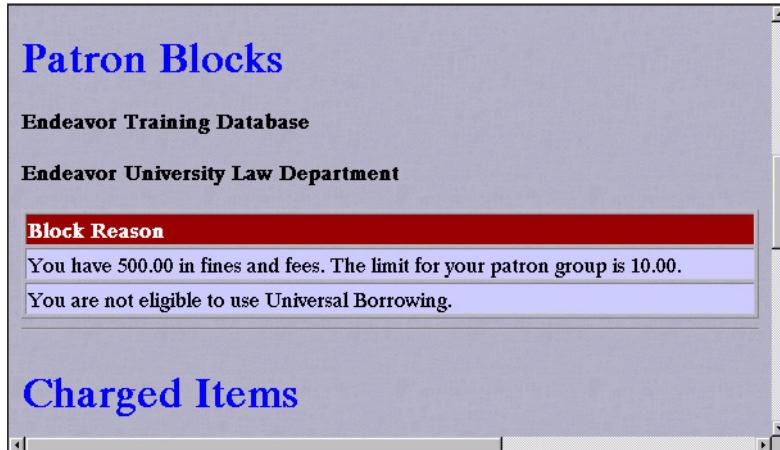
---

Figure 7-24. Patron Information - Charged Items Section

## Patron Block Display

---

Circulation blocks placed on patrons are indicated in the Patron Block Display section of the Patron Information page (see Figure 7-25).



**Figure 7-25. Patron Block Information**

This feature is intended to inform patrons why they cannot place requests through WebVoyage, so patron blocks are determined by the Circulation Policy Group that the OPAC Circ Desk belongs to.

- For patrons with multiple active patron groups, a list of blocks will display for each of the patron's active barcodes.
- In a Universal Borrowing Cluster environment, patron blocks will display for both the patron's home cluster and any remote clusters in which the patron is blocked.

[Figure 7-26 on page 7-26](#) contains a list of possible patron blocks.

The following blocks are placed based on the patron group: Charge Limit, Fine Limit, Overdue Limit, Overdue Recall Limit, Recall Limit (Patron Group), Claims Returned List, Lost Limit, Self-Shelved Limit, Short Loan Limit, Callslip Limit, Demerits Limit, UB Charge Limit, UB Fine Limit, UB Overdue Limit, UB Overdue Recall Limit, UB Claims Returned Limit, UB Lost Limit, UB Self-shelved Limit.

The following blocks are placed on a general policy: Patron Expired, Address Expired, Address Invalid, Suspension, UB Ineligible.

Figure 7-26 details the Patron Blocks section of the opac.ini file.

Patron Blocks Section  
PatronBlocks=Patron Blocks  
BlockReason=Block Reason  
AllPatronGroups=All Patron Groups  
Expired\_patron=Your patron record expired on \d.  
Address\_expired\_patron=The address in your patron record expired on \d.  
Address\_invalid\_patron=The address in your patron record is invalid.  
charge\_limit\_patron=You have \p items charged. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
fine\_limit\_patron=You have \p in fines and fees. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
odue\_limit\_patron=You have \p overdue items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
odue\_recall\_limit\_patron=You have \p overdue recalled items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
recall\_limit\_patron=You have recalled \p items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
claims\_ret\_limit\_patron=You have claimed to have returned \p items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
lost\_limit\_patron=You have lost \p items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
sshelved\_limit\_patron=You have \p self-shelved items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
short\_loan\_limit\_patron=You have \p pending Short Loan requests. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
call\_slip\_limit\_patron=You have \p pending Call Slip requests. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
suspension\_patron=Your borrowing privileges are suspended until \d.  
demerits\_limit\_patron=You have \p demerits. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
ub\_ineligible\_patron=You are not eligible to use Universal Borrowing.  
charge\_limit\_ub\_patron=You have \p Universal Borrowing items charged. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
fine\_limit\_ub\_patron=You have \p in Universal Borrowing fines. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
odue\_limit\_ub\_patron=You have \p Universal Borrowing overdue items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
odrecall\_limit\_ub\_patron=You have \p Universal Borrowing recalled items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
claims\_ret\_limit\_ub\_patron=You have \p Universal Borrowing claims returned items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
lost\_limit\_ub\_patron=You have \p Universal Borrowing lost items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
sshelved\_limit\_ub\_patron=You have \p Universal Borrowing self-shelved items. The limit for your patron group is \b.  
PatronBlockBorderVal=1  
PatronBlockSectionLabelColor=#0000FF

```
PatronBlockPatronGroupNameColor=
PatronBlockHeaderColor=#990000
PatronBlockHeaderFontColor=#FFFFFF
PatronBlockDataColor=#CCCCFF
PatronBlockDataFontColor=#000000
```

**Figure 7-26. Patron Blocks section of the opac.ini**

Edit each message according to your preference. For each message, you can use the following variables:

- \p for the amount of the block from the patron's account.
- \b for the value of the limit where borrowing privileges are suspended (from the Circ Policy).
- \d for the date (for suspension and expiration dates)

**NOTE:**

For patrons who belong to more than one patron group, all blocks for all patron groups will appear on the Patron Information Page, according to patron group.

If you use multiple clusters, and the patron has circulation activity in multiple clusters, Voyager will also sort blocks and display them by cluster.

## **MyOPAC (Optional)**

The MyOPAC features allow for easier and more efficient use of WebVoyage by saving important patron-specified information and automating certain WebVoyage tasks. Table 7-4 lists the MyOPAC features and a brief description of each.

**Table 7-4. MyOPAC Features**

Feature	Description	For more, see
<a href="#">MyOPAC Preferences</a>	This preference allows patrons to store search preferences (in the database) to be used as default settings each time they use WebVoyage.	<a href="#">7-27</a>
<a href="#">Saved Searches</a>	This preference allows patrons to save up to 25 search queries to run on command.	<a href="#">5-106</a>

**Table 7-4. MyOPAC Features**

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>For more, see</b>
<a href="#"><u>Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI)</u></a>	This preference, along with Saved Searches, allows patrons to have saved searches performed automatically at specified intervals (days/weeks), and the results emailed to them.	<a href="#"><u>5-112</u></a>

**IMPORTANT:**

*MyOPAC is not particularly disk space-consuming, but you should consider disk space, and the number of patrons using MyOPAC, when deciding which features you will use. Endeavor has a MyOPAC Server Disk Space Requirements table on SupportWeb.*

**NOTE:**

MyOPAC functionality is disabled when remote patrons are logged in to UB-enabled databases. While logged in to that database, they will not be able to use or change their MyOPAC options.

## MyOPAC Preferences

The MyOPAC Preferences feature allows each patron to have default search preferences saved to the database. The preferences that can be specified by patrons are:

- Search type
  - Simple
    - Index
  - Builder (complex)
  - Course reserve preferences
    - Instructor
    - Course
    - Course section
    - Department
- Number of records displayed per page
- Databases to search

---

Patrons must login to use MyOPAC Preferences because the preferences are based on Patron ID.

Additional WebVoyage configuration is necessary to enable MyOPAC Preferences and customize it. The following sections explain how to configure MyOPAC Preferences, as well as from where in the existing WebVoyage configuration MyOPAC Preferences draws information.

## **MyOPAC Preferences option retrieval**

---

Before explaining how to configure MyOPAC Preferences, a brief explanation of what parts of WebVoyage MyOPAC Preferences uses as preference options.

Table 7-5 lists the option categories available to patrons for customization of MyOPAC Preferences and the corresponding sections of WebVoyage configuration used by MyOPAC Preferences. Figure 7-27 shows a sample MyOPAC Preferences screen with all three of the sections enabled.

**NOTE:**

Table 7-5 lists where in the WebVoyage configuration files MyOPAC Preferences obtains the options made available to patrons to be set as options. For example, if you do not offer 50 as a “number of records displayed per page” variable in the [Records\_Requested] stanza, it will not be available for patrons to set as a preference in MyOPAC Preferences.

**Table 7-5. MyOPAC preferences option retrieval**

Option Category	Based on	For configuration, see
Search type	search.ini	<a href="#">ValidTabs Stanza on page 3-233.</a>
Number of records displayed per page	opac.ini	<a href="#">Number of Records Drop-Down Box on page 3-25.</a>
Databases searched	connect.ini and System Administration	<a href="#">The [Folders] Stanza on page 3-180.</a>
Index (Simple Search only)	search.ini	<a href="#">Simple Search Codes Stanza on page 3-234.</a>
Course reserve options	Course Reserves configured in the Circulation module	“Course Reserve” in the <i>Voyager Circulation user’s guide</i> .

**WebVoyage - Endeavor Information systems, Inc.**

Logout when finished using MyOPAC

---

### Search Preferences

---

#### Search Type

Simple Search      Index Type  Subject Browse   
 Complex Search  
 Course Reserve      Instructor   
 Geospatial Search      Department   
 Geospatial Search      Course   
 Geospatial Search      Section

---

#### Records per page

---

#### Databases

Database Name: Endeavor Library of Information

Local Libraries:  Local Database

Other Databases:  Science Direct  
Dev20011db  
SilverPlatter

---

Databases Search Headings Titles Patron Logout Preferences SavedSearches Bookbag Requests Remote Help Exit

---

**Figure 7-27. Sample Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage**

### Configuring MyOPAC Preferences

---

Most of the MyOPAC Preferences configuration is done in the `opac.ini` file on your server. The following is an overview of configuring MyOPAC Preferences.

- [Setting the name of MyOPAC Preferences in the Title Bar](#)
  - [Enabling MyOPAC Preferences section\(s\)](#)

The following steps are optional:

- [Configuring the layout of the Preferences page](#)
- [Customizing MyOPAC Preferences messages](#)
- [Customizing buttons/linked text on the WebVoyage toolbars](#)

---

## Opac.ini configuration

---

The following sections detail the MyOPAC configuration set up in the opac.ini file.

### Enabling MyOPAC Preferences

Before enabling each MyOPAC Preferences section, you must enable MyOPAC Preferences itself. Use the following to enable the MyOPAC Preferences globally by modifying the SavePreferences variable in the [Preferences] stanza.

After enabling the MyOPAC Preferences option see [Enabling MyOPAC Preferences section\(s\) on page 7-30](#) to enable the individual sections of MyOPAC Preferences.

To enable the MyOPAC Preferences option, set the SavePreferences= variable to **Y**.

To completely disable MyOPAC Preferences, set the SavePreferences= variable to **N**.

Figure 7-28 shows the default [Preferences] stanza.

---

```
[Preferences]
SavePreferences=N
SearchPreferences=N
RecordsDisplayed=N
DatabasePreferences=N
```

---

**Figure 7-28. Default [Preferences] stanza in the opac.ini file**

### Enabling MyOPAC Preferences section(s)

Use the following to enable the MyOPAC Preferences section(s) by modifying the [Preferences] stanza.

You enable/disable the three different sections of the MyOPAC Search Preferences screen in the [Preferences] stanza in the opac.ini file (after enabling the MyOPAC Preferences option itself in the SavePreferences= variable). The three sections of the Preferences Page are:

- Search type

- Number of records displayed
- Databases to connect to

Each of the three sections is enabled in its corresponding variable in the [Preferences] stanza. Figure 7-28 shows the default [Preferences] stanza:

The `SearchPreferences=` variable must be set to **Y** or **N**:

- Setting this variable to **Y** displays the Search Type section of the Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage (see [Sample Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage on page 7-29](#)).
- Setting this variable to **N** hides the Search Type section of the Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage.

Figure 7-29 shows an example of the Search Type section of the Search Preferences screen enabled in WebVoyage.

---

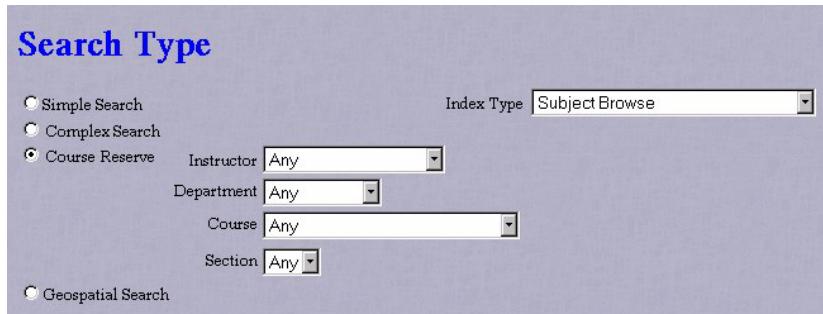


Figure 7-29. Sample Search Type section of Search Preferences screen

The `RecordsDisplayed=` variable must be set to **Y** or **N**:

- Setting this variable to **Y** displays the Records per page section of the Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage (see [Sample Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage on page 7-29](#)).
- Setting this variable to **N** hides the Records per page section of the Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage.

Figure 7-30 shows an example of the Records per page section of the Search Preferences screen enabled in WebVoyage.

---



## Records per page

50 records per page ▾

---

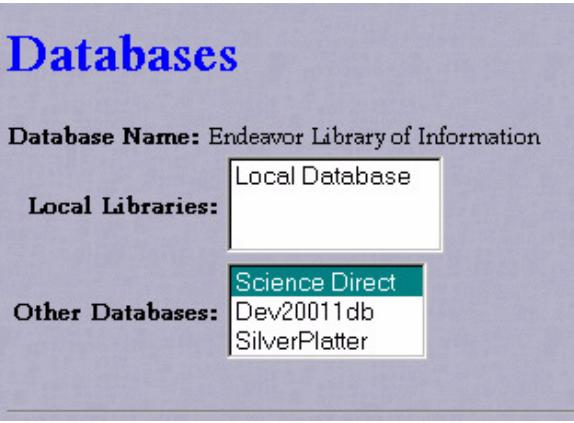
**Figure 7-30.** Sample Records per page section of Search Preferences screen

The DatabasePreferences= variable must be set to **Y** or **N**:

- Setting this variable to **Y** displays the Databases section of the Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage (see [Sample Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage on page 7-29](#)).
- Setting this variable to **N** hides the Databases section of the Search Preferences screen in WebVoyage.

Figure 7-31 shows an example of the Databases section of the Search Preferences screen enabled in WebVoyage.

---



## Databases

**Database Name:** Endeavor Library of Information

<b>Local Libraries:</b>	Local Database
<b>Other Databases:</b>	Science Direct Dev20011db SilverPlatter

---

**Figure 7-31.** Sample Databases section of Search Preferences screen

### Setting the name of MyOPAC Preferences in the Title Bar

To change the name of MyOPAC Preferences in the Title Bar by modifying the [Title\_Bar] stanza: Change the text after the MyOPAC= variable in the [Title\_Bar] stanza of the Opac.ini file, to the name of your library's MyOPAC option. Choose the name of this title per your preferences, as it will display in the title bar. The following is the default MyOPAC variable in the [Title\_Bar] stanza of the Opac.ini file:

---

```
MyOPAC=MyOPAC
```

---

**Figure 7-32. MyOPAC variable**

### Configuring the layout of the Preferences page

Customize the layout and text of the different sections of the MyOPAC Search Preferences screen by configuring the [Preferences\_Page] stanza according to Table 7-6. Figure 7-33 contains a sample [Preferences\_Page] stanza.

---



---

```
[Preferences_Page]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
PreferencesScreen=Search Preferences
Search=Search
SimpleSearch=Simple Search
IndexType=Index Type
ComplexSearch=Complex Search
CourseReserve=Course Reserve
CourseDepartment=Department
CourseInstructor=Instructor
Course=Course
CourseSection=Section
MapSearching=Geospatial Search
RecordsPerPage=Records per page
DatabasesSearched=Databases
SubmitButton=Save My Preferences
ClearButton=Clear My Preferences
ClearPreferencesConfirm=Clearing the Preferences will clear all preferences.
Would you like to proceed?
```

---

**Figure 7-33.** The [Preferences\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file

Table 7-6 details the description, possible values, and system default value of each line in the [Preferences\_Page] Stanza.

**Table 7-6. Components of the [Preferences\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value	Page Number Reference
Background=	Background graphic (or color)	Valid graphic file or hexa-decimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff.	None	<a href="#">Background Image on page 3-38</a>

**Table 7-6. Components of the [Preferences\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

<b>Variable Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Possible Values</b>	<b>Default Value</b>	<b>Page Number Reference</b>
Text=	Text color	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Text Color on page 3-39</a>
BGCOLOR=	Background color	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Background Color on page 3-38</a>
LINK=	Color of unclicked, or unvisited links	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Link Color on page 3-39</a>
VLINK=	Color of previously clicked, or visited links	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Visited Link Color on page 3-39</a>
ALINK=	Color of links while being clicked	Hexadecimal RGB color code 000000 to ffffff	None	<a href="#">Selected Link Color on page 3-39</a>
PreferencesScreen=	Title of Search Preferences screen	Free text	Search Preferences	<a href="#">MyOPAC Preferences on page 7-27</a>
Search=	Heading of Search Type section	Free text	Search	
SimpleSearch=	Label of Simple Search radio button in the Search Type section	Free text	Simple Search	
IndexType=	Label of Index Type drop-down box in the Search Type section	Free text	Index Type	
Complex-Search=	Label of Complex Search radio button in the Search Type section	Free text	Complex Search	

**Table 7-6. Components of the [Preferences\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value	Page Number Reference
CourseReserve=	Label of Course Reserve radio button in the Search Type section	Free text	Course Reserve	
CourseDepartment=	Label of Course Department drop-down box in Course Reserve subsection of Search Type section	Free text	Department	
CourseInstructor=	Label of Instructor drop-down box in Course Reserve subsection of Search Type section	Free text	Instructor	
Course=	Label of Course drop-down box in Course Reserve subsection of Search Type section	Free text	Course	
CourseSection=	Label of Section drop-down box in Course Reserve subsection of Search Type section	Free text	Section	
MapSearching=	Label of Geospatial Search radio button in the Search Type section (if available)	Free text	Geospatial Search	
RecordsPerPage=	Heading of Records per page section	Free text	Records per page	
DatabasesSearched=	Heading of Databases section	Free text	Databases	
SubmitButton=	Text of the button used to submit changes to preferences	Free text	Save My Preferences	

**Table 7-6. Components of the [Preferences\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value	Page Number Reference
ClearButton=	Text of the button used to remove all preferences	Free text	Clear My Preferences	
ClearPreferencesConfirm=	Text of the confirmation message displayed when clearing preferences	Free text	See file	

### Customizing MyOPAC Preferences messages

MyOPAC Preferences uses a logout message, and three other messages in various places. These messages are straightforward and can be customized per your preferences. This is done in the [MyOPAC Messages] stanza.

To modify the [MyOPAC Messages] stanza, change the text of the variables to your preference for each message.

Figure 7-34 is an example of the default [MyOPAC Messages] stanza.

---

```
[MyOPAC Messages]
Logout=Logout when finished using MyOPAC
PrefMessage1=Your search type and/or index is not available
PrefMessage2=The records per page preference is no longer available
PrefMessage3=One or more of the selected databases is not available
NoDatabase=There are no databases defined!!!
```

---

**Figure 7-34. Default [MyOPAC Messages] stanza**

### Customizing the Preferences button on the Patron Information page

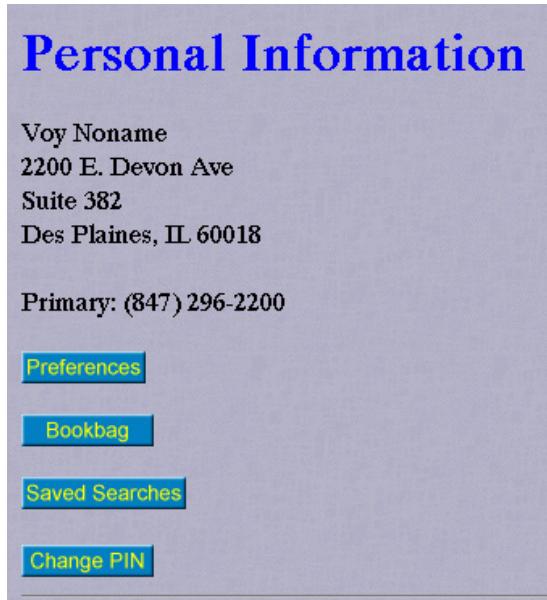
The preferences.gif graphics file activates the MyOPAC Preferences button on the Patron Information page, when placed in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory.

---

To customize the Preferences button on the Patron Information page of WebVoyage, edit the preferences.gif file in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory. Remember to save the default preferences.gif as something else (as a backup) before editing it.

Figure 7-35 contains an example of the MyOPAC preferences button on the Patron Information Page.

---



---

Figure 7-35. Sample Preferences button on the Patron Information page

#### Button alternate (Mouse-Over) text

Set the alternate (mouse-over) text of the **Preferences** button in the `Preferences_Button_Alt_Text` variable of the `[Patron_Info_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file.

#### Customizing buttons/linked text on the WebVoyage toolbars

The Preferences buttons/linked text on the Top and bottom Toolbars are configured in the `[Toolbar_Top]` and `[Toolbar_Bottom]` stanzas of the `opac.ini` file. As with the other toolbar buttons, the graphics files for these buttons are in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory.

Figure 7-36 is an example of the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza and Figure 7-37 is an example of the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza. These are followed by steps explaining how to configure the stanzas to display buttons for the MyOPAC preferences screen. For more information on customizing the Top and/or Bottom Toolbars, see [Toolbar\\_Top and Toolbar\\_Bottom Stanzas](#) on page 3-66.

---

Line

```
[Toolbar_Top]
1 Count=14

2 TextFont=WingDings
3 TextFontSize=
4 TextSeparator=||| 

5 Btn01Text=Databases
6 Btn01GraphicUp=UpDatabase.gif
7 Btn01GraphicDown=DownDatabase.gif
8 Btn01GraphicDisabled=DisabledDatabase.gif
9 Btn01Function=DATABASE
10 Btn01Link=
-----Display Truncated-----

11 Btn06Text=Login
12 Btn06ToggleText=Logout
13 Btn06GraphicUp=UpLogin.gif
14 Btn06ToggleGraphicUp=UpLogout.gif
15 Btn06GraphicDown=DownLogin.gif
16 Btn06GraphicDisabled=DisabledLogin.gif
17 Btn06Function=LOGINOUT
18 Btn06Link=

19 Btn07Text=Preferences
20 Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
21 Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif
22 Btn07GraphicDisabled=DisabledPref.gif
23 Btn07Function=PREFERENCES
```

---

**Figure 7-36. Details of the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza**

---

Lines 19 through 23 of Figure 7-36 illustrate the button variables and settings in the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza. The referenced graphics files must be placed in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory with the other button graphics files. For an explanation of these variables, see Table 7-7.

**Table 7-7. Top Toolbar component descriptions**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
BtnxxText=	Rollover text of MyOPAC Preferences button, or text of link if not using button	Free text	Preferences
BtnxxGraphicUp=	Filename of Preferences graphic in the "up" position	Valid .gif graphic file-name	UpPref.gif
BtnxxGraphicDown=	Filename of Preferences graphic in the "down" position	Valid .gif graphic file-name	DownPref.gif
BtnxxGraphicDisabled=	Filename of Preferences graphic when disabled	Valid .gif graphic file-name	DisabledPref.gif
BtnxxFunction=	Points WebVoyage to correct screen	PREFER-ENCES	PREFER-ENCES

Line

1	[Toolbar_Bottom]
	Count=14
2	TextFont=
3	TextFontSize=
4	TextSeparator=
5	Btn01Text=Databases
6	+Btn01GraphicUp=UpDatabase.gif
7	+Btn01GraphicDown=DownDatabase.gif
8	+Btn01GraphicDisabled=DisabledDatabase.gif
9	Btn01Function=DATABASE
10	Btn01Link=
	-----Display Truncated-----
11	Btn06Text=Login
12	Btn06ToggleText=Logout
13	Btn06GraphicUp=UpLogin.gif
14	+Btn06GraphicUp=UpLogout.gif
15	+Btn06GraphicDown=DownLogin.gif
16	+Btn06GraphicDisabled=DisabledLogin.gif
17	Btn06Function=LOGINOUT
18	Btn06Link=
19	Btn07Text=Preferences
20	+Btn07GraphicUp=UpPref.gif
21	+Btn07GraphicDown=DownPref.gif
22	+Btn07GraphicDisabled=DisabledPref.gif
23	Btn07Function=PREFERENCES

---

**Figure 7-37. Details of the [Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza**

---

Lines 19 through 23 of Figure 7-37 illustrate the button variables and settings in the [Toolbar\_Top] stanza. The referenced graphics files must be placed in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images directory with the other button graphics files. For an explanation of these variables, see Table 7-8.

**Table 7-8. Top Toolbar component descriptions**

Variable Name	Description	Possible Values	Default Value
BtnxxText=	Rollover text of MyOPAC Preferences button, or text of link if not using button	Free text	Preferences
BtnxxGraphicUp=	Filename of Preferences graphic in the up position	Valid .gif graphic filename	UpPref.gif
BtnxxGraphicDown=	Filename of Preferences graphic in the down position	Valid .gif graphic filename	DownPref.gif
BtnxxGraphicDisabled=	Filename of Preferences graphic when disabled	Valid .gif graphic filename	DisabledPref.gif
BtnxxFunction=	Points WebVoyage to correct screen	PREFERENCES	PREFERENCES

## Using MyOPAC Preferences

---

Some of the WebVoyage screens will change upon enabling MyOPAC Preferences. The following sections explain those changes in the context of a patron using MyOPAC Preferences.

If the patron has already set MyOPAC preferences, upon logging in, those preferences display on the WebVoyage search screen.

If the patron has not already set MyOPAC preferences, after logging in the WebVoyage search screen will display with your library's default settings. To set MyOPAC preferences, patrons must go to the MyOPAC Search Preferences screen, by:

- Clicking the Preferences button in the top toolbar section,
- Clicking the Preferences text link in the bottom toolbar section, or
- Clicking the Preferences button from the Patron Information screen.

Once at the Search Preferences screen, patrons can set preferences for any and all of three sections enabled by your library. Clicking the Save button stores the selected preferences. The Preferences saved OK message displays.

Clicking the Clear button invokes the Clear will delete all the preferences. Do you want to proceed? dialog box. To clear all selected preferences, click OK. To return to the Search Preferences screen, click Cancel.

**NOTE:**

- Patrons cannot select options for sections not enabled in the [Preferences\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file. For more on configuring the Search Preferences screen, see [Configuring the layout of the Preferences page on page 7-33](#).
- The radio button selected in the Search Type section on the Search Preferences screen is now the default search type, with the parameters selected. Only one of the radio button options in this section will be saved as the default for searches.

MyOPAC will not save options selected for one Search Type subsection if a patron sets preferences for another Search Type subsection afterward and saves those preferences. For example, MyOPAC will not save your Course Reserve preferences and your Simple Search preferences even if you select the Course Reserve preferences and then set the Simple Search preferences.

When patrons are finished using WebVoyage, they should logout as usual.

## **Patron-Initiated Request**

---

If this feature is available at your institution, you can place holds, recalls, short loans, ARTEmail-compatible requests and call slips for items retrieved from WebVoyage module (depending on your institution's policies). You can also place requests that your library has customized, such as requests for purchases, photocopies, or an item to be placed on reserve.

Click the Request button (as shown to the left) to place a request. If you are not logged in, the OPAC Patron Login page displays; once you log in, you will be presented with the request selection page. If you are logged in, clicking the Request button allows you to choose the type of request you want to make.

If you receive a message saying that you have no requests available to you on the system, you are not allowed by your library to submit any requests.

---

## **Patron Self-Registration**

---

The Patron Self-Registration feature allows patrons to enter the information required to create a patron record. The purge date of these records is the same day they are created. Patrons can then go to the Circulation Desk to have a barcode added and the purge date changed. This allows your library to reduce staff time creating patron records, while maintaining control of the information required and barcodes attached to the patron records.

**NOTE:**

The purge date will not display in the History tab of the records in the Voyager Circulation Module, but can be viewed by clicking the calendar expansion button in the Purge: field when editing the patron records.

For example, you might set up a separate workstation where patrons input their own patron information, requiring your Circulation staff only to verify the patron information and assign barcodes. If your library has a large number of public users, viewing library materials for short periods of time, use Patron Self-Registration to quickly create temporary patron records.

Patron Self-Registration resides on a separate port and runs independently of WebVoyage. You can create a link to your **Patron Self-Registration** page from WebVoyage. Figure 7-38 shows the default Patron Self-Registration page.



The screenshot shows a web-based patron self-registration form titled "Patron Self Registration". The header features the "Smart Design SOLID Decision" logo and the "Web Voyage" brand name. A banner image of a classical building is visible in the background.

The form contains the following fields:

<b>SSN</b>	<input type="text"/>	<b>Address</b>	<input type="text"/>
		<b>Address2</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Title</b>	<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>
<b>First Name</b>	<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>
<b>LastName</b>	<input type="text"/>	<b>City</b>	<input type="text"/>
		<b>State</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Primary Phone</b>	<input type="text"/>	<b>Country</b>	<input type="text"/>
<b>Other Phone</b>	<input type="text"/>	<b>ZipCode</b>	<input type="text"/>

At the bottom right of the form are two buttons: "Submit" and "Reset".

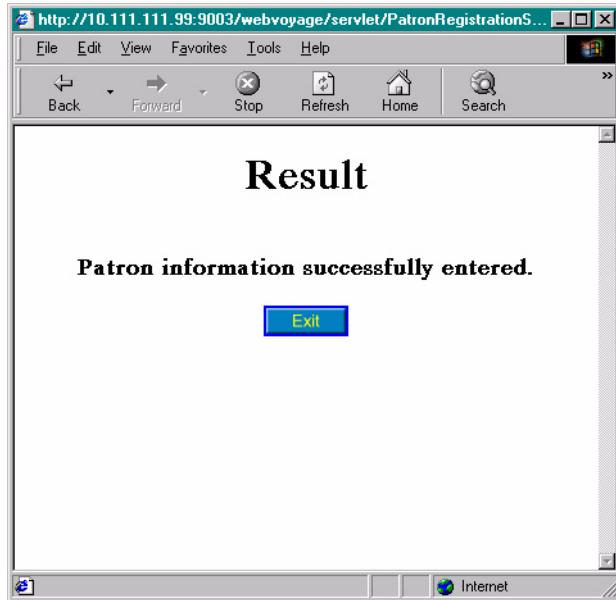
Figure 7-38. Default Patron Self-Registration page



**IMPORTANT:**

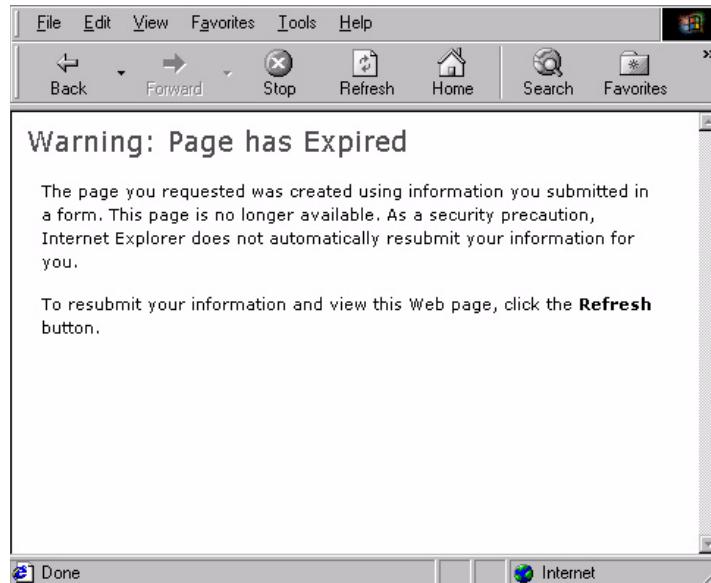
*Make sure the AutoComplete Settings of the web browsers on library computers using Patron Self-Registration are set to not save data input into forms. AutoComplete stores previous entries in fields and suggests matches. This might allow patrons to use a previous patron's record information. Disable these settings when the browser is being used to input information. The procedure for disabling this feature depends on your browser, so if you need help consult your browser's documentation.*

After submitting your information successfully, a confirmation message displays (for an example, see Figure 7-39 and for configuration of this message, see [Customizing the Patron Self-Registration messages on page 7-48](#)).



**Figure 7-39. Patron information successful message**

For security purposes, after successful creation of a record through Patron Self-Registration, the original form is cleared. If the **Back** button is clicked in the browser, the previously entered patron information will not be available (see Figure 7-40 for an example).



---

**Figure 7-40. Page expired message after clicking Back button**

Configuration of Patron Self-Registration consists of the following steps:

- [Specifying the IP address and port number of the OPAC server](#)
- Optional: [Customizing the Patron Self-Registration messages](#)
- Optional: [Customizing the layout of, and required information on the Patron Self-Registration page](#)
- Optional: [Adding a link to Patron Self-Registration from the Login page](#)

---

#### **Specifying the IP address and port number of the OPAC server**

To enable Patron Self-Registration, you must first specify the IP address and port of your OPAC server. Do this in the `voytomcat.ini` file, in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/tomcat/webapps/webvoyage/ini` directory (see Figure 7-41 for an example).

---

---

Line#

```
1 ## Opac server IP address and port ##
2 Server=xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
3 Port=xxxx
4 Message1=Patron information successfully entered.
5 Message2=A database error occurred while trying to add a patron record.
6 Message3=An error occurred while adding patron information. Please
consult the Circulation Desk for assistance.
7 PatronSelfRegistrationURL=http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx:xxxx
```

---

**Figure 7-41. Default voytomcat.ini file**

**Server=** variable:

Line 2 shows the server IP address specification line. Enter the IP address of your OPAC server on this line.

**Port=** variable:

Line 3 shows the port specification line. Enter the port of your OPAC server on this line.

**PatronSelfRegistrationURL=** variable:

Line 7 shows the URL specification of your Patron Self-Registration page. Enter that URL after this variable. This is the URL that patrons will connect to upon clicking the Exit button after successfully submitting patron information (see [Figure 7-39 on page 7-46](#)). This button is controlled by the `exit.gif` file in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory.

**NOTE:**

To connect back to WebVoyage after patrons submit their information using Patron Self-Registration, put the URL of your WebVoyage page here. Clicking the Exit button will then take the patron back to that WebVoyage page.

---

### **Customizing the Patron Self-Registration messages**

The messages generated by Patron Self-Registration can be customized. These messages are in the `voytomcat.ini` file, in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/tomcat/webapps/webvoyage/ini` directory (see lines 4 through 6 of Figure 7-41 for the default, and Figure 7-42 for sample display of message 3).

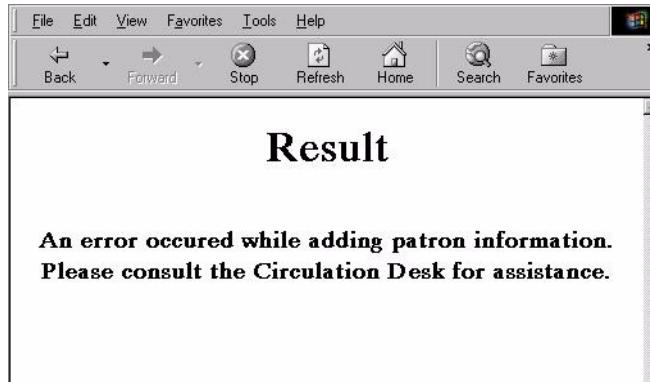


Figure 7-42. Message3 display

### Customizing the layout of, and required information on the Patron Self-Registration page

The information on the **Patron Self-Registration** page can be customized. This includes the display of the page, the field titles, which fields are required, and which fields display. You can customize the **Patron Self-Registration** page by configuring the following files:

Table 7-9. Patron Self-Registration files

File name	Description
patron.xml	Determines the fields for input on the Patron Self-Registration page. Also switches field display, and required status, on and off.
patron.xsl	Contains the rules for converting the patron.xml file to html, and verifying the input.  Change the order of the fields on the Patron Self-Registration page by changing the order of the elements in the <table> sub-element of the <form> element. You can also remove any unwanted fields here, as long as they are not marked required in the patron.xml file.
patron.css	Determines some display options of the page, including background color, text alignment, and margins.

---

These files are in the /m1/voyager/xxxdb/tomcat/webapps/webvoyage/ini directory.

**!** **CAUTION:**

*The patron.xml, patron.xsl and patron.css files are configured to properly display and execute the Patron Self-Registration page, in conjunction. Customization beyond the page headings, messages, field elements, and variables detailed above should only be done by personnel familiar with XML, XSL, and Cascading Style Sheets (css).*

**The patron.xml file**

---

The patron.xml is an XML file which determines the fields for input on the **Patron Self-Registration** page. Figure 7-43 shows a sample patron.xml file.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<?xml-stylesheet type="text/xsl" href="patron.xsl"?>
<!--===== Patron Self Registration =====-->
<Patron>
    <message>Please enter required fields</message>
    <id>
        <Visible>Y</Visible>
        <Idtype>S</Idtype>
        <Caption>SSN</Caption>
    </id>
    <Address1>
        <Caption>Address</Caption>
    </Address1>
    <Address2>
        <Visible>Y</Visible>
        <Required>Y</Required>
        <Caption>Address2</Caption>
    </Address2>
    <Title>
        <Visible>Y</Visible>
        <Required>N</Required>
        <Caption>Title</Caption>
    </Title>
    <Address3>
        <Visible>Y</Visible>
        <Required>N</Required>
        <Caption></Caption>
    </Address3>
    <FirstName>
        <Visible>Y</Visible>
        <Required>N</Required>
        <Caption>First Name</Caption>
    </FirstName>
    <Address4>
        <Visible>Y</Visible>
        <Required>N</Required>
        <Caption></Caption>
    </Address4>
    <MiddleName>
```

```
<Visible>N</Visible>
<Required>N</Required>
<Caption>Middle Name</Caption>
</MiddleName>
<Address5>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>N</Required>
    <Caption></Caption>
</Address5>
<LastName>
    <Caption>LastName</Caption>
</LastName>
<City>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>N</Required>
    <Caption>City</Caption>
</City>
<State>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>Y</Required>
    <Caption>State</Caption>
</State>
<PrimaryPhone>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>Y</Required>
    <Caption>Primary Phone</Caption>
</PrimaryPhone>
<Country>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>Y</Required>
    <Caption>Country</Caption>
</Country>
<OtherPhone>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>N</Required>
    <Caption>Other Phone</Caption>
</OtherPhone>
<ZipCode>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>Y</Required>
```

```
<Caption>ZipCode</Caption>
</ZipCode>
<EmailAddress>
    <Visible>Y</Visible>
    <Required>Y</Required>
    <Caption>EmailAddress</Caption>
</EmailAddress>
</Patron>
```

---

**Figure 7-43. Default patron.xml file**

Most elements (see note following) of the patron.xml file corresponding to fields on the Patron Self-Registration have three variables associated with them. These variables are listed and described in Table 7-10.

**NOTE:**

Other than last name and Address1, all the fields have an option to be visible or not and an option to be required or not. ID is required, if visible. Last Name and Address1 are always visible and required.

**Table 7-10. Field element variable descriptions**

Element	Description	Valid values
Visible	Determines whether or not the field is visible to patron.	Y= field is visible N= field is not visible
Required	Determines whether or not the field is required.	Y= input into field is required N= input into field is not required
Caption	Caption of the field as displayed on the page	Any alphanumeric

**NOTE:**

- Last name and Address1 are always required and visible

- The ID field is always required if it is visible. This field can have an Idtype value of **S** or **I**. Table 7-11 details the `idtype` element options.

**Table 7-11. Idtype element option details**

idtype	Description	Field limits
S	Social Security Number	9 numeric characters
I	Institution ID	30 alphanumeric characters

Change the values of the field elements in the `patron.xml` file by changing the text between the appropriate tags. For example, to change the Other Phone field to required, and the caption to Local Phone, change the `N` between the `<Required>` tags to a `Y`, and change the text between the `<Caption>` tags.

```
<OtherPhone>
<Visible>Y</Visible>
<Required>N</Required>
<Caption>Other Phone</Caption>
</OtherPhone>
```

**Figure 7-44. Default Other Phone field**

```
<OtherPhone>
<Visible>Y</Visible>
<Required>Y</Required>
<Caption>Local Phone</Caption>
</OtherPhone>
```

**Figure 7-45. Revised Other Phone field**

### Changing the layout of the fields in the `patron.xsl` file

To alter the layout of the fields on the Patron Self-Registration screen, change the table specification in the `patron.xsl` file (lines 9 through 28 of Figure 7-47).

The first <table> element containing the page field element tags (see Figure 7-46) corresponds to the left-hand column of fields on the Patron Self-Registration page and the second corresponds to the right-hand column (see [Figure 7-38](#) on [page 7-45](#)).

---

```
<xsl:apply-templates select="XX">
```

**Figure 7-46. Page field element tag format**

The page field element name ("XX") components of the page field element tags correspond to the elements in the patron.xml file. Changing the order of these tags in the patron.xsl file will change the order of the field on the Patron Self-Registration page.

**! IMPORTANT:**

*Make sure that you do not delete any page field element tags that are marked as required in the patron.xml file. For example, if the <Required> tag of the <Address2> element is set to Y, a <xsl:apply-templates select="Address2"> tag must appear in a table element specification in the patron.xsl file.*

---

Line#

```
1   <form method="post" action="/webvoyage/servlet/PatronRegistrationServlet"
      name="patronselfreg">
2     <table width="800" border="0" cellspacing="0" cellpadding="1"
      align="center">
3       <tr><td><xsl:apply-templates select="message"/>
4         </td>
5       </tr>
6       <tr valign="top">
7         <td WIDTH="50%">
8           <table>
9             <xsl:apply-templates select="id"/>
10            <xsl:apply-templates select="Title"/>
11            <xsl:apply-templates select="FirstName"/>
```

**Figure 7-47. Table specification section of patron.xsl file**

Line#

```
12          <xsl:apply-templates select="MiddleName"/>
13          <xsl:apply-templates select="LastName"/>
14          <xsl:apply-templates select="OtherPhone"/>
15          <xsl:apply-templates select="PrimaryPhone"/>
16          </table>
17      </td>
18      <td WIDTH="50%">
19          <table>
20              <xsl:apply-templates select="Address1"/>
21              <xsl:apply-templates select="Address2"/>
22              <xsl:apply-templates select="Address3"/>
23              <xsl:apply-templates select="Address4"/>
24              <xsl:apply-templates select="Address5"/>
25              <xsl:apply-templates select="City"/>
26              <xsl:apply-templates select="State"/>
27              <xsl:apply-templates select="Country"/>
28              <xsl:apply-templates select="ZipCode"/>
29              <xsl:apply-templates select="EmailAddress"/>
30          </table>
31      </td>
32  </tr>
33  </table>
34  <table width="800" border="0" cellspacing="2" cellpadding="3"
align="center">
35      <tr><td colspan="2" valign="middle" align="center">
36          <input type="button" name="Submit" value="Submit"
DEFANGED_OnClick="checkValues(document.forms[0].Message.value)"></input>
37          <input type="reset" name="Submit2"
value="Reset"></input>
38      </td>
39  </tr>
40  </table>
41  </form>
```

**Figure 7-47. Table specification section of patron.xsl file (Continued)**

For example, if you want the **Primary Phone** field to display above the **Other Phone** field, rearrange the order of the `<xsl:apply-templates select="OtherPhone"/>` and `<xsl:apply-templates select="PrimaryPhone"/>` tags in the patron.xsl file.

To move the Other Phone field to the right-hand column on the Patron Self-Registration page, move the <xsl:apply-templates select="OtherPhone"/> tag to the second table element (containing the page field element tags).

### Patron Record Creation with Patron Self-Registration

---

Once a library patron inputs the required information, a patron record is created in the Voyager Circulation Module for that person. This record will *not* contain a barcode, and will have an purge date of the date the record is created.

You must then assign a barcode to the patron record, and change the purge date at the circulation desk. Patron records created using Patron Self-Registration have an Operator ID of OPAC.

Figure 7-48 shows information entered into a Patron Self-Registration page. Figure 7-49 shows the corresponding patron record created in the Voyager Circulation Module.

---

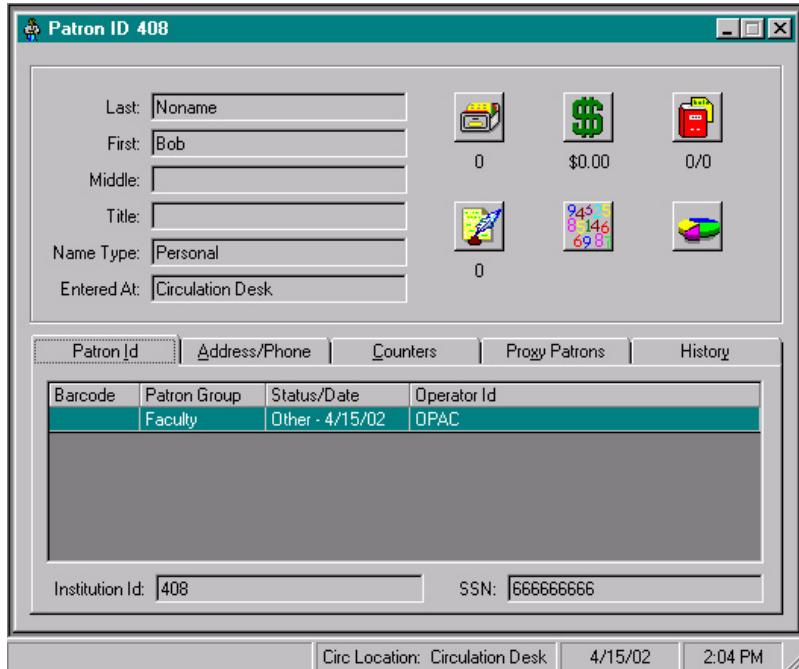
The screenshot shows a web-based form titled "Patron Self Registration". The header features the "SmartDesign SOLID Decision" logo and the "Web Voyage" title. A note below the title states: "The required fields are displayed in bold."

<b>SSN</b>	666666666	<b>Address</b>	2200 E. Devon Ave
		<b>Address2</b>	Ste. 382
<b>Title</b>			
<b>First Name</b>	Bob		
<b>Last Name</b>	Noname	<b>City</b>	Des Plaines
		<b>State</b>	IL
<b>Primary Phone</b>	(847) 296-2200	<b>Country</b>	USA
<b>Other Phone</b>		<b>Zip Code</b>	60018

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "Submit" and "Reset".

---

Figure 7-48. Sample patron information in Patron Self-Registration page



**Figure 7-49. Patron record in Voyager Circulation Module**

## Configuring Patron Self-Registration in System Administration

Voyager System Administration contains three items which affect Patron Self-Registration. Configure these items in **System Administration>Circulation>Policies**. Table 7-12 describes each item.

Table 7-12 details the Circulation Policy Field descriptions.

**Table 7-12. Circulation Policy Field Descriptions**

Configuration Item	Description
OPAC Circ Desk	The Circulation Desk associated with WebVoyage. Scope not limited to Patron Self-Registration but affects records created by Patron Self-Registration
Set Purge	The purge date is the date that will be used with a special job that will remove patron records from the database. At this time this date is not being used.

**Table 7-12. Circulation Policy Field Descriptions**

Configuration Item	Description
Default Patron Group	Default patron group which records created will be assigned to.

---

**Adding a link to Patron Self-Registration from WebVoyáge**

---

If you are using Patron Self-Registration in conjunction with WebVoyáge, you can provide a link to the Patron Self-Registration page in WebVoyáge. One possible scenario is to provide this link from the **Login** page. Customers using WebVoyáge who must create a patron record can then do so.

**Adding a link to Patron Self-Registration from the Login page**

One way to do this is to add a link to the `logonmsg.htm` file, containing the IP address and port of the Patron Self-Registration page (see line 4 of Figure 7-50 for an example). Figure 7-51 shows the resulting link on the **Login** page of WebVoyáge.

---

Line#

```
1 <CENTER>
2   Please enter your Patron Barcode and Last Name, then click the OK
3   button.
4   <BR>
5   If you are not registered, <A HREF="http://
xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx:xxxx">click here</A> for Patron Self-Registration.
6 </CENTER>
```

---

**Figure 7-50. The logonmsg.htm file with link**

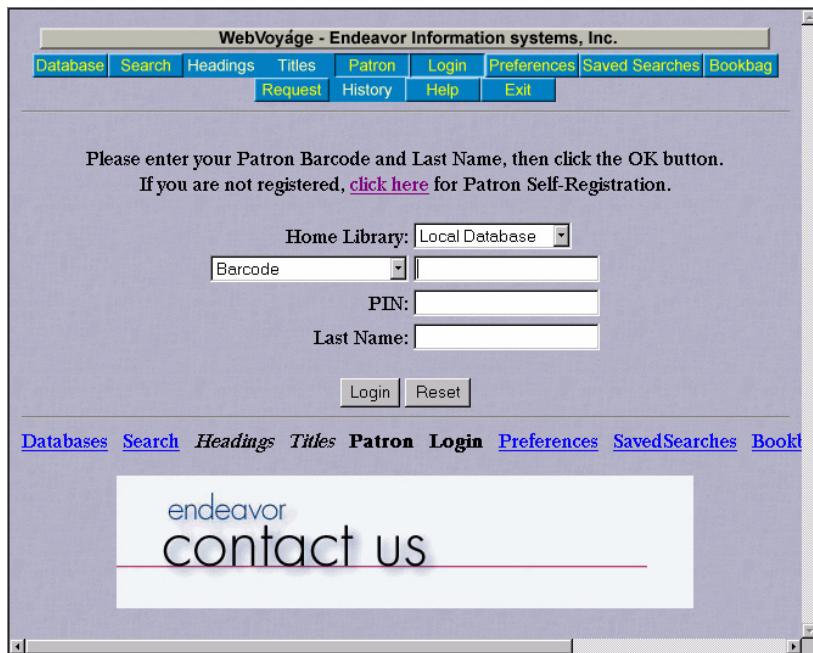


Figure 7-51. Link to Patron Self-Registration on the Login page

## Status Patron Groups

The Status Patron Groups feature allows you to use Circulation module configuration to display messages to the public. For example, you can create patron groups corresponding to special locations, such as the bindery or study carrels. You can then display this information in WebVoyage by charging the item to one of the Status Patron Groups. If an item is charged to a certain study carrel, WebVoyage will then reflect that fact. You can also charge items out to particular study carrels to be kept at those carrels.

The library-configurable messages corresponding to the "Charged" status will display to the public, as will charged items with requests pending against them. So an item charged to Study carrel 3 will appear in WebVoyage as charged to that study carrel. You configure the message text in the opac.ini file, so you can have multiple sets of messages for multilingual WebVoyage configurations.

Each patron group has one independent message for charged items and one for charged items with requests pending. You can also display the first and last name information for each patron record, so each specific patron within a status patron group can display slightly different information.

For instance, you may create a status patron group for study carrels (Carrel), then use the first and last name in each patron record to store the carrel location and number. Items charged to a given Carrel will display in WebVoyage using the message specified in the opac.ini file.

### **Configuring Patron Groups to Display Charged Status**

---

In order to display the customized messages associated with status patron groups, the **Display OPAC Message for Charged Items** check box must be selected in the Voyager System Administration module (Circulation>Patron groups).

**! IMPORTANT:**

*If you select this check box, it is possible to display, in WebVoyage, the first and last names of the patrons to which items are charged. Make sure you only select this check box if you want to make the display of patron first and/or last names possible.*

### **Configuring WebVoyage to Display Charged Messages**

---

The charged messages display in two sections of WebVoyage:

- The Titles page
- The View Record page

Customize the status patron group messages in the [Title\_Page] and [View\_Record\_Page] stanzas of the opac.ini file.

For each status patron group, you must create an entry in these stanzas containing the code of the patron group, and the messages you wish to display. These entries follow the format detailed in Figure 7-52.

---

Status Patron Group Code=Message for charged items  
Status Patron Group Code+Req=Message for charged items with pending request(s).

---

**Figure 7-52. Status Patron Group message format**

---

**NOTE:**

If no entry exists in these stanzas in the opac.ini file the default Charged and ChargedReq messages display.

For example, after creating a patron group called **BINDERY**, and selecting the Display OPAC Message for Charged Items, create the following entries:

---

```
[Title_Page]
...
Bindery=At Bindery
...
```

---

**Figure 7-53. Sample Message Text in [Title\_Page] stanza**

```
[View_Record_Page]
...
Bindery=At Bindery for repair
Bindery+Req=At Bindery for repair, with pending requests
...
```

---

**Figure 7-54. Sample Message Text in [View\_Record\_Page]**

You can also use the standard substitution tokens in these messages (see Table 7-13), as well as two new tokens (see Table 7-14).

**Table 7-13. Standard substitution tokens**

Substitution token	Information displayed
\i	Standard item information (enumeration, chronology, for example)
\c	Outstanding number of requests
\d	Date
\e	Date, unless date is today
\t	Time
\u	Time, if date is today
\l	Location

**Table 7-14. Patron Block Information-specific tokens**

Substitution token	Information displayed
\F	First name field from patron record
\L	Last name field from patron record

**! IMPORTANT:**

*Make sure to only use the \F and \L tokens for patron groups whose first and last name information you want displayed in WebVoyage (that is, for patron status groups).*

Figure 7-55 shows an example of substitution tokens in a message.

---

```
[View_Record_Page]
...
Carrel=\i shelved at Carrel \L until \d
Carrel+Req=\i shelved at Carrel \L until \d. Requests:\ c.
...
```

**Figure 7-55. Sample Substitution tokens in Message Text**

---

## Patron Self-Renewal

---

If the Patron Self-Renewal feature is provided by your institution, the Renewal options will appear in the Charged section of the Patron Information page. However, even if your institution provides the self-renewal feature, the Renewal options will not appear on the Charged tab if your patron status is “Blocked” by your institution for any reason or if you do not have at least one item charged out.

**NOTE:**

The patron self renewal option enables patron self-renewal at the highest level. To set individual self-renewal options, you must also configure the renew all and/or the renew single items features (see [Renewal Options on page 7-64](#)).

---

## **Allowing Patrons to Self-Renew Items**

---

To allow patrons to self-renew items, edit the `SelfRenew` variable.

- `SelfRenew=Y` enables patron self-renewal
- `SelfRenew=N` disables patron self-renewal

---

## **Renewal Options**

---

The Renew All feature on the Patron Information page renews all items charged to a patron. UB charges will automatically be polled for renewal when the request is submitted. Rather than selecting charged items one at a time and renewing them, patrons can select the Renew All drop-down options and renew them all at once. You can also retain the renew single items feature or disable it.



### **IMPORTANT:**

*For any patron renewal options to work, you must first enable Patron Self-Renewal (see [Patron Self-Renewal](#) on page 7-63).*

On the Patron Information page, if the Renew All feature is enabled (see [Text of the Renewal Button](#) on page 7-67) a drop-down box displays, along with a Renew All button. The drop-down box contains the available renewal options. [Figure 7-56](#) on page 7-65 shows the Renew All button on the Patron Information page, along with the renewal options drop-down box.

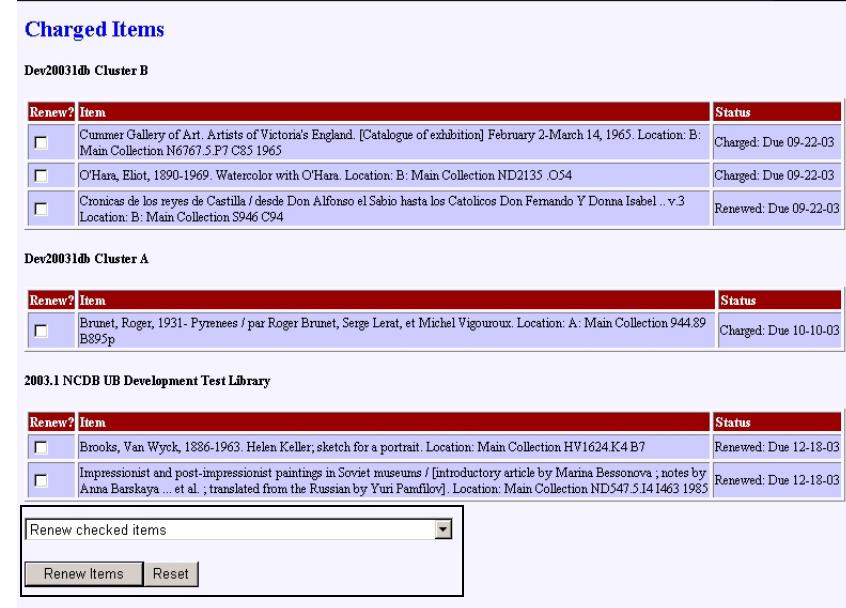


Figure 7-56. Renewal Button and Drop-Down Box

### The Renewal Options Drop-Down Box

The Renew Options drop-down box displays different renew options, depending on the how the `RenewAll` and `RenewSingleItems` variables are set. [Table 7-15](#) contains a renewal option configuration matrix.

For more information about setting the renew all and renew single items variables in the configuration file, see [Text of the Renewal Button on page 7-67](#)

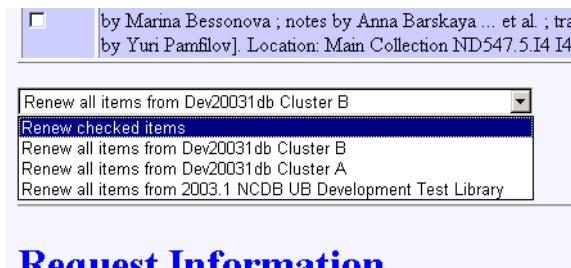
Table 7-15. Renewal Options Matrix

Renew All	Renew Single Items	Display
Enabled	Enabled	Drop-down displays renew all by cluster, and renew checked items options.
Enabled	Disabled	Drop-down displays renew all by cluster option only.
Disabled	Enabled	Only the Renew Items button displays. Checked items can be renewing using the Renew Items button
Disabled	Disabled	No renewal options available

---

[Figure 7-57](#) shows the renewal options drop-down box with both the renew all and renew single items enabled.

---



**Figure 7-57. Renew Items Drop-Down**

### **Renewal Option Button Configuration**

---

The following are related to use the Renew All button feature:

- Enable the feature in the opac.ini (Required)
- Text of the renewal button
- Display of the renew single items drop-down
- Display of the renew all drop-down
- Text of the renew all limit message

[Figure 7-58](#) shows the Renewal option variables (minus the SubmitButton variable).

---

```
RenewAll=Y
RenewLimitMessage=Only 50 items may be renewed at once. Select
the Renew Items button again to renew the remaining
items.
RenewSingleItems=Y
RenewSingleItemsText=Renew checked items
RenewAllItemsText=Renew all items from
```

**Figure 7-58. Sample Renew All Variables**

### **Enabling the Renew All feature**

Enable the Renew All feature by setting the `RenewAll` variable in the `[Patron_Info_Page]` stanza in the `opac.ini` file.

- `RenewAll=Y` displays the text of the `RenewAllItemsText` variable in the renewal options drop-down box, and enables the renew all option
- `RenewAll=N` disables the Renew All drop-down option and feature.

### **Enabling the renew single items drop-down option**

The renew single items check box column, and renewal options drop-down entry, can be configured. Disabling the renew single items feature can be useful in streamlining the interface if your patrons will be using the Renew All button exclusively.

Enable the renew single items display feature by editing the `RenewSingleItems` variable of the `[Patron_Info_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file.

- `RenewSingleItems=Y` enables the renew single items feature
- `RenewSingleItems=N` disables the renew single items feature

### **Editing the text of the Renew Single Items drop-down text**

To edit the text of the Renew Single Items drop-down, edit the `RenewSingleItemsText` variable.

### **Text of the Renewal Button**

Set the label of the renewal button by editing the `SubmitButton` variable in the `[Patron_Info_Page]` stanza in the `opac.ini` file.

### **Editing the Text of the Renew All Limit Message**

You can configure the message that displays if a patron attempts to renew more than 50 checked records when using the Renew Single Items option.

**NOTE:**

The maximum number of records that can be renewed by a patron is 50, when using the Renew Single Items feature.

## **Request Information Section**

---

The Request Information section is made up of two parts: Requests Pending and Items Available.

### **Requests Pending**

---

The Requests Pending section contains information about items for which a patron has issued a hold, recall, call slip, or short loan request. This section displays the title of the requested item, the date on which the request expires, its position in the holding queue, the status, and the date and time when the status was applied (only call slip requests that have not been filled display a status, status date and status time).

---

A screenshot of a computer interface titled "Request Information" under the "Requests Pending" section. A table displays one item:

Cancel?	Item	Status
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	500 hats of Bartholomew Cubbins / by Dr. Seuss.	03-17-00 (18:00 - 19:00) Pick up at Short Loan Circulation Desk

**Figure 7-59. Requests Pending Section**

For a call slip request that has not been filled, only the title of the item requested, the status of the call slip request, and the date and time when the status was applied will display in the Requests Pending section. For a call slip request that has been filled and put on hold by a Call Slip operator, the title of the item, the date that the hold expires, and the pickup location of the item display in the Items Available section. If your library charges the item when the call slip request is Filled, the item displays in the Charged Items section in addition to displaying in the Items Available section.

The Requests Pending section displays the statuses of any call slip requests you have placed but that have not been filled. (Your institution may use different terminology for call slip statuses than the terminology listed below; see [CallSlipStatusCodes Stanza](#) on [page 3-131](#) of this user's guide.) If a status is:

**Table 7-16. Status Descriptions**

Status	Description
Accepted	the request has been successfully placed but it has not yet been viewed by a Call Slip operator.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

**Table 7-16. Status Descriptions**

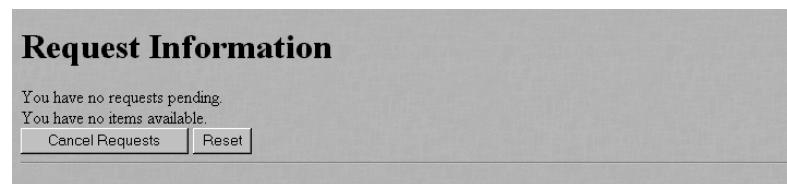
Status	Description
Printed	the request has been viewed by a Call Slip operator but has not yet been processed.
Not Filled	the request has been processed but not filled by a Call Slip operator. The No Fill reason will display with this status.
Cancelled	the request has been cancelled by the patron or by the Circulation staff.
Expired	the call slip request has expired.
Error	an error has occurred during the processing of the call slip request.
Cancel Requests Pending	Any pending request that displays in the Requests Pending section (hold, recall, call slip and short loan) can be cancelled by the patron. Cancelling a pending call slip request will alter the status of the request to cancelled. Cancelling a pending hold, recall or short loan request will remove the request from the Requests Pending section. In addition, a request that is cancelled will not be counted on a patron's record.

**NOTE:**

This feature will only be available if the “CancelRequests” variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file has been configured appropriately. See [Patron Info Stanza](#) on page 3-117 for more information.

To cancel requests pending:

- Click one or more requests in the Requests Pending section of the Patron Information window.
- Click the **Cancel Request** button. The request(s) will then either be removed from the Requests Pending section (without a warning message) or, if it is a call slip request, be assigned a status of cancelled.

**Figure 7-60. Requests Pending Page - After Canceling Requests**

## Items Available

The Items Available section contains information about any requests with items that are currently available. This tab displays the Title of the requested item, the date the availability of the item expires (Expiration), and the location for pickup (Pickup Location).

A screenshot of a computer interface titled "Items Available". At the top, there are two input fields: "Cancel?" and "Item". Below these is a table with two columns: "Expires:" and "Pickup Location". Under "Expires:", there is a small calendar icon. Under "Pickup Location", there is a dropdown menu showing "Short Loan Circulation Desk". In the "Item" field, the text "500 hats of Bartholomew Cubbins / by Dr. Seuss." is entered. At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "Cancel Requests" and "Reset".

Figure 7-61. Items Available Section

### Cancel Items Available

Any request that displays available item information in the Items Available section can be cancelled by the patron. Canceling a request with an available item will remove the request from the Items Available section. In addition, a request that is cancelled will not be counted on a patron's record. For example, this means that if a patron who is allowed 15 hold requests places a hold request on an item but then cancels it, that patron will still be allowed to place 15 hold requests.

#### NOTE:

This feature will only be available if the "CancelRequests" variable in the [Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file has been configured appropriately. See [Patron Info Stanza](#) on page 3-117 for more information.

To cancel items available:

- Click one or more requests in the Items Available section of the Patron Information window.
- Click the **Cancel Request** button. The request(s) will then be removed from the Items Available section (without a warning message).

### Request Information

You have no requests pending.  
You have no items available.

Figure 7-62. Items Available Section

### Fines and Fees

The Fines and Fees section contains monetary charges the patron has acquired, with the total amount due listed at the top. Also included: the Date the charge was assessed or paid, a Title if applicable, the type of charge or payment (Fee/Posting Type), amount (Fee), a payment (Posting), and balance (Balance).

---

### Fines and Fees

Date	Item	Fee/Posting Type	Fee	Posting	Balance
	<b>Total Amount Due</b>				<b>22.75</b>
03-20-00	500 hats of Bartholomew Cubbins / by Dr. Seuss.	Overdue	2.75		2.75
03-20-00	Motor carriers' road atlas, 1998 : United States, Canada, Mexico / Rand McNally.	Lost Item Processing	20.00		20.00

Figure 7-63. Fines and Fees Section

### Customizing Patron Information

---

#### NOTE:

Unless otherwise noted, all of the following variables are contained in the **Patron\_Info\_Page** stanza of the opac.ini file.

Configurations specific to the Patron Information page include:

Table 7-17.

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
General:	

**Table 7-17.**

Background image	Background
Text Color	Text
Background color	BGCOLOR
Link color	LINK
Visited Link color	VLINK
Color of Link being clicked	ALINK
Personal Information Section:	
Personal Info section title	Personal variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Charged Items Section:	
Charged Items section title	Charged variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Activating Self-Renewal	SelfRenew variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Item Information	ItemInfo variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Renew? column header	Renew variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Renewal column header	RenewalStatus variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Status column header	Status variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Item column header	Item variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Charged Item Information	ChargedItem variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file

**Table 7-17.**

Renewed Item Information	RenewedItem variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Recalled Item Information	RecalledItem variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
No Charges message	variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Not Renewed message	NotRenewed variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Renewed message	RenewedDue variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Submit button label	SubmitButton variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Reset button label	ResetButton variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Request Information Section:	
Request Info section title	Requests variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Requests Pending table title	ReqPending variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Allow Cancelling of Requests	CancelRequests variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of opac.ini
Cancel column header	Cancel variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Item column header	Item variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file

**Table 7-17.**

Status column header	Status variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
No Requests Pending message	NoReqPending variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Status of Pending Requests	Variables 1-7 in CallSlip-StatusCodes stanza of the opac.ini file
No Requests Available message	NoReqAvail variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Items Available table title	ReqAvail variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Pick-Up Location message	Pick_Up_At variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Customizing Status Messages	Position, -, and Expires variables in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Pick-Up Location header text	PickupLocation variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Cancel button text	CancelButton variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Fines and Fees Section:	
Fines and Fees section title	Fines variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
No Fines and Fees message	NoFines variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Date column header	Date variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file

**Table 7-17.**

Item column header	Item variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Fee Reason column header	FeePostingType variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Fee column header	Fee variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Posting column header	Posting variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Balance column header	Balance variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file
Total Due label	TotalAmountDue variable in [Patron_Info_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file

Other configurations control things that appear not only on this screen but on most other WebVoyage screens as well. Changes made to the following configurations will appear everywhere that the particular settings appears. These configurations include:

**Table 7-18.**

CONFIGURATION	SOURCE
Screen header	header.htm
Screen footer information	footer.htm
Toolbar and hypertext links	[Toolbar_Top] and [Toolbar_Bottom] stanzas in the opac.ini file

For more information on configuring the Item Level Request page, see [Editing the Item Level Request Screens on page 2-151](#).

---

[REDACTED]

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

---

## Displaying additional information in WebVoyáge



---

### Overview

---

Additional information can be displayed in WebVoyáge using HTML code. This chapter covers the following configuration using HTML code:

- Displaying information from the BIB\_TEXT table on the Titles list screen.
- Displaying information using Syndetics Solutions Catalog Enrichment Support.
- Generic HTML Generation on the View Record page.

---

### Displaying information on the Titles list screen

---

You can configure WebVoyáge to display or use on the Titles List page, information from any column in the BIB\_TEXT table. You can display information on the page in a column on the left, on the right, or both.

Configure this in the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file. There are three components to this configuration.

- Determining which column(s) to include on the page (Left, Right, or both)
- Configuring the header text of the column(s)
- Configuring information displayed in the column, or used to display information in the column(s). This information can be HTML code and text.

---

## **Determining which column(s) to include on the page**

---

First configure the general display options of the Titles List page columns. This consists of enabling column display of the left or right columns, or both, on the Titles List page. Do this by adding a `GenerateHTMLColumn` variable to the `[Title_Page]` stanza of the `opac.ini` file.

Set this variable to:

- `L` to display information in the “left” column (the first column to the right of the `#` column).
- `R` to display information in the rightmost column of the Titles List page.
- `B` to display information in both of the columns.

This merely sets WebVoyage to *display* the columns. Additional configuration is needed to establish the information displayed in those columns.

---

## **The header text of the column(s)**

---

Configure the text of the column in the `HTMLColumnHeader` variable. This variable will differ according to which column you are displaying (left or right).

- The variable to set the *left* column header text is `HTMLColumnHeaderL`.
- The variable to set the *right* column header text is `HTMLColumnHeaderR`.

The text after the variable is the text of column heading.

Example:

`HTMLColumnHeaderR=ISBN` creates the column heading in the right column shown in [Figure A-1](#).

Search Results: Displaying 1 through 10 of 5276 entries.					
Find This: <input type="text" value="art"/>		Find Results in: Keyword Relevance Search		Quick Limit: <input type="text" value="None"/>	
<input type="button" value="10 records per page"/>		<input type="button" value="Submit"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>			
<input type="button" value="previous"/> 1 11 21 31 41 51 ... 5271 <input type="button" value="next"/>					
Sort by:	<input type="button" value="Relevance"/>				<input type="button" value="Post Limit"/>
#	Relevance	Full Title	Author	Format	ISBN
<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">Pays de Chartreuse / préface de M. Paul Leon ... couverture de A. Artigue.</a>	Auscher, Leon	Book	
[1]		Library Location: A: Main Collection Call Number: 914.4 Au7 Status: Not Charged			
<input type="checkbox"/>		<a href="#">Artist in Indiana--then and now : Indiana fiber artists. An exhibition [September 12-October 31, 1976] made possible in part through a grant from the Indiana Arts Commission and the National Endowment for the Arts.</a>	Ball State University. Art Gallery.	Book	

Figure A-1. ISBN column heading on Titles List page

Since we have not instructed WebVoyage to display anything in the column yet, only the column heading displays.

### Establishing the information displayed in the column

Configure the column information displayed in the `HTMLColumnL` and `HTMLColumnR` variables (the *column information* variables). These control the information displayed for the left and right columns, respectively. The general format of these variables is:

```
HTMLColumnC=Table_Column:Begin HTML code {Table_Column
substitution} End HTML Code
```

- `HTMLColumnC` is the variable where `C` corresponds to `L` for left or `R` for right.
- `Table_Column` is the column in the `BIB_TEXT` table you want to display in the column on the Titles List page.
- `Begin HTM Code` and `End HTML Code` simply correspond to HTML code, with the `{Table_Column substitution}` representing where in the HTML code to place the value of the `Table_Column`.

Figure A-3 shows the display of the lines added to the `[Title_Page]` stanza in Figure A-2. This displays the edition information from each record, based on the information in the `Edition` column of the `BIB_TEXT` table.

```
[Title_Page]
...
GenerateHTMLColumn=L
HTMLColumnHeaderL=Edition
HTMLColumnL=EDITION:<p>Edition: {EDITION}</p>
```

**Figure A-2. Sample left column display variables**

Database Name: Endeavor Library						
Search Request: Keyword = psychology						
Search Results: Displaying 1 through 10 of 1543 entries.						
Find This: <input type="text" value="psychology"/>			Find Results in: <input type="text" value="Keyword Relevance Search"/>	Quick Limit: <input type="text" value="None"/>		
<input type="button" value="10 records per page"/>			<input type="button" value="Submit"/> <input type="button" value="Reset"/>			
<input type="button" value="previous"/>			1 11 21 31 41 51 ... 1541	<input type="button" value="next"/>		
Sort by: <input type="text" value="Relevance"/>				<input type="button" value="Post Limit"/>		
#	Edition	Relevance	Full Title	Author	Format	ISBN
<input type="checkbox"/>	Edition 1st ed.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Fall of public man / by Richard Sennett.</a>	Sennett, Richard, 1943-	Book	<a href="#">Click for Table of Contents</a>
<a href="#">[1]</a>			Library Location: A: Reference Department (non-circulating)	Call Number: HN13 .S45 1977	Status: No item data available	
<input type="checkbox"/>		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Handbook of modern personality theory / edited by Raymond B. Cattell, Ralph Mason Dreger.</a>		Book	<a href="#">Click for Table of Contents</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>			Library Location: A: Reference	Call Number:	Status: No item	

**Figure A-3. Display of left column on Titles List page**

#### Example:

You can also use the columns to do more complicated configuration. For example, you can create a .gif file for each material type configured in Voyager System Administration, and display the appropriate graphic depending on the record's value in the BIB\_FORMAT column of the BIB\_TEXT table.

In this example (see [Figure A-4](#) and [Figure A-5](#)), we use the `{Table_Column_substitution}` to determine the graphic displayed in the column of each record. The `HTMLColumnL` variable instructs Voyager to select the value of the `bib_format` column of the `BIB_TEXT` table and place that value into the name of the .gif file to display. You first must create .gif files in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory for the various material types.

So if a record's material type code in the `bib_format` column of the `BIB_TEXT` table is `am`, the graphic file `am.gif` displays, if its type code is a `gf`, the `gf.gif` file displays and so on.

**NOTE:**

Remember that you must create and place any extra files, graphics or otherwise, referenced in this code, in the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/webvoyage/html/images` directory. In the case of this example, you must create a .gif file for each material type entered into Voyager System Administration, and place the files in the images directory.

---

```
GenerateHTMLColumn=L  
HTMLColumnHeaderL=Bib Format  
HTMLColumnL=bib_format:
```

---

**Figure A-4. Sample format display variables**

Search Results: Displaying 1 through 10 of 669 entries.						
Find This: <input type="text" value="film"/>		Find Results in: Keyword Relevance Search		Quick Limit: None		
<input type="button" value="10 records per page"/>				Submit	Reset	
		<input type="button" value="previous"/>	<input type="button" value="1"/> <input type="button" value="11"/> <input type="button" value="21"/> <input type="button" value="31"/> <input type="button" value="41"/> <input type="button" value="51"/> ... <input type="button" value="661"/>	<input type="button" value="next"/>	<input type="button" value="Post Limit"/>	
		Sort by: <input type="button" value="Relevance"/>				
#	Bib Format	Relevance	Full Title	Author	Format	
<input type="checkbox"/>			<a href="#">Ansel Adams, photographer [videorecording] / Filmamerica, Inc.</a>		Videocassette	
[1]			<i>Title has multiple holdings</i>			
<input type="checkbox"/>			<a href="#">West German filmmakers on film : visions and voices / edited by Eric Rentschler.</a>		Book	
[2]			<i>Library Location: A: Main Call Number: PN1993.5.G3 Collection W44 1988 Status: Not Charged</i>			
			<a href="#">Multimedia approach to children's literature : a selective list of films, filmstrips, and recordings based on children's books / compiled and edited by Elin Greene and Madalynne Schoenfeld.</a>	Greene, Elin, 1927-	Book	

**Figure A-5. Sample Bib Format display**

In [Figure A-5](#), the first record's format type (its value in the bib\_format column) is *gf*, so the *gf.gif* file displays in the Bib Format column.

## Syndetics Solutions Catalog Enrichment Support

If you subscribe to Syndetics Solutions services, Syndetics Solutions Cataloging Enrichment support allows you to send information from a record, and retrieve information about that record. Syndetics Solutions maintains databases of tables of contents, cover images, reviews, and other information about library material.

By configuring WebVoyage to communicate with these databases, you can retrieve information, based on the ISBN of a record. WebVoyage sends the ISBN of the record to the database, search for information about the material corresponding to the ISBN, and return the types of information to WebVoyage display depending on your configuration and availability.

For more information about subscribing to Syndetics Solutions Cataloging Enrichment support, see the *Contacts* section of their website.

## **Configuring WebVoyáge for use with Syndetics Solutions Catalog Enrichment Support**

---

Syndetics Solutions offers a number of types of information for retrieval, but we must detail the general WebVoyáge configuration before getting to the types of information to retrieve.

- You can add small cover images to the Titles List by editing the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file.
- You can add other information to the View Record page by appending the displayN.cfg files on your server.



### **Procedure A-1. Adding small cover images to the Titles List by editing the [Title\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file**

---

Use the following to add small cover images to the Titles List.

1. Set up the columns on the Title List page as detailed in [Determining which column\(s\) to include on the page](#) on [page A-2](#) and [The header text of the column\(s\)](#) on [page A-2](#).
2. Add the following column information variable to the [Title\_Page] stanza:

```
HTMLColumnC=ISBN:
```

where the C in the column information variable (HTMLColumnC) corresponds to L for left column or R for right column.

The **clientCode** in the **client** portion of the URL corresponds to your Syndetics client code. Please contact Syndetics for this code.

**Result:** This column information variable takes the value of the ISBN column in the BIB\_TEXT table for each record, sends it to Syndetics Solutions' server, and retrieves corresponding cover image thumbnails (if found).

[Figure A-6](#) shows a sample thumbnail cover image retrieved from the Syndetics Solutions database (with an HTMLColumnHeaderR=Cover variable).

#	Bib Format	Relevance	Full Title	Author	Format	Cover
[1]			<a href="#">Pays de Chartreuse / préface de M. Paul Leon ... couverture de A. Artigue.</a>	Auscher, Leon.	Book	
			Library Location: A: Main Collection	Call Number: 914.4 Au7	Status: Not Charged	
[2]			<a href="#">Artist in Indiana--then and now : Indiana fiber artists. An exhibition [September 12-October 31, 1976] made possible in part through a grant from the Indiana Arts Commission and the National Endowment for the Arts.</a>	Ball State University. Art Gallery.	Book	
			Library Location: A: Main Collection	Call Number: 746.41 I39a	Status: Not Charged	
[3]			<a href="#">Toulouse-Lautrec [videorecording] / a LWT South Bank production in association with RM Arts.</a>		Videocassette	
			Library Location: B: Media Department	Call Number: T7255	Status: Not Charged	
			<a href="#">Medieval manuscript : [videorecording] art and function.</a>		Videocassette	
			Library Location: B: Media Department	Call Number: T800.2	Status: Not Charged	

**Figure A-6. Sample cover thumbnail image**

[Figure A-7](#) shows the text added to the [Title\_Page] stanza to create the display in [Figure A-6](#).

```
GenerateHTMLColumn=B
HTMLColumnHeaderR=Cover
HTMLColumnHeaderL=Bib Format
HTMLColumnL=bib_format:
HTMLColumnR=ISBN:
```

**Figure A-7. Excerpt of [Title\_Page] stanza**

## Adding information to the View Record page

You can also display information on any view record page, by editing the `displayX.cfg` files. For the purposes of sending information to Syndetics Solutions, there are two general display type options for the information.

- As an image on the view record page
- As a link to another HTML page

Depending on which type of display you want to use, the text in the `displayX.cfg` file takes one of two forms.

### Label

You can specify the label and error text for each line of HTML information. Add this information to the line directly before the HTML in the `displayn.cfg` file.

*LabelText +Error Message text*

The `LabelText` portion of the command corresponds to the label appearing to the left of the HTML information.

The text after the `+` displays if the target of the HTML information on the next line cannot be found.

### Format of images on the view record page

The following is the format of the HTML required to view images on the view record page:

```
HTML:020||a:
```

1. The `HTML` indicates to WebVoyáge that the code entered into the file is HTML code.
2. The `:020||a:` indicates the MARC field and subfield WebVoyáge should search for information. For Syndetics Solutions purposes, this will be the ISBN.
3. The `<` indicates the beginning of the HTML code.
4. The `hwN.pl?` above specifies what type of window WebVoyáge should open to display the information.
  - `hw5pl?` opens the information in a new window
  - `hw7pl?` displays the information in the current window
5. The `isbn=` indicates in the URL created that the ISBN is being sent.

- 
6. The {a} substitution token places the information from the (:020||a:) field and subfield after the isbn=, to indicate the actual ISBN of the record to retrieve information from.
  7. The /filename indicates the type of information to retrieve for this ISBN (see [Table A-1](#) on [page A-11](#)).
  8. The client= includes your institution's Syndetics Solutions client code. Contact Syndetics Solutions if you do not know your client code.
  9. The /> indicates the end of the HTML code.

### Format of links to another page

The following is the format of the HTML required to view links on the view record page:

```
HTML:020||a:<href="http://syndetics.com/
hwN.pl?isbn={a}/filename&client=ClientCode">
```

1. The HTML indicates to WebVoyage that the code entered into the file is HTML code.
2. The :020||a: indicates the MARC field and subfield WebVoyage should search for information. For Syndetics Solutions purposes, this will be the ISBN.
3. The < indicates the beginning of the HTML code.
4. The hwN.pl? above specifies what type of window WebVoyage should open to display the information.
  - hw5pl? opens the information in a new window
  - hw7pl? displays the information in the current window
5. The isbn= indicates in the URL created that the ISBN is being sent.
6. The {a} substitution token places the information from the (:020||a:) field and subfield after the isbn=, to indicate the actual ISBN of the record to retrieve information from.
7. The /filename indicates the type of information to retrieve for this ISBN (see [Table A-1](#) on [page A-11](#)).
8. The client= is your institution's Syndetics Solutions client code. Contact Syndetics Solutions if you do not know your client code.
9. The /> indicates the end of the HTML code.

## Data Elements and Filenames used by Syndetics Solutions

The filename is determined by Syndetics Solutions, and dictates the data element to retrieve. [Table A-1](#) details the available filenames and the corresponding data elements.

**Table A-1. Data elements and filenames**

Data Elements	Filename
Index (or Menu) page	INDEX.HTML or INDEX.XML
Table of Contents	TOC.HTML, TOC.XML, BNATOC.HTML, or BNATOC.XML
Fiction/Biography Profile	FICTION.HTML or FICTION.XML
Summary / Annotation	SUMMARY.HTML or SUMMARY.XML
First Chapter or Excerpt	DBCHAPTER.HTML or DBCHAPTER.XML
Library Journal Review	LJREVIEW.HTML or LJREVIEW.XML
Publishers Weekly Review	PWREVIEW.HTML or PWREVIEW.XML
School Library Journal Review	SLJREVIEW.HTML or SLJREVIEW.XML
CHOICE Review	CHREVIEW.HTML or CHREVIEW.XML
Booklist Review	BLREVIEW.HTML or BLREVIEW.XML
Doody's Medical Review	DOREVIEW.HTML or DOREVIEW.XML (Not yet loaded)
Author Notes	ANOTES.HTML or ANOTES.XML
Large Cover Image (400x400)	LC.JPG
Medium Cover Image (187x187)	MC.GIF
Small Cover Image (94x94)	SC.GIF

---

## Examples

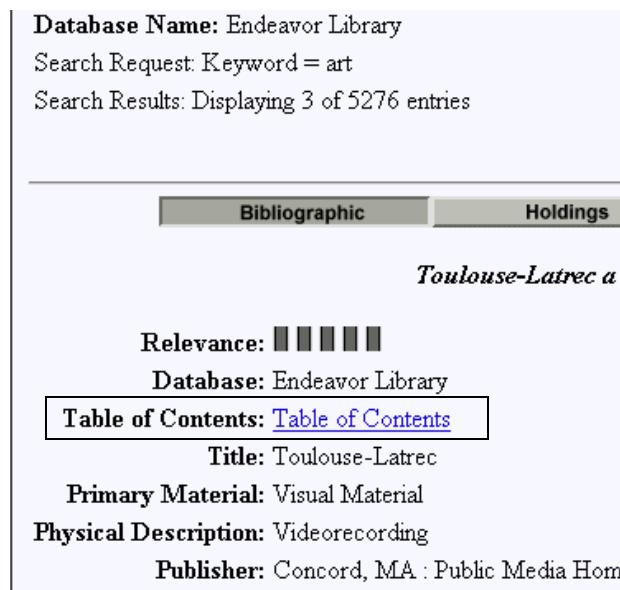
---

Example:

To add a link to the table of contents to the view record page, add the following to one of the displayX.cfg files (see [Figure A-8](#)):

```
HTML:020||a:<a href="http://syndetics.com/
hw5.pl?isbn={a}/TOC.HTML&client=ClientCode">Table of
Contents</a>
```

---



---

**Figure A-8.** Sample Table of Contents link

---

Example:

To add a link to the large cover image to the view record page, add the following to one of the displayX.cfg files:

```
CoverImage: +No cover image found
HTML:020||a:<a href="http://syndetics.com/
hw7.pl?isbn={a}/LC.JPG&client=ClientCode">Cover Image</
a>
```

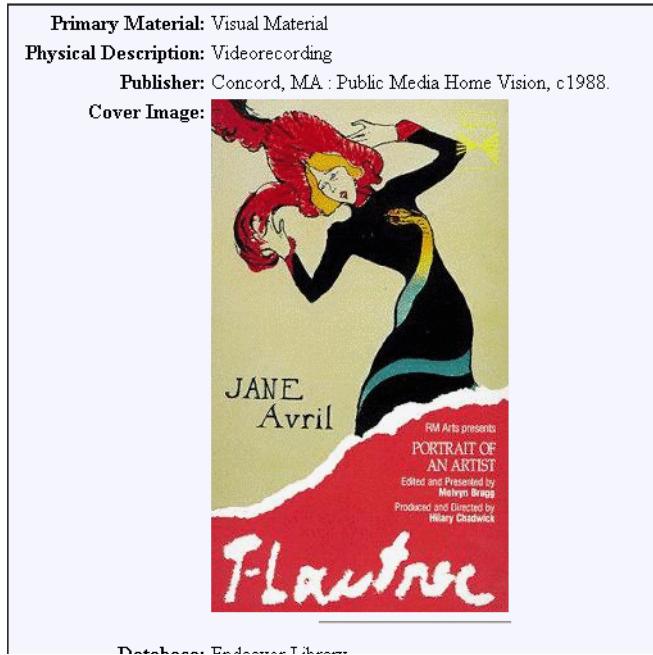
Example:

To add the image of the cover itself, add the following to one of the displayX.cfg files (see [Figure A-9](#)):

```
CoverImage: +No cover image found  
HTML:020||a:
```

[Figure A-10](#) shows the error message displayed if a cover image is not found (as configured in this example).

---



---

**Figure A-9.** Sample large cover image

**Endeavor**

---

**Database:** Endeavor Library  
**Title:** Toulouse-Latrec  
**Subject(s):** Artists  
**Primary Material:** Visual Material  
**Physical Description:** Videorecording  
**Publisher:** Concord, MA : Public Media Home Vision, c1988.  
**Cover Image:** No cover image found

---

**Database:** Endeavor Library  
**Database:** No information available  
**Location:** B: Media Department  
**Call Number:** [T7255](#)  
**Call Number:** No call number available  
**Number of Items:** 1  
**Status:** Not Charged  
**Status:** No information available

**There are no attachments for this record.**

---

**Figure A-10. Sample error message**

Example:

To add a link to the Syndetics index page, add the following:

```
Index: +Index information not found
HTML:020||a:
```

---

## Configuring WebVoyáge Bibliographic Record Linking Display

B

---

### Overview

---

Bibliographic records are related to each other for different reasons. You can use bibliographic record linking to relate a new serial title with its preceding title. Conversely, you can relate an old serial title with its succeeding title. Those are just two types of related records.

Bibliographic Record Linking provides sites with a method for:

- Defining relationships between bibliographic records using profiles created in the Voyager System Administration module.
- Displaying those relationships in WebVoyáge using configuration files in the opac.ini file.
- Maintaining those relationships with templates in the Voyager Cataloging module.

The bibliographic record linking profiles are created so that related records can be identified using data from a single source, the source record. In each profile, the data from the source record is expressed in MARC format by pairing coordinated tags and subfields with a left-anchored index.

For example, the 773 \$x tag and subfield might be paired with the left-anchored index for searching ISSN numbers. The tag/subfield/index combination that links the source record to its related records can be any tag/subfield in the source record and any left-anchored index defined in System Administration.

---

**NOTE:**

The left-anchored indexes available for bibliographic record linking are those defined in the Search component of Voyager System Administration.

Left-anchored indexes which are not available for bibliographic record linking include headings searches as defined in Search Definitions and composite searches as defined in Composite Definitions of Voyager System Administration.

## **Defining Record Relationships**

---

Bibliographic records can be linked in different directions. For example, a vertical relationship can be used to relate the main bibliographic record of a serial title to its article level bib records and then to relate the article level bib records back to the main record. In addition to vertical relationships, the following relationships exist.

- Sibling relationships between “children” records that share the same host or “parent” record
- Chronological relationships between records that are predecessors and successors
- Horizontal relationships between records that reflect different versions of the same bibliographic item

Complementary relationships are defined separately. In this type of relationship, the tag/subfield that links a source record to related records does not automatically specify the complementary tag that links the related records back to the source record. Each complementary relationship must be explicitly defined and all tag/subfields must be available in a left-anchored index.

## **Displaying Related Records**

---

The detailed record view of bibliographic records in WebVoyage can be completely configured to each site's preferences. Because of this, different bibliographic relationships can be configured to display at different times using different display elements for the labels.

When a source record displays in WebVoyage, the related record information is displayed by clicking a hyperlink. The information can display in up to three columns, such as title, author, and publication date; and each site determines the information that creates the hyperlink. Patrons view the related records by clicking the hyperlink which leads directly to the detailed record view of the related record.

Each site can specify the maximum number of related records to display in the detailed record view. If the number of related records exceeds this threshold, the detailed record view of the source record includes a hyperlink to a title list of the related records rather than displaying a single record.

### **Maintaining Related Records**

---

Related records can be maintained using the Voyager Cataloging module. You can view and edit existing related records as well as create new related records quickly and easily using templates which contain derivation fields.

Derivation fields allow you to map data from the source record into the new, target record. Standard template functionality remains in place, so you can create new records containing mapped data as well as static text and empty tags and subfields.

## **Configuring Voyager for Bibliographic Record Linking**

---

Bibliographic Record Linking integrates the functionality of several Voyager modules.

- System Administration
- WebVoyáge
- Cataloging

### **System Administration**

---

In the System Administration module, you determine the tag, subfields, and indexes that link a source record to one or more related records. This is accomplished through a new feature, the Bibliographic Record Linking Profile. This profile allows you to create multiple profiles for multiple record relationships.

### **WebVoyáge**

---

You can edit existing display configuration files in order for the relationships to display correctly in WebVoyáge. A new code has been created which, when added to the appropriate configuration file, displays the related records. The new code is a four-digit number, 3500, and is similar to the 3000 code used to display linked resources or the 4000 code used to display the bibliographic record in MARC format.

---

You can also configure WebVoyáge to display a related records list for relationships which exceed the maximum number of records defined in the opac.ini file.

## Cataloging

---

In the Cataloging module, staff can search for, review, and edit the related records using current cataloging functions. If the active bibliographic record contains any of the subfields that define a bibliographic record relationship, a new menu option displays on the menu bar.

The Record Relationships menu lists any profiles that include tags/subfields that exist in the current active record. Selecting one of the profiles returns a list of all related records.

**NOTE:**

Any bibliographic records that have been suppressed do not display in WebVoyáge. However, they do display in the Cataloging module.

Also, if multiple owning libraries exist for records in the database, related records only display per owning library. That is, only the related records belonging to the same owning library as the source record display in WebVoyáge.

## Configuring WebVoyáge for Bibliographic Record Linking

---

The opac.ini file and the display configuration files need to be configured in order to properly display related records in WebVoyáge.

There are two stanzas in the opac.ini file that must be configured for Bibliographic Record Linking.

- [View\_Record\_Page] stanza
- [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza

### [View\_Record\_Page] Stanza

Four variables in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza accommodate the display of a source record with an exceedingly large number of related records. See [Figure B-1](#).

```
[View_Record_Page]
MaxRelatedRecords=
MaxRelatedRecordsMessage=
MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData=
MaxRelatedRecordsBorder=
```

**Figure B-1. Related records variables in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza**

If the related records of the source record do not exceed the maximum, they display in the detailed record view of the source record. These related records actually display in a table format. Two of the variables allow you to control this table.

**NOTE:**

The [View\_Record\_Page] stanza has been truncated to display only those variables related to Bibliographic Record Linking.

**Table B-1. Related records variables in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza**

Variable	Description	Default
MaxRelatedRecords	<p>The MaxRelatedRecords variable defines the maximum number of related records which can display with a source record. If the number of related records exceeds this number, the system supplies a hyperlink to a new web page displaying a title list of all related records.</p> <p>To define the maximum number of related records, enter a number after the equal sign following the MaxRelatedRecords variable.</p>	30

**Table B-1. Related records variables in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza**

MaxRelatedRecordsMessage	<p>Message which displays on the source record display as a hyperlink when the maximum number of related records exceeds the number set in the MaxRelatedRecords variable.</p> <p>For example, if the MaxRelatedRecords variable is set to 30, and the source record is linked to 50 related records, the message defined in the MaxRelatedRecordsMessage variable displays as a hyperlink. When you click the hyperlink, the system creates a web page displaying a title list of all the related records.</p> <p>To define the maximum related records message, enter the message you want to display in the source record after the equal sign in the MaxRelatedRecordsMessage variable.</p>	<p>“Click here for related records”</p>
MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData	<p>The MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData variable allows you to control the color of the background of the fields in the related records table that displays in the detailed record view of the source record.</p> <p>You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData variable to configure the color of the text on a page.</p> <p>For example, if you want to make the cells white, you would enter ffffff (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData variable.</p>	
MaxRelatedRecordsBorder	<p>The MaxRelatedRecordsBorder variable allows you to define the width of the related records table border that displays in the detailed record view of the source record.</p> <p>To define the border width for the related records table, enter a number after the MaxRelatedRecordsBorder variable.</p> <p>Enter a “0” (zero) to make the border invisible; enter a “1” (one) to make the border width the same as all other table displays in WebVoyage.</p>	0 (zero)

[Figure B-2](#) shows related records displayed on the View Record page.

Bibliographic	Holdings	Table of Contents	Linked Resources																
MARC Format																			
<i>Journal of academic librarianship.</i>																			
<b>Database:</b> Endeavor Library of Information																			
<b>Child Records:</b> # <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;">#</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Author</th> <th style="width: 40%;">Full Title</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Date</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>[1]</td> <td>Glynn, Thomas G.</td> <td>Academic Librarianship in the 21st Century.</td> <td>2000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>[2]</td> <td>Blahut, Kevin L.</td> <td>Current reviews in Academic Librarianship.</td> <td>2000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>[3]</td> <td>Nolan, Ted.</td> <td>Goals of the profession.</td> <td>2000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				#	Author	Full Title	Date	[1]	Glynn, Thomas G.	Academic Librarianship in the 21st Century.	2000	[2]	Blahut, Kevin L.	Current reviews in Academic Librarianship.	2000	[3]	Nolan, Ted.	Goals of the profession.	2000
#	Author	Full Title	Date																
[1]	Glynn, Thomas G.	Academic Librarianship in the 21st Century.	2000																
[2]	Blahut, Kevin L.	Current reviews in Academic Librarianship.	2000																
[3]	Nolan, Ted.	Goals of the profession.	2000																
<b>Preceding Title:</b> # <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;">#</th> <th style="width: 90%;">Full Title</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>[1]</td> <td><a href="#">Original Journal of Academic librarianship</a></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				#	Full Title	[1]	<a href="#">Original Journal of Academic librarianship</a>												
#	Full Title																		
[1]	<a href="#">Original Journal of Academic librarianship</a>																		
<b>Title:</b> Journal of academic librarianship. ]																			
<b>Primary Material:</b> Periodical																			
<b>Publisher:</b> [Ann Arbor, MI, etc., Mountainside Pub.]																			

Figure B-2. Related records display in WebVoyage

Figure B-2 is the type of related record display that results if the number of related records is less than the number defined in the `MaxRelatedRecords` variable.

Using Figure B-2 as a guide:

- the `MaxRelatedRecordMainTableData` variable controls the background color of the results table
- the `MaxRelatedRecordsBorder` variable controls the size of the results table border (0)

Figure B-3 is the type of related record display that results if the number of related records is greater than the number defined in the `MaxRelatedRecords` variable.

Bibliographic	Holdings	Table of Contents	Link
MARC Format			
<i>Arien-Album berühmte Arien für Sopran mit Klavierbegleitung</i>			
<b>Database:</b> Endeavor Library of Information			
<b>Child Records:</b> <a href="#">Click here to display related records</a>			
<b>Title:</b> Arien-Album berühmte Arien für Sopran mit Klavierbegleitung ]			
<b>Primary Material:</b> Music			
<b>Publisher:</b> Frankfurt Leipzig Peters [19-?]			

Figure B-3. Maximum related record display in WebVoyage

---

Using Figure B-3 as a guide the `MaxRelatedRecordMessage` variable displays after the Child Records label **Click here to display related records**.

If a patron clicks the related records hyperlink, the results display as in Figure B-5 on page 11. You can configure the results table on this page by changing the variables in the `[Max_Related_Records_Page]` stanza (see [The \[Max\\_Related\\_Records\\_Page\] Stanza on page B-8](#)).

### The `[Max_Related_Records_Page]` Stanza

The `[Max_Related_Records_Page]` is a stanza which has been added to the `opac.ini` file for bibliographic record linking (see [Figure B-4](#)).

This stanza defines the appearance of the web page that displays when a user clicks the maximum related records hyperlink (see [MaxRelatedRecords on page B-5](#)) in the source record display.

---

```
[Max_Related_Records_Page]
Background=
Text=
BGCOLOR=
LINK=
VLINK=
ALINK=
Records_per_page=1
HotLink_#=1
HotLink_1=
HotLink_2=
HotLink_3=
Leading#Text=[ ]
Trailing#Text=[ ]
MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData=
MaxReltedRecordsBorder=
HostRecLinkTextTop=
HostRecLinkTextBottom=
```

---

**Figure B-4. [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza of the opac.ini file**

The first six variables within the [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] are the same as the [Html\_Body] stanza. They allow you to configure the background of a page as an image or a color, the color of the text on a page, the color of an unclicked (unvisited) link on a page, the color of a clicked (visited) link on a page, and the color of a link as it is being clicked.

[Table B-2](#) details the variables of the [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza.

**Table B-2. [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

Variable	Description
Records_per_page Default = 10	<p>The Records_per_page variable allows you to control the number of related records which display on the page.</p> <p>For example, if the total number of records related to your source record is 100, and you set this variable to 25, then the related records display 25 records at one time. Patrons must click the next button to view additional records.</p> <p>Enter a number after the Records_per_page variable to define the number of records to display at one time on the Max Related Records page.</p>
HotLink_N ... Variables	<p>The HotLink_N variables control which fields in the related records table are used as hotlinks. The following variables are used:</p> <p>HotLink_# # (Row number column)      HotLink_1 Column 2      HotLink_2 Column 3      Hotlink_3 Column 4</p> <p>These variables control the hotlinks for the related records on both the detailed view of the source record and on the Max Related Records page.</p> <p>After each variable, enter Y (yes) to indicate that this field in the headings list is to be a hyperlink to the record display page for that record. Enter N (no) to prevent this field from being used as a link.</p> <p>The HotLink_1, 2, and 3 variables do not represent specific types of data - each variable refers to a particular column, no matter what is in the column. The data that displays is controlled by the Search Results selected for the particular profile.</p>

**Table B-2. [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

Variable	Description
Leading#Text=   and Trailing#Text=  ]	<p>The Leading#Text and Trailing#Text variables allow you to make the hypertext link connected to the number in the # column larger. This is done by specifying extra characters that display before and after each record number that displays in the # column. These characters simply display on screen in order to allow the hypertext link to be much larger than the single digits that sometimes display in this column.</p> <p>Enter the text to display before the number after the Leading#Text variable; enter the text to display after the number after the Trailing#Text variable. Entering a pipe (" ") after the variable causes a space to display on screen. (Entering spaces after the variable does not cause spaces to display on screen.)</p>
MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData	<p>The MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData variable allows you to control the background color of the fields in the related records table. The related records table displays after the max related records hyperlink is clicked in the detailed record view of the source record.</p> <p>You must use a hexadecimal rgb color code to specify a color. Enter a hexadecimal color code after the MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData variable to configure the color of the text on a page.</p> <p>For example, if you want to make the cells white, you would enter ffffff (the hexadecimal color code for white) after the MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData variable.</p>
MaxRelatedRecordsBorder  Default = 1	<p>The MaxRelatedRecordsBorder variable allows you to define the width of the related records table border. The related records table displays after the max related records hyperlink is clicked on the detailed record view of the source record.</p> <p>To define the border width for the related records table, enter a number after the MaxRelatedRecordsBorder variable.</p> <p>Enter a "0" (zero) to make the border invisible; enter a "1" (one) to make the border width the same as all other table displays in WebVoyage.</p>

**Table B-2. [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini file**

Variable	Description
HostRecLinkTextTop	The HostRecLinkTextTop variable allows you to define the text for the hyperlink which returns the patron from the related records list to the source record display. The hyperlink displays above the list.  The default text is “Click here to return to the original record.” You can change the text to anything you want.
HostRecLinkTextBottom	The <b>HostRecLinkTextBottom</b> variable allows you to define the text for the hyperlink which returns the patron from the related records list to the source record display. The hyperlink displays below the list.  The default text is “Click here to return to the original record.” You can change the text to anything you want.

Once the [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza has been configured, the page displays in WebVoyage as in [Figure B-5](#).

#	Author	Full Title
[1]	Gluck, Christoph Willibald	Alceste [Nuottijulkaisu] arie der Alceste
[2]	Rossini, Gioacchino	Barbier von Sevilla [Nuottijulkaisu] Cavatine der Rosina: Frag ich mein bekomm
[3]	Bizet, Georges	Carmen [Nuottijulkaisu] Habanera: Ja die Liebe hat bunte Flügel
[4]	Bizet, Georges	Carmen [Nuottijulkaisu] Sequidilla: Draussen am Wall von Sevilla
[5]	Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus	Cosi fan tutte [Nuottijulkaisu] Arie der Dorabella: Ein loser Dieb ist Amor
[6]	Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus	Cosi fan tutte [Nuottijulkaisu] Schon ein Mädchen von fünfzehn Jahren
[7]	Wagner, Richard	Der fliegende Holländer [Nuottijulkaisu] Ballade der Senta
[8]	Nicolai, Otto	Die lustigen Weiber von Windsor [Nuottijulkaisu] Arie der Anna
[9]	Nicolai, Otto	Die lustigen Weiber von Windsor [Nuottijulkaisu] Arie der Frau Fluth
[10]	Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus	Don Juan [Nuottijulkaisu] Arie der Zerline: Schmäle, tobe lieber Junge

**Figure B-5. Maximum related records display in WebVoyage**

Using Figure B-5 as a guide:

- the RecordsPerPage variable controls the number of titles that display at one time (10)
- the Hotlinks variables control which columns of information should display as hyperlinks (Hotlink\_# and Hotlink\_1)

- 
- the `MaxRelatedRecordMainTableData` variable controls the background color of the results table
  - the `MaxRelatedRecordsBorder` variable controls the size of the table border (1)
  - the `HostRecLinkTextTop` variable controls the hyperlink above the results table (Click here to return to the original record)
  - the `HostRecLinkTextBottom` variable controls the hyperlink below the results table (Click here to return to the original record)

## **Basic Record Display Customizing Information**

The following section is an introduction to the record display files and how to edit them. This is a general discussion and not specific to Bibliographic Record Linking. Please read this section if you are unfamiliar with editing files of this type. If you are familiar with these files, you can skip to the next section, [Configuring the `DisplayN.cfg` file for Bibliographic Record Linking](#) beginning on [B-15](#).

The `displayn.ini` file is located in each of the `/m1/voyager/xxxdb/etc/webvoyage` database sub-directories (`/local`, `/z3950`, `/vcit`, or `/zcit`).

When a user selects a record entry from a WebVoyage index to display the record's detail, the system looks for data in the MARC bibliographic record, the MARC holdings record, the line item in the purchase order, and the item record. Whenever any of these records are present, the system displays data based on a variety of factors including:

- Definitions in the `*.ini` and `*.cfg` files (described in this section)
- Available data in the MARC bibliographic record
- Available data in the linked MARC holdings record(s)
- Available data in the linked line item copy(ies) of a purchase order(s)
- Available data in the linked item record(s)

However, before the system constructs a display from this data, it first considers whether or not records have been set for suppression from WebVoyage displays. This is always accomplished by the manual or automatic setting of the `Suppress from OPAC` values in either the MARC bibliographic record or the MARC holdings record, or both.

### **DisplayN.cfg Files**

The `displayn.cfg` files dictate the information that displays in the Record Details in the OPAC.

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page

The `displayn.cfg` files, along with the `print.cfg`, `save.cfg`, and `email.cfg` files, can contain any tag, indicator, subfield combination from a MARC bibliographic record, as well as text labels for those combinations.

In addition, the file can contain one of the following codes.

**Table B-3. Example of codes available for display configuration files**

Code	Description
2000	Table of Contents (505 subfields a, r, t, g)
3000	856 Links (Linked Resources from 856 tag)
3500	Related bibliographic records
4000	Marc record
5000	Database name of Bib Record
8000	UNICODE characters (Original Language from 880 tags)
9000	Holdings Information
9500	Display Holdings Summary information

**NOTE:**

The list of codes in [Table B-3](#) is only a partial list.

You can modify or delete everything in the `displayn.cfg` files. However, deleting certain information could disable your patrons from accessing available information about your bibliographic information. A sample `displayn.cfg` file is shown in [Figure B-7](#) on [page B-15](#).

For each label, you assign one or more MARC tags, indicator values, and subfields. You may add other labels, change any already supplied, or delete any already supplied, reassign tags/subfields to other labels, remove subfields, add subfields, specify different indicator values, and so on.

You can also reorder the labels to suit your needs, reorder the sequence of multiple fields displaying under one label, or split out the grouped tags with individual labels. If you want, you can completely redo the entire configuration although Endeavor believes that you only need to edit these to meet local needs rather than completely redo them.

You can add a hypertext title link (search redirect) to the WebVoyage display of author, title, subject or call number fields. After the end of the tag subfields for which you want a link, add a T (for title), S (subject), A (Author), D (Date) or C (call number) and the subfields for the hypertext. See [Figure B-6](#) for an example.

---

---

Supersedes:

780 02 at T t

780 03 at T t

---

**Figure B-6. Example of a search redirect in displayn.cdf file**

In the following configuration file examples, xx indicates that any indicator values apply. To indicate a blank, use the pipe or vertical bar ( | ). Notice the labels used for the 000, 006, 007, and 008 fields. When the system finds these byte position values in the MARC record, it uses the `displayn.cfg` file to supply the labels, and then retrieves the actual text descriptor from the `marcinfo.ini` file.

A sample `displayn.cfg` file is shown in [Figure B-7](#).

```
Database: +No information available
5000
Main Author:
 100 XX aqd A aq
 110 XX ab A ab
Title:
 240 XX aplskfmnor T apl
 730 XX aplskfmnor T apl
 245 XX abcfnps
Variant Title:
 246 XX abfnp T ab
Continues:
 780 00 at
 780 01 at
Supersedes:
 780 02 at
 780 03 at
Primary Material:
 000 06 2
Physical Description:
 007 00 1
Includes:
 006 00 1
Holdings Information: +No Data Available
9000
```

---

**Figure B-7. Sample DisplayN.cfg File**

---

### **Configuring the Displayn.cfg file for Bibliographic Record Linking**

---

In order to display related records in WebVoyage, the `displayn.cfg` file must be edited to include a new code. This new code signals the system to check the profiles defined in System Administration for related records. If the system finds

---

one or more related records, the information selected on the Search Results tab for the profile displays as a hyperlink. Clicking the hyperlink displays the related record.

Related records hyperlinks can be added to the `displayn.cfg` file you have defined to display a detailed view of a bibliographic record. For example, if you have defined the `display1.cfg` file to contain many tags and subfields in order to display very complete and detailed information about a bib record, use that same configuration file to display related records.

Follow the steps in [Procedure B-1, Choosing a Displayn.cfg file](#), to select a `displayn.cfg` file.



### Procedure B-1. Choosing a Displayn.cfg file

---

1. In the appropriate `displayn.cfg` file, type the text you would like to display in WebVoyage to label related records. This label should be typed flush against the left margin.

For example, if you want “Linked Records:” to display as the label in WebVoyage, type **Linked Records:** in the configuration file.

You can specify a message (a display constant) to display in WebVoyage if the current record is not related to any other records.

2. Enter a space then a plus sign ( + ) after the linked records label followed by the message you want to display if there are no related records. For example, if you want the message “No Related Records” to display, type **+No Related Records** after the label.

**NOTE:**

Be aware that the system uses the textual messages for all records. For example, if you added “+No related records” as a display constant for the “Related Records” label, that display constant would display for all materials without related records.

3. Enter a carriage return.
4. Enter the 3500 code followed by the profile code you want the system to use to look for related records.

For example, if the profile code is “ISSNPREC,” enter three spaces followed by **3500 ISSNPREC**.



**IMPORTANT:**

*This line must be indented 3 spaces from the left margin.*

---

If no there is no information associated with the code or MARC tag, then nothing displays (including the label), unless information is included after the plus sign.

You can leave up to one blank line between all labels and codes or tags. If you insert more than one blank line, only one blank line displays.

If you added the information, the `display1.cfg` file would include the two lines shown in Figure B-8.

---

```
Linked Records: +No Related Records  
3500 ISSNPREC
```

Figure B-8. Linked records section of `display1.cfg` file



**IMPORTANT:**

*If you want to display related records for every Bib Linking Profile you have created, you must add the 3500 code for every profile.*

For example, if you created four Bib Linking Profiles named “Child,” “Parent,” “ISSNPreceding,” and “ISSNSucceeding,” you need to add each of the Profile Codes for these profiles to a display configuration file following the 3500 code.

For example, you could add multiple bib linking profiles to the `display1.cfg` file as shown in Figure B-9.

```

Child Records: +No Related Records
    3500 790CHILD

Parent Records: +No Related Records
    3500 790PARENT

Preceding Title: +No Related Records
    3500 ISSNPREC

Succeeding Title: +No Related Records
    3500 ISSNSUCC

```

**Figure B-9.** Example of a display1.cfg file for multiple bib linking profiles

When you display a source record in WebVoyage, the system sees the 3500 code in the display, checks the Bib Linking Profiles, and displays the corresponding information.

For this example, assume that the system found Child records related to our source record but no Parent, Preceding, or Succeeding related records. The WebVoyage display for the display1.cfg described in [Figure B-9](#) would look like the example in Figure B-10.

<i>Journal of academic librarianship.</i>			
<b>Database:</b> Endeavor Library of Information			
<b>Child Records:</b> #	<b>Author</b>	<b>Full Title</b>	<b>Date</b>
[1.]	Glynn, Thomas G.	Academic Librarianship in the 21st Century.	2000
[2.]	Blahut, Kevin L.	Current reviews in Academic Librarianship.	2000
[3.]	Nolan, Ted.	Goals of the profession.	2000
<b>Preceding Title:</b> #	<b>Full Title</b>		
[1.]	Original Journal of Academic Librarianship		
<b>Title:</b> Journal of academic librarianship.			
<b>Primary Material:</b> Periodical			
<b>Publisher:</b> [Ann Arbor, MI, etc., Mountainside Pub.]			
<hr/>			
<b>Database:</b> Endeavor Library of Information			
<b>Location:</b> Main Collection (3rd Floor)			
<b>Call Number:</b> Z671 J58			
<b>Number of Items:</b> 1			
<b>Status:</b> Not Charged			
<b>Older Issues:</b> 1- 1991-			

**Figure B-10.** WebVoyage display for multiple bib linking profiles

Each of the Child Records displays as a hyperlink. Clicking a hyperlink displays the detailed record view of the child record.

The detailed record view of a related record always includes a hyperlink to return to the source record. You can define the text for the hyperlink in the [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza (see [The \[Max\\_Related\\_Records\\_Page\] Stanza on page B-8](#) for more information).

A hyperlink to view related records displays if the number of related records exceeds the maximum related records defined in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza in the opac.ini. The text of the hyperlink is also defined in the [View\_Record\_Page] stanza (see [\[View\\_Record\\_Page\] Stanza on page B-4](#)).

---

[REDACTED]

Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.  
See notice on first page

## Index

---

### Symbols

---

- variable, [3-129](#)  
# column  
    hyperlinked text in  
    size, [3-88](#)  
# symbol  
    ignore text in files, using to, [3-5](#)  
# variable, [3-86](#), [3-103](#), [3-156](#)

---

### Numerics

---

1 variable, [3-25](#)  
1005 code, [3-231](#)  
2 variable, [3-25](#)  
24HR variable, [3-73](#)  
3 variable, [3-25](#)  
3500 code  
    displayN.cfg file, [B-3](#), [B-16](#)  
4 variable, [3-25](#)  
856 links, [5-99](#)  
880 field  
    linking, [1-14](#)

---

### A

---

About this document, [0-xxxvii](#)  
audience, [0-xxxvii](#)  
comments, [0-xlii](#)  
conventions used, [0-xl](#)  
how to use, [0-xxxix](#)  
purpose, [0-xxxvii](#)  
reason for reissue, [0-xxxvii](#)  
access  
    WebVoyáge, to  
    allowing, [1-9](#)

Activate variable, [3-9](#)  
ActiveFontColor variable, [3-27](#), [3-82](#), [3-89](#), [3-98](#), [3-153](#)  
ActiveTabColor variable, [3-26](#), [3-81](#), [3-89](#), [3-98](#), [3-153](#)  
AddBibForm variable, [3-79](#)  
adding  
    databases to Select, [3-178](#)  
    punctuation, [3-220](#)  
ALINK variable, [2-6](#), [2-17](#), [7-14](#), [7-35](#)  
All variable, [3-111](#)  
AllowLineBreaks variable, [3-48](#)  
Alt Text, [3-153](#)  
ALT\_Note variable, [3-87](#), [3-103](#)  
ALT\_See\_Also variable, [3-87](#), [3-103](#)  
alternate button text, [5-111](#), [5-125](#), [7-38](#)  
alternate graphic representation, [1-12](#)  
AltRelevanceValue variable, [3-61](#)  
AM  
    see Time:formatting  
AM variable, [3-72](#)  
Any variable, [3-99](#)  
AnyCopy variable, [3-143](#)  
AnyCopyAt variable, [3-143](#)  
approved  
    order status, [3-53](#)  
Approved variable, [3-53](#)  
Approved+ variable, [3-53](#)  
[AppVar] stanza  
    , [3-5-3-6](#)  
ARTEmail loan and photocopy form screen, [2-160](#)–[2-163](#)  
    banner and footer image, [2-160](#)  
    button list, [2-163](#)  
    components, [2-160](#)–[2-163](#)  
    editing, [2-160](#)  
    toolbars, [2-160](#)  
    See also ARTEmail requests; Screens  
ARTEmail requests  
    See also ARTEmail loan and photocopy form screens; Requests  
    placing, [6-17](#)–[6-21](#)  
assistance messages  
    \*.htm files for, [3-199](#)  
    in \*.htm files, [3-199](#)  
at bindery status, [3-23](#)  
at bindery, requests pending status, [3-23](#)  
AtBindery variable, [3-23](#), [3-168](#)  
AtBinderyReq variable, [3-23](#)  
Author link, [hypertext](#), [3-218](#)

---

author search, 5-8  
Author variable, 3-157  
AuthorityRecEmailSubject variable, 3-112  
AuthorSearchRedirect variable, 3-174  
AuthorSearchText variable, 3-174  
AutoComplete  
    web browser setting  
        disabling, 7-45  
Automatic Record Details Display  
    toggling on/off, 3-54  
Available variable, 3-144

---

## B

background  
    page  
        displaying as an image, 2-6, 2-16  
background color, 2-77, 3-38, 5-6  
background image, 2-77, 3-38, 5-6  
Background variable, 2-6, 2-16, 5-123, 7-14, 7-34  
Background\_Color variable, 3-75  
BackToRecord variable, 3-131, 3-146  
Balance variable, 3-126  
banner  
    image, 2-76  
banner and footer image, 2-96, 2-111, 2-114, 2-118  
    ARTEmail loan and photocopy form, 2-160  
Barcode, 3-46  
barcode, 7-16  
Basic title lists, 5-91  
BGCOLOR variable, 2-6, 2-16, 5-124, 7-14, 7-35  
BibHold variable, 3-59  
BibInfo variable, 3-138  
bibliographic ID redirect to WebVoyage, 5-148  
Bibliographic level request screen, 2-146–2-150  
    button list, 2-150  
    components, 2-147  
    editing, 2-146  
Bibliographic level requests  
    screen, 2-146–2-150  
bibliographic record  
    displaying in WebVoyage, B-12–B-15  
    relationship, B-2  
        defining, B-2  
        displaying in WebVoyage, B-2  
        maintaining, B-3  
        variety, B-2  
suppressed  
    displaying in Cataloging, B-4  
    displaying in WebVoyage, B-4, B-12  
Bibliographic Record Linking  
    configuring, B-12  
        Voyager, B-3  
        WebVoyage record display, B-15–B-19  
    example record display in WebVoyage, B-18  
    profile, B-1, B-3  
Bibliographic tab, 5-99  
[BibRedirect] stanza, 5-148  
Bi-Weekly variable, 5-115  
Blank-type request  
    button list, 2-145  
screen  
    components, 2-143  
    editing, 2-142  
block messages  
    in \*.htm files, 3-199  
Bookbag, 5-120  
    button, 5-125, 5-127, 5-129, 5-135  
        Patron Information page, on, 5-124  
    clearing contents  
        confirmation message, 5-124  
    clearing contents of, 5-136  
    configuration, 5-120  
    deleting records from, 5-136  
    downloading contents of, 5-138  
    emailing contents of, 5-137  
    messages  
        customizing, 5-132  
        page, 5-121, 5-135  
        saving records to, 5-134  
        using Bookbag, 5-133  
Bookbag button  
    Patron Information page, on, 5-124  
Bookbag variable, 5-133  
[Bookbag\_Messages] stanza, 5-132, 5-133  
Boolean search  
    displaying/hiding relevance bars in title list, 3-54  
screen  
    See Builder (Boolean) search, screen  
[Boolean\_Search\_, 3-80  
BooleanRelevance variable, 3-54  
border width, 2-77  
Bottom variable, 3-73  
browse  
    course reserve, 5-27  
browse search  
    and headings list screen, 2-68–2-70

[Browse\_Page] stanza, 3-85  
Browse\_Simul variable, 3-148  
Btnxx\* variable, 3-71  
BtnxxFunction variable, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxGraphicDisabled variable, 3-71  
BtnxxGraphicDown variable, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxGraphicUp variable, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxGrapicDisabled variable, 2-9, 3-69, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxLink variable, 3-71  
BtnxxText variable, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxToggleGraphicUp variable, 3-71  
BtnxxToggleText variable, 3-71  
Builder (Boolean) search, 3-61, 5-12–5-16  
    and search.ini files, 3-233  
    combining, 5-16  
    configuring, 5-14  
    performing, 5-13  
    screen  
    search field set, number of  
        setting, 3-84  
Builder tab, 5-13  
Builder variable, 3-61, 3-76  
button  
    alternate text of, 5-111, 5-125, 7-38  
    Bookbag, 5-125, 5-127, 5-129, 5-135  
    Clear Selected, 5-91  
    Corridor/Route Search, 5-65  
    customizing text, 3-153–3-154  
    Database, 5-1, 5-3  
    Format for Print/Save, 5-138  
    Headings, 5-81, 5-85  
    help, 5-1  
    History, 5-70, 5-71  
    library information, 5-1  
    Limits, 5-74  
    LinkFinder, 5-38, 5-42  
    local catalog, 5-1  
    Maps, 5-54  
    next, 5-82  
    Note, 5-82, 5-86  
    Patron Information, 5-1  
    Point and Radius  
        search, 5-61  
    Polygon search, 5-59  
    Post Limits, 2-77, 5-90  
Preferences, 7-42  
Preferences, MyOPAC, 7-40, 7-42  
previous, 5-82  
Range search, 5-68  
Rectangle search, 5-55  
remote libraries, 5-1  
renew all, 7-64  
Request, 6-1  
Retain Selected, 5-90  
Save to Bookbag, 3-112, 5-131, 5-134  
search, 5-17  
See Also, 5-82, 5-86  
submit, 3-40  
text, 3-153  
Titles, 5-89  
button list  
    bibliographic level request screen, 2-150  
    blank-type request, 2-145  
    call slip request, 2-130  
    database selection, 2-58  
    Headings List, 2-71  
    hold, 2-135  
    Index New Zealand request screen, 2-159  
    item level request, 2-154  
    National Library of New Zealand BibU request screen, 2-159  
    Patron Information, 2-127  
    Patron login, 2-116  
    recall request, 2-135  
    record display, 2-108  
    references, 2-75  
    request page, 2-113  
    scope notes, 2-75  
    Search History page, 2-167  
    search limits, 2-54  
    Short Loan request, 2-141  
    title list, 2-94

---

C

calendar  
    Cataloging, 7-44  
call number, 5-49  
    index  
        simultaneous search (Z39.50), not available  
        with, 3-65  
Call Number (bottom half of record)

---

Title page, [2-83](#)  
 Call Slip, [3-206](#)  
     suspension message, [3-206](#)  
 Call slip request  
     button list, [2-130](#)  
     placing, [6-7–6-12](#)  
     screen, [2-128–2-131](#)  
         components of, [2-128](#)  
         editing, [2-128](#)  
 call slip request status, [3-24](#)  
 CallNumber variable, [3-171](#)  
 CallNumberSearchRedirect variable, [3-176](#)  
 CallNumberText variable, [3-176](#)  
 CallSlipPick variable, [3-142](#)  
 CallSlipRequest variable, [3-24, 3-169](#)  
 CallSlipSpecify variable, [3-142](#)  
 [CallSlipStatusCodes] stanza, [3-133](#)  
 CallSlipStatusCodes variable, [3-131](#)  
 Cancel variable, [3-128](#)  
 CancelButton variable, [3-129](#)  
 CancelRequests variable, [3-119](#)  
 cartbutton.gif file, [5-125](#)  
 Cataloging module, [B-4](#)  
     Related Records  
         maintaining, [B-3, B-4](#)  
     Related Records menu, [B-4](#)  
     suppressed record  
         displaying, [B-4](#)  
 CatalogingReview variable, [3-168](#)  
 Century variable, [3-13](#)  
 \*.cgi file  
     Pwebrecon.cgi, [1-6](#)  
 cgi-bin directory, [1-5](#)  
     contents of, [1-6](#)  
     path alias to  
         virtual directory, for, [1-4](#)  
 Change PIN button, [7-12](#)  
 Change PIN screen  
     customizing, [7-13](#)  
 changepin.gif file, [7-12](#)  
 changing  
     PINs in Circulation module, [7-6](#)  
 Charged Items  
     section of Patron Information page, [2-123](#)  
 charged items, [7-23](#)  
     check box feature, [7-23](#)  
     section of Patron Information page, [2-120](#)  
 charged status, [3-17](#)  
 Charged variable, [3-17, 3-120, 3-164](#)  
 charged, requests pending status, [3-17](#)  
 ChargedItem variable, [3-123](#)  
 ChargedReq variable, [3-17](#)  
 Check\_Item\_Avail variable, [3-141](#)  
 Circulation, [5-94, 7-44](#)  
 circulation desk, [7-57](#)  
 Circulation Policies dialog box, [7-58](#)  
 CirculationReview variable, [3-168](#)  
 claimed  
     order status, [3-53](#)  
 Claimed variable, [3-53](#)  
 Claimed+ variable, [3-53](#)  
 ClaimsReturned variable, [3-167](#)  
 classification field caption, [3-37](#)  
 Classification\_Label variable, [3-37](#)  
 Clear button, [2-82](#)  
 Clear button label, [5-7](#)  
 Clear Selected button, [5-91](#)  
 Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text variable, [3-108](#)  
 ClearButton variable, [3-83, 3-90, 3-101, 3-153](#)  
 clearing  
     Bookbag contents  
         confirmation message, [5-124](#)  
     Bookbag, contents of, [5-136](#)  
 closing WebVoyáge session, [5-146](#)  
 Cluster  
     default logged in to  
         configuring, [3-109](#)  
 Col1 variable, [3-37, 3-86](#)  
 Col2 variable, [3-38, 3-86](#)  
 Col3 variable, [3-38, 3-87](#)  
 color  
     background, [2-77](#)  
     pages not configured, of, [2-5](#)  
     text, [2-77](#)  
     WebVoyáge table, of, [3-80](#)  
 column  
     Item No., [5-82, 5-86](#)  
     Title Long, [5-90](#)  
 column 1 (#)  
     Title page, [2-82](#)  
 column 2  
     Title page, [2-83](#)  
 column 3  
     Title page, [2-83](#)  
 column 4  
     Title page, [2-83](#)  
 Combine  
     check box column  
         on Search History page, [5-17, 5-21](#)  
 Combined Builder Search

- button, on Search History page
  - configuring, [5-22](#)
- configuration, [5-20](#)
  - enabling, [5-20](#)
- Combined Search
  - See Simple search
- [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza, [3-88](#)
- [Combined\_Search\_Page] stanza, [3-88–3-92, 5-10](#)
- CombinedRelevance variable, [5-22](#)
- CombinedSearches variable, [5-20](#)
- combining
  - builder searches, [5-16](#)
  - command search, [5-9, 5-69](#)
- Comment variable, [3-139](#)
- [Communications] stanza, [3-11–3-12](#)
- ComplexSearch variable, [7-35](#)
- Config variable, [3-186](#)
- configuration file, [B-3](#)
  - display1.cfg, [2-104](#)
  - display2.cfg, [2-105](#)
  - display3.cfg, [2-105](#)
  - display4.cfg, [2-105](#)
  - display5.cfg, [2-105](#)
  - displayh.cfg, [3-229–3-230](#)
  - Displayn.cfg, [4-14](#)
  - displayn.cfg, [3-216–3-219](#)
  - Displayx.cfg, [4-16](#)
  - email.cfg, [3-235, 5-129](#)
  - emailf.cfg, [3-236](#)
  - emailh.cfg, [3-236](#)
  - httpd.conf, [1-4, 2-3](#)
  - linkfinder.cfg, [5-41](#)
  - opac.ini, [5-47](#)
  - request.cfg, [3-232](#)
  - requesth.cfg, [3-232](#)
  - RequestURI.cfg, [5-46, 5-47](#)
  - required elements of, [3-4](#)
  - save.cfg, [3-235](#)
  - saveX.cfg, [3-114](#)
- configuring
  - Bookbag, [5-120](#)
  - Course Reserve search, [3-95](#)
  - Database page, [5-6](#)
  - LinkFinder
    - with Citation Server, [5-38](#)
  - MyOPAC, [7-29–7-42](#)
  - Patron Self-Registration, [7-47](#)
- Connect button label, [5-7](#)
- connect.ini file, [2-58, 3-177–3-191](#)
  - default file structure, [3-178](#)
- overview, [3-178](#)
- troubleshooting, [4-7](#)
- connecting
  - back to local database, [3-70](#)
- connecting to Voyager, [4-5](#)
- connecting Voyager, [4-17](#)
  - hook to (local) holdings, [4-10](#)
  - simultaneous search, [4-8–4-10](#)
  - to resources within Voyager, [4-5](#)
- contacting Endeavor Information Systems, Inc., [0-xli](#)
- Controlled\_Element\_Label variable, [3-36](#)
- coordinate description, [3-31](#)
- Coordinate variable, [3-31, 5-61](#)
- coordinates
  - maximum number of allowed in geospatial search, [3-32](#)
- Copies\_Claimed variable, [3-173](#)
- Copies\_Ordered variable, [3-173](#)
- Copies\_Received variable, [3-172](#)
- copy number information, [3-45](#)
- Copy\_Claimed variable, [3-173](#)
- Copy\_Info variable, [3-141](#)
- Copy\_Number variable, [3-45](#)
- Copy\_Ordered variable, [3-173](#)
- Copy\_Received variable, [3-172](#)
- Corridor/Route Search
  - button, [5-65](#)
- corridor/route search
  - customizing, [5-67](#)
  - with Geospatial searching tools, [5-64](#)
- Corridor\_Search variable, [3-29](#)
- Count variable, [3-71](#)
- Course Reserve
  - browse
    - alphabetical list page, [5-33](#)
    - enabling, [5-31](#)
    - location selection page, [5-31](#)
    - performing, [5-28](#)
  - search
    - browse interface, [5-27](#)
- Course Reserve search, [5-23](#)
  - configuring, [3-95](#)
  - drop-down interface, [5-23](#)
  - performing, [5-24, 5-28](#)
  - screen, [2-31](#)
    - configuration diagram, [2-31](#)
  - tab, [5-24, 5-28](#)
- Course variable, [3-76, 3-100, 7-36](#)
- [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza, [3-97](#)
- course\_reserve\_alpha.htm file, [5-36](#)

---

[Course\_Reserve\_Location\_Page] stanza, 5-33  
course\_reserve\_course.htm file, 5-36  
[Course\_Reserve\_Location\_Page] stanza, 5-35, 5-36  
course\_reserve\_dept.htm file, 5-36  
course\_reserve\_instructor.htm file, 5-36  
[Course\_Reserve\_Location\_Page] stanza, 5-35, 5-32  
course\_reserve\_locs.htm file, 5-36  
[Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page] stanza, 3-95  
CourseDepartment variable, 7-36  
CourseInstructor variable, 7-36  
CourseReserve variable, 3-61, 7-36  
CourseReserveBrowse variable, 5-31  
CourseSection variable, 7-36  
CurrentPIN variable, 7-15  
customization information, basic  
    WebVoyáge  
        record display, B-12–B-15  
customizing  
    Change PIN screen, 7-13  
    corridor/route search, 5-67  
    Headings List, 5-83  
    initial (WebVoyáge page), 5-3  
    initial (WebVoyáge page)  
        setting, 2-3  
    overview of, 3-3  
    Patron Self-Registration page, 7-49  
    Point and Radius search, 5-63  
    Polygon search, 5-60  
    Range search, 5-68  
    rectangle search, 5-56  
    request selection, 6-2  
    saveX.cfg file, 3-114  
    screen configuration, 2-1  
    Search History page, 5-71  
    Simultaneous search, 5-80

Database button, 5-1, 5-3  
Database Code field, 5-41  
Database Definitions, 5-41  
    Voyager System Administration module, 3-182  
Database List label, 5-7  
database name, 3-44  
Database page, 5-3–5-7  
    configuring, 5-6  
database search status  
    Done, 5-79  
    Receiving, 5-79  
    searching, 5-79  
Database selection  
    button list, 2-58  
Database variable, 3-76, 3-139  
Database\_Name variable, 3-44, 3-150  
[Database\_Page] stanza, 3-101  
Database\_Page stanza, 5-6  
DatabasePreferences variable, 7-30, 7-32  
DatabasesSearched variable, 7-36  
DatabaseToSearch variable, 2-169  
    NoHits\_Redirect stanza, 2-169  
date field caption, 3-36  
[Date] stanza, 3-13  
date type field caption, 3-36  
Date variable, 3-36, 3-106, 3-126, 3-146  
Date\_Title variable, 3-35  
Date\_Type variable, 3-36  
dates  
    formatting, 2-105  
Days variable, 3-141  
dbselmsg.htm file, 3-207  
default  
    cluster  
        logged in to, 3-109  
    directory, 1-22  
    display screen  
        setting, 2-105  
    mouse-over text  
        of LinkFinder button, 5-39  
PIN  
    setting, 7-4  
Simultaneous search search.ini, 4-13  
WebVoyáge page, 1-4, 2-3  
Default variable, 3-26, 3-76

---

## D

Daily variable, 5-115  
Damaged variable, 3-167  
database  
    adding to Select Database screen, 3-178  
    defining in System Administration module  
    local  
        connecting back to, 3-70

DefaultCluster variable, [3-109](#)  
DefaultImageDir variable, [1-22](#), [3-6](#)  
DefaultLang variable, [1-22](#), [3-6](#)  
DefaultPIN variable, [7-4](#)  
Delete? variable, [5-124](#)  
DeleteSavedRecords variable, [5-124](#)  
deleting  
    records from Bookbag, [5-136](#)  
Department variable, [3-100](#)  
derivation field, [B-3](#)  
Description variable, [3-25](#)  
Details tab, [5-99](#)  
directory  
    cgi-bin  
        contents of, [1-6](#)  
    default, [1-22](#)  
    display, [4-12](#)  
    html, [5-3](#)  
    images, [2-7](#), [3-67](#), [5-125](#), [5-127](#)  
    structure  
        WebVoyáge, [3-2](#)  
    webvoyage, [5-38](#)  
Directory index  
    web server  
        defining, [1-4](#)  
DirectoryIndex entry  
    setting initial page in, [1-5](#)  
DirectoryIndex variable, [2-3](#)  
DisabledSavedSearch.gif file, [5-110](#)  
disabling  
    AutoComplete  
        web browser setting, [7-45](#)  
    features in WebVoyáge, [3-45](#)  
    MyOPAC Preferences, [7-30](#)  
discharged in transit status, [3-20](#)  
discharged in transit, requests pending status, [3-20](#)  
discharged status, [3-21](#)  
Discharged variable, [3-21](#), [3-166](#)  
discharged, requests pending status, [3-21](#)  
DischargedReq variable, [3-21](#)  
display  
    items information  
        using Status Patron Groups, [7-60](#)  
    WebVoyáge, [4-11](#)  
display directories, [4-2](#)  
display directory, [4-12](#)  
Display screen  
    default  
        setting, [2-105](#)  
display.ini file, [3-215](#)–[3-216](#)

display1.cfg file, [2-104](#)  
display2.cfg file, [2-105](#)  
display3.cfg file, [2-105](#)  
display4.cfg file, [2-105](#)  
display5.cfg file, [2-105](#)  
displayh.cfg  
    temporary location display in, [3-231](#)  
displayh.cfg file, [3-229](#)–[3-230](#)  
DisplayHoldingsInfo variable, [3-161](#)  
displaying records, [5-99](#)–[5-103](#)  
Displayn.cfg file, [4-14](#)  
displayN.cfg file  
    3500 code, [B-16](#)  
    configuration  
        basic, [B-12](#)–[B-15](#)  
        for Bibliographic Record Linking, [B-15](#)–[B-19](#)  
    display constant, [B-16](#)  
    example, [B-15](#)  
        Related Records, multiple profiles, [B-18](#)  
        related records, single profile, [B-17](#)  
displayn.cfg file, [3-216](#)–[3-219](#)  
DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom variable, [3-159](#)  
DisplayPostLimitButtonTop variable, [3-159](#)  
DisplayPostSortMenuBottom variable, [3-160](#)  
DisplayPostSortMenuTop variable, [3-160](#)  
DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown variable, [3-91](#), [3-161](#)  
DisplaySearchFormBottom variable, [3-161](#)  
DisplaySearchFormTop variable, [3-161](#)  
Displayx.cfg file, [4-16](#)  
document classification check box caption, [3-37](#)  
Document\_Classification variable, [3-37](#)  
DOI (Digital Object Identifier)  
    resources, [3-10](#), [5-99](#)  
[DOI] stanza, [3-10](#)  
Done  
    database search status, [5-79](#)  
download formats, [3-112](#)  
    making unavailable for databases, [3-114](#)  
[Download\_Formats] stanza, [3-113](#)  
downloading  
    Bookbag, contents of, [5-138](#)  
DownSavedSearch.gif file, [5-110](#)

---

**E**

Edit variable, [3-148](#)  
E-items

setting WebVoyage to display, 3-230  
element  
ID, 7-54  
Required, 7-53  
required in configuration files, 3-4  
Visible, 7-53

Email  
"Enter Your Email Address" dialog box  
customizing, 3-47  
table, 2-92, 2-107  
variable, 3-112

email  
format, 3-112  
email.cfg file, 3-235, 5-129  
EmailAddress variable, 3-111  
emailf.cfg file, 3-236  
emailh.cfg file, 3-236  
Emailing  
Bookbag, contents of, 5-137  
setting Subject line of, 3-112, 5-131  
Records, 5-140  
search results, 5-144  
EmailPrompt variable, 3-47  
EmailSubject1 variable, 3-112  
EmailSubject2 variable, 3-112, 5-131  
Empty variable, 3-60  
enabling  
Combined Builder Search, 5-20  
features in WebVoyage, 3-45  
MyOPAC, 7-30  
Patron Self-Registration, 7-47  
PINs, 7-4  
EndTime variable, 3-146  
error message  
in \*.htm files, 3-199  
login page, 7-16  
request short loan, 3-48  
Search Incompatible, 3-64  
ErrorFile variable, 3-79  
essential terms  
keyword  
search, in, 5-10  
excluding terms  
keyword search, from, 5-10  
executing  
previous search, 5-91  
exit  
button  
Patron Self-Registration, changing target of, 7-48

exiting WebVoyage, 5-146  
message, 3-79  
ExitPage variable, 3-79  
Expires variable, 3-129

## F

features, WebVoyage  
disabling and enabling in, 3-45  
Fee variable, 3-126  
FeePostingType variable, 3-126  
field  
Database Code, 5-41  
Find This, 5-9  
Field1 variable, 3-136  
Field2 variable, 3-137  
Field3 variable, 3-137  
Field4 variable, 3-137  
Field5 variable, 3-137  
Field6 variable, 3-137  
Field7 variable, 3-138  
file  
.cgi  
Pwebrecon.cgi, 1-6  
configuration, B-3  
display1.cfg, 2-104  
display2.cfg, 2-105  
display3.cfg, 2-105  
display4.cfg, 2-105  
display5.cfg, 2-105  
displayh.cfg, 3-229–3-230  
Displayn.cfg, 4-14  
displayn.cfg, 3-216–3-219  
Displayx.cfg, 4-16  
email.cfg, 3-235, 5-129  
emailf.cfg, 3-236  
emailh.cfg, 3-236  
httpd.conf, 1-4, 2-3  
linkfinder.cfg, 5-41  
request, 3-232  
requesth, 3-232  
required elements, 3-1–3-2  
save.cfg, 3-235  
savef, 3-235  
saveh, 3-235  
saveX.cfg, 3-114  
graphics

cartbutton.gif, 5-125  
 changepin.gif, 7-12  
 DisabledSavedSearch.gif, 5-110  
 DownSavedSearch.gif, 5-110  
 UpSavedSearch.gif, 5-110  
 view1.gif, 2-104  
 view1a.gif, 2-104  
 view2.gif, 2-105  
 view2a.gif, 2-105  
 view3.gif, 2-105  
 view3a.gif, 2-105  
 view4.gif, 2-105  
 view4a.gif, 2-105  
 view5.gif, 2-105  
 view5a.gif, 2-105  
**HTML**  
 dbselmsg.htm, 3-207  
 directory containing, 1-5  
 footer.htm, 3-207  
 header.htm, 3-207  
 libinfo.htm, 2-12, 3-207  
 logonmsg.html, 7-59  
 patron.css, 7-49  
 patroniidmsg.htm, 7-16  
 patronmsg.htm, 7-16  
 patronsocmsg.htm, 7-16  
 remote.htm, 2-13, 3-208  
 sdinoemail.htm, 5-117  
 webconerr.htm, 3-208  
 webvoy.htm, 2-10, 2-11, 3-208, 5-3  
**image**, 3-209–3-215  
 view1.gif, 2-104  
 view1a.gif, 2-104  
 view2.gif, 2-105  
 view2a.gif, 2-105  
 view3.gif, 2-105  
 view3a.gif, 2-105  
 view4.gif, 2-105  
 view4a.gif, 2-105  
 view5.gif, 2-105  
 view5a.gif, 2-105  
**initialization**  
 connect.ini, 2-58, 3-177–3-191  
 display, 3-215–3-216  
 formats.ini, 3-113  
 limits.ini, 2-50  
 opac.ini, 2-7, 3-12, 3-67, 3-95, 5-6, 5-10, 5-14, 5-38, 5-56, 5-57, 5-60, 5-63, 5-67, 5-68, 5-71, 5-75, 5-76, 5-80, 5-83, 5-87, 5-93, 5-103, 5-108, 5-110, 5-113, 5-114, 5-121, 5-123, 5-125, 5-129, 5-133, 6-2, 7-4, 7-11, 7-13, 7-16, 7-19, 7-29, 7-30, 7-33, 7-34, 7-38, 7-43  
 sdiemail.ini, 5-116  
 search, 3-232–3-233  
 search.ini, 3-62  
 voyager.ini, 3-11  
 voyager.ini, client-side, 5-78  
 voytomcat.ini, 7-47, 7-48  
 webvoyage.ini, 1-7, 3-5–3-11  
**initialization file**  
 opac.ini, 2-170  
**message**  
 disabling, 3-200  
**opac.ini**, 5-20, 5-22, 5-47  
**permission**  
 checking, 1-5  
**RequestURI.cfg**, 5-46, 5-47  
**search.ini**  
 for simultaneous search, 4-13  
**XML**  
 patron.css, 7-49  
 patron.xml, 7-49, 7-50, 7-54  
 patron.xsl, 7-49  
 FilePort variable, 3-11  
 FileServer variable, 3-11  
 FileTimeout variable, 3-11  
 Find Results in list, 5-9  
 Find This field, 5-9  
 FindResultsText variable, 3-91, 3-159  
 fines and fees, 7-71  
 section of Patron Information page, 2-121  
**Fines variable**, 3-120  
**[Folders] stanza**, 3-178, 3-180–3-181  
**font**  
 color, 3-27  
 font color, 3-33  
 header, 3-28  
**Font\_Color variable**, 3-28, 3-75, 3-105  
**FontColor variable**, 3-33  
 footer, 5-7  
 image, 2-76  
 footer.htm file, 3-207  
 footprint caption text font color, 3-33  
 Footprint drop-down list, 5-55, 5-59  
 footprint field label, 3-32  
 Footprint variable, 3-32  
**Form screens**  
 Index New Zealand, 2-155  
 National Library of New Zealand BibU, 2-155

---

format  
    date, [2-105](#)  
    download, [3-112](#)  
    email, [3-112](#)  
    print  
        format  
            save, [3-112](#)  
    time, [2-105](#)

Format for Print/Save button, [5-138](#)

format type  
    caption font color, [3-33](#)  
    field text, [3-33](#)

Format variable, [3-111](#)

Formats, [3-112](#)

formats.ini file, [3-113](#)  
    default, [3-113](#)

FormatType variable, [3-33](#)

full-text articles  
    locating using WebVoyage and OpenURL, [5-37](#)

---

**G**

[General] stanza, [3-12](#)  
[Generic Images] stanza, [3-10](#)  
Generic\_Title variable, [3-136](#)  
genre variable, [5-49](#)  
Geospatial Search, [3-26–3-36](#)  
    screen  
        configuration diagram, [2-37](#)  
geospatial search  
    maximum number of points allowed in, [3-32](#)

Geospatial Searching, [5-54–5-69](#)

GetNewHits variable, [5-114](#)

Getting Started, [1-1](#)  
    prerequisite skills and knowledge, [1-1](#)

graphic  
    representation, alternate, [1-14](#)

graphics file  
    cartbutton.gif, [5-125](#)  
    changepin.gif, [7-12](#)  
    DisabledSavedSearch.gif, [5-110](#)  
    DownSavedSearch.gif, [5-110](#)  
    UpSavedSearch.gif, [5-110](#)  
    view1.gif, [2-104](#)  
    view1a.gif, [2-104](#)  
    view2.gif, [2-105](#)

view2a.gif, [2-105](#)  
view3.gif, [2-105](#)  
view3a.gif, [2-105](#)  
view4.gif, [2-105](#)  
view4a.gif, [2-105](#)  
view5.gif, [2-105](#)  
view5a.gif, [2-105](#)

---

**H**

header, [5-7](#)  
header.htm file, [3-207](#)

heading  
    Browse  
        list  
            search results, viewing as, [5-78](#)

index  
    simultaneous search (Z39.50), not available  
        with, [3-65](#)

Heading Browse list, [5-85](#)  
    customizing, [5-87](#)

Heading List, [5-81](#)

Heading variable, [3-103](#)

Heading\_Type variable, [3-103](#)

Headings button, [5-81, 5-85](#)

Headings List, [5-81–5-83](#)  
    button list, [2-71](#)  
    customizing, [5-83](#)  
    screen  
        components of, [2-64](#)  
        editing, [2-63](#)  
        search results, viewing as, [5-78](#)

Headings variable, [3-76](#)

[Headings\_Page] stanza, [3-102](#)

help button, [5-1](#)

Help pages, [3-203](#)

Help text  
    Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI), cus-  
        tomizing, [5-117](#)

[HelpLocation] Stanza, [3-10](#)

hexadecimal color code, [B-9](#)

History, [5-70](#)

History (search) page, [3-61, 5-16, 5-17](#)  
    customizing, [5-21](#)  
    Search, [5-70](#)

History button, [5-70, 5-71](#)

History tab, [7-44](#)  
History variable, [3-76](#)  
Hits variable, [3-148](#)  
Hold request  
    button list, [2-135](#)  
    screen  
        components of, [2-132](#)  
        editing, [2-132](#)  
hold request placed status, [3-19](#)  
holdings information  
    setting WebVoyáge to display, [3-231](#)  
Holdings Jump Bar, [2-170](#)  
holdings records  
    sorting, [5-90](#)  
Holdings tab, [5-99](#)  
HoldingsInfoBackgroundColor variable, [3-162](#)  
HoldingsInfoForegroundColor variable, [3-162](#)  
HoldingsInfoItalics variable, [3-162](#)  
HoldRequest variable, [3-19](#), [3-165](#)  
holds/recalls, [6-3](#)  
Holds\_Recals variable, [3-77](#)  
Home Library  
    field label  
        configuring, [3-109](#)  
HomeLibrary variable, [3-109](#)  
hook to (local) holdings, [4-10](#)  
horizontal lines  
    WebVoyáge, in  
        enabling and disabling, [3-48](#)  
Horizontal\_Line\_Search variable, [3-31](#)  
HostRecLinkTextBottom variable, [B-11](#)  
    example, [B-12](#)  
HostRecLinkTextTop variable, [B-11](#)  
    example, [B-12](#)  
hotlink  
    record display, to, [2-82](#)  
HotLink\_# variable, [3-87](#), [3-104](#), [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_0 variable, [3-87](#), [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_1 variable, [3-88](#), [3-104](#), [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_2 variable, [3-88](#), [3-104](#), [3-155](#)  
Hotlink\_3 variable, [3-88](#), [3-104](#), [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_CallNumber variable, [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_Location variable, [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_MultipleHoldings variable, [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_N variable, [3-87](#), [3-104](#)  
Hotlink\_N variable, [B-9](#)  
    example, [B-11](#)  
HotLink\_NoHoldings variable, [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_Status variable, [3-155](#)  
HotLink\_Thumbnail variable, [3-155](#)

\*.htm file, [3-199](#)–[3-203](#)  
assistance messages, [3-199](#)  
block messages, [3-199](#)  
error messages, [3-199](#)  
help pages, [3-203](#)  
other pages, [3-205](#)  
HTML  
    View Record page, on, [A-9](#)  
        label, [A-9](#)  
    html directory, [5-3](#)  
HTML file  
    dbselmsg.htm, [3-207](#)  
    directory containing, [1-5](#)  
    footer.htm, [3-207](#)  
    header.htm, [3-207](#)  
    libinfo.htm, [3-207](#)  
    logonmsg.htm, [7-59](#)  
    message  
        disabling, [3-200](#)  
    patron.css, [7-49](#)  
    patroniidmsg.htm, [7-16](#)  
    patronmsg.htm, [7-16](#)  
    patronsocmsg.htm, [7-16](#)  
    remote.htm, [3-208](#)  
    sdinoemail.htm, [5-117](#)  
    webconerr.htm, [3-208](#)  
    webvoy.htm, [3-208](#), [5-3](#)  
[Html\_Body] stanza, [2-5](#)  
httpd.conf, [2-3](#)  
httpd.conf file, [1-4](#)  
hyperlink  
    text  
        size of, [3-88](#)  
hypertext link, [5-7](#)  
Hypertext links to OPAC, [3-218](#)

---

## I

ID element, [7-54](#)  
identification string  
    assigning to computers running WebVoyáge, [3-12](#)  
ignore text in file  
    using # symbol to, [3-5](#)  
image  
    background, [2-77](#), [3-38](#)  
    displaying as page background, [2-6](#), [2-16](#)

---

View Record page, on, A-9  
 image file, 3-209–3-215  
     view1.gif, 2-104  
     view1a.gif, 2-104  
     view2.gif, 2-105  
     view2a.gif, 2-105  
     view3.gif, 2-105  
     view3a.gif, 2-105  
     view4.gif, 2-105  
     view4a.gif, 2-105  
     view5.gif, 2-105  
     view5a.gif, 2-105  
 images directory, 2-7, 3-67, 5-125, 5-127  
 ImageServer, 2-82  
 importance  
     weighing search terms for in keyword search, 5-9  
 important terms  
     keyword search, in, 5-10  
 in process status, 3-24  
 in process, requests pending status, 3-24  
 in transit discharged status, 3-20  
 in transit discharged, requests pending status, 3-20  
 in transit on hold status, 3-20  
 in transit on hold, requests pending status, 3-21  
 in transit status, 3-19  
 in transit, requests pending status, 3-20  
 InactiveFontColor variable, 3-27, 3-82, 3-89, 3-99  
 InactiveTabColor variable, 3-26, 3-81, 3-89, 3-98, 3-153  
 Indefinite variable, 3-14  
 index  
     left-anchored, B-2  
 Index List, 5-89, 5-89–5-93  
 Index New Zealand  
     form screen  
         editing, 2-155  
     request screen  
         button list, 2-159  
         components, 2-156  
 IndexType variable, 7-35  
 information  
     linked resources, 5-102  
     table of contents, 5-101  
     viewing  
         charged items, 7-23  
         fines and fees, 7-71  
         personal, 7-22  
 initial (WebVoyage page)  
     setting, 2-3  
 initial (WebVoyage) page, 5-1  
     customizing, 5-3  
 initial (WebVoyage) page, 1-4  
     default screen (webvoy.htm), 2-10, 2-11  
     using search page as, 2-3  
 Initial Persistent Location Limit  
     feature, 3-55  
 initialization file  
     connect.ini, 2-58  
     formats.ini, 3-113  
     limits.ini, 2-50  
     opac.ini, 2-7, 3-12, 3-67, 3-95, 5-6, 5-10, 5-14, 5-20, 5-22, 5-38, 5-56, 5-57, 5-60, 5-63, 5-67, 5-68, 5-71, 5-75, 5-76, 5-80, 5-83, 5-87, 5-93, 5-103, 5-108, 5-110, 5-113, 5-114, 5-121, 5-123, 5-125, 5-129, 5-133, 6-2, 7-4, 7-11, 7-13, 7-16, 7-19, 7-29, 7-30, 7-33, 7-34, 7-38, 7-43  
     sdiemail.ini, 5-116  
     search.ini, 3-62  
         for simultaneous search, 4-13  
     voyager.ini, 3-11  
         client-side, 5-78  
     voymcat.ini, 7-47, 7-48  
     webvoyage.ini, 1-7, 3-5–3-11  
 InProcess variable, 3-24, 3-168  
 InProcessReq variable, 3-24  
 InputBoxMaxLength variable, 3-82, 3-90  
 InputBoxSize variable, 3-82, 3-90  
 Installing  
     WebVoyage, 1-3  
 installing  
     WebVoyage  
         separate machine from Oracle database machine, on, 1-10  
 Institution ID, 3-46, 7-16  
 Instructions variable, 3-140  
 Instructor variable, 3-99  
 InTransit variable, 3-19, 3-165  
 InTransitDischarged variable, 3-20, 3-165  
 InTransitDischargedReq variable, 3-20  
 InTransitOnHold variable, 3-20, 3-166  
 InTransitOnHoldReq variable, 3-21  
 InTransitReq variable, 3-20  
 IP address  
     of LinkFinder program on server, 5-38  
 item  
     linked resources, 5-102  
     MARC view, 5-102  
     request, 5-37  
     status, 3-163  
     table of contents, 5-101

Item level request  
button list, 2-154  
screen  
    components, 2-152  
    editing, 2-151

Item No. column, 5-82, 5-86

item status  
    at bindery, 3-23  
    at bindery, requests pending, 3-23  
    call slip request, 3-24  
    charged, 3-17  
    charged, with requests pending, 3-17  
    discharged, 3-21  
    discharged in transit, 3-20  
    discharged in transit, requests pending, 3-20  
    discharged, requests pending, 3-21  
    display  
        customizing, 3-14  
    display variable, 3-15  
    hold request placed, 3-19  
    in process, 3-24  
    in process, requests pending, 3-24  
    in transit, 3-19  
    in transit on hold, 3-20  
    in transit on hold, requests pending, 3-21  
    in transit, requests pending, 3-20  
    lost, library applied, 3-22  
    lost, library applied, requests pending, 3-22  
    lost, system applied, requests pending, 3-23  
    missing, 3-21  
    missing, requests pending, 3-22  
    on hold, 3-19  
    on hold, requests pending, 3-19  
    overdue, 3-18  
    overdue, requests pending, 3-18  
    recall request placed, 3-18  
    remote storage request, 3-25  
    renewed, 3-17  
    renewed, requests pending, 3-18  
    scheduled, 3-24  
    short loan request, 3-25

Item Status (bottom half of record)  
    Title page, 2-83

[Item Statuses] stanza, 3-14

Item title, 2-105

Item variable, 3-127

ItemInfo variable, 3-122

---

## J

Jump Bar, 5-82  
jump bar, 2-170, 3-74  
    holdings, 2-170

[JumpBar] stanza, 3-73

Jumps\_After\_Current\_Record variable, 3-74  
Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record variable, 3-74

---

## K

keyword  
    search, 5-8, 5-9  
        essential terms in, 5-10  
        excluding terms from, 5-10  
        important terms in, 5-10  
        weighing search terms for, 5-9  
    search results, 5-92

Keyword Title List, 5-92

Keyword variable, 3-77

---

## L

label  
    View Record page  
        HTML, A-9

Label\_CallNumber variable, 3-158

Label\_Location variable, 3-158

Label\_Status variable, 3-158

Labels, 3-156

language  
    directory, 1-20  
    using multiple language versions of WebVoyáge, 1-20

[Language] stanza, 3-194

Language variable, 3-106

last column (thumbnail images)  
    Title page, 2-83

LastName variable, 3-108

latitude field, 3-28

Latitude variable, 3-28, 5-57

Leading#Text variable, 3-88, 3-104, 3-156, B-10  
Left\_Longitude variable, 3-30  
Left-anchored search, 5-10  
libinfo.htm file, 2-12, 3-207  
    editing, 2-13  
Library information  
    page  
        editing, 2-13  
library information, 2-171  
    button, 5-1  
    page, 2-12  
Library Location (bottom half of record)  
    Title page, 2-83  
Limit  
    button, 5-74  
    caption, 3-40  
limit  
    code, 2-53  
    definition stanzas, 2-52  
    location  
        initial, 3-55  
        MARC field, 3-40  
[Limit Type=] stanza, 3-195  
[Limit\_Page] stanza, 3-104  
Limits  
    search, 5-73–5-78  
        customizing, 5-75–5-78  
        enabling/disabling, 3-55  
    sets  
        contents of each, 3-38  
        order of, 3-38  
limits  
    search, 5-118  
Limits button, 5-7  
[Limits] stanza, 2-50, 3-193–3-194  
Limits variable, 3-55, 3-77  
limits.ini file, 2-50  
    map-related limits in, 3-197–3-199  
line break  
    WebVoyáge, in  
        enabling and disabling, 3-48  
Link color, 3-39  
link color, 5-6  
LINK variable, 2-6, 2-17, 7-14, 7-35  
Linked Resources tab, 5-99, 5-102  
LinkFinder  
    button, 5-38  
    configuring for Citation Server, 5-38  
    database parsing profile stanza, 5-41  
    MARC field parsing specification variables, 5-42  
    element descriptions, 5-52  
    format of, 5-52  
    parsing profiles for MARC information extraction, 5-41  
    server, 5-38  
    SID (service identifier)  
        including in OpenURL, 5-41, 5-42  
LinkFinder button, 5-42  
LinkFinder variable, 5-41, 5-42  
    example, 5-42  
linkfinder.cfg file, 5-41  
LinkFinderButton variable, 5-39  
LinkFinderButtonGraphic= variable, 5-38  
LinkFinderServer variable, 5-38  
linking  
    OpenURL, 5-37  
linking to WebVoyáge, 1-22  
Links  
    active  
        color of, setting, 2-6, 2-17  
    changing targets of in record display, 2-104  
    unvisited  
        color of, setting, 2-6, 2-17  
    visited  
        color of, setting, 2-6, 2-17  
[Links] stanza, 3-12  
list  
    Find Results in, 5-9  
    Footprint, drop-down, 5-59  
[List Location] stanza, 3-191  
List Location stanza, 3-186, 3-190  
List title, 3-39  
local catalog button, 5-1  
local database  
    connecting back to, 3-70  
local directory, 3-114  
Local folder, 4-12  
LocalDatabase variable, 3-171  
LOCALDB variable, 3-70  
location  
    temporary  
        display, 3-231  
Location stanza, 3-185  
Location variable, 3-107, 3-170  
Logging In to WebVoyáge, 7-1  
Login  
    page, 7-59  
        editing, 2-114  
        error messages, 7-16  
        PIN field name on, 7-11

login  
  patron  
    ID options, 3-46  
    types, 3-47  
[Login Types] stanza, 3-47  
LoginRequiredText variable, 3-176  
[Logon\_Page] stanza, 3-108, 7-11  
logonmsg.htm file, 7-59  
longitude field, 3-28  
Longitude variable, 3-28, 5-57  
lost, library applied status, 3-22  
lost, library applied, requests pending status, 3-22  
lost, system applied, requests pending status, 3-23  
LostLibraryApplied variable, 3-22, 3-166  
LostLibraryAppliedReq variable, 3-22  
LostSystemApplied variable, 3-23, 3-167  
LostSystemAppliedReq variable, 3-23  
Lower\_Latitude variable, 3-30

---

## M

Mail variable, 3-77, 3-111  
[Mail\_And\_Requests] stanza, 3-109, 5-129  
MainData variable, 3-80  
making download formats unavailable for a database,  
  3-114  
map limits heading, 3-34  
map limits page, 3-33  
Map Search  
  screen  
    configuration diagram, 2-37  
Map search  
  corridor/route, 5-64  
  point and radius, 5-61  
  polygon, 5-59  
  range, 5-68  
  rectangle, 5-54  
map search, 5-54  
Map Search page, 2-37  
  customizing, 5-57–5-69  
map search page  
  background color, 3-27  
  cannot connect message, 3-32  
  corridor search page  
    heading, 3-29  
  header font color, 3-28  
  latitude field, 3-28

longitude field, 3-28  
map date header, 3-35  
point and radius screen heading, 3-29  
polygon search screen  
  heading, 3-29  
primary check box caption, 3-35  
quaternary check box caption, 3-36  
radius coordinate field, 3-29  
range search heading, 3-29  
rectangle search  
  upper right caption, 3-30  
secondary check box caption, 3-35  
table color, 3-27  
tertiary check box caption, 3-36  
map search tab  
  color, 3-26  
  text, 3-27  
map search table  
  label font color, 3-28  
Map\_Dates\_Label variable, 3-35  
[Map\_Footprint] stanza, 3-32  
[Map\_FormatType] stanza, 3-33  
Map\_Limits variable, 3-34  
[Map\_Limits\_Page] stanza, 3-33  
[Map\_Search\_Page] stanza, 3-26, 5-56, 5-60  
Maps button, 5-54  
MapSearching variable, 7-36  
MARC field  
  search limit, 3-40  
MARC field parsing specification variables, 5-42  
  element descriptions, 5-52  
  format of, 5-52  
MARC fields, 5-41  
MARC format tab, 5-102  
MARC information, of records  
  viewing, 5-102  
MARC view of records, 5-102  
marcinfo file  
  no entry in message, 3-45  
Marcinfo.ini file, 3-177  
marking records, 5-90  
  on search results page, 5-90  
[Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza, B-8–B-12, B-19  
  example, B-8  
variable  
  HostRecLinkTextBottom, B-11  
  HostRecLinkTextTop, B-11  
  Hotlink\_N, B-9  
  Leading#Text, B-10

---

MaxRelatedRecordsBorder, [B-10](#)  
MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData, [B-10](#)  
Records\_per\_page, [B-9](#)  
Trailing#Text, [B-10](#)

MaxRelatedRecords variable, [B-5](#)  
MaxRelatedRecordsBorder variable, [B-6](#), [B-10](#)  
example, [B-7](#), [B-12](#)

MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData variable, [B-6](#), [B-10](#)  
example, [B-7](#), [B-12](#)

MaxRelatedRecordsMessage variable, [B-6](#), [B-8](#)

[Medium] stanza, [3-194](#)

Medium variable, [3-107](#)

message  
no entry in marcinfo file, [3-45](#)

messages  
Bookbag  
customizing, [5-132](#)  
disabling, [3-200](#)  
error  
Login page, [7-16](#)  
exiting WebVoyage, [3-79](#)

MyOPAC  
customizing, [7-37](#)  
Patron Self-Registration, [7-48](#)  
PIN, [7-16](#)

[Misc\_Strings] stanza, [3-44](#)

missing status, [3-21](#)

Missing variable, [3-21](#), [3-166](#)  
missing, requests pending status, [3-22](#)

MissingReq variable, [3-22](#)

ModHoldingsForm variable, [3-79](#)

modifying  
previous search, [5-91](#)

Monthly variable, [5-115](#)

mouse-over text  
of LinkFinder button, [5-38](#), [5-39](#)  
default, [5-39](#)

MultipleHoldingsMessage variable, [3-163](#)

MultipleItemsMessage variable, [3-163](#)

MyOPAC, [7-26](#)–[7-43](#)  
configuration, [7-29](#)–[7-42](#)  
databases section of, [7-32](#)  
disk space requirements  
determining, [7-27](#)  
enabling (sections of), [7-30](#)  
messages  
customizing, [7-37](#)  
Patron Information page, linking to, [7-37](#)

Preferences, [7-27](#)  
available, [7-27](#)  
button, [7-40](#), [7-42](#)  
configuration, [7-29](#)  
disabling, [7-30](#)

Preferences page  
layout, [7-33](#)

Records Per Page section of, [7-32](#)

Saved Search (Queries), [5-106](#)–[5-111](#), [5-118](#)  
configuring, [5-107](#)  
enabling, [5-108](#), [5-109](#)  
Patron Information page, linking to, [5-111](#)  
using, [5-117](#)

search type section of, [7-31](#)  
setting name of in title bar, [5-133](#), [7-33](#)

toolbar, adding buttons/links to, [7-38](#)  
toolbars, adding buttons/links to, [2-7](#), [3-67](#), [5-125](#)  
using, [7-42](#)

[MyOPAC Messages] stanza, [7-37](#)

MyOPAC variable, [7-33](#)

---

## N

New Hits  
option in SDI, [5-120](#)

New Zealand, National Library of  
BibU form screen  
editing, [2-155](#)

BibU request screen  
button list, [2-159](#)  
components, [2-156](#)

NewHits variable, [5-115](#)

NewPIN variable, [7-15](#)

next button, [5-82](#)

\*\_NextSetOper variable, [3-84](#)

NLNZ  
see New Zealand, National Library of

no entry in marcinfo file message, [3-45](#)

No Holdings Available message (bottom half of record)  
Title page, [2-83](#)

No\_Bib\_Data variable, [3-101](#)

No\_Format\_Defined variable, [3-32](#)

NoCallNumber variable, [3-170](#)

NoCharges variable, [3-121](#)

NoEntry variable, [3-45](#)

NoFines variable, [3-121](#)

[NoHits\_Redirect] stanza, [2-168](#)

NoHits\_Redirect stanza, 2-168  
sample, 2-169  
variable  
    DatabaseToSearch, 2-169  
    RedirectEnabled, 2-169  
    ReSearchSubmitButton, 2-169  
NoHoldingsMessage variable, 3-162  
NoItemsMessage variable, 3-163  
NoLocation variable, 3-169  
None variable, 5-115  
NoReqAvail variable, 3-122  
NoReqPending variable, 3-122  
NoSearches variable, 5-109  
NotCharged variable, 3-16, 3-163  
NotChargedReq variable, 3-17  
Note button, 5-82, 5-86  
Note variable, 3-143  
NotNeededAfter variable, 3-140  
NotRenewed variable, 3-127  
number of characters  
    allowed in search term entry box, 3-82  
    displayed in search term entry box, 3-82  
Number of Records  
    drop-down box, 3-25  
Number\_of\_Coordinates variable, 3-32  
NumSets variable, 3-84

---

5-108, 5-110, 5-113, 5-114, 5-121, 5-123, 5-125, 5-129, 5-133, 6-2, 7-4, 7-11, 7-13, 7-16, 7-19, 7-29, 7-30, 7-33, 7-34, 7-38, 7-43  
[Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza, B-8-B-12  
MyOPAC configuration in, 7-30  
[View\_Record\_Page] stanza, B-4-B-8  
OpacIniRoot variable, 3-5  
OpenURL, 5-37, 5-38, 5-46  
    item request, 5-46  
    SID (service identifier)  
        including in URL, 5-41, 5-42  
        Voyager, 5-42  
[Options] stanza, 3-45, 7-4  
order  
    search results, of, 2-78  
    status, 3-51  
order status  
    approved, 3-53  
    claimed, 3-53  
    pending, 3-53  
    received complete, 3-53  
[Order Statuses] stanza, 3-51  
Order variable, 3-13  
overdue status, 3-18  
Overdue variable, 3-18, 3-164  
overdue, requests pending status, 3-18  
OverdueReq variable, 3-18

---

## O

on hold status, 3-19  
on hold, requests pending status, 3-19  
OnHold variable, 3-19, 3-165  
OnHoldReq variable, 3-19  
OPAC  
    Marcinfo.ini file, 3-177  
OPAC Request Forms  
    blank request form, 6-27  
OPAC server  
    IP address and port  
        Patron Self-Registration, setting for, 7-47  
opac.ini, 2-170  
Opac.ini file  
    stanza  
        NoHits\_Redirect, 2-168  
opac.ini file, 2-7, 3-12, 3-67, 3-95, 5-6, 5-10, 5-14, 5-20, 5-22, 5-38, 5-47, 5-56, 5-57, 5-60, 5-63, 5-67, 5-68, 5-71, 5-75, 5-76, 5-80, 5-83, 5-87, 5-93, 5-103,

---

## P

page  
    Bookbag, 5-135  
color  
    of pages not configured, 2-5  
History (search), 5-16, 5-17  
Page layout, 3-159  
Page\_Title variable, 3-105  
parsing profiles  
    for LinkFinder MARC information extraction, 5-41  
patron  
    login, 7-1  
    logoff, 7-3  
record  
    purge date, 7-44  
Patron Information  
    button, 5-1  
    button list, 2-127

page, 7-19  
    Bookbag button on, 5-124  
    Change PIN button on, 7-12  
    charged items section, 2-120, 2-123  
    components of, 2-119  
    editing, 2-117  
    fines and fees section, 2-121  
    MyOPAC, linking to, 7-37  
    personal information section, 2-120  
    request information section, 2-124  
    saved search queries and, 5-111

patron information, 3-139  
    charged Items, 7-23  
    fines and fees, 7-71  
    patron self-renewal, 7-63  
    personal information, 7-22

Patron Login  
    button list, 2-116  
    page, 6-1  
        components of, 2-115  
        editing, 2-114

patron login  
    ID options, 3-46

patron record  
    created by Patron Self-Registration, 7-57

Patron Requests variable, 3-45

Patron Self-Registration, 7-44  
    configuration, 7-47  
        Voyager System Administration, in, 7-58  
    enabling, 7-47  
    exit button, changing target of, 7-48  
    messages, 7-48  
    page  
        customizing, 7-49  
    patron record creation with, 7-57  
    purge date, 7-57  
        WebVoyage, adding a link to, 7-59

patron self-renewal, 7-63

patron.css file, 7-49

patron.xml file, 7-49, 7-50, 7-54

patron.xls file, 7-49

Patron\_Info variable, 3-77

[Patron\_Info\_Page] stanza, 3-125, 3-117

Patron\_Logon variable, 3-77

patroniidmsg.htm file, 7-16

PatronInfo variable, 3-139

patron-initiated request, 6-7, 7-43  
    holds/recalls, 6-3  
    logout, 6-38

patrommsg.htm file, 7-16

PatronSelfRegistrationURL= variable, 7-48

patronsocmsg.htm file, 7-16

pending  
    order status, 3-53

Pending variable, 3-53

Pending+ variable, 3-53

permission  
    change PINs, to  
        giving to staff, 7-5

file  
    checking, 1-5

Personal Identification Number feature  
    See PIN

Personal Information  
    section of Patron Information page, 2-120

personal information, 7-22

Personal variable, 3-120

Photocopy form screen  
    editing, 2-160

photocopying  
    documentation, 0-xlii

Pick\_Up\_At variable, 3-128

PickUp variable, 3-140

PickupLocation variable, 3-129

PIN, 7-3-7-21  
    changing, 7-19  
    changing in Circulation module, 7-6  
    configuration, 7-3  
    enabling, 7-4  
    entering, 7-19  
    field name on Login page, 7-11  
    giving staff permission to change, 7-5  
    messages, 7-16  
    setting default, 7-4  
    using, 7-18

PIN variable, 7-11

[Pin\_Messages] stanza, 7-16

[Place] stanza, 3-194

Place variable, 3-107

placing holds/recalls, 6-3

PM  
    time designation  
        see Time:formatting

PM variable, 3-72

Point and Radius search  
    button, 5-61  
    customizing, 5-63  
    with Geospatial searching tools, 5-61

Point\_and\_Radius\_Search variable, 3-29

Polygon search

button, 5-59  
customizing, 5-60  
with Geospatial searching tools, 5-59  
**Polygon\_Search** variable, 3-29  
Port setting  
  web server, 1-3  
Port variable, 3-11, 7-48  
Position variable, 3-129  
Post Limits  
  button, 2-77  
Post Limits button, 5-90  
Posting variable, 3-126  
PostLimitButton variable, 2-77  
PostSortMenuLabel variable, 3-157  
Pre\_Order\_Process variable, 3-172  
[Preferences] stanza  
  MyOPAC, enabling in, 7-30  
Preferences, MyOPAC, 7-27  
  button, 7-42  
  page  
    layout, 7-33  
[Preferences\_Page] stanza  
  MyOPAC, configuring layout of, 7-33  
PreferencesScreen variable, 7-35  
previous button, 5-82  
previous search  
  modifying, 5-91  
  re-executing, 5-71, 5-91  
Primary variable, 3-35  
print  
  format, 3-112  
  setup, 5-144  
print file  
  customizing for Citation Server, 4-14  
printing  
  records, 5-140, 5-142–5-144  
printing a record, 5-142  
projection field caption, 3-35  
Projection\_Label variable, 3-35  
promoting, 2-168  
PubDate variable, 3-157  
PubDateDesc variable, 3-157  
Public Use check box, 3-177  
punctuation  
  adding, 3-220  
Purchase\_Request variable, 3-78  
purge date  
  patron record, 7-44, 7-57  
Pwebrecon.cgi file, 1-6

---

## Q

Quaternary variable, 3-36  
Quick Limits  
  displaying, 2-81  
QuickLimitDropDownSize variable, 3-91  
QuickLimitsText variable, 3-91, 3-159  
quitting WebVoyáge session, 5-146

---

## R

Radius\_Text variable, 3-29  
range field caption, 3-36  
Range search  
  button, 5-68  
  customizing, 5-68  
  with Geospatial searching tools, 5-68  
Range variable, 3-36  
Range\_Scale variable, 3-34  
Range\_Search variable, 3-29, 3-30  
Recall request  
  button list, 2-135  
  screen  
    components of, 2-132  
    editing, 2-132  
recall request placed status, 3-18  
RecalledItem variable, 3-125  
RecallRequest variable, 3-18, 3-164  
received complete  
  order status, 3-53  
ReceivedComplete variable, 3-53  
ReceivedComplete+ variable, 3-53  
Receiving  
  database search status, 5-79  
record  
  patron  
    created by Patron Self-Registration, 7-57  
record classification check box caption, 3-37  
Record Details, 5-99  
Record display, 2-103  
  button, 2-103  
  targets, 2-104  
button list, 2-108  
button, changing alternate text, 2-104

button, selecting to display, 2-104  
buttons, changing appearance, 2-104  
components of, 2-96  
customizing, 5-103  
editing, 2-95  
links, changing targets, 2-104  
search results, viewing as, 5-78  
record display, 5-99–5-103  
Record Options box, 3-114, 5-118, 5-134, 5-138, 5-140  
    of search results page, 5-129  
Record screen, 5-38  
Record View variables, 3-78  
Record View\_1 variable, 3-78  
Record View\_2 variable, 3-78  
Record View\_3 variable, 3-78  
Record View\_4 variable, 3-78  
Record View\_5 variable, 3-78  
Record\_Classification variable, 3-37  
records  
    displaying, 5-99–5-103  
    emailing, 5-144  
    Holdings/Details tabs, 5-99  
    Linked Resources tab, 5-102  
    MARC View tab, 5-102  
    marking, 5-90  
    per page  
        MyOPAC, setting in, 7-32  
    printing, 5-142–5-144  
    saving, 5-140–5-142  
    selecting, 5-90  
    selecting for view from Title List page, 5-90  
    Table of Contents tab, 5-101  
    viewing, 5-99–5-103  
Records Per Page, 5-7  
Records variable, 3-111  
Records\_per\_page variable, B-9  
    example, B-11  
[Records\_Requested] stanza, 3-25  
RecordsDisplayed variable, 7-30, 7-31  
RecordsPerPage variable, 7-36  
Rectangle search  
    button, 5-55  
    customizing, 5-56  
    with Geospatial searching tools, 5-54  
Rectangle\_Search variable, 3-28  
redirected search, 2-79  
RedirectEnabled variable, 2-169  
    NoHits\_Redirect stanza, 2-169  
redirecting  
    search to another database, 2-168  
    re-executing previous searches, 5-71  
[Ref\_Page] stanza, 3-130  
References screen  
    button list, 2-75  
    components, 2-73  
    editing, 2-72  
References variable, 3-78  
Regular variable, 3-59  
Relais, 5-49  
Related Records  
    Cataloging module  
        maintaining, B-3, B-4  
    cataloging module  
        maintaining, B-4  
    display in WebVoyage, B-2  
        basic customization information, B-12–B-15  
        configuration, B-15–B-19  
        multiple owning libraries, B-4  
    maximum, B-4–B-8  
        example of WebVoyage display, B-7  
Related Records menu  
    Cataloging module, B-4  
relevance  
    ranking bars, 5-92  
        alternate text of, 3-61  
        title list, displaying/hiding in, 3-54  
    ranking for combined builder searches, 5-22  
Relevance column, 5-92  
Relevance variable, 3-158, 3-171  
Relevance\_Heading variable, 3-60  
Relevancy Title List, 5-92  
remote libraries  
    button, 5-1  
    page, 2-13  
        editing, 2-14  
remote storage request status, 3-25  
remote.htm file, 2-13, 3-208  
    editing, 2-14  
RemoteStorageRequest variable, 3-25, 3-169  
renew all button, 7-64  
Renew variable, 3-127  
RenewalStatus variable, 3-127  
renewed status, 3-17  
Renewed variable, 3-17, 3-164  
renewed, requests pending status, 3-18  
RenewedDue variable, 3-128  
RenewedItem variable, 3-124  
RenewedReq variable, 3-18  
reproduction, of documentation, 0-xlii

ReqAvail variable, 3-122  
ReqPending variable, 3-121  
request  
    holds/recalls, 6-3  
    item, 5-37, 5-46  
    patron-initiated, 6-7, 7-43  
    receiving from outside WebVoyage, 5-148  
    short term  
        error message, 3-48  
Request button, 6-1  
[Request Dialogs] stanza, 3-134  
Request Information  
    section of Patron Information page, 2-124  
request logout, 6-38  
Request menu  
    patron  
        enabling/disabling display of, 3-45  
[Request Messages] stanza, 3-48  
Request page, 6-1  
    button list, 2-113  
    components of, 2-111  
    editing, 2-110  
request selection  
    customizing, 6-2  
request.cfg file, 3-232  
Request\_Form variable, 3-78  
[Request\_Page] stanza, 3-130  
Request\_Select\_Page stanza, 6-2  
Request\_Select\_Page variable, 3-143  
[Request\_ShortLoan\_Page] stanza, 3-145  
requesth.cfg files, 3-232  
requests, 7-43  
    logging out of, 6-38  
    patron-initiated  
        patron login, 7-1  
        patron logoff, 7-3  
Requests variable, 3-80, 3-121  
RequestURI.cfg file, 5-46, 5-47  
RequestURIButton variable, 5-47  
RequestURIButtonGraphic variable, 5-47  
RequestURIServer variable  
    variable  
        RequestURIServer, 5-47  
required  
    elements in configuration files, 3-4  
Required element, 7-53  
requirements  
    disk space  
        MyOPAC, 7-27  
ReSearchSubmitButton  
    NoHits\_Redirect stanza, 2-169  
    ReSearchSubmitButton variable, 2-169  
    Reset variable, 3-142  
    ResetButton variable, 3-83, 3-90, 3-101, 3-102, 3-109, 3-130, 3-144, 3-154  
    [Results] stanza, 3-59  
    Retain button, 2-82  
    Retain Selected button, 5-90  
    RetainButton variable, 3-156  
    Right\_Longitude variable, 3-31  
    Run Search Every  
        option in SDI, 5-120  
    RunSearchEvery variable, 5-114

---

S

save  
    format, 3-112  
Save Options dialog box  
    saved search queries, adding option to, 5-110  
    see Record Options dialog box  
Save table, 2-92, 2-107  
Save to Bookbag  
    button, 3-112, 5-131, 5-134  
    button heading in Record Options box, 3-111, 5-130  
Save variable, 3-111  
save.cfg files, 3-235  
Saved Search (Queries), 5-106–5-111, 5-112  
    configuring, 5-107  
    deleting, 5-119, 5-120  
    enabling, 5-108, 5-109  
    new searches, saving, 5-118  
    Patron Information page, linking to, 5-111  
    performing on command, 5-118, 5-120  
    running automatically, 5-120  
    screen, 5-118  
    using, 5-117  
[Saved\_Records\_Page] stanza, 5-121, 5-123  
SaveDate variable, 5-124  
savef.cfg file, 3-235  
saveh.cfg file, 3-235  
SaveOption variable, 5-108, 5-109  
SavePreferences variable, 7-30  
SaveRecords variable, 3-80, 5-123  
SaveSearchQuery variable, 3-112, 5-110  
SaveToBookbag1 variable, 3-111, 5-130

---

SaveToBookbag2 variable, 3-112, 5-131  
 saveX.cfg file  
     customizing, 3-114  
 saving, 5-140–5-142  
     records, 5-140  
         records to Bookbag, 5-134  
 saving a Record, 5-140  
 scale denominator field caption, 3-34  
 scale range field caption, 3-34  
 Scale\_Denominator\_Label variable, 3-34  
 ScanDoc variable, 3-12  
 ScandocAltText variable, 3-154  
 scheduled status, 3-24  
 Scheduled variable, 3-24, 3-168  
 Scope notes screen  
     button list, 2-75  
     components, 2-73  
     editing, 2-72  
 screen  
     Change PIN  
         customizing, 7-13  
     configuring, 2-1  
     initial (WebVoyage) page, 1-4  
         setting, 2-3  
         using search page as, 2-3  
 initial page  
     default screen (webvoy.htm), 2-10  
 Record, 5-38  
 Search Preferences, 7-43  
 Select Database, 3-178  
     title, 3-39  
 script alias, 1-4  
 SDI  
     See Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI)  
 [SDI\_Page] stanza, 5-114  
 sdiemail.ini file, 5-116  
 sdihelp.htm file, 5-117  
 SDIOption variable, 5-113, 5-114  
 search, 5-7–5-81  
     author, 5-8  
     builder, 3-61  
     command, 5-9, 5-69  
     Course Reserve, 5-23  
         performing, 5-24, 5-28  
     history, 5-70  
     History page, 5-70  
     Keyword, 5-8  
     keyword, 5-9  
     left-anchored, 5-10  
     map, 5-54  
         corridor/route, 5-64  
         point and radius, 5-61  
         polygon, 5-59  
         range, 5-68  
         rectangle, 5-54  
     options, 3-54  
     redirected, 2-79  
     redirecting, 3-220  
     results  
         label, 3-59  
         simple, 5-8  
             configuring, 5-10  
         simultaneous, 4-8–4-10, 5-79  
             display configuration, 4-10  
         Title, 5-8  
 Search button, 5-17  
 Search Dialog variable, 3-54  
 Search help text, 3-39  
 Search History  
     page, 5-17, 5-70  
         button list, 2-167  
         Combined Builder Search button on, 5-22  
         components, 2-165  
         customizing, 5-21, 5-71  
         editing, 2-164  
 Search Incompatible error message, 3-64  
 Search limits, 5-73–5-78  
     button list, 2-54  
     customizing, 5-78  
     enabling/disabling, 3-55  
     MARC fields of, 3-40  
     stanza, 2-50  
     search limits, 5-118  
 Search Locations, 5-7  
 Search page, 5-7–5-81  
     map  
         customizing, 5-57–5-69  
 Search Preferences screen, 7-43  
     databases section of, 7-32  
     Records Per Page section of, 7-32  
     search type section of, 7-31  
 search promotion, 2-168  
 search queries  
     'No saved search queries' message  
         customizing, 5-109  
         saving, 5-106–5-111, 5-118  
 Search Queries page, 5-108, 5-109  
     customizing, 5-108  
 search results  
     Headings List, 5-81–5-83

Index List, 5-89–5-93  
keyword, 5-92  
order of, 2-78  
page, 3-61  
record display, 5-99–5-103  
sorting, 5-90  
viewing, 5-78–5-81  
Search Results page, 5-134  
Search screen  
    Simple search, 2-18  
search term entry box  
    characters, limiting number of, 3-82  
    characters, number of displayed, 3-82  
Search type  
    column, 3-61  
    descriptions  
        setting, 3-63  
    MyOPAC, setting in, 7-31  
    Simple  
        descriptions of, 3-62  
    style 1, 2-23  
    style 2, 2-24  
    style 3, 2-24  
Search type variable, 3-62  
[Search Types] stanza, 3-63  
Search variable, 7-35  
search.ini file, 3-62, 3-232–3-233  
    and search type variable, 3-62  
    default  
        simultaneous search, for, 3-64  
    for simultaneous search, 4-13  
Search\_For variable, 3-83  
[Search\_History\_Page] stanza, 3-147, 5-21, 5-22  
Search\_In variable, 3-83  
Search\_Limits variable, 3-106  
Search\_Quires variable, 5-109  
[Search\_Quires\_Page] stanza, 5-108  
Search\_References variable, 3-60  
Search\_Request variable, 3-59  
Search\_Results variable, 3-59  
Search\_Status variable, 3-150  
[Search\_Text] stanza, 3-61  
SearchBoxText variable, 3-91, 3-159  
SearchedFor variable, 3-149  
searches to another database, 2-168  
SearchFor variable, 5-109  
\*\_SearchGroup variable, 3-84  
searching, 5-1–5-106  
    database search status, 5-79  
    limits, 5-73–5-78  
SearchPreferences variable, 7-30, 7-31  
SearchType variable, 3-148, 5-109  
SearchTypeDropDownSize variable, 3-92  
SearchTypeStyle variable, 3-92  
Secondary variable, 3-35  
Section variable, 3-100  
Secure Socket Layer connections  
    establishing, 1-8  
security  
    files system  
        hiding from patrons, using a script alias, 1-4  
        virtual directory, setting script alias to act as, 1-4  
See Also button, 5-82, 5-86  
Select Database screen, 3-178  
    adding databases to, 3-178  
Select Download Format dropdown box, 5-138  
Select\_New\_Date variable, 3-139  
Selected link color, 3-39  
Selected variable, 3-111  
Selected\_Background\_Color variable, 3-75  
SelectedRecsAllPages variable, 3-111, 3-156  
SelectedReservationDate variable, 3-146  
selecting a record, 5-90  
selecting databases to search, 5-4  
Selective Dissemination of Information (SDI), 5-112–5-117, 5-120  
    configuring, 5-113  
    enabling, 5-113  
    help text, customizing, 5-117  
    New Hits option in, 5-120  
    Run Search Every option in, 5-120  
    URL page, sent to patrons, 5-115  
SelfRenew variable, 3-119  
Separator variable, 3-13, 3-73  
server  
    LinkFinder, 5-38  
Server variable, 3-11, 7-48  
Set Name stanza, 3-178, 3-181  
Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text variable, 3-108  
setting  
    default display screen, 2-105  
    default PIN, 7-4  
Shelved\_At variable, 3-171  
Shopping Cart  
    See Bookbag  
Short Loan  
request  
    button list, 2-141  
    placing, 6-12  
request screen

---

components, 2-137  
 editing, 2-136  
**short loan**  
 request  
     error message, 3-48  
**short loan request status**, 3-25  
**ShowLoanRequest variable**, 3-25, 3-169  
**Show link**  
     database status page, on, 5-79  
**Show variable**, 3-150  
**ShowDatabaseName variable**, 3-160, 3-170  
**ShowSearchRequest variable**, 3-160, 3-170  
**ShowSearchResults variable**, 3-161, 3-170  
**SID** (service identifier), 5-41, 5-42  
     Voyager, 5-42  
**[Sim\_Search\_Page] stanza**, 3-149  
**Simple Search**  
     screen  
         configuration diagram, 2-18  
**Simple search**  
     configuring, 5-10  
     descriptions of, 3-62  
     screen  
         editing, 2-18  
         tab, 5-70  
**simple search**, 5-8  
**Simple variable**, 3-78  
**[Simple\_Limits] stanza**, 2-52, 3-194  
**[Simple\_Search\_Codes] stanza**, 3-234  
**SimpleSearch variable**, 7-35  
**Simultaneous search**, 3-64, 4-8–4-10, 5-79  
     customizing, 5-80  
     display configuration, 4-10  
     indexes, valid  
         searching across multiple Voyager databases,  
     3-66  
     reset time, 4-10  
     screen  
         components of, 2-60  
         editing, 2-59  
         timeout, 4-10  
         WebVoyage display configuration used for, 4-13  
**Simultaneous\_Searching variable**, 3-149  
**SingleDisplay variable**, 3-54  
**SL\_Nitems variable**, 3-48  
**SLBlock\_Closed variable**, 3-49  
**SLBlock\_Day variable**, 3-50  
**SLBlock\_Invalid variable**, 3-49  
**SLBlock\_Patron variable**, 3-50  
**SLBlock\_Policy variable**, 3-49  
**SLBlock\_Title variable**, 3-50  
**SLBlock\_Total variable**, 3-50  
**SLBlock\_Unavailable variable**, 3-49  
**Social Security Number**, 7-16  
     patron, 3-46  
**sorting search results**, 5-90  
**SSL connections**  
     establishing, 1-8  
**SSL= variable**, 1-9  
**stanza**, 2-7, 3-67, 5-125, 5-128, 7-38, 7-41  
     [BibRedirect], 5-148  
     [Bookbag\_Messages], 5-132, 5-133  
     [Boolean\_Search\_], 3-80  
     [Browse\_Page], 3-85  
     [CallSlipStatusCodes], 3-133  
     Combined Search Page, 3-88–3-92  
     [Combined\_Search\_], 3-88  
     [Combined\_Search\_Page], 5-10  
     [Communications], 3-11–3-12  
     [Course\_Reserve\_], 3-97  
     [Course\_Reserve\_Alpha\_Page], 5-33  
     [Course\_Reserve\_Course\_Page], 5-35  
     [Course\_Reserve\_Department\_Page], 5-36  
     [Course\_Reserve\_Instructor\_Page], 5-35  
     [Course\_Reserve\_Location\_Page], 5-32  
     [Course\_Reserve\_Search\_Page], 3-95  
     [Database\_Page], 3-101  
     Database\_Page, 5-6  
     [Date], 3-13  
     [DOI], 3-10  
     [Download\_Formats], 3-113  
     [Folders], 3-178, 3-180–3-181  
     [General], 3-12  
     [Generic\_Images], 3-10  
     [Headings\_Page], 3-102  
     [HelpLocation], 3-10  
     [Html\_Body], 2-5  
     [Item\_Statuses], 3-14  
     [JumpBar], 3-73  
     [Language], 3-194  
     limit definition, 2-52, 3-195  
     [Limit\_Page], 3-104  
     [Limits], 2-50, 3-193–3-194  
     LinkFinder database parsing profile, 5-41  
     [Links], 3-12  
     [List\_Location], 3-191  
     List\_Location, 3-186, 3-190  
     Location, 3-185  
     [Login\_Types], 3-47  
     [Logon\_Page], 3-108, 7-11

[Mail\_And\_Requests], 3-109, 5-129  
[Map\_Footprint], 3-32  
[Map\_FormatType], 3-33  
[Map\_Limits\_Page], 3-33  
[Map\_Search\_Page], 3-26, 5-56, 5-60  
[Medium], 3-194  
[Misc.Strings], 3-44  
[MyOPAC Messages], 7-37  
[NoHits\_], 2-168  
opac.ini file  
    [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page], B-8–B-12  
    [View\_Record\_Page], B-4–B-8  
    NoHits\_Redirect, 2-168  
[Options], 3-45, 7-4  
[Order\_Statuses], 3-51  
[Patron\_Info\_Page], 3-117  
[Patron\_Info\_Page], 3-125  
[Place], 3-194  
[Records\_Requested], 3-25  
[Ref\_Page], 3-130  
[Request\_Dialogs], 3-134  
[Request\_Messages], 3-48  
[Request\_Page], 3-130  
Request\_Select\_Page, 6-2  
[Request\_ShortLoan\_Page], 3-145  
[Results], 3-59  
[Saved\_Records\_Page], 5-121, 5-123  
[SDI\_Page], 5-114  
Search limits, 2-50  
[Search\_Types], 3-63  
[Search\_History\_Page], 3-147, 5-21, 5-22  
[Search\_Queries\_Page], 5-108  
[Search\_Text], 3-61  
Set Name, 3-178, 3-181  
[Sim\_Search\_Page], 3-149  
[Simple\_Limits], 2-52, 3-194  
[Simple\_Search\_Codes], 3-234  
[Status], 3-194  
[Table\_Colors], 3-80  
[TextTool], 3-66  
[Thumbnails], 3-7  
[Time], 3-72  
[Title\_Bar], 3-75  
[Title\_Page], 3-152  
[Toolbar\_Bottom], 2-7, 3-66, 3-67, 5-125, 5-128, 7-38, 7-41  
[Toolbar\_Top], 2-7, 3-66, 3-67, 5-125, 7-38  
[Type], 3-194  
[Valid\_Tabs], 3-233–3-234  
[View\_Record\_Page], 3-169, 5-38  
View\_Record\_Page, 2-170  
[View1\_Page], 2-104  
[View2\_Page], 2-105  
[View3\_Page], 2-105  
[View4\_Page], 2-105  
[View5\_Page], 2-105  
[WebRecon], 3-6, 3-79  
stanza name  
    do not change admonishment, 3-4  
    overview of, 3-4  
stanza  
    [Pin\_Messages], 7-16  
StartTime variable, 3-146  
status  
    item  
        customizing display, 3-14  
    Status Patron Groups, 7-60  
    [Status] stanza, 3-194  
    Status variable, 3-107, 3-127  
    Status\_DBFail variable, 3-151  
    Status\_DBLicense variable, 3-152  
    Status\_DBReset variable, 3-152  
    Status\_DBVersion variable, 3-152  
    Status\_Receiving variable, 3-151  
    Status\_SearchDone variable, 3-151  
    Status\_SearchFail variable, 3-151  
    Status\_SearchIncompatible variable, 3-151  
    Status\_Searching variable, 3-150  
Stop link  
    database status page, on, 5-79  
Stop variable, 3-150  
StripBlankLines variable, 3-84  
Subject link, hypertext, 3-218  
SubjectSearchRedirect variable, 3-175  
SubjectSearchText variable, 3-175  
Submit button, 3-40  
Submit variable, 3-142, 5-109  
SubmitButton variable, 3-83, 3-89, 3-100, 3-101, 3-106, 3-109, 3-130, 3-144, 3-153  
suspension message  
    Call Slip, 3-206  
Syndetics Solutions, A-6  
SysAdmin  
    See System Administration module  
System Administration  
    Database Code field, 5-41  
    Database Definitions, 5-41  
    System Administration module, B-1, B-3  
        defining databases in  
        Hook to Holdings, 4-10

## T

### tab

- bibliographic, 5-99
- Builder, 5-13
- Course Reserve search, 5-24, 5-28
- holdings, 5-99
- Linked Resources, 5-99, 5-102
- MARC format, 5-102
- Simple Search, 5-70
- table of contents, 5-101

Tab\_Text variable, 3-27, 3-81, 3-88, 3-99  
table

- email, 2-92, 2-107
- Save, 2-107
- save, 2-92

WebVoyáge

- color, 3-80

Table of contents tab, 5-101

Table\_Background\_Color variable, 3-27, 3-105

[Table\_Colors] stanza, 3-80

TableBackgroundColor variable, 3-145

TableColor variable, 3-147, 3-149

TableFontColor variable, 3-146

TableForegroundColor variable, 3-145

TableText variable, 3-147, 3-149

Temp\_File\_Name variable, 3-9

Temp\_Location variable, 3-9

Temp\_Shelfed variable, 3-172

TempFileLocation variable, 3-6

TempFileName variable, 3-7

temporary location display, 3-231

Tertiary variable, 3-36

text

- map search tab, of, 3-27

Text color, 3-39

text color, 2-77, 5-6

Text variable, 2-6, 2-16, 5-123, 7-14, 7-35

TextFont variable, 3-71

TextFontSize variable, 3-71

TextSeparator variable, 3-71

[TextTool] stanza, 3-66

Thumbgen variable, 3-9

thumbnail

- alternate text, 2-82

- generation of, 3-8

ThumbnailAltText variable, 3-154

[Thumbnails] stanza, 3-7

Time

- formatting, 2-105

[Time] stanza, 3-72

timeout, 4-10

- message, 3-79

Timeout value, 5-78

Timeout variable, 3-7, 3-9

Title bar

- MyOPAC, setting title of in, 5-133, 7-33

Title has multiple holdings message (bottom half of record)

- Title page, 2-83

Title link, hypertext, 3-218

Title list, 5-89

- button list, 2-94

- customizing, 5-93

- screen

- components of, 2-77

- search results, viewing as, 5-78

Title Long column, 5-90

Title Page

- appearance of, 3-152

Title page

- Call Number (bottom half of record), 2-83

- column 1 (#), 2-82

- column 2, 2-83

- column 3, 2-83

- column 4, 2-83

- Item Status (bottom half of record), 2-83

- last column (thumbnail images), 2-83

- Library Location (bottom half of record), 2-83

- No Holdings Available message (bottom half of record), 2-83

- Title has multiple holdings message (bottom half of record), 2-83

Title search, 5-8

Title variable, 3-157

[Title\_Bar] stanza, 3-75

- Bookbag, setting name of in, 5-133

- MyOPAC, setting name of in, 7-33

[Title\_Page] stanza, 3-152

Title\_Short\_Loan variable, 3-141

TitleDisplay variable, 3-60

Titles

- with only one related record

- details, displaying and hiding, 3-54

Titles availability, 3-162

Titles button, 5-89

Titles index page

saved search queries, adding option to, 5-110  
Titles list screen  
    editing, 2-76  
Titles variable, 3-79, 3-103  
TitlesBorderVal variable, 2-77  
TitleSearchRedirect variable, 3-174  
TitleSearchText variable, 3-175  
toolbar, 2-76, 5-7  
[Toolbar\_Bottom] stanza, 2-7, 3-67, 5-125, 5-128, 7-38, 7-41, 3-66  
[Toolbar\_Top] stanza, 2-7, 3-67, 5-125, 3-66, 7-38  
Toolbars, 2-96, 2-111, 2-114, 2-118  
Top variable, 3-73  
Top\_BackGround\_Color variable, 3-27  
Top\_Background\_Color variable, 3-105  
Top\_Font\_Color variable, 3-28  
TotalAmountDue variable, 3-128  
Trailing#Text variable, 3-88, 3-104, 3-156, B-10  
Troubleshooting  
    WebVoyage configuration, 3-236  
Truncation  
    search terms, 5-9  
twelve-hour time expression, 3-73  
twenty-four-hour time expression, 3-73  
[Type] stanza, 3-194  
Type variable, 3-106

---

## U

Unicode, 3-113  
Unicode characters  
    displaying, 1-11  
Upper\_Latitude variable, 3-30  
Upper\_Right variable, 3-30  
UpSavedSearch.gif file, 5-110  
URN, 5-99  
Urn (Uniform Resource Name)  
    resources, 3-10  
USE\_LFV3 variable, 5-42  
UseHorizontalRule variable, 3-48  
UsePI variable, 5-48  
UsePIN variable, 7-4  
UsePS variable, 5-48  
User ID types  
    barcode, 7-16  
    Institution ID, 7-16  
    Social Security Number, 7-16

Using Bookbag, 5-133  
UTF-8, 1-11, 3-113  
UTM\_Meters variable, 3-31, 5-57

---

## V

[Valid Tabs] stanza, 3-233–3-234  
variable  
    -, 3-129  
    #, 3-86, 3-103, 3-156  
    1, 3-25  
    2, 3-25  
    24HR, 3-73  
    3, 3-25  
    4, 3-25  
    Activate, 3-9  
    ActiveFontColor, 3-27, 3-82, 3-89, 3-98, 3-153  
    ActiveTabColor, 3-26, 3-81, 3-89, 3-98, 3-153  
    AddBibForm, 3-79  
    ALINK, 2-6, 2-17, 7-14, 7-35  
    All, 3-111  
    AllowLineBreaks, 3-48  
    ALT\_Note, 3-87, 3-103  
    ALT\_See\_Also, 3-87, 3-103  
    AltRelevanceValue, 3-61  
    AM, 3-72  
    Any, 3-99  
    AnyCopy, 3-143  
    AnyCopyAt, 3-143  
    Approved, 3-53  
    Approved+, 3-53  
    AtBindery, 3-23, 3-168  
    AtBinderyReq, 3-23  
    Author, 3-157  
    AuthorityRecEmailSubject, 3-112  
    AuthorSearchRedirect, 3-174  
    AuthorSearchText, 3-174  
    Available, 3-144  
    Background, 2-6, 2-16, 5-123, 7-14, 7-34  
    Background\_Color, 3-75  
    BackToRecord, 3-131, 3-146  
    Balance, 3-126  
    BGCOLOR, 2-6, 2-16, 5-124, 7-14, 7-35  
    BibHold, 3-59  
    BibInfo, 3-138  
    Bi-Weekly, 5-115  
    Bookbag, 5-133

BooleanRelevance, 3-54  
Bottom, 3-73  
Browse\_Simul, 3-148  
Btnxx\*, 3-71  
BtnxxFunction, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxGraphicDisabled, 3-71  
BtnxxGraphicDown, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxGraphicUp, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxGrapicDisabled, 2-9, 3-69, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxLink, 3-71  
BtnxxText, 2-9, 3-69, 3-71, 5-127, 5-129, 7-40, 7-42  
BtnxxToggleGraphicUp, 3-71  
BtnxxToggleText, 3-71  
Builder, 3-61, 3-76  
CallNumber, 3-171  
CallNumberSearchRedirect, 3-176  
CallNumberText, 3-176  
CallSlipPick, 3-142  
CallSlipRequest, 3-24, 3-169  
CallSlipSpecify, 3-142  
CallSlipStatusCodes, 3-131  
Cancel, 3-128  
CancelButton, 3-129  
CancelRequests, 3-119  
CatalogingReview, 3-168  
Century, 3-13  
Charged, 3-17, 3-120, 3-164  
ChargedItem, 3-123  
ChargedReq, 3-17  
Check\_Item\_Avail, 3-141  
CirculationReview, 3-168  
Claimed, 3-53  
Claimed+, 3-53  
ClaimsReturned, 3-167  
Classification\_Label, 3-37  
Clear\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text, 3-108  
ClearButton, 3-83, 3-90, 3-101, 3-153  
Col1, 3-37, 3-86  
Col2, 3-38, 3-86  
Col3, 3-38, 3-87  
CombinedRelevance, 5-22  
CombinedSearches, 5-20  
Comment, 3-139  
ComplexSearch, 7-35  
Config, 3-186  
Controlled\_Element\_Label, 3-36  
Coordinate, 3-31, 5-61  
Copies\_Claimed, 3-173  
Copies\_Ordered, 3-173  
Copies\_Received, 3-172  
Copy\_Claimed, 3-173  
Copy\_Info, 3-141  
Copy\_Number, 3-45  
Copy\_Ordered, 3-173  
Copy\_Received, 3-172  
Corridor\_Search, 3-29  
Count, 3-71  
Course, 3-76, 3-100, 7-36  
CourseDepartment, 7-36  
CourseInstructor, 7-36  
CourseReserve, 3-61, 7-36  
CourseReserveBrowse, 5-31  
CourseSection, 7-36  
CurrentPIN, 7-15  
Daily, 5-115  
Damaged, 3-167  
Database, 3-76, 3-139  
Database\_Name, 3-44, 3-150  
DatabasePreferences, 7-30, 7-32  
DatabasesSearched, 7-36  
DatabaseToSearch, 2-169  
Date, 3-36, 3-106, 3-126, 3-146  
Date\_Title, 3-35  
Date\_Type, 3-36  
Days, 3-141  
Default, 3-26, 3-76  
DefaultCluster, 3-109  
DefaultImageDir, 3-6  
DefaultLang, 1-22, 3-6  
DefaultPIN, 7-4  
Delete?, 5-124  
DeleteSavedRecords, 5-124  
Department, 3-100  
Description, 3-25  
DirectoryIndex, 2-3  
Discharged, 3-21, 3-166  
DischargedReq, 3-21  
DisplayHoldingsInfo, 3-161  
DisplayPostLimitButtonBottom, 3-159  
DisplayPostLimitButtonTop, 3-159  
DisplayPostSortMenuBottom, 3-160  
DisplayPostSortMenuTop, 3-160  
DisplayQuickLimitsDropDown, 3-91, 3-161  
DisplaySearchFormBottom, 3-161  
DisplaySearchFormTop, 3-161

Document\_Classification, 3-37  
Edit, 3-148  
Email, 3-112  
EmailAddress, 3-111  
EmailPrompt, 3-47  
EmailSubject1, 3-112  
EmailSubject2, 3-112, 5-131  
Empty, 3-60  
EndTime, 3-146  
ErrorFile, 3-79  
ExitPage, 3-79  
Expires, 3-129  
Fee, 3-126  
FeePostingType, 3-126  
Field1, 3-136  
Field2, 3-137  
Field3, 3-137  
Field4, 3-137  
Field5, 3-137  
Field6, 3-137  
Field7, 3-138  
FilePort, 3-11  
FileServer, 3-11  
FileTimeout, 3-11  
FindResultsText, 3-91, 3-159  
Fines, 3-120  
Font\_Color, 3-28, 3-75, 3-105  
FontColor, 3-32  
Footprint, 3-32  
Format, 3-111  
FormatType, 3-33  
Generic\_Title, 3-136  
genre, 5-49  
GetNewHits, 5-114  
Heading, 3-103  
Heading\_Type, 3-103  
Headings, 3-76  
History, 3-76  
Hits, 3-148  
HoldingsInfoBackgroundColor, 3-162  
HoldingsInfoForegroundColor, 3-162  
HoldingsInfoItalics, 3-162  
HoldRequest, 3-19, 3-165  
Holds\_Recals, 3-77  
HomeLibrary, 3-109  
Horizontal\_Line\_Search, 3-31  
HotLink\_#, 3-87, 3-104, 3-155  
HotLink\_0, 3-87, 3-155  
HotLink\_1, 3-88, 3-104, 3-155  
HotLink\_2, 3-88, 3-104, 3-155  
Hotlink\_3, 3-88, 3-104, 3-155  
HotLink\_CallNumber, 3-155  
HotLink\_Location, 3-155  
HotLink\_MultipleHoldings, 3-155  
HotLink\_N, 3-87, 3-104  
HotLink\_NoHoldings, 3-155  
HotLink\_Status, 3-155  
HotLink\_Thumbnail, 3-155  
InactiveFontColor, 3-27, 3-82, 3-89, 3-99  
InactiveTabColor, 3-26, 3-81, 3-89, 3-98, 3-153  
Indefinite, 3-14  
IndexType, 7-35  
InProcess, 3-24, 3-168  
InProcessReq, 3-24  
InputBoxMaxLength, 3-82, 3-90  
InputBoxSize, 3-82, 3-90  
Instructions, 3-140  
Instructor, 3-99  
InTransit, 3-19, 3-165  
InTransitDischarged, 3-20, 3-165  
InTransitDischargedReq, 3-20  
InTransitOnHold, 3-20, 3-166  
InTransitOnHoldReq, 3-21  
InTransitReq, 3-20  
Item, 3-127  
ItemInfo, 3-122  
Jumps\_After\_Current\_Record, 3-74  
Jumps\_Before\_Current\_Record, 3-74  
Keyword, 3-77  
Label\_CallNumber, 3-158  
Label\_Location, 3-158  
Label\_Status, 3-158  
Language, 3-106  
LastName, 3-108  
Latitude, 3-28, 5-57  
Leading#Text, 3-88, 3-104, 3-156  
Left\_Longitude, 3-30  
Limits, 3-55, 3-77  
LINK, 2-6, 2-17, 7-14, 7-35  
LinkFinder, 5-41, 5-42  
example, 5-42  
LinkFinderButton, 5-39  
LinkFinderButtonGraphic=, 5-38  
LinkFinderServer, 5-38  
LocalDatabase, 3-171  
LOCALDB, 3-70  
Location, 3-107, 3-170  
LoginRequiredText, 3-176  
Longitude, 3-28, 5-57  
LostLibraryApplied, 3-22, 3-166

---

LostLibraryAppliedReq, 3-22  
 LostSystemApplied, 3-23, 3-167  
 LostSystemAppliedReq, 3-23  
 Lower\_Latitude, 3-30  
 Mail, 3-77  
 mail, 3-111  
 MainData, 3-80  
 Map\_Dates\_Label, 3-35  
 Map\_Limits, 3-34  
 MapSearching, 7-36  
 [Max\_Related\_Records\_Page] stanza  
     HostRecLinkTextBottom, B-11  
     HostRecLinkTextTop, B-11  
     Hotlink\_N, B-9  
     Leading#Text, B-10  
     MaxRelatedRecordsBorder, B-10  
     MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData, B-10  
     Records\_per\_page, B-9  
     Trailing#Text, B-10  
 Medium, 3-107  
 Missing, 3-21, 3-166  
 MissingReq, 3-22  
 ModHoldingsForm, 3-79  
 Monthly, 5-115  
 MultipleHoldingsMessage, 3-163  
 MultipleItemsMessage, 3-163  
 MyOPAC, 7-33  
 NewHits, 5-115  
 NewPIN, 7-15  
 \*\_NextSetOper, 3-84  
 No\_Bib\_Data, 3-101  
 No\_Format\_Defined, 3-32  
 NoCallNumber, 3-170  
 NoCharges, 3-121  
 NoEntry, 3-45  
 NoFines, 3-121  
 NoHits\_Redirect stanza  
     DatabaseToSearch, 2-169  
     RedirectEnabled, 2-169  
     ReSearchSubmitButton, 2-169  
 NoHoldingsMessage, 3-162  
 NoItemsMessage, 3-163  
 NoLocation, 3-169  
 None, 5-115  
 NoReqAvail, 3-122  
 NoReqPending, 3-122  
 NoSearches, 5-109  
 NotCharged, 3-16, 3-163  
 NotChargedReq, 3-17  
 Note, 3-143  
 NotNeededAfter, 3-140  
 NotRenewed, 3-127  
 Number\_of\_Coordinates, 3-32  
 NumSets, 3-84  
 OnHold, 3-19, 3-165  
 OnHoldReq, 3-19  
 OpacIniRoot, 3-5  
 Order, 3-13  
 Overdue, 3-18, 3-164  
 OverdueReq, 3-18  
 Patron Requests, 3-45  
 Patron\_Info, 3-77  
 Patron\_Logon, 3-77  
 PatronInfo, 3-139  
 Pending, 3-53  
 Pending+, 3-53  
 Personal, 3-120  
 Pick\_Up\_At, 3-128  
 PickUp, 3-140  
 PickupLocation, 3-129  
 PIN, 7-11  
 Place, 3-107  
 PM, 3-72  
 Point\_and\_Radius\_Search, 3-29  
 Polygon\_Search, 3-29  
 Port, 3-11, 7-48  
 Position, 3-129  
 Posting, 3-126  
 PostLimitButton, 2-77  
 PostSortMenuLabel, 3-157  
 Pre\_Order\_Process, 3-172  
 PreferencesScreen, 7-35  
 Primary, 3-35  
 Projection\_Label, 3-35  
 PubDate, 3-157  
 PubDateDesc, 3-157  
 Purchase\_Request, 3-78  
 Quaternary, 3-36  
 QuickLimitDropDownSize, 3-91  
 QuickLimitsText, 3-91, 3-159  
 Radius\_Text, 3-29  
 Range, 3-36  
 Range\_Scale, 3-34  
 Range\_Search, 3-29, 3-30  
 RecalledItem, 3-125  
 RecallRequest, 3-18, 3-164  
 ReceivedComplete, 3-53  
 ReceivedComplete+, 3-53  
 Record View, 3-78  
 Record View\_1, 3-78

Record View\_2, 3-78  
Record View\_3, 3-78  
Record View\_4, 3-78  
Record View\_5, 3-78  
Record\_Classification, 3-37  
Records, 3-111  
RecordsDisplayed, 7-30, 7-31  
Rectangle\_Search, 3-28  
RedirectEnabled, 2-169  
References, 3-78  
Regular, 3-59  
Relevance, 3-158, 3-171  
Relevance\_Heading, 3-60  
RemoteStorageRequest, 3-25, 3-169  
Renew, 3-127  
RenewalStatus, 3-127  
Renewed, 3-17, 3-164  
RenewedDue, 3-128  
RenewedItem, 3-124  
RenewedReq, 3-18  
ReqAvail, 3-122  
ReqPending, 3-121  
Request\_Form, 3-78  
Request\_Select\_Page, 3-143  
Requests, 3-80, 3-121  
RequestURIButton, 5-47  
RequestURIButtonGraphic, 5-47  
ReSearchSubmitButton, 2-169  
Reset, 3-142  
ResetButton, 3-83, 3-90, 3-101, 3-102, 3-109, 3-130, 3-144, 3-154  
RetainButton, 3-156  
RichEditWindow, 7-36  
Right\_Longitude, 3-31  
RunSearchEvery, 5-114  
Save, 3-111  
SaveDate, 5-124  
SaveOption, 5-108, 5-109  
SavePreferences, 7-30  
SaveRecords, 3-80, 5-123  
SaveSearchQuery, 3-112, 5-110  
SaveToBookbag1, 3-111, 5-130  
SaveToBookbag2, 3-112, 5-131  
Scale\_Denominator\_Label, 3-34  
ScanDoc, 3-12  
ScandocAltText, 3-154  
Scheduled, 3-24, 3-168  
SDIOption, 5-113, 5-114  
Search, 7-35  
Search Dialog, 3-54  
search type, 3-62  
Search\_For, 3-83  
Search\_In, 3-83  
Search\_Limits, 3-106  
Search\_Questions, 5-109  
Search\_References, 3-60  
Search\_Request, 3-59  
Search\_Results, 3-59  
Search\_Status, 3-150  
SearchBoxText, 3-91, 3-159  
SearchedFor, 3-149  
SearchFor, 5-109  
\*\_SearchGroup, 3-84  
SearchPreferences, 7-30, 7-31  
SearchType, 3-148, 5-109  
SearchTypeDropDownSize, 3-92  
SearchTypeStyle, 3-92  
Secondary, 3-35  
Section, 3-100  
Select\_New\_Date, 3-139  
Selected, 3-111  
Selected\_Background\_Color, 3-75  
SelectedRecsAllPages, 3-111, 3-156  
SelectedReservationDate, 3-146  
SelfRenew, 3-119  
Separator, 3-13, 3-73  
Server, 7-48  
server, 3-11  
Set\_Limits\_Button\_Alt\_Text, 3-108  
Shelved\_At, 3-171  
ShortLoanRequest, 3-25, 3-169  
Show, 3-150  
ShowDatabaseName, 3-160, 3-170  
ShowSearchRequest, 3-160, 3-170  
ShowSearchResults, 3-161, 3-170  
Simple, 3-78  
SimpleSearch, 7-35  
Simultaneous\_Searching, 3-149  
SingleDisplay, 3-54  
SL\_Noltems, 3-48  
SLBlock\_Closed, 3-49  
SLBlock\_Day, 3-50  
SLBlock\_Invalid, 3-49  
SLBlock\_Patron, 3-50  
SLBlock\_Policy, 3-49  
SLBlock\_Title, 3-50  
SLBlock\_Total, 3-50  
SLBlock\_Unavailable, 3-49  
SSL=, 1-9  
StartTime, 3-146

---

Status, [3-107](#), [3-127](#)  
 Status\_DBFail, [3-151](#)  
 Status\_DBLicense, [3-152](#)  
 Status\_DBReset, [3-152](#)  
 Status\_DBVersion, [3-152](#)  
 Status\_Receiving, [3-151](#)  
 Status\_SearchDone, [3-151](#)  
 Status\_SearchFail, [3-151](#)  
 Status\_SearchIncompatible, [3-151](#)  
 Status\_Searching, [3-150](#)  
 Stop, [3-150](#)  
 StripBlankLines, [3-84](#)  
 SubjectSearchRedirect, [3-175](#)  
 SubjectSearchText, [3-175](#)  
 Submit, [3-142](#), [5-109](#)  
 SubmitButton, [3-83](#), [3-89](#), [3-100](#), [3-101](#), [3-106](#),  
     [3-109](#), [3-130](#), [3-144](#), [3-153](#)  
 Tab\_Text, [3-27](#), [3-81](#), [3-88](#), [3-99](#)  
 Table\_Background\_Color, [3-27](#), [3-105](#)  
 TableBackgroundColor, [3-145](#)  
 TableColor, [3-147](#), [3-149](#)  
 TableFontColor, [3-146](#)  
 TableForegroundColor, [3-145](#)  
 TableText, [3-147](#), [3-149](#)  
 Temp\_File\_Name, [3-9](#)  
 Temp\_Location, [3-9](#)  
 Temp\_Shelfed, [3-172](#)  
 TempFileLocation, [3-6](#)  
 TempFileName, [3-7](#)  
 Tertiary, [3-36](#)  
 Text, [2-6](#), [2-16](#), [5-123](#), [7-14](#), [7-35](#)  
 TextFont, [3-71](#)  
 TextFontSize, [3-71](#)  
 TextSeparator, [3-71](#)  
 Thumbgen, [3-9](#)  
 ThumbnailAltText, [3-154](#)  
 Timeout, [3-7](#), [3-9](#)  
 Title, [3-157](#)  
 Title\_Short\_Loan, [3-141](#)  
 TitleDisplay, [3-60](#)  
 Titles, [3-79](#), [3-103](#)  
 TitlesBorderVal, [2-77](#)  
 TitleSearchRedirect, [3-174](#)  
 TitleSearchText, [3-175](#)  
 Top, [3-73](#)  
 Top\_BackGround\_Color, [3-27](#)  
 Top\_Background\_Color, [3-105](#)  
 Top\_Font\_Color, [3-28](#)  
 TotalAmountDue, [3-128](#)  
 Trailing#Text, [3-88](#), [3-104](#), [3-156](#)  
 Type, [3-106](#)  
 Upper\_Latitude, [3-30](#)  
 Upper\_Right, [3-30](#)  
 USE\_LFV3, [5-42](#)  
 UseHorizontalRule, [3-48](#)  
 UsePI, [5-48](#)  
 UsePIN, [7-4](#)  
 UsePS, [5-48](#)  
 UTM\_Meters, [3-31](#), [5-57](#)  
 Vertical\_Line\_Search, [3-31](#)  
 [View\_Record\_Page] stanza  
     MaxRelatedRecords, [B-5](#)  
     MaxRelatedRecordsBorder, [B-6](#)  
     MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData, [B-6](#)  
     MaxRelatedRecordsMessage, [B-6](#), [B-8](#)  
 VLINK, [2-6](#), [2-17](#), [7-14](#), [7-35](#)  
 WebErrCompatibility, [3-6](#)  
 WebErrNewOpac, [3-6](#)  
 Weekly, [5-115](#)  
 Width, [3-32](#)  
 Withdrawn, [3-167](#)  
 \*\_WithinField, [3-84](#)  
 variable name  
     do not change admonishment, [3-5](#)  
     overview of, [3-5](#)  
 Vcit, [4-13](#)  
 vcit directory, [3-114](#)  
 Vertical\_Line\_Search variable, [3-31](#)  
 View Record page  
     HTML, [A-9](#)  
 [View\_Record\_Page] stanza, [2-170](#), [3-169](#), [5-38](#), [B-4](#)–[B-8](#), [B-19](#)  
     variable  
         MaxRelatedRecords, [B-5](#)  
         MaxRelatedRecordsBorder, [B-6](#)  
         MaxRelatedRecordsMainTableData, [B-6](#)  
         MaxRelatedRecordsMessage, [B-6](#), [B-8](#)  
 view1.gif file, [2-104](#)  
 [View1\_Page] stanza, [2-104](#)  
 view1a.gif file, [2-104](#)  
 view2.gif file, [2-105](#)  
 [View2\_Page] stanza, [2-105](#)  
 view2a.gif file, [2-105](#)  
 view3.gif file, [2-105](#)  
 [View3\_Page] stanza, [2-105](#)  
 view3a.gif file, [2-105](#)  
 view4.gif file, [2-105](#)  
 [View4\_Page] stanza, [2-105](#)  
 view4a.gif file, [2-105](#)  
 view5.gif file, [2-105](#)

[View5\_Page] stanza, [2-105](#)  
view5a.gif file, [2-105](#)  
viewing  
    bibliographic information, [5-92](#)  
    charged items, [7-23](#)  
    fines and fees, [7-71](#)  
    library information, [2-171–2-173](#)  
    MARC information of records, [5-102](#)  
    personal information, [7-22](#)  
    records, [5-99–5-103](#)  
virtual directory, [1-4](#)  
Visible element, [7-53](#)  
Visited link color, [3-39](#)  
visited Link color, [5-6](#)  
VLINK variable, [2-6, 2-17, 7-14, 7-35](#)  
Voyager  
    Cataloging, see Cataloging module  
    System Administration, see System Administration module  
    WebVoyage, see WebVoyage  
Voyager Circulation Module, [7-57](#)  
Voyager System Administration  
    Patron Self-Registration configuration in, [7-58](#)  
voyager.ini file, [3-11](#)  
    client-side, [5-78](#)  
voytomcat.ini file, [7-47, 7-48](#)

---

## W

Web server  
    defining port, [1-3](#)  
    directory index  
        defining, [1-4](#)  
    document root  
        defining, [1-3](#)  
    preparing  
        preparing web server, [1-3](#)  
    script alias  
        defining, [1-3](#)  
webcataloging, [3-79](#)  
webconerr.htm file, [3-208](#)  
WebErrCompatibility variable, [3-6](#)  
WebErrNewOpac variable, [3-6](#)  
[WebRecon] stanza, [3-6, 3-79](#)  
webvoy.htm file, [2-10, 3-208, 5-3](#)  
    editing, [2-11](#)  
WebVoyage, [B-3](#)

---

basic customization information  
    record display, [B-12–B-15](#)  
configuring for Bibliographic Record Linking, [B-4–B-19](#)  
customizing, [3-3](#)  
    record display, [5-103](#)  
database page  
    overview, [5-3–5-7](#)  
directory structure, [3-2](#)  
display directory  
    local, [3-114](#)  
    vcit, [3-114](#)  
    zcit, [3-114](#)  
displaying Related Records, [B-2](#)  
displaying suppressed record, [B-4](#)  
initial page, [5-1](#)  
Record screen, [5-38](#)  
Search page  
    overview, [5-7–5-81](#)  
WebVoyage  
    installing, [1-3](#)  
    multiple language versions of, [1-20](#)  
    screens, [2-1](#)  
        configuring, [2-1](#)  
webvoyage directory, [3-1, 5-38](#)  
WebVoyage display, [4-11](#)  
webvoyage.ini file  
    customizing, [3-5–3-11](#)  
    editing, [1-7](#)  
    preparing, [1-7](#)  
Weekly variable, [5-115](#)  
Width variable, [3-32](#)  
Withdrawn variable, [3-167](#)  
\*\_WithinField variable, [3-84](#)

---

## X

XML file  
    patron.css, [7-49](#)  
    patron.xml, [7-49, 7-50, 7-54](#)  
    patron.xsl, [7-49](#)

---

---

---

## Z

Z39.50, [3-177](#), [4-2](#), [4-4](#), [4-5](#), [4-10](#), [4-13](#), [4-14](#)  
call number indexes not available with, [3-65](#)  
headings indexes not available with, [3-65](#)  
Zcit, [4-13](#)  
zcit directory, [3-114](#)

**Endeavor Information Systems, Inc.**  
See notice on first page